THE

Second Part

OF THE

Mirrour of Knighthood

Wherein is set forth the worthy Deeds of the Knight of the Sun. with the Valiant deeds of Armes of sundry worthy Knights

Newly Translated out of Spanish into English by R.P.

Imprinted at London
By Thomas East.

¶THE SECOND part of the Mirror of *Knighthood.*

CONTAINING TWO SEVE-rall Bookes, wherein is intreated the valiant deedes of Armes of sundrye worthie Knights, very delightfull to be read, and nothing hurtfull to bee regarded.

¶NOW NEWLY TRANSLA-ted out of Spanish into our vulgar tongue by R.P.

IMPRINTED AT London by Thomas Este.

1598.

62811

TO THE RIGHT WORſhipfull, and my very good friend, Maſter Edward Cordele, Eſquire.

ARISTOTLE (right Worſhipfull) beeing demaunded, what benefite hee had obtayned by Philoſophie, aunſwered: This is my gaine, that vncommaunded I can doe that I ought, and auoide dooing that I ſhould not; For, (ſaith hee) the ignorant for feare of puniſhment abſtaine from euill, but the ſapient can ſhunne the ſame of their owne accord: noting that ſtudious exerciſe bringeth experience, and maketh as well ciuill pollicie, as marſhall proweſſe apparant. For which cauſe, there haue beene ſundrye in times paſt, and ſome in this our preſent age, that haue not onely penned with great labour the laudable workes of Antiquitie: but alſo with as much trauaile haue imitated certaine old writers, by inuenting of hiſtories, no leſſe profitable to repulſe other hurtfull paſtimes, then pleaſaunt to paſſe away the tediouſnes of time. Amongſt the number of which late workes, there chanced about three yeeres ſince to come into my hands, the firſt part of a Spaniſh tranſlation, intituled, The Mirrour of Knighthood: which beeing publiſhed was ſo accepted, that I was importuned by ſundry Gentlemen (my very friendes) to procure the tranſlation of the ſecond part: whereto, (partly to accompliſh their deſires, and partly for the vulgar delight of all) I condiſcended.

And I finding this Spaniard adorned with all good exerciſes, which pertained to the exalting of vertue, and the extinguiſhing of vice: I laboured (as much as in mee laye)

to finde an Engliſh Patrone of conformable qualitye, whoſe countenaunce might as well preferre him with the curteous, as protect him among the enuious. But I had not long beethought mee, when the conſideration of your worſhips courteſie with the good report of your vertue, expelled that doubt, and incouraged me to preſent you with this worke. Beeſeeching you to accept in good part, this poore preſent at the handes of him, which wiſheth to you long life, wirh the continuall increaſe of vertue, proſperitie, and health: and after this life endleſſe felicitie.

Your Worſhips moſt aſſured:

T. E.

To the Reader.



Gentle Reader, I haue hére published the second part of the Mirrour of Knighthood, to the end that I might both satisfie thy desire, and yéld vnto thée the delight, that by reading thereof thou maist receiue. About the veritie of the Historie I will not contend, neyther would I wish thée to be more curious to inquire, then thou wouldst be desirous to sift the truth of each transmutation in the Metamorphosis of Ouid, or euerie tale in the works of Aesope: but to consider, that as the one by the transformation of reasonable creatures into sundry brutish shapes, shadowing the deformitie of their wicked liues: and the other by the manner of his beasts figured the behauiour of all the estates of man, wishing a reformation of the euill, and a confirmation of the good: So our Author hath pleasantly compiled this present work, as well to animate these that are by nature forward vnto the exercise of armes, for to exalt theyr fame: as also to prouoke them that haue hetherto slept in ỹ bed of securitie, to shun their wonted sloth, with desire rather honourably to lose theyr liues in the defence of equitie, then shamefully to liue with perpetuall infamie. And wheras there are some so stoycall to contemne the reading of histories, alleadging that theyr vaine delight withdraw many from other vertuous studies. I answere, that in any matter where vice is reprehended, vertue is no way hindered, and although I must nædes confesse, that the learned works of the liberall Sciences are principally to be preferred, so it cannot bee denyed but that the pleasant stile of a well penned history, is as it were a whetstone to the minde, being almost dulled with continuall study: and albeit

To the Reader.

it there ſhall (peraduenture) want the lyke grace of eloquence in the tranſlation as is requiſit, yet I doubt not but the variety of the matter ſhall make a ſufficient recõpence. Moreouer (curteous Reader) I requeſt thée to note, that wheras the beginning of this part followeth not cõſequently vpon the ſame booke which was publiſhed in the name of the firſt part, it is not to bée imputed to any errour committed in the tranſlation of this ſecond part: for that it is verely the ſelfe ſame, that beareth the title of the ſecond part in the Spaniſh tongue, but the booke that lacketh, is the ſecond booke of the firſt part, which with as much ſpéede as may bée, ſhall bée ioyned therevnto. In the meane time, accept this in good part, which I now preſent: wherein thou ſhalt finde the ſtraunge & wonderfull proweſſe of the worthy Trebatio, and his ſonnes, nephewes, kinſmen, and ſundry other couragious Knights, mixed with many lamentable and ſorrowfull Hiſtories, together with the redreſſe of the wronged innocents. And ſo I ende, committing this my labour, to thy curteous conſideration, and thy ſelfe to the Almighties tuition.

Thine: T. E.



¶THE FIRST BOOKE

of the second part of the Mirrour of Knighthood: wherein is intreated the valiant deedes of armes of many worthy Knights.

¶THE CRVELL BATTAILE which past beetweene the Knight of the Sunne and the fierce Gyant Bramaraunt, in which bickering the Gyant perceiuing he must needes haue the worst, murthered himselfe.

CAP. I.

WHEN THE GLITTERING armour of Æneas of Troie was at the request of his Mother Venus forged in Vulcan his shoppe, the well staled hammers did not temper and beate it with greater noise, then the heroicall sonne of Trebatio, (pursuing the stout Pagan Bramarant through the middest of the Grecian woods,) did with his vnwildie club, thunder heauy blowes vpon his armour, maugling by little and little his strong and lustie bodie, so much the more their choler increased, as the combat did indure beetweene them. There were present at this bickering the renoumed Emperour Trebatio, Alicandro the king of Hungarie, and his Grandfather, with manie other puissaunt Princes and greate Lordes, who with no small admiration did beholde the exceeding fiercenesse with which they let driue their blowes, the one at the other, which did resound an Echoe in the aire, and yelded a terrible noise in the woodes. This bat-

taile did continue betwéne thē ỳ ſpace, of two long houres, and albeit it was fierce and ſharp, the valour of the incenſed knight of the Sunne preuailed not to abate or extinguiſh the rage of the Pagan, & much leſſe could the force of the Tartarian quaile in any ſort the courage of the princely Grecian. The ſkirmiſh being hot, and the redoubled ſon of Trebatio perceiuing that it indured verie long without certaintie who had the better: herevpon béing greatly inflamed with fury, lifted vp his peiſant club aboue his head, & did diſcharge it vpon the pagan his left ſhoulder, in ſuch ſort, (that notwithſtanding his ſtrength) he was forced to ſhrinke backward, and ſo fell flat vpon his right ſide, being greatly diſmaied at ỳ blow, & much more at the fall: he began to recouer himſelf at length by the friendly help of an aſh tré which was cloſe by him, for otherwiſe his vnwildie bodie had taken more pauſe vpon the ground. Scantly had he taken good foteing when he perceiued the knight of the Sun fort him another ſequence anſwerable to ỳ firſt. The Gyant being vnprouided of any trumpe to caſt in his way, wherevpon he was driuen to cloſe with the Grecian, and hauing teazed his bodie with his ſharp talents, he began to gripe him verie hard. The heroicall Prince ſéing himſelfe thus imbraced contrary to the cuſtome of all curteſie, began to ſhift, for to auoide this courſe entertainment ſo well as he might, but wanting more time then courage he was thereby tript to the ground. And finding himſelfe laden with his enimie, he was therby compelled to forſake his club, and by all meanes to ſéke to ſhake off that vnfriendly burthen. Therefore catching Bramaraunt by the middle with no leſſe agilitie then fury, hé did violently pull him vnderneath: whereby hé requited him in part, for the diſcourteſie of the former fall. There did they both ſhew their ineſtimable forces, and paſſing nimbleneſſe of bodye, in this cruell and daungerous encountering. And thus they long time tumbled and toſſed each other on the graſſe, ſometimes not mouing for want of breath,

other-

other whiles wallowing together to get the maſtery, yéelding forth moſt terrible gronings, by reaſon of the great paines and wearineſſe that they ſuſteined in this harde conflict, at length they ſet eache other at libertie, & then ſtart vpon their féete, and beganne to fight as fiercely as before. The Knight of the Sunne drawing out his Sword, ſuppoſed that no reſiſtaunce of the enemie, how ſtrong ſo euer it were, coulde ſuſpende the execution of his purpoſe, the Moore likewiſe toke holde of his beaute trenchaunt blade, curſing and banning his Gods, that they hadde endued this Knight with ſo great force and prowelle. Béeing in this brainſick moode, he would not attempt to make experience of his enemies force againe, but flourifhing his ſword amongſt the troup, cauſed thē to ſunder themſelues and ſo in flying, made a broad lane betweene them, and ranne to ſhrowde himſelfe into the thickeſt of the Woode, that he could, leauing ỳ people in a great admiration: The noble knight of the Sunne, when he beheld that his champion betoke him to his héeles in ſo great haſt, whether he did it for feare (which was vnlikely being a ſtout chāpion) or for diuelish madnes, (which might ſeeme true) being on chriſtian, called for his horſe, & could not be perſwaded frō purſuing ỳ Pagan, by the Emperour his father, making a ſemblaunce of great anger by his countenaunce. his horſe being brought by one of his eſquires, he mounted into the ſaddle verie lightly, without helpe of his ſtirroppes, and broching his courſer with the Spurres, hée made him runne ſo ſwift, that he ſeemed another Perſeus vppon his Pegaſus, to them that beheld him. He ceaſed not to courſe vp and downe the Forreſt. with ſet purpoſe to ſingle out his Enemie, and not to reſt vntill hée hadde ſubdued him, or els to bee conquered by the vertue of his aduerſaries force.

Noble Roſicleer perceiuing his brother to bée inclyned for to take reuenge of the Pagan, and thereby miſtruſting leaſt that ſome frowarde miſchaunce might attende

vpon him (which fickle fortune vſeth vſually afford,) hereuppon did call for his horſe and armour out of hande, which being brought with as much ſpeed as might bee, in ſo ſhort a time he being furniſhed with his owne weapons & armour, he lept vp nimbly into ỳ ſaddle, & poſted through the forreſt in as great haſt as he might, following his brother in the ſame path whether he went, wher we wil leaue him, to make rehearſall of that which did befall in the Emperours court, in the meane time, when as ỳ beholders had ſomewhat ſtaide themſelues in remembring this notable battaile, & had as it were forgotten the ſharp brunts ỳ two champions ſuſteined, the Emperour with ỳ reſt were ſomwhat recomforted to ſée how lowingly Roſicleer did follow to aide and ſuccour his brother, and diſcourſing by the way of the battaile, and of the incredible ſtrength and courage of the Pagan, they withdrew themſelues into their tents: being not long there, newes was ſpred abroad in the court of the loſſe of Claramont, which report when the Empreſs hard, it laid ſuch an impreſſion of griefe in hir Emperiall heart, that albeit ſhe was an Empreſſe and had ruledome of many nations, yet had ſhe not ſo much power ouer hir ſelfe, but preſently therevpon ſhe fell into an extreame Extaſie betweene the Empreſſe Claridianas armes.

The Queenes and Ladies beholding ſo tragicall & ſódaine miſchance, they cluſtered altogether, & with certain drugs which they had about them in a readineſſe, they ſomewhat reuiued hir againe, ſhée being before greatly diſtraughted out of hir wits and ſenſes. And with ſorrowing ſighes repleniſhed with much matirdome, deſending from the bottome of hir hart, bathing alſo hir beautifull viſage with two ſtreames of ſalt teares guſhing from hir eyes with a lamentable voice ſhe deliuered certaine ſpeeches, which did moue the aſſiſtaunts vnto verie great compaſſion: To whom the emperour came (although he was God wot, in ſuch plight himſelfe, that his eaſe rather required more comfort) then to viſite the comfortleſſe: yet notwithſtanding

ing

ding he with a graue countenance, verie louingly did cherish & perswade hir: which speeches of his sauoured somewhat of an angry shewe of reprehension, in the ende hee wrought so much with hir, as she was fullie recouered and contented. The Emperour not to seeme daunted with any thing, but to make a more apparaunt shew of his valour, he commaunded his huntsmen to continue the sport, and in outward semblance seemed to be so merry as euer he was, wheras in truth he was secretly wringed, for the exceeding great passion which he saw the lady Claridiana indure, for the sodaine absence of him who was newly married vnto hir, & had begotten hir with childe. After three daies were passed, they were desirous to returne to the Citie againe, and taking vp their tents, they laid all things in order, and in readinesse to proceede on their iourney. But as they began to march on their waye, they might perceiue comming a long by the Forrest side a Coach, all couered ouer with blacke Searge, which foure horses did drawe, trapped with such like black furniture. Before it eight knights came riding, with Targettes and armour, all out of order, and broken, which did very well expresse, that they had escaped some daungerous and hot skirmish. Behinde the Coch did attend as many more knights, hauing their armour sutable to the first, all did beare blacke deuices, the barbature of their Horses, answerable to the same. The Emperour and knightes which beehelde this same shew, beeing all blacke in mourning wise, did raine their horses to knowe what came in the same Coach.

Heere must I digresse and recite vnto you the cruell order and miserable end of the vnfortunate Pagan, & will returne at length to relate vnto you, what did betide the Emperour and his companie, after this sight of the Coche. The diuelish Moore Bramaraunt ran through the Grecian forrests (a hellish furie beeing his guide) yelling & braieng against his Gods, and as a starued Tyger he trauased the

woods, cutting downe oakes, & rooting frō ẏ ground pine apple trées, as if they had ben ſléder rœds. And being plunged in this penſiue mood, he entered into ẏ higheſt degrée of his melancholike paſſiōs, debating wᵭ himſelf, why ſhould it not be poſſible ẏ his mightie hand ſhould conquer & ſubdue one ſilly knight. But other ſomtimes deſcending from ẏ moode into a more mad & frantick kind of behauiour, this diſturbed Moore did bend himſelfe towards the midſt of ẏ wood, & kéeping on his right hand, he repaired towards the brink of a broad & déepe riuer which ran by that wood, where he purpoſed to eaſe his weary limbs: and the better to performe his deſire, he vnlaced his helmet, & hurlde it ſcornefully to the ground. Now the infernall furies bégan to viſit the Moore, and attended to ſting his poiſoned breaſte, in ſuch ſort, that what with deſire of reuenge, and ſorrow for his late miſhap, he was all kindeled in fire, hauing toſſed manie thoughts in his crabbed minde. In the end, he caſt vp
" his wretched eyes to the heauens, ſaying: O ye trecherous
" Gods, ioyn in league to defend your ſelues from mine vn-
" fortunate hand, ſtay not, but muſter your forces together,
" for if mine owne hand in the meane while be no impeach-
" ment to the cauſe, by pulling out my hart, I will change
" the colour of theſe chriſtalline waters with the ſacrifices
" of your bloud: for no doubt there reſteth more valour in
" this one knight, then in you all, when you are together. O
" ye daſtardly cowards, wher are ye now become? Truſt yée
" to this, that I haue in more regard the worthines of that
" knight that fought againſt me, then I haue in liking your
" fained forces. And ſéeing that neither your powers nor my
" ſtrength, may not paragon to his courage, and to the ende,
" ye ſhall not flatter your ſelues wᵭ a good opinion of your
" own ſouerainetie, being inſufficient to ſuccour me, & much
" leſſe vnable to ſuppreſſe my wil, or bridle my deſire, I wil
" renounce you all, & truſt no more to your fauors. After he had thus ſpoken, forthwith he began to pull in ſunder his ſtrong & bright ſhining armour, & what with outragiouſ-

nes

nes,or with sorow which did greatly gal him,he cast from him one peece heere,another ther:& blaspheming against al his Gods,hee said: What doth it availe me your vertue, your' fauours,or mine owne strength? is it not altogether weaknesse?is it not a shew without substaunce? Haue you not suffered my father to be slain without taking reuenge? haue you not seene mee subdued, wanting forces to requite it?Might not my father haue beene preferred before Iupiter for grauitie & wit?before Alcides for prowesse?& before Mars for courage?Can I otherwise conceaue,but that you are all dastards,in ỹ you take no reuenge: deafe, in ỹ you will not heare the complaints of the oppressed: & blinde in that you cannot see the deserts of me.I should think truly my fathers forces exceeding you all,yee haue beene a meane to breede his death so soone. Why did you not assist mee against ỹ Emperor Trebario?why did you not maintain mee against ỹ knight ỹ hath cõquered me in ỹ field. O ye faint harted wretches, what hath brought mee hether,thus in ỹ prime of my youth to bee put to shame, by beeing subdued of this knight.I will vse such meanes, ỹ none of you shall take reuenge of me,by dieng at my enimies hands:neither shall any haue occasion to triumph & say, ỹ he hath slaine the knight Bramaraunt. And speaking these & like speaches, he toke his sword into his hand & said. O good & faithfull sword, release me from ỹ shame which I deserue, in that I haue not executed ỹ, which I did couenaunt to atchieue by thee,sith ỹ neither thy trenchãt edges,nor my approued stoutnes haue sufficiently plaid their parts,to satisfie that, wherevnto my promise hath bound mee. A cowardly arme did hold thee,a dastardly hart did direct thee,& an euil guerdon bee thy glory. Well, I will shrowd thee in such sort,ỹ hereafter thou shalt not stand any other hardie knight in stéed,nor be subiect to any man as thou hast beene to mee. This onely thing I request of thee,if any of ỹ Gods carry ỹ good will to take thee vp to serue their own needs,erres in what smal regard my vncõquered hart held thẽ, & thou

" ſhalt perceiue, that they are not ſo valiant and ſtout as I
" am, or euer haue béene. Hauing thus ſaid, hée caſt it in the
déepeſt part of the riuer, not hauing any more weapons
but a poore poynado, which vſually he did weare about
him: & taking it in his hand, deliuered theſe ſpeaches vnto
" it. Thou ſilly bodkin ſhalt finiſh ỳ péece of worke, which
" all Chriſtendome was neuer able at anie time to béeginne,
" I meane in bereauing mée of my wearie & lingring lyfe,
" for I aboue all men onely deſerue to léeſe it, ſéeing that I
" béeing the ſonne of ſo valiant a Father, haue not ſhewed
" any ſparke of that valour which by right ought to deſcend
" to mée from mine auncéſtour, ſith then I haue digreſſed, I
" repute my ſelfe vnworthie to bée regiſtred for his ſonne. O
" how worthely doeſt thou deſerue death vnfortunate Bra-
" maraunt, ſith there are ſo fewe buddes of valour ſpring-
" ing in thée. And let mée not denie but that mine aunce-
" ſtours deſerued to finde much more fauour at the Gods
" hands then I haue done. Foraſmuch therefore as my caſe
" is ſo bad, I will neither commend my ſoule to the tuition
" of the Gods, neither wil I craue of any man ſo ſmal a fa-
" uour as a graue for my wretched bodye. Yéelding forth
theſe reaſons with a great and pitifull ſigh, deſcending
from his heauie heart, hée ſtabbe the Dager amiddeſt
his ribbes, which pearced vnto the liuer and heart,
and ſo the vitall powers ſtriuing with death, and his mi-
ſerable carraſſe beating vp and downe the ſmall ſandes
for life, there died in this ſort the moſt valiant & ſtout Pa-
gan, whoſe ſemblable the world did neuer yet bring forth,
moſt vnworthie (God knoweth) of ſo cruell and pitifull an
ende.

¶ The worthie Knight Roſicleer finding Brama-
raunt giuing vp the ghoſt, after he was dead, did
entombe his corpes neere vnto a Pine apple tree,
wherein he did ingraue an Epitath. Cap. 2.

The



The last pang & deadly galpe that the baliaunt Tartarian yéelded, béeing diſtreſſed betwéene life and death, was ouerheard by noble Roſicleer, who by chaunce (purſuing him & his brother) repaired to that place wher the Moze lay wallowing, & aiming very well by his ſozrowfull ſighes, that he indured heapes of paſſions, rained his hozſe towards that way where hée heard ſo ſhzill theſe gronings, and ſtaieng a while to heare his pitifull complaints, laid himſelfe ſquat vpon ý ground, not far frõ whence ý dead pagan lay imbzued in his blood. And wondering howe ſo dæpe a riuer might chaunge his coulour by the ſolle of the blood of one man, began to tolle the dead cozpes vp and downe, pzeſuming in himſelfe, that rather the paſſion of the minde oz the weight of his armoz then any deadly blowe that he had receiued, had bzought him to this extremitie. In the end, ſæing his viſage ſo beſmeared with blood, as hée coulde not truelye geſſe what knight hée might bée, inſomuch as he neuer ſawe him but in his Beauer. Hérevppon hée wondzed greatly, partlye to ſée that this knight was ſo ſtrong timbered, but pzincipally to ſée his ſterne and ſowze countenaunce. And by as much as he could gather by his fozeſaide complaints, he imagined him to be the executioner of his owne bodie. He pauſing ſomewhat in a maſe, in viewing this lamentable ſlaughter of Bramaraunt, without mouing his eyes either one waie oz other, vntill in the ende he loked vp, being greatly afflicted in his minde, and dæply ſighing, call his eies that waie where the Moze his armour laie ſtrawed as you haue alreadie heard, and ſæing them to be ſo greate and ſtrong, hée went about foz to pæce and lay them all in ozder, which thing being done, he knew by the deuice ingraued in them, that this was Bramaraunt the Moze, which lay thus murthered. His ſtout heart could not bzoke this ſozrowfull Sacrifice, but in conſidering

of the miserable ende which did bée fall vpon this Tartarian, hæ coulde not but shedde from his eyes some trickeling
" teares, saying: O wretched woride, what boteth so much
" the mightie limmes and exceeding forces of any man, when
" as thou with thy smoth and flattering face, doest drawe
" them at last that follow thy course, to such a wretched end,
" and at the pinch of all their pangs thou forsakest them. O
" Bramaraunt, Bramaraunt, whose forces did resist the mightie
" Grecian armie, the incomperable strength of my brother,
" the tried Knight of the Sunne, and hast not had power to
" suppresse thine owne outragious passions. Alasse thy va-
" lour and noble courage did require, naye rather deserue,
" more glorie, and more guerdon then this. Thy strong and
" fast knit members did merit to be entombed in a more rich
" Sepulchre, then in this weat and small sandes, and God
" knowes, neuer deserued to bée a pluming stocke to the ra-
" uenous Fowles of the aire. What did moue thée, O most
" vnhappie amongst all men, to make thy angry arme be-
" reaue thée of thine owne life? It coulde be nothing else
" I am sure, but thy surpassing great pride: What did moue
" thæ to this vntimely death, as it well may be tearmed, sith
" thy fortune hath bæne such, I will not suffer thy body to
" bæ pulled in sitters with hungry beastes and rauenous
" Harpies, neither wil I sée thine armour dispearsed in such
" sort, without bæstowing vppon thæ the due desert of ho-
" nour, which are sufficient witnesses of the sacrifice of thine
" owne bodie, and a testimonie of that which thou diddest
" offer vp to thy Gods, by sprinkling the pleasaunt fieldes
" and græne grasse with such a crimson coulour. And after having thus pitifully bewailed the More, hée toke his helmet, and pulling out the murthering dagger, which was nailed close to the hiltes in his bodie, he digged a deep graue therewith, wherein was interred the miserable bodye of the vnfortunate Tartarian. Likewise he did hang the armour vpon a verie faire and high Pine apple trée, which was nære vnto his graue, and with the point of his

Dag-

Dagger did ingraue this Epitath in the rinde of the Tree.

This Pine with ſtretched armes, oreſhades a valiant knight,
Whoſe bodie heere interred lies, and Bramaraunt he hight:
In ſtrength and feates of armes, hee moſt men did ſurpaſſe,
A Pagan borne, his natiue ſoile and land Tartaria was.
His owne right hand, a wofull caſe, himſelfe did ſlay,
And rent his hart which neuer was ſubdude before that day,
Trebatios ſonne firſt there this mightie More hath found,
Twixt life and death, and with his handes ingrau'd him in this ground.
A monument too baſe vnfitting his degree,
Whoſe blood & actes in tombe of gold interd deſeru'd to be
In this faire growing pine, for honour of his name,
He did ingraue theſe lines, to be a record of his fame.
And placed his armour heere, forbidding any Knight,
To take it hence, vnleſſe hee bee as ſtout as hee in fight.
And who ſo ſhall it weare, muſt warres continue ſtill,
With Grecian Lordes, as Bramaraunt did, this ſtandeth for my will.

Nowe hauing finiſhed this peece of worke, hee ſayde: » Pardon mee valiant Moore, I beſeech thee, becauſe at this » time & in this place I do not attribute ſo much honour to » thee as thou deſerueſt: yet I do promiſe thee by the faith » of a Chriſtian knight, to fulfill euerie point in this Epi- » tath, (I eſteeme ſo much) though it bee done with the loſſe » of my life. And to make the more aſſurannce of this my » promiſe, I vowe that no yeere ſhall paſſe, but that I will » come to viſite thy Sepulchre, to ſee and knowe who hath » beene ſo hardie and venterous, as to thinke himſelfe wor- » thie to carry away thy heroicall armour. »

And in ſpeaking theſe and ſuch other lyke wordes, hee did not forget to mingle them with ſome trickling teares, his couragious heart was ſo tormented in meditating

of

of the lamentable ende of this deſperate Moꝛe. Hauing finiſhed his talke and trauaile, without longer abode, hæ mounted vpon his courſer, and directed himſelfe thoꝛough the thickeſt of the Wode, determining alwaies to accompliſh ẏ which he pꝛomiſed, although it did impoꝛt ſo much in it, as the weight of his life, as you ſhall perceiue hæreafter. This valiaunt knight continued not without great griefe of minde, in remembꝛing the oꝛder of ẏ death of Bramarant, which did continually occupie his memoꝛie. And as he went thus dꝛowned in ſuddes of ſoꝛꝛow, he knew not, neither cared he which was his hoꝛſe did carrie him, vntill the darkneſſe of the night ſurpꝛiſed him, ſo that hæ coulde not paſſe anie further, wherefoꝛe he was conſtrained to light from his hoꝛſe to walke on fœte, and to remaine in that place all Night, wherefoꝛe hæ vnbꝛideled his hoꝛſe, and gaue him libertie to fædè on the ſwæt graſſe, (whereof he had great nædè) hauing endured much trauel bæfoꝛe. Hæ likewiſe vnlaced his helmet, and layeng it vnder his head in ſtædè of a pillow (being a courſe bolſter foꝛ an Emperours ſonne) reſted his weary lims vpon ẏ græne medowe. And thus being alone and ſolitarie, he could not ſuſpend the remembꝛaunce of thoſe paſſions, which the day bæfoꝛe he had paſſed. Alſo thoſe conceits did call to account moꝛe ſoꝛꝛowes, & made him to be græued foꝛ his long abſence from his beſt bæloued Oliuia, whoſe beautie hæ intertained ſo dæpely in his minde, as neither time, place, noꝛ any foꝛtune whatſoeuer, coulde ſeperate hir from his gwd opinion. Nouriſhing his minde with this ſwæte paſſion, he continually toſſed tw and fro: and in the ende, ſæing the bꝛight ſhining Mone, & firing his eies vpon it, hæ began to contemplate the deuine powꝛ of almightie God, not wondꝛing alſo a litle, how that ẏ heauens were beautified with golden ſtars, and how the great Architectoꝛ of the woꝛld, had ſetled euery one in his due and conuenient place, which ingendered a greate confuſion in his minde. Theſe cogitations ſummoned him to ſlæpe, wherein hæ

had

had not taken long reſt, but y he heard on his left hand a harmonious ſound of ſome muſical inſtrument, & therwith all ſo pleaſant and Angelicall a voice anſwerable to the ſame, y he ſuppoſed it to deſcend from y heavens. The prince ſtart vp, and ſoftly went through the darke thickettes, to the end he might approch the more nearer, therby to be partaker of that celeſtiall muſicke, but he was hindred of his iourney, for that Dianas brightneſſe was eclipſed with a Clonde: wherefore then lifting vp his eyes, he might diſcrie vnder a broade Pine apple tree, a certaine Lady ſitting vppon a quiſhion of blacke velvet, embrodered with diuerſe prette knots of golde, whom he ſuppoſed to bee that Ladie, with which his diuine harmonie delighted his troubled ſpirits, her faire & yeolow haire vntied, and hanging downe beneath her eares, did reſt vpon her comely ſhoulders, in ſuch ſeemely ſort, and ſo long, that ſome part therof touched the black velvet cloath, which did ſeeme with their golden colour to repreſent ſome golden embleme, woven in the ſame cloth. She had before her Chriſtalline breaſt, a goodly Lute, whereon ſhee plaied (as you haue heard) this ſweete muſicke. There waited vppon her perſon nine faire damoſels, arrated all alike, with gownes of blacke velvet, & on her on ſide their lay proſtrate a luſtie & ſtrong knight well proportioned in bodie, and tall, harnelled in a blacke Diamond armoure, without any other deuice, who was verie attentiue to the muſicke, which the faire Lady did ſing: the tenor of the which is compriſed in theſe verſes following.

STraine foorth a voice conformed to my hart,
and let my fingers heaue ſtops applie:
Whileſt that my tongue in words bewray ſuch ſmart,
as who them heares, may know in life I die.
Foules, Beaſts and wormes, that neighbour neere this place,
All in your kindes, aſsiſt my wofull caſe.

I loue,

Yea euen the fish that in this riuer dwell,
whose cleere sweet streames my teares haue bitter made,
Will stay to heare the processe which I tell,
the Nimphs also that haunt this grouie shade:
And Ecko eke, full glad of such a mate,
Will in my words bemone hir passed state.

I loue (aye mee) whereby my ioyes I lost,
and am not lou'd, wherein fresh griefe I finde:
Prowd Tyrant thou, with shame thy conquest bost,
thy faith, my fame, staind by thy cruell minde.
Who gotst with guile the guard of my good name,
And leau'st mee now to ransacke of detame.

Cannot my face where nature prints hir praies,
thy liking draw hir A.b.c. there to know,
My haires excell bright Phœbus golden raies,
mine eyes more cleare then starres in frost that show,
My cheekes likewise, for perfect white and red,
resemble blood that in the snow is shed.

The rest vnnamde doth match all these likewise,
but lo my faith my forme too farre doth passe,
Yea, forme and faith he shunnes and doth despise,
Whom ceasselesse I pursue from place to place:
Whereby though ofte my tender limes I tire,
My will yet fresh, through hope and sweete desire.

Shee made an ende of hir song with a pitifull sigh, and letting hir lute fall out of hir hand, with a trembling voice shee saide. O Prince Zoylus, if thou diddest or wouldest
„ knowe the greate trauaile that this carefull Damoisell
„ suffreyneth for thy onely cause, I dar verily thinke, that al-
„ beit thou hadst tasted of the water of the inchanted wel of
„ Merlin, yet could it neuer worke such effect in thee, as to

make

make thée careleſſe of my torments, ſith they are ſo ſharpe, and I haue ſuſtained them ſo long.

Theſe words were no ſoner vttered by this ſorrowful lady, but preſently the knight ſtart vp, who was laid downe cloſe by the Lady, and could not be quiet, vntil he had anſwered hir thus. What breach hath loue made in your breaſt, moſt delicate damoſell? how hath he ſubdued you with his blinde force, vnleſſe the great diſdaine & diſcontentment that the Tartarian Prince ſhewed you to oppreſſe you, I know not why you ſhould complaine: why ſhuld not you quite his diſcurteſie with like diſgrace? why ſhould you not make him taſt of ỹ lotver which ſeemes ſo bitter to you? You ſent for mée (you know) to come into Greece, onely to be reuenged of his crueltie: and how often haue you wiſhed his head as a Sacrifice in reſpect of his contempt? And now how comes it to paſſe, ỹ in your ſongs he is remembred with ſuch affection, thought vpon with ſuch plaints, & called vpon as a deuine creature? Beléeue mée and doubt not of it (good madame) if Fortune bée ſo fauourable to aſſiſt mée in my purpoſe. I will in ſuch wiſe contriue theſe matters, that you ſhall neuer haue ante occaſion to lament his life, neyther yet to ſuſpect that hée doeth beſtow his good will and liking vpon ſome other Ladie.

The afflicted Dame notwithſtanding all theſe his comfortable ſpeaches, could not ſtrip hir ſelfe of any part of theſe exceeding ſorrowes, which ſo deepely did ſting hir, whereupon ſhe anſwered him in this order ſaying.

Prince of Meſopotamia, I ſtile euen now betweene two doubtes, whereby I do not onely doubt, but am alſo perſwaded my ſhipwracke is harde at hande. For if I become ſo frowarde, as to ſlaie him whom I wish to bee my friende, or that I haue ſo tankered a minde as to ſeeke to deſtroie him whom I loue ſo well, what might be ſaid of mée other wiſe then of a ſained louer, and cruell homicide: againe, if on the other ſide I pardon his death, whoſe

» whose life and disdaine breeds me this sorrow, might argue
» too much pitie without desart. Alasse, what luck had I, that
» loue should intrude himselfe so forcibly into my poore hart,
» and gouerne there as chiefe Lorde, and could hee not haue
» battered the breast of Zoylo, whose defence in resisting had
» beene more strong then mine, but the weakest must to the
» wall, and the least able must beare the heauiest burthen.
» How gladsome would that day be vnto mée, wherein I
» might see my knight abandon his straungenesse, and ex-
» tend more fauour vpon mée: or else alas, how willing wold
» I bée that my afflicted heart were drawen out of his
» place by his bloudy hande. The poore Ladie beeing not a
ble to speake anie more, wrong hir hands and stayed hir
selfe against a Pine apple trée, which was behinde hir
backe, at the view whereof the Mesapotamian knight in
great sorrow laid himselfe downe againe, vpon the greene
grasse. And the Grecian Prince wondring at this straunge
aduenture, retourned very softly to that place wher he left
his horse feeding, with intent & purpose to encounter that
knight, so soone as Titan should appeare to light
the world with his beames, and for no other cause but on-
ly to deliuer his friend from that prepensed malice. And
when as yfficie Phaeton began with his glauncing beames
to shine, the Grecian Prince put on his armour, laced his
13 helmet, mounted vpon his horse, and with a soft pace made
towards the Prince of Mesapotamia, who was now pre-
pared to vndertake his iourney with his companie. After
they had trauailed a while, the Prince did espie them pas-
sing through a faire champain or field, and was greatly a-
bashed at the exceeding beautie of the Ladye, whome hée
viewed a long time, and long hauing ticketed him for
that shée was so rare a Phoenix, hée thought for hir sake
he could subdue all the worlde: wherefore hée tourned
his eyes towarde that place where the knight was, and
if before hée wondered at the Ladies comely graces, not
much lesse was he now amazed at the strong bodye of

this

this Knight, and at his huge and well fashioned weapons whereby he reputed him to be some worthie & noble champion. After he had shaked off this imagination, he said vnto him: Knight, take thy weapons and armour for thy defence, » for I am desirous to haue some triall of thée, before ỳ thou » doest proue thy valour with the Tartarian Prince, thereby » peraduenture to quite him (if I can) from the like battaile » which thou dost intend to haue with him, at the request of » this Ladie, and therefore I meane to preuent that diuellish » purpose which thou hast promised to accomplish. The Moore » hereat began to swell, and very scornfully and with a fear- » full countenaunce replied. What furie or diuell of hell hath » placed so foolish a thought in thy braines, to vndertake ỳ er- » ploit, which the best of the Gods neuer durst enterprise: & » not able to speake any more, his choler & rage was so great, he laid both his handes vpon his sword, and therwithal let flie at the Grecian Prince such a blowe, that hée made his head redouble in his breast plate, and vpon the neck of the same he discharged another vpon him, which made him yéld backward. The Grecian Prince wondering at his incomperable strength and nimblenesse, drew out that strange and vnknowen sword, which the Queene Iulia did giue him, and lifting it aboue his head with one of his accustomed blowes, he did smite it vpon the pagan his helmet, which made him bowe downe his head to the saddle Pomell, so that his sentes were almost benummed with the force of it, but being recouered, he began by little and little to smite and wound the noble Prince, yet his dexteritie in fighting could little preuaile, for the Prince stode not still, but did so bestur himselfe, (and with as great furie as the other) that he did scar his enemie in diuers places, which he felt not without great paine, although he made no semblance of the same, whervpon the battaile being before but kindled, was now on a hot flame, both of them burning in reuenge, and therfore continued a good while furious and fierce, flashing many blowes betwéene them, which sounded a terrible noise in the thicknes of the wood, as if many Smithes had bene hammering

vpon their Anfieldes. But whoseuer had then beheld the appaled countenaunce of the Ladie, he would no doubt haue taken hir for no liuing creature, so much did this desperate and fierce combat astonish hir comelye face. And thinking vppon the valiaunt enemie of hir knight, who like a Beare that hath lost hir younglinges assailed him euermore: on the one side she wished in hir hart the victorie ouer him, and on the other side fearing to see hirself all alone. she desired greatly truce betweene them, and that they might part friendly, & that which did most glad hir minde was, ỳ oftentimes she did imagine (& yet but doubting of ỳ matter) if perhaps this should be the knight whom she did take so great paines to finde out, & that which did confirme hir surmise, was, that she heard him at the first name ỳ Tartarian prince. In such and other like thoughts and doubts, the comfortlesse Lady passed away hir time: In the meane while that the couragious knights were busie how they might dispatch the one ỳ other. But ỳ crabbed More with both his hands gaue the stout Grecian such a blowe vpon his helmet, ỳ he made his horse neck a pillow for his head, wherewithall he began to thumpe & beat all his fæling, & in this senceleſſe sort was Rosicleer carried vp & down the plaine by his horse, ỳ More pursuing him to cut off his head, but as God would haue it, he awaked as it were out of a dreame, & furiously recouering his sworde, hée tourned backe againe, and repaied the Pagan with such a forcible blowe vppon his friendly helmet, that his wonderfull strength made the well tempered stéele to yéeld, and therwithall it made him fall backwards vpon his horse buttocke, casting out blood out of his mouth, his horse carrieng him hære and ther amidst the pleasaunt fields more then halfe dead, but Rosicleer would not follow him, but did attend whether and about what he went, who tarried not long but ỳ he enioyed his former senses & strēgth (being once almost dispossessed of them) & abashed to see the prince to haue surmounted him by lending him such a cruel blowe, so extreamly did all the furies in hell conspire in his breasts, that now hauing reared vp his sworde, which fell

from

from him by force of ỹ vnreasonable blowe, hæ brached his horse with his spurres amaine, and with incredible swiftnesse he encountered with the Grecian Prince, and hit him so mortall a stroke vpon one of his shoulders, that it made his bones ratle within his skinne, but hæ failed not to leaue the print of his sworde in some part of the sinnowed flesh, so that now the battaile seemed to be but begunne, such was the fiercenesse of both these stout champions. And both of them imploied their forces in smiting of each other, and also their wits were not idle how ỹ one by some slight might sooner cut off his enemie, because it greeued thē both that the battaile begunne two long houres since, should indure any longer without aduantage of anie part, wherefore both did their diligence to finish it by some waye or other. And all this while it was verie hard to knowe whether of them had the better ouer the other, bæing equiualent in prowesse and manhode. But the couragious and fierce Grecian bæing angrie in his minde to sée one onelye Knight to kæpe him at the staffes ende so long, replenished with an infernall fury, hæ bæganne a fresh to double & redouble his mightie and peysant blowes vpon the pagan, whereat he had good cause to wonder: and perceiuing that his strength did more and more increase with his courage, he began to blaspheme against his Gods, yet notwithstanding like a fierce Lyon hæ thought to teare in pæces the worthie Grecian, wherewithall hæ let slippe so diuellish a blow vppon his head, that with the losse of his vnderstanding, he did almost fall from his horse: The worthy Roscleer quickelye againe recouered, and sæing himselfe to bæ in such a plight, hæ tourned his horse so nimblye, that hæ scarce lefte his treading in the ground, and now when he saw himselfe iumpe with his enimie, gathering together his forces & standing vpright in his stirroppes, he wælded his sharpe Sword betwæne his strong and mightie armes, and thundered so deadlye a blowe vppon the Moore his head-pæce, who indæde was not prepared for anye defence) the force whereof made a diuision from the

ſcull euen to the very ſhoulders, the wretched pagan falling down dead to ỹ ground, ỹ moſt part of his blood came guſhing out of his bodie. Vnneth had he fallen from his horſe when the trembling and troubled Ladie did alſo fall from hir Palfraie, as one that ſhould giue vp the Ghoſt, whome when hir Gentlewomen did eſpie, lighted all of their Palfraies, and with ſtreams of ſalt teares began to lament hir wofull caſe, & to accurſe hir froward fortune, euery one ſtriuing about hir, to trie if they could by any meanes reſtore hir againe to hir memorie. The Prince ſeing hir in this extremitie, did alſo forſake his horſe and came towards the place, wher this miſerable Ladie laie like a ſtake, and cauſing one of hir Gentlewomen to fetch a little water from the riuer which was hard by, he beſprinckeled hir beautified viſage with it, and therevpon ſhée came to hir ſelfe againe, and opened the dimmed windowes of hir darke bodye, and when ſhe beheld the Prince ſo nigh hir, with a profounde ſigh and pitifull voice ſhée ſaide. O cruell homicide of my faithfull and valiant champion: thou thirſtie blodſucker of the royall blood of Meſapotamia, diſpatch nowe, diſpatch I ſay, to execute thy furie with thy imbrued ſworde vpon my ſorrowfull hart, and ſpeaking theſe words ſhe fell againe into an extaſie as béefore, which Roſicleer marking, and gelling at hir inward paine by hir externe countenance, he turned himſelfe to one of hir Damoyſels, which as hée thought among the reſt of the traine ſéemed the chiefeſt, in knowing moſt hir Ladies ſecrets, and ſaid vnto hir: Gentlewoman, I ſée (God knoweth, not without great ſorrow bée it ſpoken) ỹ griefe ỹ your Lady indureth in viewing my face, therefore I pray you tell hir from mée, that I intreat hir to goe to the Emperours court of Greece, and ther preſent hir perſonage to his maieſtie, and certifie him of al theſe accidents, and ther to ſtay my comming, for I meane ſhortlie to returne thether, and then I promiſe her, that ther I will vſe ſuch means ỹ ſhe ſhall inioye to hir great contentment, that thing, ỹ want wherof doth ſo greatly grieue hir, and becauſe my wordes may carry more credite with hir,

you

you ſhall tell hir, that one of the Emperour Trebatio his ſones, ỳ greateſt friend that the Tartarian Prince hath, did informe you this much. And hereupon not tarieng for any replye, he mounted upon his horſe, coursing through the forreſt. When he was gone, the Gentlewomen helped their ladie by certaine drugges which they brought forth for preuenting ſuch miſhaps, and ſo recontinued hir health againe, and afterward expreſt to hir all that which ỳ knight imparted unto them, which report comforted hir not a little. The griefe which the Ladie and hir Gentlewomen did ſuſtaine, in ſeeing a ſtraunge Knight glaunce by them armed, and to remaine in the woode alone without ſuccour or comfort of any, I would here ſet downe before your eyes: but I am inforced to returne to the famous Roſicleer, & at this preſent, I will not make recitall to you, what knight that was, who parting from Roſicleer did appeare againe unto him at his going out of the forreſt.

¶ Prince Roſicleer trauailing on his way, hauing alredie taken leaue of the Princeſſes Ladies, did chance vpon a certaine aduenture, and of the ſucceſſe hee had therein Cap. 3.

THE valiant Roſicleer being departed frō the ſorrowful princeſſe, went as he thought the nereſt way through the forreſt to finde his brother, with ſet purpoſe to make him acquainted with that which you haue alredie heard, and afterwards to returne back to Conſtantinople. So it happened that fortune guided him into a broad and large way, which was his direct path to Conſtantinople, and turning him to the ſute way wher hee ſaw a great gate in hope to learne ſome newes of ỳ knight of the Sunne. He had not trauailed long, but he deſcryed a farre off a ranke of men all armed, and they drawing more nére unto him, hé perceiued that they were xx. Knightes armed with black armour, and their head-péeces & beueres

of the ſame coulour, and in their company came a Charlot, all couered with black Searge ſo cloſe, that it was impoſſible to ſée what was within it, ỳ light came in through two windowes which were placed at the ſide of the Chariotte. Foure horſes did draw it, all clad in blacke cloth, and there did ride two faire dwarfes, as guyders of the ſame, all apparailed in blacke. Behinde the ſame there came likewiſe ten knights cloathed in like ſort, and by their countenance they were all right ſorrowfull, ſo that the troupe of the knights that came with the Charlot were thirtie in number. With this heauy countenaunce and great ſtraungenes, they paſſed by Roſicleer, without ſpeaking any word vnto him: wherevpon the prince came to thoſe that waited behinde, and demaunded of them in courteous wiſe, what they were, which were incloſed in that ſorrowfull Waggen, but the knights were ſo heauy and ſad, that they made him no anſwere, but paſſed on forward, which bread a more earneſt deſire in Roſicleer to know who was within, ſith that with ſuch milde ſpeach he had demaunded, and could not bée reſolued to any purpoſe. And hérevpon without taking anye further aduiſe in the matter, hée ruſhed among them that enuyroned the Chariot, onely to ſée what was within it, but ere hée might come néere it, hée was letted by two of the
" knights which ſaide vnto him: Staie thée knight, ſtaye
" thée, for if thou longeſt to know who is hére, thou ſhalte
" bée hindered from it by vs, which ſtande hére to no other
" purpoſe. It is my deſire (ſaid Roſicleer) and willingly wold
" I be ſatiſfied of my requeſt without entering into the com-
" bat, and if ye would afford me ſo much courteſie, as to tell
" me the cauſe of ſo great ſorrow, I ſhould bée heartely glad.
" Thou maiſt not vnderſtande it, aunſwered one of the
" knights, at this time, therefore depart thou hence in peace,
" vnleſſe thou wilt make experience of our forces, which dw
" attend vpon it. I know not (replied Roſicleer) how it ſhall
" betide mée, but truely whether you will or no, I am purpo-
" ſed to ſée what is within it. After hé had thus ſpoken, hée laid his hand vpon his ſword, and without tarriaunce for

more

more speaches, he hit one of them so strongly, that hée killed him. His companion séeing this, let driue at the Prince with all his force, but the fierce Grecian suked him a passport sutable to his companions: which thing draue their companions into a wonderfull admiration, and hérevpon forgetting all courtesie, they altogether enuyroned the Prince, and strake at him on euerie side: but the valyaunt Grecian séeing himselfe in such a preasse, it was not long, but that he did vnharnesse some, and maimed other some, and others hée strake downe dead, and cursed was hée vnto whome he lent a full blowe. In such sort the Prince skirmished with those Knights, that they beganne to recoyle, fearing the death, considering that it was better to disclose to him that which with such humanitie hée had demaunded of them. Hérevppon the knightes with blushing countenaunce made toward the Knight, and béeing so wearie as they were, which tourned to their owne harme, they strake freshly at him againe, wherevppon the Prince did cut and mangle them at his owne will. Ye then perceiuing ỹ small resistaunce that they made, hée came vnto the Chariot, and pulling vp the couerture, hée saw that there was within it, a dead bodie all imbalmed, and on the head of it, there was the crowne of a King, which head vnto the breast was diuided in sunder with some blowe, and he didde repute him for such a one by his royall garmentes, which were all imbrued in bloude. There sate in a Chaire couered with blacke Tipres, at the foote of this dead king, a Gentlewoman of a middle age, leaning hir cheéke vpon hir hande, and hir eies shut, she bedewed hir face and breastes with innumerable brinish teares, and néere vnto hir ther sat another Gentlewoman, who séemed to bée but tenne yéeres of age, all wrapped in blacke, which Gentlewoman was so faire, that she appeared vnto his viewe more deuine then humane.

The renowmed Grecian Prince with great admiration and no lesse pittie, béehelde this sorrowfull sight, and at length the distressed Gentlewoman, opened hir beauie eyes,

and ſéeing the Knight, knew he was none of hirs. Ther vp-
» on with an angrie countenaunce ſhe ſaid vnto him, Who
» are you ſir Knight which haue bene ſo bold as to come and
» ſæ what is hære without my commaundement? where are
» my knights and kéepers which haue not defended you the
» paſſage, noz bzideled your exceeding boldneſſe? The courte-
ous Grecian who greatly bewailed the ſight which he ſaw,
» and the great dolour wherein the Gentlewoman was, hée
» aunſwered hir ſoberly. Madame, I am a Knight, whoſe help
» if it might ſtand you in ſtéede, though it were with hazard of
» my life, you ſhould finde it readie at your commaundement:
» and as concerning the gard which haue attended vpon you,
» they haue done what lay in their power to pzeuent me, but
» all could not pzeuaile. The Lady attentiuely heard the ſpæ-
ches of the knight, and hearing the tidings he deliuered hir
of hir Knights, ſhée lift vp the other ſide of the couering of
hir Charlotte, ſhée eſpied ſome of hir Knights murthered,
other ſome hurt, & other ſome all to bée trampled vnder the
hoꝛſe féete. After ſhée had ſæne the great ouerthzow of hir
Knights, with an angry countenaunce ſhe turned hir to the
» Knight and ſaid: The Gods ſend thée a perpetuall plague,
» ſith that in ſuch ſoꝛt thou haſt intreated the beſt Knights in
» all my Pzouince, and ſith that our miſfoꝛtune hath bæne ſo
» great that thou haſt had the power to vanquiſh my kéepers.
» I beſéech the Gods, that thy foꝛces hæreafter may pzoue as
» weake, as my troupe is now pooꝛe and ſlender. Follow on
» thy waye, and ſuffer me to goe mine, with that companye
» which haue ſcaped thy cruell hand, what wouldſt thou far-
» ther learne then that which thou haſt alreadie ſæne? Be-
» ſides this, my griefes cannot affoꝛd me ſo much time as to
» recount them, neither hath thy courteſie wzought in me ſuch
» good will as to recite them. When ſhe had thus ſpoken ſhe
opened one of hir caſements, and made ſigne to the dwarfes
which ridde, that they ſhould whip the hoꝛſes, which when
they had done, they went like the winde, leauing ỹ Pzince
mooꝛe diſcontented then he was at the beginning. And with-
out mooꝛe tarriance, hée continued on his iourney, greatlye

bla-

blaming the courteſie of ſo euill mannered people: and he trauailed a long time without encountering any thing worthie the recitall, vntill he came vnto the ſhore of the Sea, wherein he ſaw a great boat of verye faire workmanſhip, vpon which he had great delight to looke, yet he did not forſake his way, and he had not continued long in riding, but that he heard a womans voice as hee thought, call vnto him: Knight of the Princeſſe Oliuia, ſuccour this captiue Gentlewoman. At the call hereof, the Knight tourned his head, and gazing on all ſides, hee coulde not ſee who called him in ſuch haſt, and ſo following his waye, hee hearde againe a newe voice which ſaid vnto him: Knight of Cupide, thou neuer deniedſt to anye thy helpe, and wherefore dooſt thou not ſuccour mee. The Prince greatly aſtonished, tourned himſelfe to ſee if he could perceiue, who called him, which thing when he could not do, it bred a bitter paſſion in him. Going forward in his iourney more carefull then hee was, he heard the third time a voice cryeng vnto him. O ſon of Trebatio, couragious Roſicleer, what is become of that pittie which was wont to dwel within thy valiant hart, towards the ſuccouring of the oppreſſed Ladies, why doſt thou now begin to faile mee. When he heard himſelf called by his proper name, it did ſtrike him into a greater dumpe then hee was in before, herewith imagining that the voice came forth of the ſhip which he ſaw at the ſhore ſide, hee lighted from his horſe, and nimbly leapte into the Boate, and his horſe as if he had vnderſtanding followed him. They were no ſooner in the Boate, but it began to cut the Seas with ſuch ſwiftneſſe, as the winde which hath long time bene impriſoned in his caue, and could not get forth at any chinke e it blew now in ſuch ſort, as Iuno by long interceſſion intreated Eolus, who vntieng the chaines, commaunded the Windes with all their furie to tranſport the enamored Æneas and his Troyans armie into the deapth of the ſeas. Roſicleer was greatlye amazed to ſee himſelfe thus ſwiftlye conuaied, and ſaw not anye in the Boate which ſo often had cried to him for ſuccours. Here wee will leaue ſpeaking

ing of Roſicleer, and will returne to declare vnto you, the many worthie deedes that his brother did accompliſh, ſuffering him to ride in his boate, as alreadie hath beene recited vnto you.

¶ The great ſorrow that the knight of the Sunne receiued in thinking of his owne diſloyaltie, and that which happened vnto him. Cap. 4.

THE knight of the Sunne with great furie and haſt, wandred through the Forreſts of Greece, as it hath ben alreadie declared vnto you, kindling the aire with fire, with that burning cholar wherin he was wrapped, vnhappie had he bene, which at that time durſt haue vndertaken to haue reſiſted his purpoſe, for while hee was in this mode, there had bene no rocke ſo hard, but hee would haue torne in peeces, nor no hill ſo ſteepe, but he would haue pulled downe. In this ſort he went all the daie not finding anye print of that he ſought for. The darke night did ouertake him in the thickeſt of the Forreſt, wherby he was enforced to a light and eaſe his horſe, who fed vpon ỹ greene graſſe, and he lened himſelf vnder a high Pine tree, the place being ſo ſolitarie, it was a meane to draw him in minde of many things which had alreadie happened vnto him, & ſpecially it renewed the freſh aſſaultes of that loue which paſſed betweene him and the Princeſſe Lyndabrides, muſing with himſelfe what ſhould moue him ſo vnkindly to forget hir, and in comparing the beautie of the Princeſſe Lyndabrides with his beloued wife, he found the Empreſſe did far exceede hir, and hereupon the knights good will beganne to kindle, and was inwardlye gladde of his owne choice, but this affection was ſoone extinguiſhed, ſo firmely ſetteled was that good will he bare vnto the Barbarian Ladie. The impreſſion whereof was ſo deepe, that he altogether forgot the auncient loue that he had borne vnto his beloued Empreſſe, whereupon with ſorrowing ſighes hee ſounded forth his griefe, and with brinish teares he ſaid. Is ther in the world anie

any knight so litle attainted with loue as I am, or can ther be any one so vngratful as I, sith that I bestow no care vpon one so furnished with beautie, & indued with so many excellent vertues. Alasse Lyndabrides, right worthie do I acknowledge my selfe to be chastised with loue, sith that without reason I haue transgressed his boundes. As ther is nothing in me to merit your deuine beautie, so am I altogether vnworthie (being a disloyall knight) any so vndeserued curtesie, but I will promise you to execute vpon my selfe a more sharp reuenge, then lay in you to giue me, sith that I haue forfaited that bond wherin I was boũd vnto you. Oh miserable knight what saist thou in thine owne defence, how cãst thou excuse thy folly? hast thou blotted out of thy mind ỹ souereigne curtesie of thy Lady? or hast thou suspended the swæt memory of hir diuine beauty, being so rare an empres? Oh traiterous hart why hast ỹ yelded to this folly? & why dost thou not now repent this passed fault, sith ỹ loue which first enthralled thy minde, doth now without ceasing tormẽt thy heart? Oh wretch that I am, what condigne punishmẽt may I bestow vpon my selfe. O sacred Emperico, ỹ gauest me frẽ possession of all, wout reseruing anie thing, ỹ didst surrender to me thine Empire, & thou didst yeld to me thy libertie, & I careless of my faith, & neglecting thy courtesie, could not intertaine a good opinion of thee alone in my hart, according to thy desart, but haue ben preuented by ỹ Tartarian lady, who hath made a breach in my affection. Forgiue me I beseech thee: Oh sorrow, oh intollerable griefe, no lesse sharp thẽ death, to sæ my hart deuided in twaine. Is it possible ỹ I can liue & sustaine these nipping passions which assalt me: with this ỹ miserable knight sẽt forth a scalding sigh, & by his coũtenance appeared to be plunged in great sorrow, insomuch ỹ the ecko of his bitter passiõs moued ỹ shiuering leaues to quietnes, & ỹ percing aire to a certain calme stay, only to heere ỹ plaints of this oppressed knight. In this heauy plight, & woful cogitation ỹ afflicted Grecian spẽt ỹ wearie night, vntil the glistering sun wth his radiant beames did shine vpon the grẽne grasse and swæte budding trees, and

moued

moued the chirping birds with their golden laies to warble forth their ſugred tunes. At this preſent houre ỳ knight of the Sunne bridaled his horſe, and without ſetting his fot in the ſtirop he mounted vppon him, leauing the raines on his necke, to the end he might goe where beſt liked him, hee had not long iourned but he was come nere vnto a riuer which ranne through the Forreſt, his horſe being verie drie entered into it, altogether careleſſe of ỳ exceeding anguiſh wherin his Maſter was, whoſe minde was ſo perplexed in conſidering his ſtraunge miſhap, that he forgot wher he was, vntil the blubbering of the Chriſtal water awaked his benummed ſences, and then ſeeing himſelf in this golden ſtreame, and gaſing on euerie ſide he eſpied ỳ armour of the valiant Moore, which was chained for a monument vnto a Pine apple tree. The Prince ſtaied long in viewing them, greatlye admiring at ſuch an aduenture, and approching more nere, he might well diſcerne by the head peece that the armour belonged vnto the Moore whome he had fought with great labour and paine, which ſight did greatly trouble his minde. And turning his horſe to ſee the ſtraungeneſſe of this miſfortune, he ſaw the bloudie alter wher the Moore had committed this ſacrifice, & nere vnto it was annexed a goodly graue cloſe couched by a loftie Pine, wherin was engrauen certaine verſes, which when he peruſed he might perceiue that they were compounded by his brother, and when he had by reading of them, gathered the ſorrowful end that ỳ valiant Moore made, he could not ſo well gouerne his affection, but ỳ his eies diſtilled guſhing ſtreames of water, greatly deploring with himſelfe the froward fortune of ſo valiant a man, wher by imbruing his hands in his owne bloud had thereby eclipſed his former honour. Then greatly exclaiming againſt the wretchedneſſe of this world, and the looſeneſſe of the people, he did note the ſolempne vow his brother made, and therwithall did remember the fruits of his vertue, and therevpon deſirous to ioyne with him in trauaile, he did ingraue with his dagger ſomewhat vnder the other Epitath, theſe verſes that follow.

Whoſe

Whoſe trauaile ſtrange ſhall leade him to this place,
to view this ſhield and ſtrong Tartarians graue:
That man I warne that he doe not deface
the ſame, deuiſde by Roſicleer the braue.
Whoſe brothers blood the quarrell ſhall maintaine,
Againſt ſuch knights, that would this armour gaine.

When he hed written this, he walked vp and downe by the graue, & by chance ſaw ỹ dagger wherewith ỹ More had killed himſelfe, & taking it in his hand, he ſaid: Truely thou haſt great cauſe to lament, ſith that thou haſt bene the inſtrument to murther ỹ beſt knight that euer ware armour, and in memorie hereof thou ſhalt ſtaye here, ſaying this, he lift vp his arme and ſtrake the Dagger into the pine træ vp to the hiltes, and without anye more tariance he toke his horſe and trauailed on through a young groue, the night being verie cloſe, till at length he repaired to one corner of the Riuer, which was all ſhadowed with the græne braunches of Pine apple træs, and not farre fom the Riuer, hee diſcerned an olde ruinous houſe, which was very auncient, and as it ſeemed no man did inhabit it, and as he made thetherwarde, hee heard the voice of one which as he thought ſãg very ſweetly, wherupon he rained his horſe & directed his way thether. Not far diſtãt frõ a træ he ſaw a græn armer engrauen with perfect gold very richly, & ther wer fast tied vnto a bough of ỹ ſame, a ſhield of fine ſteele, the field beeing græne, wherein was portraied a Mermaide, which in ſhape ſeemed to be a Goddeſſe of the ſeas. Likewiſe cloſe vnto ỹ ſhield, ther was chained a rich helmet, which was very ſtrong. It might well be thought by the riches of ỹ armour they appertained to ſome valiant man, & alſo it ſeemed the time was long ſince they had bene hanged there, for that ỹ waſhing of the water had waſted ỹ brightneſſe of the coulour. The knight of the Sun with an earneſt deſire beheld them, and ſawe the bodie of the Træ ingrauen with this worde Floriſdama, And when he could by no meanes vnder-

ſtand

ſtand the conceit hereof hee became very penſiue, & ballancing in his mind the fortune that chanced to him in the Iland of the wilde Fairie: hereupon he imagined this other was not much different from it. The Grecian dwelling in this dumpe, turning his eyes he ſaw that all the trées thereabouts did carie the name of Floriſdama, and in ſome places it was ſhortly written with an F. and a D. It chaunced alſo amõg thoſe trées he ſpied a ſword faſt chained, which by the damaſking and brauerie of it, might be geſſed to belong vnto ſome worthie Knight. Theſe thinges procured the Knight of the Sunne to imagine, that this Knight ended his daies deſperately, through the ſwéet enticing baits of loue, which thing draue the knight of the Sunne into a greater maze then he was in before, and therewithall engendred a deſire in him to ſée the ende of this aduenture. The ſtearne of his ſhip béeing thus guided by a carefull Pilot, he returned backe to the place where he firſt heard the noiſe of the inſtruments, and the farther paſſage he made, the ſhriller he might heare the ſound, whereupon hée trauailed ſo long, that with eaſe he might perceiue the ſorrowfull knight touch his Lute, with a panting heart, and ſometime intermedled his muſick with a ſwéete voice and a pitifull dittie. The knight of the Sunne was greatly enclined to know him that bewailed ſo bitterly his miſhap. And hearing him begin to ſing certaine verſes, he ſtood ſtill. The ſorrowfull Knight of the Forreſt, began in this ſort.

O Direfull death! when ſhall the hower be
ſo long deſirde, for to diſſolue my griefe:
That this my corps bereaued of breath by thee,
in Miſtres praiſe my ſoule may finde reliefe.
Oh Atrapos (in deſarts where I pine,
And liuing, die) doo thou my thred vntwine.

O loathed life! oh moſt vnhappie fate!
wherein I feele ſuch force as none may bide.

Iniurious Dame,(which brouhgtſt mee to this ſtate)
thy cruell dealing plainely is eſpide:
Yet thus I deeme,and ſo my ſelfe perſwade,
My mone,no mirth vnto thy hart hath made.

But ſure I feare my fortun'is not ſo faire
[illegible] I for thee ſhould bitter death ſuſtaine:
Yet if it chaunce,this ſtill ſhall bee my praire,
that ere my ende,I may thy ſight attaine.
Ay me poore wretch,my wiſh would worke my woe,
Thy irefull face would cauſe my griefe to grow.

What force I that? If God would giue conſent,
that thy white handes a while before I dye
Might comfort mee,I ſhould be well content,
whether with friendly or with frowning eye
Thou mee beheldſt: For,being traind to griefe,
Till life be loſt,I looke for no reliefe.

But what auaileth me my vaine deſire?
to childiſh is this fond conceipt of mine,
No hope can help to that which I require,
theſe deſarts are vnfit for one ſo fine.
Yet oft times heere me thincks thy face I ſee,
With mercie mixt,anone with crueltie.

And euen as one which ſpeactacles doth weare
in eight parts cut can haue no perfect ſight,
(In that from one,ſuch ſundry formes appeare)
euen ſo my fancie neuer falls out right.
For in my ſleepe I onely ſhadowes ſee,
When ſubſtance ſweet is fartheſt of from mee.

Sometimes I prooue,and forth I put my hand,
And thinke to feele the thing I hope to finde:

But then(alas)my dreame I vnderſtand,
and torments freſh doo newly vexe my minde.
So that trees as witneſſe of my care,
To heare my plaints to ſilence them prepare.

The time I ſing to eaſe my heauie hart,
[illegible] miſerie:
Ah cruell Dame,that I (without deſart)
for louing thee,in countrie ſtraunge ſhould die.
But what know I,that thou doſt not intend:
Heauens graunt thy ſight to me before mine end.

Yære he ended this ſong,the Knight of the Sunne gathering by his dittie the wretchednesſe of his eſtate, hæ coulde not but accõmpanie his pitifull muſick with many ſtreams of brackiſh teares,renuing in his minde ỹ old ſtormes that lately battered his breaſt. Wher vpon he then alighted from his horſe, (which before he had not done)& with a ſoft pace he marched towards the old ruinous houſe,wher he ſaw a knight proſtrate vpon the ground all clad in cloth of gold, which in truth was torne in many pæces, and perceiuing the knight to be of a goodly ſtature & verie well proportioned,and ſo young that ſcarce might bee ſæne any haire on his face,and therwithal ſo faire,that the knight of the Sun neuer ſaw ame one that might match him, hæ greatlye wondered. This enthralled knight hauing his eies ſhut vp, hæ guſhed forth trickeling teares ſo faſt, that almoſt with blubbering he had diſfigured his face. As the knight of the Sunne viewed all theſe thinges attentiuely,the young forlorne man without opening his eies,turned him vppon the other ſide and ſaid. Oh Prince of Dacia, how much better wer it for thæ to die thẽ to liue in this continuall thraldom. The Grecian prince ſtood ſtill to ſæ if this ſorrowing knight wou'de renue his plaintes,who immediatly after with extreame dolor began to ſay. Oh death what do I fæle,whether are thy forces fled,why haſt thou now forſaken me,ſith at this preſent thy curteſie might fauour mine eſtate. Oh

cruell

cruell Fortune (admit there be any) art thou not satisfied with that iniurie which thou hast alreadie extended vppon me: wilt thou nædes inioyne mæ to suffer more penaunce: make an ende I saye, of thy grædie desire, make mee not sometimes merrie and more often sorrie. When he had finished those spæches, he began to slumber, & immediatly with a sorrowing sigh he began to say. Alasse Fortune, how manie things are ther framed by thy hãds, swæt in all mens tasts, & sowre in my digestion, pleasant to many, and bitter to me. After this he toke againe his instrument, & with an harmonious stroke & pittiful voice he sang these verses.

O Heart more hard then Hircan Tiger fell!
and art more deafe then senceleſſe troubled seas:
O causeleſſe foe, whoſe rigor doth excell!
to thee I yeeld, thy anger to appeaſe:
Take tyrant wrathfull, wreake of me thy will,
That ending now, my griefe remaine not ſtill.

My heauie cheere, and euill that is paſt,
my fainting voice, my caſe ſo comfortleſſe,
Thou moandſt not once, ſo mercileſſe thou waſt,
nor ſtirdſt thy foote, to eaſe me in diſtreſſe:
But time will come, when ſorrow hath mee ſlaine,
That thy repentance will increaſe thy paine.

Ah cruell, how canſt thou the loue forget,
that each to other we in youth profeſt?
Which when I minde, full many a ſigh I fet,
for that was it which firſt bred my vnreſt:
And for the ſweete, which then by thee I felt,
I finde ſharp ſowre, O moſt vniuſtly dealt.

Tell mee wherin I haue offended thee,
or when I ſlackt thy ſeruice anie waie:
Then how canſt thou ſo much vnmindefull bee,
When oft in ſecret thou to mee wouldſt laie:

That in my abſence, Lucifer ſo bright,
Nor gladſome Phœbus once ſhould giue thee light.

I gone, thou vowdſt, the waters ſhould not yeeld
Their wonted ſolace, nor the pleaſaunt Roſe,
Or any flower of the fragrant feeld:
ſuch loue thou ſaidſt, thou didſt on me repoſe.
Which was but ſmall as now the end doth trye,
That thus diſtreſt, thou ſufferſt mee to dye.

Oh Gods of loue, (if ſo there any bee)
and you, of loue that earſt haue felt the paine,
Or thou thy ſelfe, that thus afflicteſt mee!
heare theſe my words, which hidden griefe conſtraine:
Ere that my corpes be quite bereaud of breath,
Let me declare the cauſe of this my death.

Ye mountaine Nimphes which in theſe deſarts raigne,
ceaſe of your chaſe of ſauage beaſts a while,
Prepare to ſee a heart oppreſt with paine,
addreſſe your eares to heare my dolefull ſtile.
No ſtrength, remorce, no worke can worke my weale,
Loue in my hart ſo tirantlyke doth deale.

O Driades, of louers much adorde,
and gratious damoſells, which in the enenings faire
Your cloſets leaue, with heauenly beautie ſtord,
And on your ſhoulders ſpred your golden haire,
Attend my plaints: and thou that mad'ſt mee thrall,
If thou haue power, giue ſpeedie death withall.

Ye ſauage Beares in caues and dennes that lye,
remanie in peace if you my reaſons heare:
And be not moued at my miſerie,
though too extreame my paſſions doo appeare.
Ye Mounts farewell, ye fragrant fields adieu,
And ſiluer ſtreames, high Ioue ſtill proſper you.

Hée finished his song with many a bitter sigh, and hée was so windelesse with sobbing, that he lay as it were in an extasie stretched vpon the ground. The Knight of the Sun entring into this ruinous lodge, finding the Gentleman in this wretched estate, hée beganne to behold the proportion of his face, and with extreame dolour wept, as well in ballaunсing his owne passed miserie with this young knights, and also for ý hée verely reputed him to be his brother Rosicleer, or elss some nére kinsman of his, for that in beautie and strongnesse of bodie, hée resembled him so much, ý there was but small difference betwéene them, sauing onely the beard. While the Grecian Prince was beholding this sorrowfull sight, the inthralled knight with a déepe sigh awaking, & séeing the knight of the Sunne afore him, he wondred what might drawe so comely a knight vnto so solitarie a woode, and therewithall he reared vp his bodie, & sitting vpon ý gréene grasse, with many a dreric teare, he béeheld ý shape of the knight of the sun, & inforcing himselfe to speake, he said: Sir Knight, insomuch as fortune hath directed you hether to accompany me in this desart place, sit by me I pray you, and pardon my folly, in that you haue found me so disordered. The Prince without making anye aunswere, sate downe as the knight intreated him, béeing verie desirous to know the end of that aduenture, and what cause made him demeane so tragicall a life, hée béeing set, he told the knight, that the desire hée had to vnderstande the darke dearses that were in the trées, and likewise to heare his sweete songs, which so harmonionsly hée sang, moued him to forsake his waye, and so repaire to this ruinous lodging, & therwithall made render of his seruice to the knight. While the Prince deliuered these speaches, the comfortlesse knight was musing with himselfe, what he might bée, who by his comelinesse appeared to be valiannt, and by his curtesse to bée honorable, and therewithall was verye desirous to knowe what he was, and béeing somewhat stinged with the bitter passions which he had already sustained he said.

Alaſſe ſir Knight, howe little is the bodie touched with the dolefull cares of the heauie hart, and how ſlenderly now a daies is the guerdon of a faithfull friend, as mine owne experience can beſt relate it, ſo ſhall your curteſie moue me to impart the wel ſpring of all my woe, and then I beſeech you iudge how vnworthily I am tormented, I cannot otherwiſe thinke but you will pitie my miſhaps with ſome ſorrowing ſighs, eſpecially if at any tims you haue taſted ỳ bitter pils of loue, and I promiſe you I would be heartely glad that it might ſtand with your pleaſure to make mée acquainted wᵗ your name, to the end I might knowe to whome I might diſcloſe my wretched eſtate. The Prince made him aunſwere and ſaid. I am ſonne to the Emperour Trebatio of Greece, and am called the Knight of the Sunne, brother vnto the renowmed Roſicleer, whom you greatly reſemble, and be thus perſwaded, that the ſparkes of loue hath kindled as many glowing coales in me as in any other, & hath left as deepe impreſſion of ſorrowe in my poore heart as in anye other Knight. Therfore Knight as I haue ſatiſfied your requeſt, ſo I pray you vnfolde to mée the cauſe which makes you liue ſo penſiue. In ſo doing, I will ſweare by the almightie God, I will hazard my life to purchaſe your deſired quietneſſe. The Prince of Dacia which had alreadie heard of the proweſſe of the Knight of the Sun, herewithall began to ſhake off part of his martirdomes, & knowing the worthineſſe of ỳ Knight, bowing downe his bodie ſomwhat low he ſaid. Although ỳ my miſhap haue ben great in ſuſteining ſuch cõtinual griefs, yet do I eſtéeme it léeſer, ſith ỳ hérby I haue purchaſed acquaintance with ỳ flower of all chiualrie, whoſe valiant hart doth beſt none my oppreſſed eſtate, & whoſe only coũſell wil determine my exceeding torments. Sith thẽ renowmed prince ỳ loue hath already made a paſſion in thine hart, wherby you may ỳ better be an eie witnes of my wretchednes, or to ſay the truth, of my cruell death: Underſtand you then that I am Don Elino Prince of Dacia, ſonne to Cadiſlao, brother to the high and mightie Emperour Trebatio your Father, & to the beautifull Floriſena, Daughter to

the

the king of Cypres and Nygroponte, vnder whose winges I was nourished till I was eight yeres of age, and was trained vp in ỹ regall sort as was incident to my parents estate. Being of this age, spightfull Fortune who is slipperie to al men, and leuells commonly at the contented mind, spun me so course a thrid, as I feare me in the weauing it will proue my vtter destruction. This blinde Fortune I say, connaied to the king my Father his court ỹ beautifull princesse Floriſdama, daughter to the king of Nygroponte, brother to my Father, she was equall to me in age, & so indued with beutie, that she seemed Angelicall. While I was thus yong, the burning flames began to scorch me, which now do singe me, and we were so allied, that without any suspition we walked wher we would, and most commonly we spent our time in a banquetting house which was halfe a mile from the citie which was right faire, & compassed about with christalline streames, and greene meddowes furnished with swete flowers, we lead so pleasant & princely a life, ỹ we bestowed all our care in catching chirping Birdes and young Leuerets. Our mutuall good wills was so greate, as seldome did wee forbeare each others company, mine proceeding of an inward desire to haue hir to my wife, & hirs in regard of the affinitie which was betweene vs. This sugred life continued vntill we were foureteene yeres of age, the which time wee bestowed in hunting, to the great comfort of my hart (though in the end not to the harts ease of my minde) my Floriſdama hauing a crossebowe in hir hand, and a bugle horne about hir necke, little mindefull of that sorrow which galled me so much. While she continued this paine in hunting, it begate a singuler good will in me to see hir swete, hauing hir golden lockes somewhat laide forth, and vpon hir head was knit a garlãd of all swet smelling flowers, she had a gowne of white Satten all laid ouer with gold lace, which made hir seeme so celestiall, that she had bene able to haue quailed the hart of Cupide. Beleeue me & doubt not of it, valiant Prince, that Venus in hir most brauerie did neuer excell hir. Neither could the inchaunted Circes

« with all hir cunning, frame ſo much beautie in hir face, to
« beguile thoſe whom ſhée thought to entice. My deſire ſtill
« increaſed to behold ſo much beautie, and the beautifull La-
« die ſetled all hir care in chaſing the little Fawne, which
« when ſhe had gotten at anie aduantage, ſhée would ſurely
« ſhoot and ſpæd, wherevpon I would ſpeake ſoftly vnto my
« ſelfe and ſay. Alaſſe that arrow were better beſtowed in my
« hart, for being once dead, I ſhould auoide an hourely death,
« which pearceth me euery daie. Therfore be aſſured of this,
« Knight, that I ſuſtained not ſo much ioy by hir company in
« the day time, but I endured as great torment in ỳ night by
« hir abſence. Being thus wafted in woe, Floriſdama hadde a
« narrow ſcantling at the cauſe of my paſſions, and yet was
« ſhe not fully reſolued that it was for hir ſake, and therfore
« with making ſhowes of loue ſhe demaunded what wringed
« me in ſuch ſort, either whether it was any imperfection in my
« ſelfe, or a want of boldneſſe to diſcouer it, hauing as I haue
« alreadie declared attained to the age of fourtæne yæres, I
« was dubbed Knight by my father, God knowes how græ-
« uous it was to me to be ſeperated from the thing wherin I
« ioyed ſo much. The imagination wherof I referre to your
« diſcræte iudgement, moſt worthie Grecian Prince, ſith that
« already you haue taſted the ſame ſauce of cruell loue, and a-
« las how græuous were thoſe thoughts vnto mæ which
« brought vnto my minde the entercourſe of ſpæch, the kinde
« familiaritie, the pleaſant walks, & the comely graces of my
« diuine Floriſdama, your paſſed miſerie maye eaſily haue an
« ame at ỳ ſame, & my preſent eſtate may beſt diſcouer it, what
« ſhal I ſay more, right worthy knight, but my paſſions were
« ſo bitter, and my help ſo ſlender, that I loſt my coulour, for-
« bare my meate, and grew to bæ ſo weake, that an inkling
« therof came vnto my ladies eares, who perceiuing in what
« poore and low eſtate I remained, entreated me moſt ear-
« neſtly to diſcloſe vnto hir the cauſe which pinched mæ ſo
« greatly, promiſing me that if my ſorrows might bæ relæ-
« ued through the fauour of anie Gentlewoman, ſhée woulde
« ſtraine hir ſelfe to releaſe them if it were poſſible, and

would

would hazarde hir selfe to procure hir fauour which had so much enthralled me, wherat with watry eyes I thus answered hir.

Alasse Florisdama, loue hath laide such a corsiue to my hart, such a flame vnto my lightes, and such a sting vnto my breast, as it hath reduced mee to this state wherein you see mee. Oh soueraigne Ladie, how much better had it beene for me, that rather in my greene yeares and in the middest of my hunting, Atropos had shredde in sunder the twist of my life, then nowe to continue in sorrow without anye hope of release or desart of relefe. The Angelicall Lady seeing me weep so beautily, could not but distill some few teares from hir christalline eies, albeit she did not throughly feele ỹ bottome of my inwarde griefe, and thereuppon shée saide thus.

Ah my louing brother let me obtaine that fauour as to manifest vnto me the cause why you saile in sorrow and as it seemes remedilesse, graunting my request, I promise you to procure with all diligence that there may be some salue ỹ may cure that festering wound which seemes to cancur your hart & impaire your ioyes, for if you giue me credit I am perswaded there is no ladie so vngratefull as to denie you hir loue, being so valiant a Knight as you seeme to be: and againe, knowing the worthinesse of your progenie, the disposition of your minde, & those incomperable vertues which shine in you. Alasse why shoulde not the courage of your minde suffice to kindle the affections of all ỹ Ladies in the world. And for that it hath béene your course Fortune to yeeld and surrender the interest of your good will to ỹ subiection of one Ladie, relinquishing all other ioyes and pastimes, I meane not as now to shrink from you, but with al my endeauour to releeue & succour thine estate, vntill such time as my care and practise maye haue light of hir, that hath brought so worthy a Knight into such a Labyrinth, and hath cleane béereaued him of his libertie, and dispossest him of his former ioyes: spare not therefore to impart vnto me what it is that wringes you: thereby then

" ſhall you perceiue the willingneſſe I haue to doe you good.
" And the great care that I will execute, to ſtay ẏ rancknour
" of your diſeaſe. The pithie perſwaſions of this angelicall
" Ladie, were ſo ſweet and comfortable, that they cauſed ſuch
" baſhfullneſſe in my hart, that it moued me to chaunge cou-
" lour, and through modeſt ſhame I could not, no nor I durſt
" not open my lippes for to vntwiſt vnto hir the bottome of
" my griefe, but craued pardon, promiſing hir, that at our
" next meeting, I would bewray who ſhee was, that galled
" me ſo greatly, ſhe being ſatiſfied herewith, and my wordes
" carrieng ſome credite with hir, ſhe departed from me: but
" the terriblenight ẏ I ſuffered, what with viſions, dreadful-
" neſſe of dreames, miſtruſt of good fortune, I referre the taſk
" of thoſe pils to your ſauoury and mature iudgement noble
" Prince. For ſometimes I thought good to diſcloſe and diſco-
" uer the whole ſtate of my paine. And immediatly I would
" charme thoſe thoughts, preferring a cruel death before a per-
" petuall torment, but yet in the ende I concluded with my
" ſelfe, and thought it good to vnfold the plaites of my ſorrow
" to ſo good a Phiſition, whoſe ſkill I knew could helpe mee,
" if diſdaine did not let it. I thought it good to entertaine hir
" courteſie as one that could enfraunchiſe my bondage, but
" wanting abilitie to perfourme my deſires by meanes of
" inwarde paines, which hourely griped mee. I thought it
" not impertinent to vſe a pollicie by (Metaphora.) And ha-
" uing decréede with my ſelfe how to handle this practiſe, I
" roſe verie earlye in the morning, and ſhoued off all
" feare, I apparailled my ſelfe more braue then I was accu-
" ſtomed, and went out of my Chamber to preſent my ſelfe
" to hir, who had more authoritie ouer mee then my ſelfe.
" And loe, I found my miſtreſſe attending for mee, deſirous
" to beare the expoſition of that riddle which ſo darklye I
" had propounded vnto hir. The time was exceeding fauou-
" rable and the place verie conuenient, ſo that I had verie
" good opportunitie and leaſure to diſcloſe the ſecrets of my
" heart. And ſurely ſhee hadde no ſooner diſcouered a glim-
" mering of mee, out ſhe came to encounter mee immediatly,

(whoſe

(whose Angelicall and braue beautie surpassed the twinkling Starres,) and hir greate desire remaining to know the cause of my sorrowe, with a gratious and smiling countenaunce shée approched tó mée and saide on this manner.

Louing cousin, the place is now so conuenient, as that you nede not to make it strange to me wherin you are so grieued, I beseech you blush not to rehearse your pangs, which I know do sting you, and in so doing I promise you I will aduenture my selfe in any daunger, how greate so euer it bée, to remoue those pinching passions which so greatly afflict you. Then I séeing the houre so fit to make my market, I toke out of my bosome a faire bright Christall glasse, and with a panting hart, I said.

Faire Ladie, and the onely nourisher of my life, receiue this Glasse, & therein shall you sée the Image of hir who is the procurer of my martirdome, and increaser of my woes: marke well hir countenaunce, and then tell mée I praie you whether it lies in your power to vse anie authoritie ouer hir, I am perswaded she is so nére a friend of yours, as you onely may dispose, which being true, I earnestly require you, to fulfill that which you haue promised me, euen for affinities sake, and for promise made, I am bolde to craue you to kéepe the couenaunts which you haue made with mée.

After I had thus spoken, with greate hast and quicknesse shée toke the glasse out of my hand. And drawing off the couer shée loked therein, whereuppon shée conceiued straight that she was the bréder of my woes, which sodaine and straunge thought altering hir coulour, shée remained greatly grieued, staring on mée with a stearne and wrathfull countenaunce, béeréue mée the memorie thereof as yet redoubles my sorrowe, for considering then with my selfe how bitterly shée harped vppon this string, and what a passionate minde did féede hir melancholike humour, I woulde more willingly haue spared my life, then to haue hir wast hir selfe in sorrowe, through the greene

" imagination of that salue, which not bæing applyed, I " hadde no comfort lefte mæ but death: and yet with this " straunge demeanour shæ was not contented, but start vp, " and rowling the beames of hir christalline eyes towardes " mæ, as though they were sparkes of fire kindled with ma- " lice, she said.

" Cousin, hardly couldе I euer haue bæne perswaded to " haue found you so presumptious, as to haue giuen the on- " set to any thing which might preiudice mine honour, or of- " fend my minde, partly for that you are bound to please all " Ladies, but principally for that you should not harme your " friendes, among whom albeit I haue bæne least able, yet " haue I not bene most vnwilling to stande you in stæd: sith " therefore these considerations haue not prevailed to quench " the firebrand of your foolish loue, I enioyne you vppon the " penalty of my displeasure, not to make me staine my credit, " by imbruing mine owne handes in mine owne bloud: for " in so doing, your villanie shall bæ published to the world, " and the losse of my life shall make your traiterous hart ac- " cessary to my murther.

" After she had ministred this corosiue vnto mæ, she re- " tourned into hir closet, leauing me so benummed of my sen- " ses, and so surfetted with this banket, that not being able " to disgest it, I sonke presently to the grounde, lying as it " were in a traunce, where I was founde by the maydens " of honour, which attended vppon the person of the Quæne " my mother, who sæing mæ in this pitifull plight, bethought " them immediately of those drugges, which might awake " my dulled senses: and as it is sæne commonly, that wo- " men are tumerous in such tragadies, they yelled and shri- " ked in such sort, that the Quæne my mother ouer-hearde " them, who wondring at the cause of this clamour, and lesse " thinking of my distressed estate, repaired vnto the place, " whereas I lay thus martired, and sæing mæ lulde and " rockte vp and downe in the Ladyes lappes, so bathed in " teares, and so hopelesse of life, shæ wringed hir handes, and

what

what with their chasing of me, and pittiful noise they made, I felte my selfe somwhat reuiued againe, and when I opened mine eies and sawe my selfe inclosed with so manye Ladies and Damosells, and thee absent whose vnkindnesse had dragged me to this miserie and torment, I sodainlye fell againe into a traunce, and after long trauayle, and no lesse sorrowe, they summoned together my vitall spirites.

When I was the second time brought from death to life, I founde they hadde stripte mee, and layde mee in my naked bedde, the same companie continued with mee, which came first to visite me. Likewise there came to comfort mee certaine Knightes and Gentlemen, who demaunded of me where I felt my greatest griefe, & what was the cause of it. I then considering with my selfe howe despaire did rule the sterne of my boate, and how frozen I founde my Mistresse hir fauour (though vndeseruedly I was disprised) I didde request them to be quiet, and to depart from me for that time, giuing them to vnderstande, that I was disposed to sleepe, which courtesie they presentlye graunted mee.

Nowe Cousin, and worthie Prince of Greece, you may gesse what discontented thoughts, what bitter imaginations, what sodaine alterations of minde, and what sundrie sorrowes I marked in, beeing hemmed in betweene dispaire and death. I know not I assure you what humane or earthly body were able to sustaine so many tortures, or so often rakings as my oppressed minde did, hauing not any helping carde in my hande, nor any hope that my Fortune would proue better. In this perplexitie at midnight I arose vp and apparelled my selfe, putting on my armour, the which I thinke you haue seene, Amongest these thicke bushes. I caused a Lackie to make readie my horse with as much secrecie as might bee, & taking my horse I departed out of ỳ pallace without tarrieng or resting in any place a moment, but with continuall sighs & sorrows, in the end of eight daies I attained vnto this place where you finde me.

And

" And perceiuing it to bée ſo proper & conuenient to ſhed my
" complaints in, I vnbrideled my horſe in this wilde fieldes,
" and determined with my ſelfe héere to end my daies, where
" I haue remained this two yéeres, demeaning this ſorrow-
" full life, wherin you ſée mée now, nouriſhing my ſelfe, with
" ſuch fruits, as this wilderneſſe doth yéelde. And ſometimes
" the ſhepheards that come hether to ſhrowd themſelues from
" the ſunnes parching heate, doo fauourably beſtow ſome pit-
" tance on me, and kéepe me companie according to their lea-
" ſure. Thus haue I vnfolded vnto you (moſt excellent prince)
" the beginning, not the ending of all my ſorowes: ſée I beſéech
" you, if you can call to minde any remedie that may ſtay the
" rankling of my diſeaſe, which hath continued ſo long, and
" walked me to the verie hart.

Unneth he had rehearſed theſe words, but his ſenſes began to faile, he was ſo ouercome with ſorrow in rehearſing the tale.

¶ How the Grecian Knight perſwaded his vnckle the Prince of Dacia to accompanie him, and leaue that ſorrowfull and deſolate life: and of that which after happened to him.

Chapter. 5.



¶ Ioye that the Princely Knight of the Sunne receiued in finding his Couſin in the pinch where ſome comforte would doo him good, can hardly bée héere expreſſed, eſpecially for that hée knew him to bée the ſonne of the King of Dacia his Vnckle (of whome till nowe no mention is made in the booke béefore) becauſe of the long ſickneſſe that the King ſuſtained, and therefore was his name concealed, and his valour clowded by meanes of his miſfortune, albeit in truth the heroycall déedes of his ſonne did almoſt equall his anceſtours in euery degrée, as ſhal be ſaid héereafter. And as I ſaid before,

the

The Prince of Dacia remained in a traunce, imbraced betwéene the armes of the knight of the Sunne, by reason of the wordes that he spake, yet in the ende hée wrought such meanes that hée reuiued againe, promising him that if any thing did lie within ỳ compasse of his power which might banniſh his sorrowes, hée shoulde finde him readie to performe it, & he would rather die then sée him linger his life without any sparke of comfort. This great kindnesse was friendly receiued by the Dacian Prince, and after many cogitations hée thought it most conuenient to returne to his Countrie, and also it séemed him best for his most saftie to cut the seas, for being vnprouided of a horse, he might fall into some daunger, being strongly encountered. Wherevppon without more tarriaunce the Prince armed himselfe with his guilt armour, and girded his sword close vnto him, and mounted behinde the Prince, and so going where Fortune woulde guide them, and where the horse made choice of the way, in the end after a litle space they came to the shoare of the sea, wher they found a straight and narrowe path, hard by the same, which séemed to them the direct passage, to finde some hauen, where they might trauailing imbarke themselues, & in this manner as I haue told you, they saw comming towards them in the sea a faire barke well rigged & trimmed, wherin they saw no pilot to gouern it, but it made directly toward the place, which when the two Princes saw it came so nære the land, they alighted, and drawing more nére, ther lanched forth a gentlewoman all alone, in a mild kinde of spæch she spake and saide vnto them. Noble Princes, the wise Lyrgandeo which at this present is resident in Constantinople, commendeth himselfe vnto you both, and by me hath sent you this faire barke, which with his art shall bring you where he hath extreame nède of your valour, & farther he praieth you not to stand in suspition of ỳ which I say vnto you, for ỳ truth is, he hath great occasion to put in proofe your souereigne knighthood. The knight of the Sun his heart throbbed with ioy to heare the newes which the Gentlewoman tolde him, and especially for that it should

be

be his good Fortune to doo him pleasure, which loued him so tenderly, and had done so much for him in his childhood, and herewithall the Dacian Prince leapt into the bark, & after him his noble cousin, leading Cornerino by the bridle, and tourning vnto the Gentlewoman, he saide vnto hir on this wise.

I am assured that mine olde and approued friends the wise Lyrgandeo doth fauour me so greatly, that he will not see mee staide for lacke of a ship, either to pleasure my
" selfe or to doe him a good turne. The Gentlewoman hauing
" done great reuerence, tourned hir speech to Don Eleno and
" said to him.

" Valiaunt and amorous Knight, Lyrgandeo kis-
" seth your royall hands, & willed mee to tell you that your
" captiued hart somewhat lately amended, shall in the end bee
" throughly helped, to your no lesse comfort then great ioy, &
" because your present estate is sorrowfull & fraughted with griefe, he sendeth you this armour which is answerable to your mourning minde, wrought with a Methaphore, which declareth your passions alreadie passed, and saying this, shee toke the trunke wherein ỳ armour was laide, & albeit the Prince made hast to giue the Gentlewoman thankes, shee was so nimble in vanishing away, that his thankes came too short, whereat he was more abashed then before. The Knight of the Sun tying his horse in one part of the pauilion, saw standing by him another as beautifull, the which he knew presently the Gentlewoman had brought for his cousin, & making toward him to see what armour the wise man had sent him, being laide abroad, sawe them wrought all with one worke, LL, and the sheild was of strong and fine steele, the field blacke, & therin was set a groue, so liuely as there appeared to bee nothing but trees, and likewise ther was wrought in it many fine inuentions, which did testifie to be the artificiall worke of the wise Lyrgandeo. And in the middest amongst those trees there was a faire Lady shadowed, apparelled in a straunge attire, in hir counte-

naunce

naunce shée was verie sadde, hir haire flittering all about hir eares.

The sight of these strange deuises made the Dacian Prince verie pensiue, and caused him to meruaile much at the great art that was vsed in the framing hereof, it was so daintely handeled. But in the meane time that these two Princes were thus musing and beholding these straunge things, the ship slyst the Seas, with a braue gale of winde, and carried them so swiftly that when they called to minde the straungenesse hereof they were greatly astonished. In this wise they sayled sixe daies, not knowing whether they went, nor whether the shippe would carrie them: neyther could they see any lande, but they were assured of this, that they were directed by the will of the wise Lyrgandeo. And sailed not towards Dacia, whereat the Prince Eleno was greatly discomforted, but this griefe was somewhat staied by the gentle persuasions which the knight of the Sunne vsed.

After the long and wearisome trauaile which these two noble Princes sustained, one morning by the pape of the day, they did discouer not farre from the place where they were, the lande, towardes which coast the shippe sayled amaine, the Knightes verie ioyfull hereof beganne to arme themselues, with set purpose to land there. Not long after the shippe came to the shoare with such a bottome rush, sticking fast in the sandes, that they thought shee had bene slit in sunder. Which sodaine chaunce made them with all speede to leape to the lande, assuring themselues that the wise Lyrgandeo had ordeined the staie to bee made there, wherefore without tarrying anie longer, they take their horses and mounted vppon them, and presently after the Prince Eleno made proofe of the goodnesse of his horse, which was sent him by the wise man, and brooching his sides with the spurres, hee founde him verye readye, strong, and light. The noble and worthie Knight of the Sunne his Cousin stoode by and did beholde him,

won-

wondring how comely he backt him and managed him, the horſe in his iudgement ſeemed to be of great price, and very ſwift in courſing, imagining in this ſort he alwaies thought that this young Prince was the very portrature of his louing brother Roſicleer.

These valiant Knights not meaning to ſlepe out the day, they vndertoke their iourney, & in trauailing they came to a narrowe and ſtraight lane which lead them by the foot of a huge and ſteepe mountaine, they had not long rid, but they entered into a broad and rough path, alwaies hoping that the country would proue verie pleaſaunt and well ſhadowed to ride in: but after they had tolde all their cards, it fell out contrary, for it was a champaine ſoile, deſtitute of inhabitauntes, and altogether vnprouided of victualles, which diſcommodities galled theſe worthie Princes verie greatly, and that which greeued them moſt, was, that they knew not whether they went, neither could they meete anie one that might guide them in what place and Countrye they were. Trauailing onwards they found that this crooked way was deuided into two broad lanes. And then being in a doubt which way they might take, ſtood ſtill, & in the end they did determine betweene them to make a diuiſion, the one to take the right hand, & the other the left. And thus theſe two valiant knights, parted the way betweene them both, being right ſorrowfull that their late acquaintance, was ſo vntimely ſeperated by a crooked lane. The one hauing loſt the ſight of the other, they rode very ſadly, & the knight of the Sunne trauailed all that daye, and could not happen vpon any path that might guide him to ſome towne or Village. The night wrapping hir ſelfe in hir browne Mantell, made the Grecian alight from his Cornerino, nigh vnto a faire Forreſt and greene meddow, adorned with all ſweet and ſmelling flowres, and pulling of his bridle he ſuffered him to feed in the greene medow. This valiant Knight being ſomewhat weary of the trauaile he had ỳ day before, laide himſelfe downe vppon the greene and pleaſant graſſe, to eaſe his wearie limmes & to paſſe away the night, wher

her

he slept vntill such time as ỹ graye morning with ỹ notes of the swæt singing birds awaked him. This valiant prince being start vp, returned vnto his new begun iourney, & trauailed so long, that at the last hæ came to a verie fayre and cleare riuer, and going along by the brinke of the same hæ beheld, how by reason of the calme winde that did blowe, there did arise many small bubbles in the water, the sight wherof did greatly delight him, vntil such time as he discried in the same certaine little streames & droppes of bloud, at ỹ view wherof he was striken into a meruailous admiration, & the farther he went, the streames did more plainly shew forth the skarlet coulour therof, in such sort, ỹ the clære & christalline water had lost his naturall coulour, & was changed into a crimson, which strange and vnacquainted case procured the noble Knight of the Sunne to be half amazed, and meruailed greatly wherof should proceede such aboundance of this bloudy water. And hauing an earnest desire to know the head spring of the riuer, and the occasion thereof, he caused his horse to hast his pase somewhat more fast, alwaies hauing an eie to ỹ way from whence ỹ bloudie streames descended, but in the end he lost the sight therof, by reason of a little hill which was bætwæne him & the riuer, and there he was constrained to take another path, which did lead him vnto the toppe of the saide hill, which in truth was not farre distaunt from the broke or Riuer. And when he came to the toppe of this hill, hæ beheld there a piller of Marble stone artificiallye wrought and firmelie fixed in the ground. Vpon the highest part of the piller, ther was fastened a chaine, whereat hanged a verie faire table of Tipres wode, and therin was written certaine wordes, which this noble Knight began to read, the contents were as followeth.

TO the Knight or Damosell, whose frowarde and peruerse fortune shall leade this way, I desire thee not to proceede any farther, but to retourne againe: for true it is, that heere thou canst finde no other fauour but death, with oblation of

thy bloud, in memorie of that ſacrifice, which once Queene Arcalanda made, who ſlewe hir ſelfe with hir owne proper hands, and ſharpe two edged ſword, vſing the greateſt cruelties that euer was heard of, both to hir ſelfe, and to me Bramidoro King of Sardenna: for ſhee at once wrought hir owne haſtie and vntimely death. And I liue ſtill yet for hir vnhappie end, through exceeding ſorrow, euer dieng.

Little account did the valiant Knight of the ſunne make of theſe threatning words, which were ther written, but waied them as winde, & as one deſirous to ſée the end of this ſo ſtraunge an aduenture, not regarding the perill therof, he toke his iourney forwards, determining to come againe to the waters ſide. So long hée trauailed ỹ at laſt he came to a litle Temple, that was verie curiouſly wrought, erected to the vſe of ỹ greateſt crueltie that euer was heard off. Néere vnto that Temple, he ſaw foure dead bodies, whoſe heads were cut of, and as it appeared by their apparel, two of them were knights, and the other two Damoſells, then caſting his eies a ſide towards a faire & græne field which was harde by, hée beheld a great number of heads, which were the heads of thoſe that had ben ſlaine, amongſt which were the foure heads of the new ſlaine bodies, that he béefore found dead, for the freſh blood did as yet runne out vpon the ground. This lamentable ſpectacle, this noble Greeke bæheld, with ſuch ſurpaſſing ſorrow, as almoſt no hart can comprehend: but being rauiſhed as it were with deſire, to be reſolued of the effect of this ſo monſtrous inhumanity, he proceéded farther, till at length he approched the Temple, wher hée diſcouered a poſterne dore to be open, and incontinent alighting from his horſe with a heroycall courage, being incenſed with anger, he ruſhed in, hoping ther to haue found the homicide, which was the chiefe author of this tragicall crueltie. Being entred, the firſt thing that appeared to his view, was a verie faire Alter curiouſly wrought, and vpon it the dead figure of a verie faire ladie, through whoſe bodie was thruſt, a terrible two edged ſworde, likewiſe at

the

the foote of the same Altar, was another figure of a huge & mightie Giant, being ten cubites in height, all meruailous curiously wrought in Alabaster with strange and subtil deuises, who kneeled with both his knees on the earth. This noble knight was very much amazed, at ỳ sight of so strãge a matter, and yet not satisfied, he went into a little Courte ther adioyning, & found that it was all hanged with blacke cloathes, which represented great sadnesse and sorrow, and in those clothes was figured diuers dead men and women. Hard at the foote of the aforesaid Alter was made fast in ỳ earth, euen to the brimme thereof, a sesterne of leade, into which the blood of those that were slaine, and their heades cut off in sacrifice, was poured, and out of the same sesterns it was conuaied vnder the earth by a gutter very secretly, the which went vnto the Riuer, whereof we spake before: & this was the same blood, which the valiaunt Prince did see, in the channell of the riuer, euen the blood of the four headlesse bodies that he found newly slaine. On the other side of the Alter hee saw an olde man with a faire white beard, sitting in a chaire, who leaned his aged head vpon his lefte hand, and his elbowe vpon the chaire side, whose eies were shut, and his countenaunce so sad, that it appeared ther was in him no comfort, but onely great sorow and mournings. This valiant Greeke who greatly desired to vnderstande the ende of this sorrowfull antecedent, approched vnto the sleeping old man, & pulling him by his apparell for to awake him, this carefull old man presently lift vp his eies, & without any delay or farther demaund he said. O gentle & noble knight, what crooked fortune hath brought thee into this peruerse & accursed place, wherein is exercised so much sorrowfull impietie, & whereas thou maist expect no other thing, but death, by the hands of the most cruell Giant that euer thou hast heard of take therfore my counsell, and returne ỳ way thou camest, and that spedely before thou be espied, for otherwise it will be hard for thee to escape from death. Then the worthie knight of the Sun answered and saide. I giue thee great thankes for thy counsell (good Father) ne-

nertheleſſe I requeſt thée to declare vnto me the cauſe, for ỹ as yet being ignorãt of farther peril, ỹ ſæmeſt to perſwade me to ſo great a feare. To whom the old man replied, for ỹ thou ſæmeſt vnto mée to be of an incomperable perfection & excéeding force. I will not let to declare vnto thée with as great breuitie as I may this tragicall matter, wherby thou maiſt well perceiue ỹ ſinguler profit that thou ſhalt receiue in following this my counſell which I haue giuen thée, and ſo with a ſadde and heauie countenaunce, mired with many ſalte and bitter teares diſtilling downe from his aged eyes, he began in this wiſe and ſaid.

" This country wherein thou now art, is that auncient " and famous kingdome of Tinacria, which not long ſince, " was gouerned by one of the moſt puiſſaunt Kings that euer " raigned therein, or in any Prouince héereabout: but death, " by his accuſtomed fury, depriued him of his life, and all his " loyall ſubiects, of a vertuous and louing Lord, leauing the " guiding of the Kingdome, in the power of two verie fayre " and Angelicall damoſels, his daughters, who repreſented ỹ " former vertues of their noble & late deceaſed father. The el- " deſt of thẽ was named Arcalanda, & the youngeſt Garaſilea. " Not long after the death of the king their father, this faire " Arcalanda was requeſted of loue by the king of Sardenna, " whoſe name is Bramidoro, a giant of huge and mightie big- " neſſe, (as by the ſtature which thou doeſt héere ſée) thou maiſt " eaſily ſuppoſe: but this vertuous quæne not onely denied hir " conſent in marriage, but alſo to heare the meſſage of ỹ em- " baſſadours, and would in no wiſe ſée them, ſo that they re- " turned without any anſwere. Thẽ this giant ſéeing ỹ great " diſdaine and ſmall account that the Quæne made of him " and how little ſhe eſtæmed of his loue, bæing more infla- " med with furie then any other reaſon, and truſting in his " incomperable ſtrength, with fiue hundred Knights he tranſ- " ported to Tinacria, and landing in the Port of Saragoſa, he " there beganne to make knowen his vnmercifull crueltye, " hoping that he ſhould obtaine that by force, which by fayre " meanes he could not winde. The Knights of Tinacria, like

true

true and faithfull subiectes obeied the commaundement of
their noble Quéene, and made diuerse and sundrie valiaunt
skirmishes with the knights of the Gyant: but by reason
of his great force & surpassing strength, they were alwaies
constrained to retire to the citie, not without much losse: for
that this giant had in his company to aide him a brothers
sonne of his, who in valiance & force of armes equalled well
néere his vnkle. And in such sort they maintained the wars, ý
in small time they put the citie in great perill to be lost, &
likewise the whole kingdome. The knights & subiects of this
noble quéene Arcalanda, not able long to resist ý giants forces, & fæling thẽselues meruailously oppressed & in great distresse, began to perswade wt their quéene ý she should accept his demaund, & graunt to marrie the aforesaid giant.
Then this vnfortunate Ladie vnderstanding the fæbleneſſe
of hir subiects forces, and the effect of that which they had
declared vnto hir, and fæling in hir selfe such impossibilitie
to accomplish the demaund of the gyant, that ý accepting of
it would be more græuous vnto hir then to receiue ý death,
she remained for a time in so dæpe a studie, (being confounded as it were by hir owne conceits,) that she could neither
giue answere vnto them, nor yet to declare any thing of hir
minde: But in the end lifting vp hir angelicall face, with a
chærefull and merrie countenaunce, shæ saide after this
sort.

My renowmed and well approued knights, it is a verie
great thing to perswade, nay rather to force my owne
will to the fulfilling of your requestes. The pure and chast
Goddesse Diana doth wel know ý great wrong that I shall
commit against hir, in not performing ý vow which I haue
promised vnto hir long since: neuertheleſſe the consideration
of your lotall fidelities hath taken such dæpe rot & impression
in my hart, that I am more carefull of your safeties, thẽ of
the vowe which I haue made vnto the chast Goddesse Diana, wherefore I am determined with all spæde to accepte
his offer. Therefore out of hande let messengers bæ dispatched vnto the king of Sardenna, to aske and demaunde

« of him truce for the nert day following, to the entent that « I may make ſome publike ſacrifice, as well to appeaſe the « wrath which the chaſt goddeſſe Diana may conceue againſt « me, as to ſacrifice my owne hart, for not fulfilling my vow: « ſo incontinently without any more delay the Knightes diſ- « patched a meſſenger vnto ẏ king, giuing him to vnderſtand « of all that hadde paſſed, and the determination of theyr « Nuëne. The erceding great comfort that this king did re- « ceue thereat, ẏ time will not permit to declare vnto thee, « but with right good acceptation of the truce he graunted to « all that was demanded, and moreouer proffered himſelfe to « be preſent at the ſame ſacrifice. The nert morning whē that « Phœbus with his golden beames did ſcarcely appeare, they « began to prepare all thinges in readineſſe for the ſacrifice) « (which ſince hath bëene the occaſion of ſo many inhumane « ſacrifices,) and in the midde waye betwirt the Citie and « the Campe of the Sardenians, they erected a ſcaffolde all co- « uered with cloth of gold very rich, and vpon the ſcaffolde « about the middle thereof was placed a faire table couered « alſo with a carpet of cloth of golde, and vpon it a chafindiſh « of coales burning. This being done, there was ſtraight « wayes heard a ſwëete and harmonious ſound of Clarions « and Trumpettes, and ſundrie other kinde of inſtrumentes, « theſe went before the people, and nert vnto them were « brought fifteëne rammes, all adorned with fine white woll: « and after them followed fiue Bulls, with huge and mighty « hornes being all blacke of haire: and after them ther fol- « lowed fiue kine, and with them a certaine number of the « Prieſts of Diana, ſinging their accuſtomed ſongs in the ho- « nour of Diana: then followed a great companie of knights « all armed with ſtrong armour & bright, without any other « deuice: and after them came the Marques of Modique, « bringing in his handes the image of Diana, & on either ſide « of him two Knights of great eſtimation, each of them bea- « ring in their handes great veſſells of golde full of moſt « precious and ſwëete Wine. Then after all this came the « beautifull Nuëne Arcalanda, apparelled with a roabe of

ſtate,

ſtate, being of great and ineſtimable value. And with this ceremonie they went vppon the Scaffold, where the Marques placed the image of Diana, behinde the Chafindiſh of coale that was there burning: and the Prieſtes continued ſtill ſinging their ſongs, which cuſtomablie thy vſed in the like ſacrifices, drinking of the precious Wine that the twe knights did bring in the golden veſſells, and all at once they brought lowe the ſtout and vntamed neckes of the Bulles, and the reſt of the other beaſtes by cutting their throates, whoſe bloud they ſprinkled all about the Sacrifice, and opening their bowels they toke out the inwarde partes, with the call on the liuer, and put them vppon the Chafindiſh of burning coales, & with this ſlaughter they did make ſacrifice vnto the chaſt Goddeſſe Diana, and the Prieſtes fell downe flat vpon their breaſts on the earth, and ſo ended their ſacrifice. At the ſight of this ceremonie was preſent the king of Sardenna, & his couſin, his brothers ſonne, both armed with all their armour, & verie attentiue to this that I haue tolde you. The Sacrifice ended, this vnfortunate Quæne commaunded ſilence to be made, and all the companie bæing ſtilled, ſhæ raiſed vp hir ſelfe vppon hir fæte, and with a heauie voice diſtilling many ſalte teares, ſhæ ſaid.

O moſt excellent and chaſt Diana, in whoſe bleſſed boſome the chaſt and vndefiled virginnes doe recreate themſelues. Vnto thy diuine excellencie I doe commende theſe my laſt Sacrifices, crauing recorde of all the Gods, that I haue procured & done my beſt, & yet ſtill do, for euer to bæ thine: for whoſe ſake O mightie Iupiter, I know not how thou doeſt conſent that I by force ſhoulde loſe that, which thou by thy omnipotencie and almightie Deitie, oughteſt to kæpe and defende: and not to ſuffer that I thus ſhould bæ compelled to deliuer my body into the power of him which with all tyrannie woulde ſæke to haue the vſe of the ſame. And neuertheleſſe if to this I do not conſent and agrée, bæholde the vtter ruine and ſorowfull deſtruction both of my ſelfe and alſo of all my true and faithfull

" ſubiects approcheth, the which proceedeth onely by meanes
" of my beautie. Oh ſacred Diana, is it poſſible that thou doſt
" conſent that ſo worthy a Damoſell, deſcended from ſo noble
" a race, and nouriſhed in this my Countrie, ſhoulde procure
" to ſpot the worthineſſe of hir predeceſſours, without reſpect-
" ing my beautie, or regarding the chaſt vowe that vnto thée
" I made, but that I muſt nædes violate my ſelfe againſt all
" humaine nature. Well, ſeeing it is ſo, I am content, and be-
" ſæch thée to receiue the ſolempnitie of this my death, which
" I offer in ſacrifice vnto thy Deitie: for me thinke there is
" no reaſon, that one vnfortunate Lady as I am, ſhould bée
" the occaſion, that ſuch a noble Kingdome as this is, ſhoulde
" be brought to ruine and decaye. Oh my louing ſubiects, by
" you I am conſtrained to ſurrender my ſelfe vnto him, who
" cannot chuſe but intreate you ill, and indamage my Coun-
" trey, which thing is contrarie to all our expectations: in
" conſideration wherof, I am hére conſtrained with my own
" trembling hand, to cut off the flouriſhing braunches of theſe
" my dayes: for this I ſweare vnto you my deare & faithful
" ſubiects, that I had rather offer my ſoule into the ſocietie &
" ſacred boſome of Diana, than to yéeld my ſelfe vnto this de-
" formed figure. And thou King of Sardenna, ỹ greateſt tyrant
" amongſt tyraunts, beholde hére I yéeld vnto thée my body
" to vſe according to thy will and pleaſure, requeſting onely
" this one thing of thée, (if ther be any pitie or mercy in thée)
" conſidering that thou inioyeſt that which thy hart deſired,
" that thou ſuffereſt theſe my louing ſubiects to liue in peace,
" wherfore come now I ſay, and receiue that which is thine.
" And thou O chaſt Diana, accept likewiſe that which with
" ſo much blood I offer vnto thée. And in finiſhing this ſor-
" rowfull ſpéech, ſhée drewe out a faire and bright ſhining
" ſword, which ſhe had hidden ſecretly vnder hir gowne, and
" putting the hilt vpon the ſcaffolde, (little loked for of all
" thoſe that were preſent) ſhe ſodainly threwe hir ſelfe vpon
" the point of the ſaid ſword, ſo that not all that were ther,
" could deliuer hir, for ỹ point paſſed through hir bodie in ſuch
" ſort, (as thou doſt ſée hére by this figure portratured) ren-

dring

dzing hir ſoule to hir tuition, vnto whom ſhe offered hir ſa- »
crifice. What ſhould I héere declare the lamentable ſozowes »
and pitifull lamentation that was there made foz this vn- »
happie miſchaunce, committed in the ſight of all the people, »
I ſay it was ſuch that the woodes eccoed, and their pitifull »
ſhzikes aſcended to the heauens: but none was mozе galled »
with griefe, then the affliсted Giant, who roſe vp, and like a »
man diſtraught fomed at the mouth, & roaring with hozri- »
ble cries like an infernall creature, in great furie he ruſhed »
amongſt ẏ people thzowing them downe on euerie ſide, till »
he came vpon the ſcaffolde, and appzoching to the dead body »
of the damoſell, héе toke hir in his armes, and with a terri- »
ble and fearefull voice he ſaid. Oh my beloued ioy and earſt »
my onely harts delight. Is this the deſired ſacrifice, where- »
in thzough thy deſperatenes thou haſt deceiued me? who lo- »
ued théе mozе then my ſelfe. Is this ẏ truce thou requiredſt »
foz one day onely, therin to conclude both thy death, & mine »
alſo. Oh noble Quеene, and my beloued Ladie, if this were »
the intent, why didſt thou not firſt ſacrifice me thy ſeruant »
and loue, wholly ſubiected vnto thy beautie. Woe bе vnto »
théе thou vnfozтunate king of Sardenna, that foz thy fault & »
lack of lokingtw, thou haſt loſt hir, whom thou madeſt La- »
die of thy hart. O ill graunted truce, wherby my hart hath »
loſt that, (yea without all hope of recouerie) wherein onc ẏ »
it had lately reſt. O Diana, is it not ſufficient, that they do »
wozſhip & honour théе, but that thou wilt haue all gоdnes »
to conſiſt in ielouſie? Tarrie therfozе, foz I will make that »
thy determined purpoſe ſhall mitigate thy mallice, and thy »
owne deuice ſhall be thy deſtruction: foz I vow by the di- »
uine Iupiter, becauſe thou haſt permitted this deteſtable act, »
that ſo long as I liue, thou ſhalt not be wozſhipped foz the »
chaſt Diana, but Arcalanda in thy ſtéed ſhall be adozed. I will »
pzocure mozeouer to diminiſh thy name, yea, vtterly to ex- »
tinguiſh it, ſo that ther ſhall be no mozе memozy remaining »
of thæ, foz that thy bloudie tyzannie doth deſerue no leſſe. »
What ſhall I mozе ſpeake (gentle and noble Knight) of the »
anguiſh and deadly ſozrow that the King ſuſtained, foz no »

" ſooner had he deliuered theſe ſpeaches incenſed with fury, he
" ſet his hand to his ſwoord, & ouerthrew the image of Diana,
" that was there, & parted it in two parts, & yet not content
" with this ſacriligious fact, he deſcended from the ſcaffolde,
" exclaiming againſt the ſorrowfull Tinacrian people, and ſai-
" eng: O villaines and traitors, it is not poſſible but that all
" you were conſenting vnto this cruell fact, and determined
" euill. And vttering theſe & ſuch like reaſons, in his diueliſh
" fury, he began to flouriſh with his ſwoord cutting, killing,
" and wounding on euery ſide, with ſuch vnmerciful crueltie,
" that in a ſmall time there did not remaine one of all them
" that were there preſent, but I alone: and by reaſon that I
" was one of the Prieſts of Diana, he ſaued my life, although
" he little eſtæmed it. Then when this fierce and bloudie di-
" uell did ſée that all were ſlaine, and that we two onely re-
" mained, he toke the dead Quæne in his armes, & commaun-
" ded me to follow him with my praiers and oriſons accuſto-
" med vnto Diana, and bringing hir to this place, hée ſtraight
" waies commaunded this Chappell to bée builded, in this
" order as now you ſée, and promiſed by vowe vnto all the
" Gods, to ſacrifice euery weéke fiue perſons, naturally borne
" in the lande of Tinacria, three men and three women, in ſa-
" tisfaction of the bloudy ſacrifice that they conſéted to be of-
" fered by their diſceaſed Quéene. And it is now two months
" paſt, ſince they haue vſed this tiranny: and it is not onely
" he that doth perſecute the poore people of Tinacria, but hée
" hath alſo to farther him in this his diueliſh determination,
" his brothers ſonne, being of like cruell diſpoſition as him-
" ſelfe. And in this ſort do theſe two hell-hounds exerciſe
" themſelues in this deteſtable murder, inſomuch that the ci-
" tie is almoſt left deſolate, and there remaineth verie fewe
" which doth maintaine the warres. And you ſhal vnderſtand
" moreouer (gentle Knight) that the Citie is ſo ſtrong, that
" it is not poſſible to win the ſame, neither by force of armes,
" neither by hunger or any other ingen, for that it is ſo well
" furniſhed with munition and vittailes: yet in the citie ther
" are but a ſmall number of knights, which for their great fi-

delitie

delitis and loue vnto their countrie, haue not lefte it deſo- ,,
late,but dw defend it to the vttermoſt of their powers. Ne- ,,
uertheleſſe to the iudgment of all men,although for a time ,,
they dw neuer ſo politikely defend and make reſiſtaunce a- ,,
gainſt their enimies,yet in the end they ſhall be driuen to ,,
yéelde and to render themſelues: for that in two battayles ,,
which the people of the Iland haue had,the diueliſh Gyaunt ,,
hath had ẏ victorie,ſo ẏ now they remaine in great feare, ,,
for that ẏ ſtrength of theſe two tyrants,is incredible to be ,,
tolde. Now hære(gentle Knight)I haue declared vnto thæ ,,
that which thou ſo greatly didſt deſire to know,requeſting ,,
thæ to returne back againe,ẏ way that thou didſt come, & ,,
to kæpe thy ſelf from feeling ẏ euent of this expreſſed euil. ,,
The noble prince which with ſtrange attenſion gaue eare
vnto this ſorrowfull Prieſt, bæing fully determined to ad-
uenture his life for to violate this cruell and wicked cu-
ſtome,anſwered,(not according to the counſell the which he
gaue him,but according vnto his courageous determinati-
on,)ſaieng. Friend,where is(I beſæch thæ) the abiding of
this vnmercifull giant,& which is ẏ way ẏ leadeth thether.
The old Prieſt replied,His Caſtle is two leagues diſtaunt
from this temple:but what ſhal it auaile thæ to know the
ſame:& what profit wilt thou get by going thether,but only
death:but if thou wilt nædes aduenture thy ſelfe, the ſame
which brought thæ hether,is ẏ direct way thether,for other
ther is none. Moreouer the valiant Prince demanded of him
if he could aduertiſe him how many knights & what ſtore of
people the Gyant had about him, & hæ aunſwered that the
moſt part of them ẏ were about him were ſeruants,& that
all the reſt of his knightes and men of war,were placed in
other caſtles and forces of the Iland. And while they were
occupied in this cõmunication,they heard without the chap-
pell horſemen, as it appeared by the treading and noiſe of
their horſes. Wherfore to vnderſtand what they were they
ſtaid their talk.& the prince iſſued out of ẏ chappell, wher he
found fiue knights,armed wᵗ very good & ſtrong armor, who
were alighting frõ their horſes to enter into ẏ chappel.but

when

when theſe knightes eſpied the Prince ſo well proportioned and of ſo good diſpoſition, & with his armour of ſtrange deuice contrarie vnto theirs, then one of thoſe fiue knightes which ſeemed to haue more authoritie then the reſt, ſaid.

Oh knight, what infernal furie hath hardned thee to aduenture hether, knowing ỳ cuſtome which is vſed heere. But it ſeemeth vnto me that rather ignorance is ỳ occaſion heereof more then any other thing, wherfore I am content to let thee depart againe vpon condition, ỳ thou leaueſt with mee thy armour and thy horſe (if it be thine to giue) for that they do greatly delight me. This valiant prince diſſembling his anger, with a verie merrie & ſmiling countenance made anſwere.

You haue ſaid true, that ignorance hath brought me hether, for ỳ I am a ſtraunger in this countrie, & neuer vnderſtood that any ſuch cruelty hath ben vſed heere till now, that this good olde man hath tolde me. But to giue thée my armour I am not determined at this time, for ỳ I am not accuſtomed to trauaile without it. And as for my horſe, I do inſure thee that he will let none take his back but my ſelfe, therefore it were beſt thou aſke ſome other thing, for ỳ in this I pretend not to accompliſh thy requeſt. They vnderſtãding the words which the Prince anſwered vnto them, one of the fiue knights pretending more hardineſſe then all ỳ reſt, replied. I will ſee how thou canſt defend thy horſe, and with that he went to lay hand on the horſe bridle, which hée had not ſo ſoone proffered, when ỳ fierce horſe opened his mouth and with great furie he caught him by the ſhoulder, & lifte him vp from the ground, & in his fall he all to trampled & troade him in peeces, & ſo ſlew him. At the which this noble Prince could not refraine from laughing, and merrily ſaid.

In this ſorte doth my horſe reward them that bée ſo bolde and hardie of enterpriſe. Then the Knight which did firſt ſpeake vnto the Prince, ſaid vnto him with exceeding great anger. I do promiſe thée for certainty, that this great diſorder & outrage which thy horſe againſt my companion

hath

hath done shall cost thée thy life: And on a sodaine another of the fiue knightes which remained drew out his sworde, thinking to haue cut off the horse legs, but this expert horse with great lightnesse shunned the blowe, and on a sodayne rose on his hinder fæte, & with his fore fæte hæ played so with his helme, that he broke it all to pæces and threw the knight dead to the grounde: the which fact did greatly amase these knights of Sardenna. Thē the noble Prince with a pleasant semblaunce said. I am afraide that if in this sort you battaile wō my horse, he will in the end deliuer me frō all danger of ý losse of my armour. Then this other knight hearing those wordes, which he toke to be a great reproch vnto him, being almost ouercome with anger, in a great furie and rage he drew out his sword, & flourishing it about his head, he saide. The great outrage which thy horse hath hære done, (as I bæfore said) thou shalt spædely repay with the losse of thy life, and vttering these words, hæ smote the Prince vppon the helme so vehemently and with such courage, that the very sparkes of fire sprong out, & fel burning to ý groūd. This noble prince fæling ý blow not lyked for, determined that ý miserable knight should not go vnpaied for his good dæde, least he should praise himselfe for doing it, but with great anger and fury he stroke the knight such a blow a little aboue the waist, that it almost parted him in two pæces, so that he fell downe dead on the ground. Then the other thræ knights sæing this terrible and vnmercifull blow, made no tarrieng, but all at once fell vpon ý prince, doubling their blowes to bring him to his end, that it was wonderfull to sæ, but this worthie knight, who little estæmed of such daungers, stroke one of them so harde vppon the head, ý he cut him downe to the breast, & he fell downe dead vpon his other companion. And turning to another, at one blow he parted his shæld in pæces, & cut off his arme frō his shulder. Then ý other knight which remained alive, sæing his cōpaniōs to be so ill intreted by one only knight, thought it best to saue his life by trusting to his legs, rather then to repose any confidence in his prowesse, for that hæ

thought

thought it would litle prevaile him, and betaking him to his feete, hee fled away: Of whome this noble Prince made small account, but let him goe, ỳ old priest of whom we before spoke, was present & beheld all that had happened, and mervailed verie much at the great prowesse of the unknowen Knight. And this noble Prince seeing himselfe cleere of them that would haue done him wrong, returned unto the priest and asked him if hee had anye thing that hee might eate, & requested him to let him haue it, for that he hungered and had great neede therof. Then this Priest gaue him such meate as he hadde for himselfe, still perswading the Prince for to returne againe the same way he came, and not to put himselfe into that so daungerous and terrible an adventure, but this heroycal prince made litle reckoning of his requests, but giuing him great thanks for ỳ good entertainment he gaue him, he toke his leaue of him, & went ỳ same way which lead towards the castle wher the giant dwelt, & trauailing by litle & litle with an easie soote pace, he anone had a sight therof, and perceiued that it was verie fayre to behold, and walled about very strongly, which he beheld not long, but that he heard a Trumpet sound with mervailous sweet melodie, and at the sound thereof ther looked out of a windoow a gyant, being a yong man of great & large bignes, & comely in all parts accordingly, his face was very trefull to looke on, but not ill fauoured, but rather seemed to be adorned with a severe kinde of grauitie. This Gyant looking that way where this noble Greeke was, he asked him with a high and mightie huge voice.

" Knight, what dost thou heere so securely seeke, and what
" wouldst thou haue, not respecting this my unfortunate and
" unhappie custome, but without any feare therof thou ap-
" prochest hether, presenting thy self of thy own free will to be
" sacrificed. But this worthy Greeke in the meane time that
" the Gyant spoke these wordes did contemplate himselfe in
" beholding the huge making and the great strength that
" did appeare hee hadde by the proportion of his members.
" And placing his words with great discreation he answered

and

and ſaid. I come to demand battaile of thée O king, not for that thou haſt at any time grieued me, or giuen me cauſe but onely to take away and fruſtrate (if it bée poſſible) this euill and diuelliſh cuſtome which thou maintaineſt, or elſe to loſe my life in the quarrell, therefore if thou doeſt thinke good to proceede in this thy helliſh pretence, take thy armour and arme thy ſelfe and come forth, and heere in this field I will abide thy comming, where I hope by the fauour of almightie God, that with thy death thou ſhalt pay heere the tribute of all this tiranny which thou haſt vſed. The Gyant remained ſtill at the windowe beholding this worthy Grecian Knight, for that he ſeemed vnto him to bée a Knight of greate valour and proweſſe, (by his comelie proportion, and by the deuiſes that hee had in his armour he ſeemed to be a ſtraunger) with a familiar countenance he ſaid.

I would ſomewhat replie vnto theſe thy wordes, but becauſe thou ſhalt not ſay I ſpeake like a Thruſh in a cage, I will referre it till ſuch time as I am with thée in the fielde, if thou dareſt to abide my comming. And ſo without anie more ſpeaking hee withdrew himſelfe from the windowe, and with a terrible voice hée called for his armour, in the meane time this noble Greeke did peruſe his harneſſe in all parts that it was well, for it was nedefull, as hereafter you ſhall heare.

¶ Of the terrible battaile that this Grecian Prince had with the Gyant, and of all the aduentures that chanced in the ſaid battaile. Chap. 6.



His worthie Grecian knight lifting vp his hart and eies vnto heauen, craued fauour and help of almightie God, requeſting his aide againſt ſo great and terrible an aduerſary, & being thus in his prayer he ſodeinly heard a great noiſe & wel contorted ſound of Trumpets, the which made melodious and ſweet harmony, & not long after this the gate of the caſtle, was opened,

where

wher out iſſued the Gyant at all pointes armed with verie rich armour of fine ſteele, and vpon his right ſhoulder a great club barred with yron of a huge weight, and at his girdell a verie bigge and broad ſword, and about his necke there hanged a rich and ſtrong Shielde, whereon was portraitured the ſame deuiſe which hee ſaw on the Alter in the Chappell. In this demeanour, hee ſhowed himſelf to be valiant, and with a gentle countenaunce hee came towards the place wheras the Knight abode. All this, the noble and courteous Greeke did ſtedfaſtlye beholde, and praied God that of his mercie he would abolish this euill cuſtome that hee did maintaine, and that he would giue him grace to acknowledge his error wherein he had tranſgreſſed, and that he might be conuerted vnto the knowledge of ẏ true faith, for that it was great pitie, to ſee ſo much cruelty remaine, in ſo noble & worthie a perſonage, as he was, or in ſo well proportioned a body as he ſeemed to haue, and thus this noble prince remained in beholding his perſonage til ſuch time
" as the Gyaunt drew nigh vnto him, who without ſhewing
" anie deffiaunce or countenaunce of pride, ſaide. I bee-
" leeue (gentle Knight) that this my preſence hath put thée in
" ſome feare of my force, therfore for that thou ſeemeſt to be a
" knight well diſpoſed & of great valor, I yelde vnto thée the
" battaile. And if ſo be thou miſtruſt thy power, I giue thée
" liſence to return frõ whence thou cameſt, or elſe if thou ſo
" pleaſe to remaine with me in my company. But this valy-
" ant Greeke as one nothing danted, without mouing of his
" countenaunce anſwered and ſaid: Doe not thou thinke
" O king, that the bigneſſe of thy bodie, although it ſhew thee
" to be of great ſtrength, maketh me in any part either to mer-
" uaile or feare, for ẏ my ſword hath bene accuſtomed to a-
" bate the courage of diuerſe ſuch as thou art, but that which
" maketh me moſt to muſe, is, ẏ god hath ſuffered thee ſo long
" time to exerciſe this crueltie. And againe, that thou being a
" dorned with ſo gentle diſpoſition and courage, vnto my ſee-
" ming comfortable, wouldeſt maintaine ſo cruell a cuſtome,
" without either feare of God, or regard of his lawes. Never-

the-

uertheleſſe conſidering thou haſt no knowledge of the true god, but of other fained Gods, I do not ſo greatly muſe that thou haſt followed thine own appetite ſo much, but take my counſaile, & beſtow not this thy great ſtrength and force in the ſeruice of thoſe euill Gods, but turne vnto my God, and in his defence & faith (which is the right faith) exerciſe theſe thy good giftes, with the which he hath endowed thée, and if thou wilt thus do, I will take thée for my friend and kéepe thy company, for that thou ſéemeſt vnto me to be of ſo good a diſpoſition, & one ỳ doth well deſerue to be had in reputatiõ. For verely, it is conuenient (worthy King) that thou leaue this cruelty which thou doſt héere vſe, béeing ſo farre different from natures rule, & to forget this ſeruice which thou doſt vnto the Diuell, which is the onelye willer of this damnable worke: and ſo reforming thy life, I would wiſh thée to become a chriſtian. For I promiſe thée it doth not a little gréeue me, that ſo worthy a knight as thou art, ſhould through vnbeléefe periſh & be dampned: and if already thou haue any remorſe in conſcience, or perſeuerance of this my ſpéech, accept my counſell I requeſt thée, which if thou do, I promiſe thée to be alwaies thine, and by firme friendſhip to vnite my ſelfe vnto thy felowſhip. Contrariwiſe, if thou perſiſt in this thy pretended tyranny, prepare thy ſelfe, (and that ſpédely) vnto battaile, wherby thou ſhalt perceiue how ſmally I feare thy force, (as thou doeſt fondly ſuppoſe.)

The Gyant which was verie attentiue vnto all that the Prince had vttered, replied in this wiſe. Before we beginne our battaile (ſir Knight) let me requeſt this litle ſute of thée which is, that thou vnfolde to me thy name, foraſmuch as by thy comely proportion thou ſéemeſt to deſcend from ſome noble progeny, and by thy behauiour to be of no leſſe proweſſe then authoritie: the one arguing in thée no ſmall valour in fight, the other no little eloquence to ſubuert thy foe. The heroycall prince diſcréetly marking with what ſober aduiſment he deliuered theſe ſpeaches, with no leſſe mildeneſſe, returned vnto him this anſwere, ſaying. Foraſmuch as I will not in any reſpect be accounted either quarellous by cõceaſ

" ling an answer, or disdainful by denying thy request, under-
" stand then (O King of Sardenna) ý I am a Grecian borne, &
" named the Knight of the Sunne, sonne vnto the renowmed
" Emperour Trebario, and brother vnto the inuincible Rosi-
" cleer, whose courage as yet was neuer quailed in fight, nei-
" ther hetherto hath my hart bene vanquished by any force:
" for although as yet I haue detracted time, by menes of this
" my conference, it hath not bene for any conceaued feare, but
" the onely griefe of my conscience, which is not a litle afflic-
" ted with sorrow, to sée so worthie a personage as thou art,
" so impiously to lead thy life: admonishing thée friendlye to
" forsake thy former wickednesse, and to reuoke the abhomi-
" nable sentence of thy frowarde will: & séeing I haue both
" answered thy demaund, & thou vnderstandest my desire, I
" would faine be certified whether thou wilt accept mée for
" thy friend, or defie me as thy foe: that either by thy subuer-
" sion we may fauourably conclude, or by thy persisting, pro-
" céede to the combat: for although for thy sake I chiefly wish
" for peace, yet for mine owne part, I am indifferent. Great is
" the ioy (answered the Gyant,) that I conceiue at the sight
" of thee, whose worthinesse is so much wondred at through-
" out the world, and to the end I may both trye thy famous
" strength, & thou féele my renowmed force, I accept the bat-
" taile, with this conditiõ, that if by thee I be now vanquish-
" ed, I will not onely in my armour blaze forth ý honour of
" my conquerour, but for euer héereafter I wil submit my self
" willingly to thy commaundement: and if my fortune be so
" friendly ý I subdue thée, thou shalt in satisfaction leaue vn-
" to me, ý thing thou most likest: which is my life answe-
" red this noble Prince, as a due reward for my weakenesse.
" That were much more then I would willingly request (re-
" plied the Giant): but if, (which indéede is doubtfull) thou
" escape my handes, thy horse shall suffice me, if likewise héé
" féele not my furie, in that (as I suppose) he is of so singu-
" lar properties,

" If thou obtaine the victorie (answered the Prince) I

pro-

promise thée my horse, which I will héere in safetye leaue, both for that if thou winne him thou shalt be sure to inioy him: and also for that I neuer vse in anye battell to fight with aduantage. Wherwith, with no lesse agilitie then courage he left the saddle, and drawing out his sword, couragiously he said: Giant prepare for thy defence, for bèholde me readie to beginne the fight: and therewithall hée gaue him so furious an ouerthwart blowe vppon the waste, that the sparkes of fire fell burning to the grounde, and the strength of the stroke constrained the Giant, to stagger sidewarde, thrée or foure steppes, deceiuing him for that time of the daungerous blowe, which with his peysant clubbe hée had prouided to indaunger the Prince. But when hée felte this course intertainment, his cholar double increasing, hée lightly recouered, and lifting his clubbe aboue his head, hée determined to repay the Prince with such vnreasonable interest, that at that one blow hée would end the battayle: (which in déede if in the descending, it had lighted on the Greeke, it had not a little indaungered him.) But the noble Prince béeing of no lesse prowesse then experience, and nothing vnacquainted with such skirmishes, hauing an eye to the maine, by the nimblenesse of his bodie made waye for the blowe, which without harming him, fell to the grounde with such terrible furye, that it caused a resounding Eccho, in the woodes and mountaynes there adioyning.

The valyant Knight of the Sunne, greatlie misliking so monstrous a weapon as that clubbe was, determined (with as much spéede as possiblye hée might) to delyuer himselfe from the daunger thereof, and before the Gyaunt coulde recouer another blowe with the same, hée strake againe at his handes, with so great force and incredible furie, that he cut his heauie clubbe a sunder, and moreouer if he had followed his blowe, both clubbe and handes had fallen to the ground. Then when the Giant remained with no more thē a yeard of his club in his hand, much meruailing therat, he threw the rest at him with such rage, that it

whiſteled in ỹ aire, but the knight perceiuing the tronchon to approch, ſtepped aſide and let it paſſe by, and cloſing with him, with the ſtrength of his herculine arme he ſtroke him ſuch a blow vpon the thigh that the harneſſe brake all to peeces, although they were exceeding ſtrong, and wounded him vpon the thigh, which wound although it were not much, yet the aboundaunce of blood that ranne from it did greatly trouble him. The Gyant ſeeing himſelfe ſo ill intreated, with a wonderfull and outragious fury, gaue terrible & fearefull ſtrikes, and out of his helmet iſſued forth a thicke ſmoake, and therwith he drew out his huge & broade ſword, and ſhrouded himſelfe vnder his ſtrong ſhælde, and began with great furie to redouble his ſtrokes vppon the knight, the which the noble Prince with great nimbleneſſe defended him from. Now heere began ỹ braueſt & beſt fought battaile that euer was ſeene betweene two knights, there might you behold the whole ſtrength and valiantneſſe of giants, ther might you perceiue all ỹ proweſſe of knighthood, wᵗ euery policy vſed in armes, ther might you ſee how theſe two knights preſſed one vpon another, and procured one to hurt another, and alſo to ward the cruell blowes, ỹ the one beſtowed on the other: there might you view the ſparks of fire like lightning flaſh from their terrible ſtrokes, and the peeces of harneſſe flying in the aire, hauing no compaſſion the one of the others paines, but each one ſeeking to haue ỹ vantage of his enemie, traueſing ground from one place to another, that it was right wonderfull to beeholde, and how like to ramping Lyons they endured for the ſpace of two hours, whithout receiuing any reſt, neither could it be perceiued that any of them both did faint, but rather the longer they fought, the more their furie kindled and their ſtrength augmented, of the which the Gyant much meruailed, & feeling ỹ great force of his aduerſarie which was before him, was not a little amazed, but that which moſt greeued him, was, that he could not faſten one blowe to his contentment vpon his enimie, for which cauſe hee beeganne to exclaime againſt his Gods, but eſpeciallye againſt Mars, for that

he

hée was perſwaded, that hée was deſcended from Heauen, to make the combat with him, whereby to worke his deſtruction. And therewith his furie double increaſing, with an infernall anger he multiplied his blowes with ſo great haſt and ſtrength, that he cauſed the Greeke, to beſtur himſelfe from one place to another to make his defence: but he as one which was not idle, but by theſe meanes ẏ more inflamed, letting ſlip the bridle of all patience, his valiant & heroycal courage double increaſed, and his ſtrength & lightneſſe did ſurmount in ſuch ſort, that vnder his harneſſe in more then ten places he hurt the Gyant, and although the wounds were not great, yet the blood that iſſued out, was very much. Then the Giant ſeeing himſelfe in ſuch a pickle, threw his ſhielde from him to the ground, and with both his hands toke his great cutting ſword, & heauing it aloft, hée let it fall with ſuch wonderfull furie, that it was verie ſtraunge to beeholde. But this politike Prince ſeeing on which part this terrible blow would fall, determined not to receiue it, but with a light leape did cleere himſelf from the fall therof, the which fell to the ground with ſo great and terrible haſt, that the halfe of it entred into the earth, & by reaſon that the ſtroke was giuen more of anger then of cunning, by ẏ great ſtrength that he put to it, he could not keepe himſelfe, but was forced with the ſtroke to fall with his breaſt vpon the pomell of his ſword. Hée was no ſoner downe but the Sonne of Trebatio gaue him another vpon his helme, that it ſounded as though he had ſtroke vpon a bell, wherwith the Gyant fell flat to the ground, greatly aſtonished, and almoſt beſide himſelfe. This valiant Greeke when he ſawe him in this traunce, laide faſt holde vpon his helme, and with the exceeding ſtrength that he ſet to it, hée pulled it from his head. The Giant which was then ſomewhat recouered, caught holde vpon the ſkirt of his harneſſe and pulled the Knight towarde him with ſuch ſtrength, that he was not able to make reſiſtaunce, but needes he muſt go whether his ſtrong arme carried him. Then gladly would this noble Greeke haue defended himſelfe from this perill,

but he in no wise could, for stumbling vppon the Gyant hée lighted on his breast, in such tumbling sort, that hæ fell on the otherside of him, & seeing himselfe so ouerthrowen wõut any power in himself to prouide for help, he gaue a loud cry & said. O Jesu Christ the sonne of God deliuer me from this daunger, so incontinently as sone as he was at the ground, with a light & valiannt courage he rose vp againe, pretending not to shew any pitie or fauour in this fight, and returned to the Giant whom he found on foote and ready to defend himselfe, and approching nigh him, because he would shew the greatnesse and valiant stomacke that hée had, hée saide. Valyant King, take to thée thy helme, for that I will not that for lacke therof thou doest lose the surmounted valour of thy hart. The Gyant which had proued by experience the great prowesse of his surmounted strength, & againe seeing this noble curtesie in offering him his helme, with an humble and mæke voice he said. Valiaunt Prince, I pray thæ tell me if it be true, that thou art he which at ỹ beginning thou saydest thou wert, or whether thou art the God Mars, which is come downe from heauen to destroye me, and to make my strength of no estimation. This worthye Knight then placing the point of his sword vppon the ground, and leaning his arme vpon the crosse of the hilte, not making any outward apperaunce of wearinesse that he had in this battaile, with an amiable countenaunce he said.

" O King, if thou wouldest acknowledge the great cruel-
" tie which thou committest, and the small reason which thou
" hast to execute it, and how greatly thou doest erre and art
" ouersæne, in thinking ỹ thou seruest thy Gods in maintai-
" ning and defending such extreame tyranny, thou shouldest
" do much better, & so returne vnto ỹ knowledge of my God,
" who is the true creator of heauen & earth & all that therin
" is. Then ỹ Giant replied vnto him & said: Of truth (gentle
" Knight) thou knowest well how to extoll thy God in whom
" thou dwelt beelæue, but how shall I know that this thy
" God is of more goodnesse and vertue then my Gods. Vnto
" whom the Prince answered and said. Oh King, that is ve-

rie

rie easie and apparant to be seene and perceiued. Tell me I » pray thee that if at any time thy Gods haue in their owne » causes had any power or defence: no surely, for if they had, » then would not they haue suffered themselues to bee so ill » intreated of them who should worship & serue them, for if » at any time your Gods do not graunt vnto your requests, » and performe that which you would haue thē do, then you » beginne to curse and to banne them, and speake the worst » that may be spoken of them, & some of them you throw in- » to the fire and burne, and other some you pull out of their » Tabernacles, and tread them vnder your feete and polute » them, and presently you leaue them and chaunge them for » other new Gods, and vnto them you doe your worship till » such time as they likewise fulfil not what you aske of them, » and yet these poore and vnfortunate Gods are in no fault, for » that at any time they cannot helpe themselues, but doeth » burne in the pit of hell. So that it commeth of a great sim- » plicitie, ỹ thou wilt beleeue in the diuell, who is the authour » of all euill, and forget the creator of all things, who hath gi- » uen thee this thy strength and prowesse, & will deliuer thee » in all thy necessities. O King thou shouldest not neede any » other proofe, but onely that which thou thy selfe diddest vn- » to the image of Diana. For in thine anger thou didst throw » it downe and cut it with thy sword, and diddest vnto it all » the euill that thou couldest, so ỹ if they had had any pow- » er, thinkest thou then they would haue suffered that thou » shouldest haue offered this outrage vnto them, no I tell thee » thou mightst not haue bene once so hardie as to haue moued » against them. The Gyant who then was somwhat touched » with the truth, said. »

Worthy Prince, I henceforth promise thee, that I wil serue this thy god & wil desire thy friēdship & remaine thy friend, for ỹ thou hast opened my eies & giuen me the light of ỹ true life. And for ỹ I may the better bring to passe & accomplish this my determined purpose, I wil without tarieng take my iourney to Constantinople, to the end to be instructed in ỹ doc- trine of ỹ faith, & vnderstand perfectly ỹ power of thy god, not

doubting but to haue the aide & helpe of the valiant Emperour thy Father, and by his meanes to bee the better informed. And noble Prince I do desire thée to declare vnto Tefereo my cousin and brothers sonne, all this my pretended purpose, and perswade him to leaue of this euill custome, & not continue in it any longer. And moreouer to giue order vnto all his knightes and Gentlemen, that they follow no more this wicked race, but commaund them to return vnto their owne Countries, and to remaine ther in the good gouerning thereof, with his brother Tramarando. And the like words he spake vnto his own knights that were there present at that time, and when the valiant knight of the Sun heard these words, which proceeded from the Gyaunts hart without any dissimulation, he receiued so great pleasure therin, that incontinent he threw his sword to the ground, and pulled off his helme from his head, and ran and caught the Gyant in his armes, & with great loue imbraced him, giuing him to vnderstand the great contentment that he receiued to heare that he would forsake his false Gods, & turne to the true and liuing God, the author of all goodnesse. The Gyaunt when he saw his face discouered, he much meruailed to see the great beautie of that Prince, & toke him fast by the hand, and departed towards the Castell, reasoning with him of diuerse matters by the way. And when he came to the Castell, he straight wayes commaunded that a ship should be made in a readinesse with all kinde of furniture belonging to it, for that without any delay he would prosecute his voiage, and so curing himselfe of the small wounds which he had, which did a little trouble him, he commaunded straight that they should bring him somwhat to eate, for that it was needefull, as well for ỹ great trauaile hee had in the former battaile, as also for the losse of so much bloud which ranne out of his woundes. And when hee hadde eaten and dined according to his desire, without any more delay or further resting himselfe he stayed not so much as to pull off his harnesse, but departed out of the Castell, and entered presently into the Shippe, and without taking

any

any farther leaue he commaunded to hoise vp the sailes, and caused the Marriners to direct theyr course towards Constantinople, leauing great charge with the Knight of the Sunne for to burie the bodie of Arcalanda, which hee promised to performe with all his hart. And straight wayes he finished it, for in ỳ same chappell vnder the alter he caused hir to be buried, and vpon hir for a perpetuall memorie caused an Epitath to be written, as in the storie heereafter shall appeare. So this giant being departed his iourney, ỳ Knight of the Sunne without any more tarryeng asked where he might finde this Tefereo, and when he was informed of the place he toke his iourney thetherwards, and left order with the people that there remained, that they should not remoue nor depart till such time as hée retourned againe. So long he trauailed that day that the night drew on, and towards the left hand he heard a great rumor and noise of harnesse, whereat he tourned about that way with Cornerino his horse, wher we will leaue them, to tell you of all that which happened vnto the Knight Don Eleno of Dacia.

¶ How the Knight Eleno had battaile with Tefereo the Gyants cousin, and the successe that was therein, and how the Prince Eleno by a straunge aduenture was separated from his cousin and Tefereo.

Chapter. 7.



After that this knight Don Eleno of Dacia was departed from the knight of the Sun, all that day hee trauailed without mæting of any bodie, and when night approched it waxed so dark that he was constrained to withdrawe himselfe out of the high way, and to repose himselfe in a faire græne fielde, where as he let his horse fæde of the grasse that did there growe, and he laide himselfe downe vnder a faire and græne Willowe,

low, thinking ther to take his reſt, but ẏ place being ſolitary was fitter to occupie his amorous mind wᵗ his old thoughts, and to call to remembrance things paſt, then for any eaſe: neither was there any nére to giue comfort, or to bemone him, and calling to minde the anſwere which he had of the faire Floriſdama, in ſuch ſort it afflicted his minde, that hée remained a great while without any memory, but as one halfe dead, leaning againſt ẏ body of a trée, that whoſoeuer had ſéene him at that time, would rather haue iudged him dead then aliue. In the end he came againe to himſelfe, and being ſomwhat eaſed with ẏ teares that diſtilled from his eyes, of the griefe he had, he toke his lute in his hand, which he alwaies carried with him for his comfort, and began to play on it very ſwéetely, and with his ſwéete voice mixed with agréeable muſick, he repreſented the dolor of his hart, and ſung the ſorrow of his ſubiection by loue, which ſong is contained in theſe verſes following.

ACcord your ſounds vnto my carefull ſongs,
Ye ſiluer ſtreames that paſſe this grouie ſhade,
Refraine your courſe a while, to waile my wrongs:
whoſe former weale, by loue is wofull made.
My bliſſe to bale, my pleaſure vnto paine
Conuerted is, and I in care remaine.

And ſith I ſeeke in ſiluane ſhade to ſhrowd
my ſelfe ſo oft, my ſorrowes to declare:
Ye ſauage Satyres, let your eares be bowd
to heare my plaints, with ſpeed your ſelues prepare.
Trees, hearbes, and flowres (in woods and fields that grow,)
While thus I mourne, doo you ſome ſilence ſhow.

Sweet Philomela ceaſe thy ſongs a while,
and will thy mates their melodie to leaue,
And all at once attend my mournfull ſtile,
which well (I know) of mirth your notes bereaue.

If you desire the burden of my song,
It's sighes and sobbes, that are constraind by wrong.

You furious beasts that feed on mountaines hie,
and rest lesse rome with rage your pray to finde,
Draw neere to him, whom brutish crueltie
hath cleane bereft of rest and ease of minde.
For quite deuoyd of reason, loue or kinde,
Are these great plagues to my poore hart assignde.

But sith that Fortune is so much my foe,
that force perforce I was inforst to part,
From hir whose presence first procurde my woe,
And for whose absence now I feele this smart:
This onely one thing rests to comfort mee,
I will be firme though she still froward bee.

In that I loue, and am not lou'de againe,
my life I loath, and onely death require.
But since my prowesse is not proued plaine,
to shew my loue, I longer life desire.
And when in field my martiall force is tride,
Sweete Death from thrall my heauie hart deuide.

This doloʒous Knight could not pʒocéede foʒwards with this musick bægunne, by reason of a Damosell, which was in that place vnknowen vnto him; and therefoʒe vnlwked foʒ, who with a softe and milde voice saluted him, and this Knight retourned hir againe the courtesie shée offered. Then this Damosell right soʒowfully said. It doth well appeare sir Knight that thou doest not know how nære thou art vnto the perill of death, considering that so without all care thou art publishing these thy passions of loue. Vnto whom he answ'wered and said.

I dw know very well faire Ladie, that alwayes I

beare

" beare about me a deadly perill. But alas, how can I help
" that, although this occaſion hath brought me into ſuch ex-
" tremitie, conſidering that it is ſo ordained. But to what end
" faire Damoſell, you haue vttered theſe wordes, I am as
" yet altogether ignorant, wherefore I would be verie glad
" to knowe ſomewhat, wherby I might haue occaſion to for-
" get theſe thoughts, & to bring my ſelfe in care of ſome new
" defence. Then this Damoſell did relate vnto him and ſaid,
" Thou ſhalt vnderſtand ſir Knight, that this Countrie in
" which thou art, is the olde and auncient Kingdome of Ti-
" nacria, whoſe happie daies, which in times paſt it had, are
" now abated, and the great felicitie therof is turned to con-
" fuſion. Then this Damoſell did relate vnto him, all the
" whole ſtory that you haue heard, which the olde Prieſt told
" vnto the Knight of the Sunne his Couſin: but the great
" ſorrow that he receiued in the hearing of ſo great crueltie,
" conſtrained a few ſalt teares to fall from his eyes, from
" the which he could not refraine. And proceeding forwards
" in his talke, ſhe ſaid. You ſhall vnderſtand ſir Knight, that I
" am a Damoſell belonging to the Counteſſe of Modica, who
" is now in companie with the vertuous Quéene Garoſilea,
" in the Citie of Saragoſa, héere in the land of Tinacria, by
" whom I was ſent about certaine buſineſſe, and came now
from thence. Verely, the hearing of this terrible and beaue
hiſtorie, did very much cauſe this noble knight to lament, &
cõpelled his hart to earne, although on ỹ contrary he did re-
ioyce very much, for that now in the beginning of his knight-
hoode, he might imploy himſelf and his valiant courage in
ſuch terrible conflictes, whereby hée might winne to him-
ſelfe a renowmed name and repoꝛte, if it ſo pleaſe God
that he may goe forward with this enterpriſe. So hée de-
termined with himſelfe, to loſe his life in this quarrell, or
elſe to ſet the ſame Citie at libertie, although hée gaue
not the Damoſell to vnderſtand any thing concerning this
his intent, who in the end of many good reaſons and pitiful
perſwaſions that ſhe vſed in counſailing and perſwading
this worthy knight Don Eleno for to haue very great care

and

and to loke well vnto himselfe, that he did not fall into the hands of this cruell Giant, she toke hir palfraie and departed hir way towards the citie, to the end that she might enter in at the gates before the day did breake, whereby shée might not be discouered of the enimie. So this Damosell departed, and left the knight in great anguish and sorrowe of minde, as well in thinking of the crueltie of this vncharitable giant, as also, for that the night was so long that hee could not put his determined purpose in vre, but in the end the gladsome daye appeared, at which time this worthye Knight perused his armour, and surely armed himselfe, and lased on his helme, and taking his horse, hée rode the waye which led towardes the Citie, béeing the same way which the Damosell went. He had not ridden farre when he discouered the citie, which was meruailously adorned with Towers & fortresses, but yet round about it was to be séene a meruailous and dolorous spectacle of dead men and women torne in péeces, and others hanged by the necke vppon Iybbets hard by the walls, and some vpon trées which were in the field nigh at hand, which caused the Prince to stay, and to sigh with great sorrow and teares in the beholding of so inhumane crueltie, & in bitternesse of heart he said. O Lord, how wonderfull be thy secrets, ý thou sufferest this knight, to vse so great crueltie without punishing of him, it cannot, be without some great misterie which thy diuine Maiestye doth pretend. I beséech thée (O Lorde) to giue mée so much, grace and strength, that I may cause this great cruelty to, be taken away, & vtterly to cease. O noble Citie, I cannot, iudge what anger fortune should receiue of thée, in ý she cõ-, senteth thou shouldest be subiect vnto such vnmercifull peo-, ple, so much without pittie and compassion. Well, I maye, say, that as Grecia may brag hir selfe of most excellent, wise, & learned men which it hath brought vp, euen so maist thou, complaine, that against thée hath bene fostered two terrible, and abhominable tyrants. And in saying these wordes: he, drew nigh the gates of the Citie, which for feare of the crueltie of the Giant, they kept shut, & taking hold at the ring

thereof

therof he began to knock, which he had not ſo ſone done, but ỹ lifting vp his eies, he beheld to deſcend from aboue out of a bulwarke a great frée ſtone which was caſt down by the hands of a Gentlewoman, which came ſo ſodainly, ỹ hée almoſt had no time to deliuer himſelfe from receiuing ỹ fall therof, & if the lightnes of his horſe had not bẽ the quicker, he muſt nédes haue taken the blow on his head, which would not haue fallen out well with him. But when this Gentlewoman ſaw that the ſtone fell down without doing any harme, with a grieuous and terrible ſigh that proceéded from hir hart, ſhe ſaid.

" Art thou that curſed Tefereo, through whoſe cauſe the " moſt part of ỹ mournfull matrones of this diſtreſſed Citie " are made widowes, & with great affliction are inforced to " bewaile the loſſe of their louing huſbandes and welbeloued " ſonnes? Art thou he that doth not onely content thy ſelfe to " kill them & teare them in péeces, but alſo hangeſt them be- " fore our eies, and garniſheſt the wals of this our vnhappie " Citie with the bodies of them? Art thou that ſonne of the di- " uell, which without all feare of the gods hath put our Citie " in this extreame neceſſitie? O cruell tyrant, open the eies " of thy vnderſtanding, & let ſome ſparke of pitie reigne in " thy hart, and ſuffer not that for thy cauſe onely ſo worthy a " Countrie as this is ſhould be deſtroied. Let it ſuffice thée ỹ " thou haſt already bene ỹ occaſion that all theſe noble ma- " trones of this citie, haue loſt their reſt & forgot their eſtate, " and are nowe become as ſcowtes in the warres, and frame " themſelues to weare armour. This gentle Knight of Dacia would not ſuffer hir to proceéde any farther, but cut off hir tale, and with great ſoberneſſe he ſaid.

" Gentlewoman, I am not he that you take me for, but I " come hether rather (if ſo be I may) by ſome meanes to pro- " cure your reſt, & deliuer you from this outrage that is offe- " red you. Thẽ this gentlewoman with much more anger an- " ſwered. O traitour, doeſt thou thinke that by thy treaſons " and ſubtiltyes to increaſe our care more then hetherto thou " haſt done? Get thée hence traitor, for thou art ỹ moſt falſe & cru-

cruell man in all the world, for thy naughtineſſe we do wel vnderſtand, and to all the world it is knowen. O iminor- tall Gods, you doe well know that on the earth there is no ſtrength ſufficient to rote out this diuell and curſed tyrant from amongſt vs: why doe not one of you come down from heauen and confound him with your deitie. The god will which hath brought me hether, gentle miſtreſſe, aunſwered Don Eleno, doth not deſerue to be thus ill intreated of you, who for to procure your libertie will put his life in aduenture. I ſuppoſe I doe deſerue better entertainment at your handes. Well, let it be what it will be, ſaid this Gentlewoman, but touching thy comming into the Citie, it is labour loſt to ſpeake, neuertheleſſe if thou art not ỳ cruell Knight whom I did take thee for, turne thée about & looke towards the corner of yonder towre, which ſtandeth amongſt the greene trées, and ther thou ſhalt finde him, whom I doe beléeue without ſéeking for thou bringeſt with thée, & ſo without any more ſpeaking this Gentlewoman went from the wall, and left this Knight alone. Then the Prince Don Eleno ſéeing himſelfe alone, tooke the way which the Gentlewoman ſhewed him, wherin he had not trauailed farre, but in the middeſt of a groaue amongſt a companie of greene trées he ſaw a verie faire houſe and well wrought, whereunto when he approched he found that the gates were ſhut and cloſed verie faſt. And drawing nigh the gate, he tooke the ring in his hand and gaue it a great ſtroke, at the ſounde whereof there looked a man out of a window of the ſame houſe, and by the riches of the armour that the Knight ware, he knew that he was none of their companie, but ſaid vnto him.

Who art thou that art ſo hardie béeing a ſtraunger, which without feare doeſt call at the gate, whereas thou canſt not eſcape, but muſt of neceſſitie ſuffer death. Friend aunſwered this Dacian Knight, goe thy waies and tell the Lorde Tefereo, that héere is a knight of a ſtraunge Country that hath a great deſire to ſpeake with him. This man without any aunſwering went away from the windowe,

and

And not long after, ther was another windowe opened more lower then the firſt, from whence there loked out a knight who ſéemed to be of a gentle diſpoſition, his face ſomewhat ſwart of coulour, who with great curteſie ſaid, knight what is it that thou wouldeſt haue, for I am he whom thou doeſt ſéeke for: that which I would haue anſwered Don Eleno, is, that thou doeſt leaue this diuelliſh cuſtome which thou doeſt héere maintaine, for that a knight of thy diſpoſition & manner ſhuld rather occupie himſelf in breaking theſe euil cuſtomes, then in maintaining them, for theſe be not works of a knight the which thou doeſt, but of an infernall diuel, I therfore much meruell how thou vſing ſo much cruelti e, thou doeſt liue with ſo great eaſe and without care. Come therfore thou tyrant and arme thy ſelfe, and I hope thou ſhalt héere pay the tribute of all theſe euils which thou haſt done, for it is not reaſon that ſo diuelliſh & cruell a man as thou art ſhouldeſt liue. Theſe reaſons did litle trouble this Gyant, neither made he anie reckoning of them, but with his accuſtomed ſobrietie, he anſwered.

Miſerable knight, thou doeſt not knowe how héere thou doeſt ſéeke thy owne death in demaunding battaile of mée, therfore returne againe the way thou cameſt, for thy tẽder age and ſmoth face without a beard doth moue me to vſe this my vertue and curteſie with thée, and conſidering that thou art a ſtraunger and not of this Countrie. Then this Dacian knight aunſwered. It is not this that I doe ſéeke, but to accompliſh this which I haue tolde thée, and if my wordes are not ſufficient to cauſe thée to leaue this which thou doſt exerciſe, I do beléeue that my ſword will ere long compell thée therto, for either I will die the death or elſe I will depriue thy bodie of that dampnable & accurſed ſoule, and ſend it whether as thou haſt ſent manie a better then thine is. To theſe wordes this Tefereo aunſwered nothing at all, but withdrew himſelfe in great haſt from the windowe, and called for his armour, the which was all blacke, and of a verie faire & ſtrange making, he was with a trice armed, & béeing on horſe backe, the great and princely Pallaice

pallaice gate was opened, wherat issued out this Sardenian with a gentle and demure countenaunce, and after him followed a page with two speares in his hand, of ỹ which Tefereo toke the one, and sent vnto the Prince the other, who standing in nede accepted it, and without farther reasoning they turned their horses about with such courage & quickneſſe, that the like hath bene seldome seene betweene two Knights. And whē each of thē wer come into their appointed place, they set spurres to their horses with as great force as the thunder in the aire, and meeting together in the mid way with their speares, their shocks were so terrible that it was wonder to see, so that not one of them failed of his blow, but ioyned in such sort, that the staues (although they were verie strong) brake, and the shæuers of thē seperated themselues in the aire with great violence, and yet the valyant knights both remained in their saddles, no more moued then a rocke by the sea side. But when either of them beheld the little harme they had done in this their iust, they both with their swords in their hands returned their horses, and began to strike so extreamely the one vpon the other, that their bodies felt the force of their armes, and although their harneſſe was not cut, yet it could not be but their flesh shuld receiue damage. In this sort trauailed these two knights more then an houre, without knowledge of any aduantage, but either of them were inflamed with anger to see his aduersary to indure so long, and the knightlie courage of each of them did more & more increase, and their exceeding cholar was such, that ỹ battaile began to be more terrible then at the first. But this furious Tefereo somewhat feeling, and therefore by experience knowing the surpalling strength & valiant courage of his enemie, although he did not greatlye mervaile at it, yet it did cause him to be more furious, and being incensed in such sorte, that with both his handes hee toke his sword, and strake at him such a stroke vppon the helme, ỹ the blow sounded through all the fields, & made an ecko in ỹ mountaines, that by the waight therof the Dacian knight was cōstrained somwhat to incline his head downe-

warde and remained a while without his remẽbrance, but his horſe being ſcarred with ẏ terrible ſtroke, gaue a great leape towards the one ſide, by the which hée deliuered his maſter from the ſecond blow, which Tefereo thought to haue beſtowed on him. The Dacian Knight being againe recouered, and not a little abaſhed at this blow, ſetteled himſelfe in his ſaddle, and throwing his ſhield from him to the ground, hée toke his ſworde faſt in his hand, and ſtroke Tefereo ſo terribly vpon the helme, with his ſworde ſome what flatling, (by reaſon wherof, the force of the blow ſomewhat abated, it ſlid downe vpon his lefte ſhoulder,) that it conſtrained him to ſtoope forwards with all his bodie, and if he had not claſped his armes about the horſe necke, hæ had fallen downe to the ground, and with the force of this great blow, the horſe was conſtrained alſo to bow his fore fæte, who with a ſodaine & furious force roſe vp againe: wherat this noble Dacian warriour, with great haſt pricked his horſe with the ſpurres, pretending to make an end of this cruell battaile, with his ſecond blowe: but it fell out contrary, for that Tefereo comming againe to himſelfe, as fierce as a Lyon, thruſt forward againſt his aduerſarie, procuring (if it paſſed not his power) to repay againe with intereſt, that which hé had receiued. Now hære bægan a new their battaile, and their forces multiplied in ſuch furious ſort, that all the mountaines and valleyes, were occupyed with the noiſe of their terrible ſtrokes. The courage was ſo great of theſe two knights, ẏ many times they loſt their wits, with the weight of the terrible raps which they receiued one of another. Then this Prince Don Eleno ſayde to himſelfe, that if all the reſt of the Knights with whome hæ he ſhould haue battaile, were of no leſſe prowelle then this preſent Knight, that he feared quicklie to be diſgraced: and on the other ſide, Tefereo found himſelfe very ſore troubled, and ſaw that he was in ſo great diſtreſſe, began to inuocate vpon his Gods for aid. The powers, ſtrength & pollicie was ſuch betwæne theſe two princes, ẏ whoſoeuer had ben preſent to haue beheld ẏ ſame, wold haue ſaid, ẏ there was be-

twæne

ſwæne thē expreſſed, all ỳ knighthood in ỳ woꝛld: foꝛ it was wonderfull to ſée, how ſomtimes they preſſed foꝛwards, and preſently retired backwards, as wel to beſtow as to auoide their terrible ſtrokes. It was full thꝛée houres, ỳ theſe noble knights thus contēded together, & yet ther appeared not in thē any kind of faintnes, but by their behauioꝛ, ther ſtrēgth ſéemed ſtill moꝛe and moꝛe to increaſe. Then this heroycall Dacian not accuſtomed to find ſuch reſiſtance, began to foꝛget al patience, & as one ouercome wt̄ anger claſped his ſwoꝛd faſt in his hand, & being ſetled in his ſadle, he ſtroke ỳ giant ſo hard in ỳ midſt of the helme, ỳ with ỳ heauines of ỳ blow, he was inforced to fal backwards vpon ỳ cruper of his hoꝛſe without any remēbꝛance, & with ỳ great ſtrength the pꝛince put to this blow, his ſwoꝛd flew out of his hand, & hanged by the wꝛiſt band, which while he recouered, Tefereo returned to himſelfe, & with outragious anger (pꝛouoked by ỳ great paine he felt, with both his hands he ſtrake ſuch a blow vnlooked foꝛ at Don Eleno with the halfe ſwoꝛd vpon the viſour, in ſuch furious ſoꝛt, that it bereaued him of his ſight, & glancing wiſe it deſcended down vpon the head péece of the hoꝛſe, but by reaſon of ỳ firſt blow ỳ laſt had ſmall ſtrength, ſo that it did but litle harme, notwithſtanding it amazed the hoꝛſe in ſuch ſoꝛt, ỳ with his ſtaggering ỳ Pꝛince was conſtrained to vſe pollicie to kéepe himſelf frō falling from his backe, but when his hoꝛſe was recouered, he returned again, ſo inflamed with anger as though ſparks of fire had iſſued out of his mouth, & cruſhing his téeth together, he vttered theſe woꝛds. O ỳ infernall diuell is it poſſible, ỳ by thy ſtrength ſo euill beſtowed on thée, ỳ ſhouldſt in ỳ beginning of my knighthood put me in daūger to be ouercome, by one only blow, I pꝛotеſt by ỳ honoꝛ ỳ I owe vnto ỳ pꝛogeny frō whence I pꝛocéed, ỳ if by this one blow I bꝛing thée not to ỳ point of death oꝛ ouercome thée, ỳ I will neuer wear armoꝛ moꝛe againſt knight, ſo wt̄ great rage he returned againſt his aduerſary, ỳ he did not only feare him, but if ther had ben ther a whole army of men, cōſidering his fury, they would haue ben afraid, & pꝛeſſing foꝛwards ỳ pꝛince raiſed himſelf

in his stirrops, and stroke the Gyant so terrible & wonderfull a blowe, that the bloud gushed out of his nose & mouth, and therewith he fell to the ground as though he had bene dead. Hee was no soner down, but with great lightnesse the Dacian knight leapt from his horse, and stept to the Gyant to vnlace his helme, which while hee was a doing, hee heard a voice which said. Do not kill him knight, do not kill him, and turning his head about to see who it was that so disturbed him, he perceiued it to be his cousin the Knight of the Sunne. (This was the great noise of harnesse, that the Knight of the Sun heard towards his left hand, as before I haue tolde you) So when Don Eleno had pulled of the Gyants helme, he withdrew himselfe apart, and his cosin alighted from his horse, and presently came and imbraced him with exceeding ioye, and no little loue, which the more increased, when he considered that the Knight which should vanquish so great a Giant, could not be but of great valour, as it appeared by that furious blowe, by which the Giant was meruailously martyred: for the astonishment was such, that in a great while after Tefereo could not recouer himselfe, till such time as they brought water from the house which was hard by, & threw it on his face, by which meanes he came to his remembraunce, and seeing himselfe in such a pickle, and the sword of his conquerour prepared for his death, I doe refer vnto your iudgements, what such a valiant Knight should thereof conceiue, and with a verye great and sad sigh he said.

"Oh thou that hast robbed me of my surmounted honour,
"content thy selfe to inioy this my great and high glory and
"suffer me not to sustaine any farther shame in sauing of my
"lyfe, with the inioying of which, I shall neuer hereafter re-
"ceiue ioy, but euery day, yea, euery houre thereof, will re-
"present vnto me a thousand deaths, in remembring that one
"arme hath had so much strength as to bereaue me of that
"which so many with all their forces, haue not had power to
"maintaine themselues against. I know not wherefore thou
"detractest time make an end of mee, for that thou hast had

so

so much power to ouercome me.) I earnestly desire thée. And » neuer think that thou shalt be lord of the thing which thou » hast ouercome: for otherwise I will not yéld my selfe, but » onely to death. For they may account him onely conquered, » which hauing strength to defend, submitteth himselfe vnto » the mercie of his enimie. Therfore gentle Knight I do bée- » séech thée, not to shew any pittie towards me, but to finish » with my death this tragicall triumph which fortune & time » hath now bestowed on thée. These two Knightes and Cou- » sins were very attentine to the words that this mighty pa- gan vttered, and liked excédingly of his reasonings, and in reply, Don Eleno aunswered, Although that Fortune (nay » rather God) thus in the beginning of my glory, hath giuen » me this victory, and libertie therwith either to extend cru- » eltie or clemencie, yet both for thy words which touch mée » to the heart, and for thy prowesse, which I so much estéeme, » I protest vnto thée, I wish rather neuer to haue ben borne, » then willingly vpon thée to execute this extremitie, conside- » ring what a blot it is vnto noble knights, to haue the name » of tyrants, for that it depriueth them of all the honor & glo- » rie that strong armes can any way atchieue. Therefore » know worthy Knight, that the royall bloud of Dacia dest- » reth not the death of Tefereo, neither was it my request to » haue thée ouercome, but onely to haue thée conuerted from » thy cruell conditions, to the ende that I might enioye thy » friendship. Then the valiant Knight of the Sunne did cut » off their talke, to the end hée might declare vnto them all that happened with the other Giaunt. Which when Te- fereo heard he was sore abashed, and with great sobriety he saide: Well, séeing it is so, that the flower of all knighthode and the glory of armes, is possessed by you and your kinred, I vow that from this day forwards, I will not remaine a- ny longer my owne, but nominate my selfe, as onely yours, and in deliuering these spéeches, in ý best manner hée might he arose vp from the ground, and with great loue imbraced them both And after salutations ended, they entred altoge- ther into the Pallace, whereas they remained all ý night,

for to repose themselues, considering the great trauaile and paine which they haue passed. The next day in the morning, although they had more nede to haue taken greater rest, yet ther altogether they mounted on their horse backs, and toke the way that lead them to Saragosa, pretending to enter within the Citie, & there with all humilitie to craue pardon for all the iniury that was past: but their trauaile was all in vaine, for that before time they of ỹ towne, hauing had sufficient triall of Tefereos cruelty, would not by any meanes open the gates, alwaies beleeuing the lamentable spectacle before their eies, and therfore fearing that they would deceiue them. So that when these noble knights perceiued it was labour lost to stand long in contention, these people (though then causeleslie) being so incredible, they returned backe againe towards the Castle: and all the way they went, beeing almost at the sea side, these two Cousins saw their ship comming towardes them in great hast, and staieng their horses, they saw, that she was fast at ỹ waters side.

The knight of the Sunne perceiuing well, that hir comming thether was for no other cause but to inuite them to come abord hir, which Eleno and Tefereo condescending vnto, they presently did: and sent word by a page of Tefereos to cõmaund all those of Sardenna that they should set at libertie all the Countrie, & without farther delay retourne vnto their owne houses. These worthie knights were no sooner entered into their Shippe, but shee began presentlie to spred hir Sailes, and shouing from shoare, in great hast shee launched in to the maine Sea, wherein with prosperous windes they sailed two daies, but the thyrde daye verie earlye in the morning, they discouered a Galley, gouerned with sixe Mares on a side, which came rowing towardes them, and beeing ioyned together, they beheld that ther was in the same a very faire Ladie, whose haire of hir head was dispearsed abroad, and hir selfe very ill intreated by an vncurteous Knight. This sad and distressed Lady with a sorrowfull voice and pitifull lamentation, cryed

ed out for succour vnto the heauens: at whose complaintes and vncourteous handling these Princes receiued great anger. This valiant Dacian Don Eleno hæing in all pointes prepared to fight, layd fast holde on his sword, and with great lightnesse leaped into the galley, into ý which he was not so sone entered, but that these two vessells were lose, and voyded the one from the other, so that not one of his other friends had time to follow him, & the swiftnesse was such in the departure, that in a small time either of thē lost the sight of the other.

By reason of many accidents, which are to be accounted in this history, it is conuenient I imitate the good musition, who to content all those, which attend to heare his melodie, chaungeth into many tunes: therefore now we will leaue these three knights, and retourne vnto the Emperour, to declare such thinges as chaunced in his Court.

¶ By what aduenture Floramonte was deliuered from the perill hee was in, and how the Princesse Clariana was deliuered of childe, and howe shee was comforted in all hir trouble by the wife Artemidoro.

Chapter. 8.

With great ioy and contentment departed the Pagans, that carried away the Infant Floramonte, vnderstanding that Fortune had greatly fauoured them to bäke won them so good a price. Wherefore with great haste they got themselues to the Sea. Wherein they had not trauayled long, but that vpon a lodaine they discouered a shippe, which was comming towards them, all blacke, and out of it proceeded verie fearefull and wonderfull lightnings, accompanied likewise with terrible Thunder, seeming by the force thereof that the heauen opened: & when the ship drew nigh vnto the Galle of the Pagans,

it was presently couered with the thick and terrible lightnings, in such sort, that it depriued all them that were therin of their sight, & with the great feare that they receiued, they fell flat downe vpon the floore in the Gallie. And when they came againe to themselues they looked about to see if they could perceiue what it should bee. And when they could not finde the infant Florimonte, for whose losse they lamented greatly. You shall vnderstand that the wise Lyrgandeo by his learning had deliuered ỳ infant from them to kæpe him close and in secret, for that he vnderstood by his art of ỳ great warres that was pretended and made redie for in Grecia in the which wars should bee slaine the flower of all knighthode, and that it should be in great daunger to bee lost, and vtterly destroyed. Also he did comprehend by his learning to know how this infant and one other that was then begotten (but not yet borne) should be the greatest help & chiefe of this victory, comming by chance to the end of the conquest, likewise he did know that if this child should at any time before this aduenture vse armour, that he should be put in great perill of death. This was the onely occasion that hee set him at libertie as you haue heard, and did inchaunt him in such sort, that none other could cleere him of it, but onely he which should be his companion and aide in the great necessitie of these warres: which was the son of the heroycall knight of the Sunne, and of the Empresse Claridiana, of whome thou shalt heare hereafter. Thus this wise Lyrgandeo hauing deliuered this childe that none in all the Court knew of it, retourned thether againe, and from that daye forwardes kept it secrete to himselfe, not suffering any to vnderstand thereof nor of any other thing that hee foreknew in his hart by learning. All these of the Court were verye sadde, for that the Emperour was so sorrowfull, forasmuch as hee coulde heare no newes of his sonnes, as I haue before tolde you, determined after hee hadde ended the hunting, to retourne backe againe to the Citie. And in the way as they should go, they discouered comming towards them a Wagon, which did represent much do-

lor,

for,(and this was that which Roſicleer did finde,) and ther they remained to ſée what it ſhoulde bée, and when the Wagon drew nére where the Emperour was, they lyfted vp a cloth therewith the Wagon was couered,and out of the wagon there iſſued a Lady,who lead a maiden childe by the hand,all couered with mourning apparell, which did repreſent great ſorrow, and of ſo meruailous beautye, as it was to bee wondered at. This Ladie when ſhée vnderſtoode which was the Emperour, ſhée knéeled downe at his féete,and with ſundrie ſorrowfull ſighes,ſhe lamentably ſaid.

„ Conſidering that all diſtreſſed women and oppreſſed
„ damzels, foraſmuch as they are women and of the weaker
„ ſort,do finde in thée(Oh ſouereigne Emperour) ſuccour and
„ defence, what ſhould thoſe that deſcende from noble and
„ royall eſtate hope for at thy gracious hands? Among which
„ number this which doth preſent hir ſelfe before thée, is nei-
„ther the leaſt in birth, though now one in moſt miſerie,
„ for redreſſe whereof ſhe craueth thy aide and defence. Thou
„ ſhalt vnderſtand O ſouereigne Emperour,that this child is
„ right heire apparant vnto all ý kingdome of Lira,of which
„ ſhe hath béen diſpoſſeſſed by meruailous great violence. The
„ Emperour whē he heard that this was the quéene of Lyra, he did reuerence hir, and toke hir by the hande,and cauſed hir to ſtand vp,and embraced hir with excéeding ſhewe of loue,& offred vnto hir his perſon and all his power at commaundement for hir helpe & ſuccour. Then the Lady would haue kiſſed his hands,but the Emperour would not conſent thervnto by any meanes,but toke his horſe to proceéde forwards on his iourney,& for curteſies ſake toke vp the yong quéene behinde him on horſe backe, and the Emperour Alicandro toke alſo ý other Ladie. In this guiſe they returned vnto the citie,for to put in order all things for the departing of the Emperour Alicandro,& riding by ý way the emperour Trebario demanded of the Lady ý cauſe of hir comming to ý court,the which ſhe did declare vnto him,not letting in hir tale to ſhew by ſhedding of ſalt teares from hir

eyes

" ties, the ſorrow that in part ſhe concealed, and in this wiſe
" ſhe anſwered. High & mighty Emperour, in the kingdome
" of Lira, not long time ſince reigned ẏ father of this young
" Queene, in ſo great proſperitie and fame, that hee was not
" onely honoured of his owne ſubiects, but alſo feared of the
" borderers therabout. Nigh vnto this kingdome there is an
" Iland called Rocafor, which beareth this name for the great
" ſtrength it hath, as well in the buildings with Caſtels and
" townes, as by the inhabitaunts of the ſame, who are verye
" ſtrong, of the which Iland was Lord and gouernour a Gy-
" ant of meruailous huge and mightie bigneſſe, beeing alſo
" proude and of verie ill conditions, who hath a ſon of a more
" greater ſtature and fiercenеſſe then himſelf, ſuch a one as I
" beleeue hath not his like in all the world, & for that hee had
" this vantage ouer and aboue all other, it ſeemed vnto his
" Father, that ther was none ſo conuenient in marriage for
" his ſon as was this Damzell, daughter vnto this aforena-
" med King, and heire vnto the kingdome. And thus beeing
" wholy determined, hee ſent meſſengers vnto the king to de-
" maund his daughter in marriage for his ſonne, but the king
" made them anſwere very rigorouſly, (and although the gi-
" ants are greatly feared, yet ẏ power of this king was ſuch
" that he didde eſteeme them but little.) But when the Gy-
" aunts Bulfar and Mandroco (for ſo were they called) did per-
" ceiue with what diſdaine the king aunſwered them, they
" were readie to burſt with anger, neuertheleſſe Mandroco
" gaue counſell vnto his Father, ſayeng: That he alone was
" conſtrained herein to returne for his honour and no other,
" and that it touched him to make aunſwere vnto them, and
" that he would neuer be accounted to bee his ſonne if hee did
" not wholy reuenge himſelfe. Then Bulfar who well knewe
" the great ſtrength of his ſon, very much reioyced to heare
" thoſe his reaſons which he vttered, & commaunded ſtraight
" waies that it ſhould be put in vre: & ſo with full determi-
" nation in as ſecret manner as they poſſible might, they ga-
" thered together fiue hundred of ẏ moſt valiant knights ẏ
" were in all ẏ Iland, which were almoſt all of their affini-

tie,

ty,with ỹ which knights very secretly they arriued vnknow- »
en in the land of Lyra,and verye closely in the beginning of »
the night,two miles frõ the Citie,they put themselues into »
a litle groue that was nigh at hand,wheras they remained »
vnespied two parts of the night,thẽ vpon a sodeine when ỹ »
people were all at rest, & little suspecting any such sodeine »
misfortune,they entered ỹ citie & neuer rested till such time »
as they came to the kings pallaice,at which entry & first en- »
counter the king himselfe was slaine, by a cruell blow that »
Mandroco stroke him on his head,as you may beholde hẽre »
wher the bodie lieth on a Bẽre within the wagon. This »
Bulfar made such destruction in the entering of the pallaice, »
that in a small time he possessed it for his,and so descending »
through ỹ citie,by reason ỹ those knights which he brought »
with him were of great power & strength.And againe,that »
those of the citie were vnprouided of all defence, with very »
litle a doe he ouercame them all and brought thẽ vnder his »
subiection,by compelling thẽ to yeld.So I a miserable wo- »
man more thẽ half dead in beholding so great damage done, »
by a false doore ỹ belonged to ỹ pallaice,I went out, where- »
as escaped also many of ỹ kings knights ỹ were taken on »
a sodeine:so I toke my way forwards & came to Hircania, »
for that ỹ king therof was my brothers sonne,& cosin vnto »
this princesse, who receiued vs very well,& was not a little »
sorrowfull for our misfortune. From which place wẽ sent »
to demaunde of the Gyaunt to surrender vnto vs,that »
which with great violence he hadde vsurped, and aunswere »
was retourned, that they would not doe it, except this »
young Muẽne shoulde first marry with Mandroco, to the »
which wẽ would not consent for that he was so deformed. »
So seeing his determined purpose, wẽ sent once agayne, »
demaunding whether hẽ woulde giue vs the bodie of the »
dead king, to the which they did straight waies graunt. »
And Mandroco sent vs worde, that forasmuch as wẽ »
would not consent [illegible] to that which he did require vs, ten- »
ding to our owne quietnesse to the ende wẽ should vnder- »
stand how litle it was that he did esteeme of vs,hẽ swore »

" with a ſolempne oath neuer to depart out of the Kingdome,
" for the ſpace of two yéres, with condition, that in this time
" we ſhould ſéke two Knights, who by their great force and
" chiualrie, ſhould ouercome his father and him in the fielde,
" and then they would depart the land, and retourne to their
" owne Countrie. And contrariwiſe if we did not procure, to
" bring theſe two knightes to the battaile, or els to delyuer
" vnto them this Ladie within that prefixed time, that Man-
" droco, might marry with hir, that whē they would fully poſ-
" ſeſſe themſelues of all the kingdome, and fortifie themſelues
" in ſuch ſort, that all agréement notwithſtanding, we ſhould
" neuer returne to Lyra againe. And ſo vnderſtanding their
" imballage, I determined to come to this Court, whereas
" I do vnderſtand is all the prowelle and flower of Knight-
" hode in the world. So héere I preſent my ſelfe (noble Em-
" perour) before you and all your Knights, in aſking fauour
" and requeſting helpe to reuenge vs of ſo great wrong, as
" we haue receiued: and thus ſhe finiſhed hir talke, and with
great wéeping, ſhée held hir peace.

This noble Emperour receiued very great ſorow & griefe to heare this lamentable tale that the Lady tolde, and to ſée that faire yong Damzell ſo diſpoſſeſſed of hir right by ſuch extreame tyranny, and with a milde countenaunce hée aun-
" ſwered. Noble Dutcheſſe, ſiuce that thy good fortune (though
" the efficient cauſe thereof be to to badde) hath brought thée
" ther, wher with all good will yée ſhalt receiue ſuccour and
" comfort, I requeſt you to take your reſt, and bée quiet, and
" leaue of this your mourning. And although ther be knights
" in this my court, that are able to comprehend ſuch enterpri-
" ſes, by their great prowelle and ſtrēgth: yet I do loke euery
" day for them, to whom I may commend greater affaires
" to be done then theſe, wherfore reſt you a while till two do
" come, of whom I haue more dominion ouer, & to them will
" I commit this charge. There were many knightes pre-
ſent that would very faine haue offered themſelues to this enterpriſe, but hearing the pretence of the Emperour, they durſt not in any wiſe attempt it, but kept ſilence.

Then

Then this dutcheſſe began to tell them of all ẏ ſucceſſe that happened vnto hir Knights by the knight of Cupied. Vnto whom the Emperour ſayd: that Knight is one of them to whom I will commit the charge of your combat, and I am right gladde that the ſeruice he ſhall doe you in this enterpꝛiſe ſhall bee the occaſion that you ſhall forget this anger that you haue againſt him. So with theſe and like reaſons they drew nære the Citie, whereas ſtraight-way they bægan to prepare all thinges in a readineſſe for ẏ departing of the Emperour Alicandro, & in a ſhort time all thinges being prouided, this Emperour being alſo readie with a verie good will entered the ſhip, & carrieng with him the Prince Meridiano, and his welbeloued ſpouſe, and the Troyan Oriſtedes, he taking leaue of the Emperour w̃ a better countenaunce then his heart would conſent vnto, committed the ſailes vnto the winde, and with a proſperous voiage they went a land at Tenedon, wheras we will leaue them, for to tell you what chanced vnto the Empꝛeſſe Claridiana, who was very ſadde for the abſence of hir ſpouſe, and likewiſe to ſæ hir ſelfe ſo great with childe (although in the great hall ſhe continually ſhewed a merry countenance.) So it happened one day being in conuerſation with the Empꝛeſſe, and the quæne Lira, ther entered into the great hall the worthy Prince Clauerindo, all armed with his accuſtomed harnes, and leading by the hand a very faire Damoſell, all apparelled in blacke veluet, and after hir there came other nine faire Damoſels, all apparelled after the ſame manner. This Damoſell if you do remember is ſhæ, whoſe kæper Roſicleer did kill, which was the Prince of Meſapotamia, and ẏ knight which came to hir at hir complaint & ſorrow, was Clauerindo, who in great ſecret followed the knight of the Sunne, and becauſe of the great confidence that he had in ẏ friendſhip of Zoylo, he promiſed hir fauour & ſuccour: for the which this faire Ladie who was daughter vnto the king of Tiglia, came in this order as you ſhall heare. In the meane time that all this happened, there chaunced a thing of very great admiration, which was, that the Tartarian bæing

at

" with a ſolempne oath neuer to depart out of the Kingdome,
" for the ſpace of two yéres, with condition, that in this time
" we ſhould ſéke two Knights, who by their great force and
" chiualrie, ſhould ouercome his father and him in the fielde,
" and then they would depart the land, and retourne to their
" owne Countrie. And contrariwiſe if we did not procure, to
" bring theſe two knightes to the battaile, or els to delyuer
" vnto them this Ladie within that prefixed time, that Man-
" droco, might marry with hir, that whē they would fully poſ-
" ſeſſe themſelues of all the kingdome, and fortifie themſelues
" in ſuch ſort, that all agréement notwithſtanding, we ſhould
" neuer returne to Lyra againe. And ſo vnderſtanding their
" imballage, I determined to come to this Court, whereas
" I do vnderſtand is all the prowelle and flower of Knight-
" hode in the world. So héere I preſent my ſelfe (noble Em-
" perour) before you and all your Knights, in aſking fauour
" and requeſting helpe to reuenge vs of ſo great wrong, as
" we haue receiued: and thus ſhe finiſhed hir talke, and with
great wéeping, ché held hir peace.

This noble Emperour receiued very great ſorow & griefe to heare this lamentable tale that the Lady tolde, and to ſée that faire yong Damzell ſo diſpoſſeſſed of hir right by ſuch extreame tyranny, and with a milde countenaunce hée aun-
" ſwered. Noble Dutcheſſe, ſiuce that thy good fortune (though
" the efficient cauſe thereof be to too badde) hath brought thée
" ther, wher with all good will yée ſhall receiue ſuccour and
" comfort, I requeſt you to take your reſt, and bée quiet, and
" leaue of this your mourning. And although ther be knights
" in this my court, that are able to comprehend ſuch enterpri-
" ſes, by their great prowelle and ſtrēgth: yet I do loke euery
" day for them, to whom I may commend greater affaires
" to be done then theſe, wherfore reſt you a while till two be
" come, of whom I haue more dominion ouer, & to them will
" I commit this charge. There were many knightes pre-
ſent that would very faine haue offered themſelues to this enterpriſe, but hearing the pretence of the Emperour, they durſt not in any wiſe attempt it, but kept ſilence.

Then

Then this dutcheſſe began to tell them of all ẏ ſucceſſe that happened vnto hir Knights by the knight of Cupied. Vnto whom the Emperour ſayd: that Knight is one of them to whom I will commit the charge of your combat, and I am right gladde that the ſeruice he ſhall doe you in this enterpriſe ſhall bee the occaſion that you ſhall forget this anger that you haue againſt him. So with theſe and like reaſons they drew nære the Citie, whereas ſtraight-way they bægan to prepare all thinges in a readineſſe for ẏ departing of the Emperour Alicandro, & in a ſhort time all thinges being prouided, this Emperour being alſo readie with a verie good will entered the ſhip, & carrieng with him the Prince Meridiano, and his welbeloued ſpouſe, and the Troyan Oriſtedes, he taking leaue of the Emperour wt a better countenaunce then his heart would conſent vnto, committed the ſailes vnto the winde, and with a proſperous voiage they went a land at Tenedon, wheras we will leaue them, for to tell you what chanced vnto the Empreſſe Claridiana, who was very ſadde for the abſence of hir ſpouſe, and likewiſe to ſæ hir ſelfe ſo great with childe (although in the great hall ſhe continually ſhewed a merry countenance.) So it happened one day being in conuerſation with the Empreſſe, and the quæne Lira, ther entered into the great hall the worthy Prince Clauerindo, all armed with his accuſtomed harnes, and leading by the hand a very faire Damoſell, all apparelled in blacke veluet, and after hir there came other nine faire Damoſels, all apparelled after the ſame manner. This Damoſell if you do remember is ſhæ, whoſe kæper Roſicleer did kill, which was the Prince of Meſapotamia, and ẏ knight which came to hir at hir complaint & ſorrow, was Clauerindo, who in great ſecret followed the knight of the Sunne, and becauſe of the great confidence that he had in ẏ friendſhip of Zoylo, he promiſed hir fauour & ſuccour: for the which this faire Ladie who was daughter vnto the king of Tiglia, came in this order as you ſhall heare. In the meane time that all this happened, there chaunced a thing of very great admiration, which was, that the Tartarian bæing

at

at that time in the hall as the Damzell entered, he made a great noiſe without any more tarieng, neither was ther any that could ſtay him were he neuer ſo ſtrong, but running forwards as a man diſtraught, hée went out of the Pallaice. The ſorrowfull Ladie ſéeing this, fell downe to the ground as though ſhee had béene dead. And Clauerindo béeholding the ingratitude of this Tartarian, woulde haue followed him, but the wiſe Lyrgandeo ſtayed him and would not ſuffer him to goe, ſaying: They ſhould let him alone, for that all they ſhoulde procure to follow him ſhould bée in vaine. And ſo retourning vnto the Ladie hée practiſed ſuch remedies, that very quicklye ſhée retourned to hir ſelfe againe, and then promiſed hir ſuch remedies, as ſhould in the end reſtore hir to reſt. And when the Barbarian Ladie, did knowe who he was, ſhée did meruailouſly reioyce. So this Tartarian went to the ſea ſide, and with great diligence imbarked himſelfe in a ſhippe that was ther readie fraughted for Spaine, which he did in ſuch great haſt & diligence, that before Bargandel & Lyriamandro could tourne themſelues, the ſhippe had hoiſed ſaile, and yéelded hir ſelfe vnto the winde, the which was the occaſion that theſe two did the like in taking another ſhip, who ſailed after the firſt, with determined purpoſe. with all theyr powers to procure that this Tartarian ſhould returne againe, whom wée will leaue now ſayling on their voyage, for it is neceſſary for our hiſtorie to relate other matters in this Chapter. Let vs returne therfore to the Emperours court. The Empreſſe Claridiana ſéeing hir time at hand to bée delinered with childe, was verie ſadde, and knew not what to doe, but in the ende of many thoughts ſhe determined to decypher all hir ſecret vnto a maid ſhe had who was called Arcana, to whō ſhe did diſcloſe all the ſecrets of hir hart. This Arcana ſéeing the great friendſhip & curteſie that the princeſſe ſhewed hir in opening hir ſecrets more to hir, then to any other, and had a more truſt in hir then in the reſt, kiſſed hir royal hands, & promiſed hir to be no leſſe ſecret then diligent in all hir affaires

faires. So they determined betweene themselues & did pro-uide as it was best for their purpose, to bee continuallye alone and without any companye, but that which did most trouble and gaue greatest care vnto the Empresse Claridiana, was, for that she did not know to whome to giue the charge of nursing that, which should be borne of hir, yet the maiden who was very wise, subtill, & discreet, had ordayned all this in good order, for she had in great secret disclosed it vnto a very honest matrone of the citie, saieng, that she was the partie that should be deliuered, and gaue vnto hir very largely of gifts & iewells, with promises of a farther benefit for to kéepe hir counsell therein. It was not long after when that with great paine and griefe this noble princesse was deliuered of a very faire sonne & daughter, being of so great beautie that it was wonderfull to be séene. The son had vnder his left side a meruailous & very strange marke, which was a speare of such a fiery prospect ý it made them afraid to touch it. The empresse toke thē both in hir armes and with many bitter teares she blessed them, and returned thē againe vnto Arcana, willing hir that shée should dresse them, & put all thinges in order to send them to the nurse, ý which she did with great diligence, wrapping and swaddelingthem vp in very faire and rich clothes, according to the best guise ý shée could, although she were but litle acquainted in such like matters. She had not scantly made an end of swaddeling them, when that vpon a sodaine with a greate rumour, as it séemed vnto the Empresse and Arcana, one of the walles of the chamber wher they were did oprn, wherat did enter a Serpent, very horrible and fearefull to beeholde, from whome there procéeded greate flames and sparkes of fire, who staied not, but went straight vnto the place whereas the two little Infantes were, and at two mouthfulles hée swallowed them cleane vp, and so without doing any more, harme or making any longer tarrying retourned out of the Chamber the selfe same waye that it came in, leauing the Empresse in so great feare, as in such cases is required.

And

And being in this great traunce ſhe loked towards ỹ place, wher the Serpent went out, and ſhee ſaw enter in thereat an olde man, which came with a ſtaffe in his hand, whom ſtraight way ſhe knew very well to be the wiſe Artemidoro, who with great courteſie ſaluted the Empreſſe ſayeng: "Madame, take you neither care, paine, nor griefe of ỹ which "is done, neither trouble your ſelfe for your children, for "that there could bee no more done, then that which is "done: for all is conuenient and neceſſarie for the eſtabliſh- "ing both of yours and their good fortune. And more I doe "certifie you, that ỹ time ſhould come, wherein you ſhall re- ceiue more ioye and comfort, then nowe it doeth cauſe anguiſh and ſorrow. And thus without anie more reaſo- ning he returned and went out againe at the place wherat he entered, and he was not ſo ſoone out, but that ỹ wall cloſed againe as euen as it was before, & no ſigne of opening could be ſæne. After that he was departed the empreſſe & hir mayde remained reaſoning & meruailing at this ſodayne & ſtrange caſe, & after they had conſidered of many things, they determined betweene themſelues to kéepe all verie ſe- cret, till that by opportunitie were offered them, what they ſhould doo.

The Prince Brandimardo of whom I told you of, was ſo inflamed with the fire of Cupide, which kindled in him tho- rough ỹ loue of the young quéene of Lyra, whoſe name was Ardiſilora, ỹ he could finde in himſelfe neither reſt nor ioy, & his paſſions were not ſo ſecret, but that this young quéene did perceiue thē, & ſpared not to repay him againe with a kinde of honeſt and ſingle loue. Of whom we meane to de- clare more in the proceſſe of this hiſtory, and of their won- derfull acts which they did: for you ſhall vnderſtande, that this young Quéene, being a horſebacke & armed in hir ar- mour, proued another Claridiana, as ſhall bée rehearſed in ỹ furious battaile betweene the Greekes & Africans. And you ſhall moreouer mark, that all you that haue hearde in the proceſſe of this chapter, was ordained by ỹ wiſe men, which I onely note, for that thoſe which ſhall read the ſame, may

the

the better vnderſtand the hiſtorie.

¶How that when the King of Hungarie was taking his leaue to depart, ther came a Gyant, hauing a cruell and furious countenaunce, who defied the Emperour and his ſonnes, and of all that chanced therin. Cap. 9



THE king of Hungarie ſeing ỹ it was time for him to returne to his own Countrey, it happened one day being in company with the Emperour his ſonne in law, he ſaid vnto him: My louing ſonne, I would verie faine before my departure (if it were poſſible) that my ſonne were come, to the end I might haue him with me, ſeing that my Nephewes doe not come, but ſith their tarrying is ſo long, I muſt be content to take patience, & without their companies to retourne home into my owne Countrie, leaſt peraduenture this my long abſence be cauſe of ſome inſurrection or commotion. The Emperour would very faine haue aunſwered him, but vpon a ſodeine and vnlooked for, ther was raiſed a great rumour amongeſt them that at that preſent were in the pallaice, and demaunding what was the occaſion of ſuch ſodeine alteration, they ſaw entering in at the gate a very great and mightie Giant, of more then ſirtæne cubites high, of ſtrong bodie, and double the bigneſſe of any other ordinary man, he was armed with very ſtrong and rich armour, & he carried vpon his ſhoulder a great and heauy Maſe, and at his girdle a verie faire & broad ſword, & without doing reuerence or ſhewing anye kinde of curteſie, but with a proud and arrogant voice hee aſked: Which amongeſt you is that falſe and trecherous Roſicleer, ſonne vnto the traiterous emperour Trebatio? All that were there preſent (were not a litle amazed, as wel in beholding the huge greatneſſe and ſtraunge forme of the giant, as alſo of his great pride and boldneſſe in his wordes) aunſwered him not a worde. Then the Emperour, as one

vnto whom it most belonged to make answere, with great sobrietie & wisdome, as in such like matters he was accustomed to vse, replied. Gyaunt, Rosicleer at this present is not in the Court, for the which I am very sorrie & conceiue great griefe, for I am sure if he wer heere present, he would soone tame and bring downe this thy great pride, & mittigate thy mallice, and soone abate this thy vnreasonable bold enterprise, which thou hast attempted. And in that thou doest say that I am a traitour, I answere that thou dost falsly lye, like a naughtie and ill taught knight, for I neuer vsed treson towards any man, neither would I at any time consent thervnto, but I haue procured to ỹ vttermost of my power to punish it. When the Gyant heard this answere beeing more kindeled with rage hee saide. Emperour, thy wordes are spoken verie fondly and without feare, as the Cock vpon his owne dunghill, heere thou seest me mightye and strong, insomuch that being in thy country I do make thee quake, and more I would doe if thou wert abroade. Thou great beast and deformed creature, replied the emperour, for that thou shalt vnderstand how litle heere in Grecia we estéeme such monsters as thou art, tarie a while, for in place of my sonnes, because they are not present for to giue thee thy paiment according vnto thy deserte, in mée beeing their father, thou shalt finde such resistaunce, that I hope by the fauour and help of almightie God, to take that diuellish and infernall head frõ thy accursed shoulders. So the Emperour in great hast with a knightly courage called for his armour. The Gyant seeing the disposition and prowesse of the Emperour to bée so valiant, with a great cry hée saide. O yée feminine Gods, is it possible that your deitie doth cõsent, ỹ alonely one man is so hardie & couragious to enter into the field wỏ me. Emperour, take to thee one hundreth of ỹ best knights ỹ hast about thée & come, for altogether I will cut you in peeces, for ỹ my gods will not permit ỹ he in whõ al their power cõsisteth should haue battel wỏ one knight, & in saying these words, he did shew the great pride ỹ rested in his hart. Heere you may iudge in what perplexity the Empresse

and

and all hir Ladies were in, to see so ill fauoured a monster before thē, I promise you they were all in a manner without remembraunce & cleane beside themselues, but Claridiana neuer moued hir countenaunce, but was very quiet. In this meane time while the Emperour was arming him selfe with as great hast as hée might, the fierce Gyaunt which burned in anger, thought that the Emperour tarried very long and said: What doest thou Emperour: why doest thou not cause thy knightes to arme themselues as I haue willed thée, for that both of thy selfe & thē I pretend to end the weake daies, and in saying these wordes he went vnto the place wheras the Emperour was arming himselfe, ther the Empresse Claridiana put hir selfe before him, and stroke the Gyant such a blow on ẏ breast with both hir hands w̄ such great anger, that she made him withdraw backwards, and in the end was forced to fall, and she said: Thou diuellish beast, what thinkest thou in thy hart to doe, and what is thy pretended purpose? & séeing ths gyant in so great furie, she cried out and said: Oh holye God deliuer these my knights frō all euill, for he arose vp with such ire from the ground, ẏ a great mountaine had not bēn able to make any resistaunce against him, if it had not happened, that in ẏ same extremitie there entred into ẏ hall that gentle & valiant giant ẏ king of Sardenna, who vnderstāding ẏ contempt of ẏ other giant, & how much he had misused ẏ emperor with his proud spéeches in ẏ hall, he was very greatly incensed, & ẏ the emperor shuld vnderstand ẏ great loue ẏ he bare vnto his son, ẏ knight of ẏ Sun, like a furious lion he attempted the battell before ẏ emperour could be ready to make ẏ assault, & lifting vp a great club which he had in his hand, hée said. O thou foule disfigured monster, far more proud thē appertaineth to the order of knighthood: first before ẏ approuest thy strength with any other, thou shalt féele ẏ force of mi. The great disdaine ẏ was in this Giant whose name was Bustrafo, argued ẏ he litle estéemed ẏ other, but wout replying any ans were, they began to florish w̄ their gret & mightie Mases, that the greate noise of the Emperour, neither

the ſtrikes of the Empreſſe and hir Ladies, woulde ſuffice to make them withdraw themſelues ỹ one from the other, but terribly they let fall their heaute & mightie blows one vpon another, that their ſtrong helmes were bruſed, & they inclined their heads vnto their breaſts. So then there began a cruell and mortall battell, one of the moſt terribleſt in ỹ world, for the ſtrength of their blowes were ſo outragious, that with the leaſt blow they gaue, it was thought that the great hall would haue fallen downe. The Empreſſe and hir Ladies what with the great griefe they had, & againe, with the exceeding heate that began in the hall, withdrew themſelues into their Cloſettes and Chambers, and likewiſe the knights that were preſent, departed and left them alone in ỹ hall, ſauing the Emperour onely remained at the dore, to kéepe ỹ entrie ỹ none ſhould either goe in or out, who was verye well armed. And Brandimardo and Clauerindo were with the Empreſſe Claridiana, beholding this cruell battell, not knowing who this great Gyant was that trauailed ſo much for the honour of the Emperour & his ſonnes. In all this time theſe Gyants had no other care, but in bruſing & mangling one anothers fleſh, wᵗ ſo great ſtrength, ỹ whoſoeuer beheld them meruailed at their fiercenelle, and without doubt, all the furious rage of Gyants conſiſted in thoſe two, as it did appeare by the terrible & outragious ſtrokes that they beſtowed betwéen them, for wᵗ the great ſtrength and the ſound thereof, ỹ whole pallace did not onely ſhake, but alſo the whole citie: in this ſort they continued a great while without taking any breath, & all the flore of the hall was full of hoales, with the heaute blowes that had ſcaped by. Thus they long continued without knowledge of any maſterie betwéne them, but ſtill they procured ỹ one to indamage the other, and to be reuenged one of another, with ſo great rage & in ſuch ſort, that they ſéemed rather to bée raſh and vnreaſonable Gyauntes, they expert and valiant knightes: and in this their great furie they both lifted vp their great and heaute clubs, in ſuch ſort that their blowes met and diſcharged together, with ſuch ſurpaſſing ſtrength,

that

that the club of the king of Sardenna was parted in twain, but the mace of Buſtrafo diſcharged vpon the other, although almoſt in vaine, for that it had loſt the former furie by reaſon of the firſt encounter, neuertheleſſe it made his healme to ſound as an anfielde when it is ſtroken on with a hammer. Then this king ſeing he had ſuch an aduerſary, thought it not good to vſe delay, but with great haſt he drewe his ſword, and at ſuch time as Buſtrafo tourned the ſecond blow he could by no meanes ſhun or apart himſelfe from it, but bare it off with his ſword, and the fall of the blowe was ſuch that the mace was cut cleane a ſunder, & the great end rolled on the flower in the hall. Buſtrafo ſeing himſelfe diſpoſſeſt of his heauie mace, threw ẏ tronchon which remained in his hand, at the king of Sardenna, who receiued it vpon his ſhielde: but the ſtrength of it was ſo vnmeaſurable, that it glaunced on his ſhield, and flew vpright to the top of the hall, & the king retired back thrée or foure ſteps, ſo that it was a wonder hée fell not to the ground. In this time, Buſtrafo had ſpace to draw his ſword, and to ſhrowde himſelfe vnder his ſhield. Now there began a new, a more cruell and rigorous combat betwéen them, then at the firſt: for Buſtrafo at his firſt blow, ſtroke the king vpon ẏ ſhielde, and parted it in two péeces, and with an infernall furie, it deſcended on his helme, and hurt his head, but ẏ wound was not very great, yet the blow reſted not, but glauncing on ẏ harneſſe, fell to the ground whereas it made a great boale: but in the meane time this new converted King, was not idle, neither did his aduerſary eſcape his paiment for the blowe paſt, but hauing his ſharpe cutting ſword rayſed on high, he diſcharged it w̄ ſuch erꝫéding force vpon Buſtrafo, who receiued it vpon his ſhield) that with ẏ great ſtrength therof, it parted it in péeces, and diſcended vpon his helme, taking away with it all ẏ it touched both of the harneſſe & fleſh, which fell together to the ground, ſo that Buſtrafo remained very ſore hurt. And when hée ſaw his owne bloud, the battaile beganne a new to kindle in ſuch ſort, that in a very ſmall time, each of them were ſore hurt in ſundry pla-

ces, wherout issued so much bloud, that all ỹ hall was sprinkled therewith. This fierce Bustrafo seeing himselfe so ill intreated, his anger still more increased, & gaue the Sardenian such a blow vnder the wast, that he hewed his hard harnesse, and part of the swoorde was sheathed in the flesh, wherwith he was very sore hurt: so with the anguish and terrible paine that this Sardenian felt, he gnashed his teeth together, and with great fury he stroke at the hand of Bustrafo, who well knowing the waight of his blowes, stepped a side, which was the occasion, that the whole force of the blow could take no effect, but with the poynt of his swoord, he cut him on the visor, and it descended to his breast, and so downwards, insomuch, that it deuided the harnesse, and hurt him verye sore, from toppe to toe, by meanes of which wound, he suffered great griefe, especially being in the place where it was.

The deeds which in all this time chaunced vnto that valiant Rosicleer, wee will heere declare, and leaue these two Giants, with their perillous, and well fought battaile, till such time as occasion doe serue to goe forwarde with the same. You do remember, how that wee left Rosicleer within his inchanted boate, sayling on the deepe seas, vnder the protection of Neptune. And so they trauailed for the space of fiue daies, and as many nights, without seeing any thing, but the starrie firmament, & the furious waues of the sea, without knowing whether they did saile. In the first day of their nauigation, they beheld comming towardes them another great Foyst who came with no lesse furie, then their boate sayled, and the course therof was directed right with them. So when they drewe nigh together, the Foyst passed by so close, that they might well see and discouer who was therin and they perceiued within the same a damosell who seemed to be dead, and by hir stode a monstrous Giant, and by the mast of the Foyst there was tyed a terrible Gryffin, which caused great feare in them that beheld it.

The Foyst made such great way, that Rosicleer hadde no time to leape into hir, which caused him to be very sorie

and

and he was ỹ more incẽsed, for that he could not be throughly certified what this aduenture was & what the strangenesse thereof did signifie, and with the anger that hée hadde, he began to curse all inchauntments, and all them that vsed it: but all this did profit him but little, for that in a shorte time it sailed out of sight. And loking about him, hée sawe two shippes, which were in a great fight, and verie fiercely the one assaulted the other, to whome the boate wherein the Prince was, directed his way with so swifte course, that he almost had no time to put on his helme. And with these two shippes was another boate which by the force of armes was brought in subiection and ouercome by ỹ other two shippes, and all the people were slaine that was in hir, sauing a fewe which had withdrawen themselues into the powpe of the barke for their defence, amongst whom there was one of a verie great and excellent stature, who with strong and mightie blowes, caused all those that approached vnto the place where hée was, to withdraw themselues, but by reason that they had béene very long in this battaile, and that they had troubled him very much, hée could not chuse but be very weake and weary, in such sort, that if it had indured long, hée must nédes haue finished the fight with his death.

After that Rosicleer had well béehelde and noted the great strength & fierce courage of the knight, it séemed vnto him to haue knowen him, and viewing the deuice that hée hadde on his armour, hée knew that it was Zoylo the Tartarian, and straight way without any more tarrieng he leaped into the shippe, and béeganne to let them know the strength of his strong arme, for in such sorte he bestirred him, that at the first blow hee cut off helme and head, of one of his enimies, and not béeing content with this, he began againe to strike first on the one side and then on the other, so that there was not one that was so hardie to abide his terrible blowes, but when his aduersaryes saw his furie, there ioyned more then thirtie of them together, pretending to assault him, but amongst them there

was one who ſæmed to bée the principall of them all, ſaide. Retourne you all back againe and make an ende of that, which weake and ſimple women would long ſince haue finiſhed, and let me alone with this knight that ſo rigorouſly doth behaue himſelfe, & with great furie he preſſed forward and ſtroke the Prince ſuch a blowe that he made him aſtonied, but this miſerable man little knew that he had to do with the beſt knight in the world, for if hæ had, hæ would neuer haue made reſiſtaunce againſt him face to face. And tourning to ſtrike him once againe, hæ diſcouered the deuice that he had in his ſhælde, whereby hæ knew him, and was verie much afraide of that which ſhould ſuccæde. The Prince vnderſtood by them that were in the ſhip, that this was he which did gouerne thē, he ſtroke ſuch a blow at his right arme, that he cut it cleane off, ſo that arme and ſword fell downe vpon the hatches of the ſhip, who ſæing himſelfe ſo ill intreated, with a great noiſe and pitifull ſhrike he entered in amongſt his people, and cryed for help and ſuccour, but all was in vaine, for that ỳ Nephew of Tiberio ſtroke him ſuch another blow vpon the helme, that he parted helme and head in two pæces, ſo that he fell downe dead: but when his company ſawe this, they altogether fell vpon him with terrible furie, thinking to make and end of him, but he receiued them in ſuch order, that quickly he made thē to vnderſtand ỳ ſtrength of his victorious arme, for he neuer ſtroke blow but either hee ſlew one, or felled him to the grounde, which was the occaſion that their hartes fainted, that not one of thē which remained durſt approch, neuertheleſſe they had ſo compaſſed him about, that he could not neither on the one ſide nor on ỳ other make any way, for when he determined to put himſelfe forwards one way, then ỳ other bægan to laie on him bæhinde, ſo that of neceſſitye hæ was conſtrained in the end to ſet vpon them all at once, for that they did ſo trouble him. In this time Zoilo had ſomewhat recouered his ſtrength, and was well eaſed of his wearyneſſe, & ſæing the valiauntneſſe of his defender, he went towards ỳ place where he was ſkirmiſhing, & with his ſword

in

in both his hands,he beganne to make great deſtruction amongſt his enimies,that the ſlaughter was ſo great,& their enimies not able to make any reſiſtaunce, but like miſerable people determined rather to ſubmit themſelues to ỹ mercie of that new come Knight, then to the force of their owne armes, & falling all downe at the fæte of Roſicleer, they craued pardon of him for their offence, and mercie for their liues,the which he ſtraight way graunted,and ſayde: It is great curteſie,yea,and no litle charity ſhewed toward the euill man in puniſhing him, if that hée pretende to goe forwardes and perſeuer in his naughtie life. Neuertheleſſe if you will promiſe me, that from this daie forwardes you will amend your liues, & leaue this naughtineſſe,that you ſhall not alonely finde in me this which you dow aſke,but alſo true and perfect friendſhip at all times and in all things that you haue nede of,to the which they did all willingly ſweare they woulde performe. This bæing finiſhed, the Prince and the Tartarian embraced one another,with great loue and friendſhippe,and Roſicleer aſked of the Tartarian what was the occaſion that brought him into ſo great perill and daunger of death.The Tartarian ſaide, that by force of an aduenture he departed the emperours court,)but he did not declare the effect) and how comming in that ſmall ſhip he was taken with thoſe rouers,who brought him into that great diſtreſſe that hee had found him in. Then Roſicleer againe threw his armes about his necke,& with great loue he ſaid.

Fortune dealt but frowardly to bring thée out of Conſtantinople in ſuch a time,for to leade thée vnto this perill, and ſo beganne to tell him of all that hée had paſſed in the Countrie of Greece.And when he heard him name the Ladie Tetighiaſa,he ſhaked like the leaues of a trée and ſayde. Oh for Gods ſake my Lorde, let not my eares heare the name of that thing which my heart doth ſo much abhorre and deteſt.For heare I dow ſweare vnto thée, that liuing I will burie my ſelfe in this Sea,rather then to abide that ſpæch.

At the which wordes the Prince was verie ſore troubled, but a certaine aduenture which chaunced him at that verie ſame time, cauſed him to forgette this his troubled minde.

¶ How the king of Tire gaue an aſſault to robbe the ſhippe where the Prince was, and how the ſame King was ouercome. Chap. 10.



Odeinly amongeſt the knights of thoſe rouers that had eſcaped from the handes of the Prince, there aroſe a great tumult and ſhowting, with terrible ſhrikes, calling vpon their Gods for aide and ſuccour, and the Marriners in great haſt beganne to vngrapple and loſe their ſhippes the one from the other, and with as great haſt as they could they hoiſed vp their ſailes, for to flye away and eſcape from the perill which they beheld verie neere at hand. But when Roſicleer ſaw this tumulteous crye, with a very angrie voice hee ſayde. What noyſe is this amongeſt you captiue people? What ſodaine feare is this that is come vpon you, that with ſo great haſt you prepare your ſelues to runne awaye. Lorde aunſwered one of them, great reaſon wee haue to make all this haſt which we dw, for you ſhall vnderſtand, that there approcheth nigh vnto vs either dreadful death or cruell impriſonment. This noble and valyaunt Prince loked about on euery ſide to ſee what the occaſion ſhould bee that ſhould cauſe them to worke this fact: and ſtraight waies hee diſcouered a verie faire and rich Gallie which came towardes the place where as they abode, with theyr Sailes aloft and a proſperous wind, ſo that the Gallie in a manner ſeemed to flye vppon the water. Roſicleer without any alteration aſked them, ſaying.

Tell mee who is it that commeth in yonder Gallie, that hath put you in ſo much feare. Valyaunt Knight (ſaid they) there commeth in yonder Gallie the king of Tire, a mighty

and

and ſtrong giant being a rouer, we are not able fully to cer- „
tifie you of his great ſtrength & deformitie, but of this wee „
are aſſured, ỹ the very gods in heauen do feare him, his life „
and cuſtome is to rob all ỹ euer he doth meete, & if it ſo fall „
out that any doe make reſiſtaunce againſt him, hee ſtraight „
commaundeth them the point of the ſword with extreame „
crueltie: ſo heere gentle knight iudge whether we haue cauſe „
or no to do our endeauour for to auoide this great danger. „
The prince hearing all this which they of the ſhip told him, began to make himſelfe readie to the battaile, and laced on his helme, and put all things in verie good order, and when that all was readie hee ſayde vnto them that were with him.

O you people of little courage & ſmall ſtrength, I ſee well „
you are all baſe minded, and that there is no hardineſſe in „
you, but onely for vile matters, get you downe and hide you „
in the pumpe of the ſhippe, for I will not conſent that anye „
of you ſhall run away, neither ſhall your cries excuſe me of „
this battaile, and ſo with a lowde voice he commaunded to „
beare vp the helme, that the ſhip might run right vpon the „
Gally. The Tartarian ſeeing that they pretended to giue the „
enterprize, commaunded thoſe that were with him ſtraight waies to put his veſſell in very good order, of the which it had great neede, ſo with as great haſt and ſwiftneſſe of ſaile as was poſſible, they procured that the Shippe and Gallie might ioyne both together, and in verie ſhort time they were come ſo nigh each to other, that any man might well diſcouer and perceiue all that was in the Gallie of theyr aduerſarie. This valiaunt and worthy Roſicleer ſawe the great Gyaunt where hee ſate in the middeſt of the poope of the Gallye in a Chaire, where they verie plainely ſawe his countenaunce was ſo terrible, and his bodie ſo great, that all thoſe which were preſent with Roſicleer were afraide to beholde him. And when the Gyaunt vnderſtode that thoſe which were in ỹ ſhip would not alonely defende themſelues, but alſo offend their enimies, his rage was ſuch, that in great haſt he aroſe and with a mighty voice he called

for

for his armour, vttering these words.

" O you people most vnfortunate from whence hath com this " hardinesse vnto you, to offend the King of Tyre, vnderstan- " ding and knowing, that I am not onely feared of men, but " also the Gods in the high heauens do tremble at my name, " and desire to haue my friendship. Then Rosicleer answered " and said. Make thy reckoning, that thou hast said euen as " much as nothing, for of my selfe I speake, that I am none " of the Gods thou namest, neither know I thee by thy name " thou tellest, nor yet do I desire thy friendship, nor any others " that practiseth the like workes, as thou dost, neither do I " esteeme thy threatnings, nor yet thy furious coũtenance, ne- " ther can thy great body put me in any feare. And with this, he commaunded the marriners to graple the shippe & Galley together very strongly. Which when this fierce King sawe, with great anger he arose out of his chaire, and not tarryeng to lace on his helme, would haue entered into the shippe: but Rosicleer perceiuing his pretence, thrust him with so great force with both his hands vpon the brest, that he made him to fall backwardes into his owne galley, and said. Stand back thou infernall creature, & take thee to thy armor, what, dost thou think that thou meetest with such as thou art wont to do, to feare them with thy diuelish countenaunce? Thou shalt haue nede both of armour & handes, for to deliuer thee from the punishment of the iust Iudge, whose reward shal now be executed vpon thee, for thy vniust workes, and cruell customes, wherein thou hast long continued.

There was neuer seene amongst sauage beasts so much anger, as at this resistance appeared in the Giant, and with the madnesse of his hart, he drew out his mightie and heauie sworde, wherewith hee would haue stroken Rosicleer, but this vallant knight with great discreation stepped on y one side, so that his blowe was discharged in vaine, onelye it stroke vpon the side of the shippe, and it fell with such great strength that it cut the shippe downe, euen with the galley.

This

This noble Græke was nothing at all idle, but hauing his rare and precious Swoorde, which Quéene Iulia had sent him, in his hand, hée stroke a terrible and fierce blow at the Gyauntes face, but by reason hée was so farre off, hée could not reach it, but that the point of his sharpe Swoord onely passed through his cheekes, but if hée coulde haue comprehended more of his head with that blow, he had made an end of the battaile. This furious Gyaunt when he saw his bloud before him, he gaue a terrible groane, and therewith toke his broad Swoorde in both his handes, and with blaspheming and cursing his Gods, he lift it vp for to strike this valiaunt Græke, who seeing it to descende, determined not to receiue so doubtfull a blow, but with great and singular wisedome deliuered himselfe from it. The blow was such that if it had not doubled in the mayne sayle which somewhat disturbed it, it had ben sufficient to haue deuided the Shippe in peeces. This valiaunt and martiall Prince, which with great discreation and aduisement sustayned this battaile, had alwaies a verye good eye to the Gyaunt, who for to vnlose his Swoorde, where it was fast in the Shippe, was inforced to put his lefte hand to holde fast by the shippe side, whereat Rosicleer stroke with such furie that the Gyants hand remained fast to the Shippes side, deuided from the arme. But when this terrible and fierce Gyaunt saw himselfe lame, and that hée had cleane lost his lefte hand, hée bégan a newe to curse and blaspheme his Gods, and procured to hurt this Græke by all meanes possible that hee could inuent, but he prouided so to the contrarie, that not one blow which the Gyaunt stroke should either touch or hurt him, in such sort, that at last when this furious & outragious diuell striuing to strike this Græke Knight, was driuen to ballaunce his bodye, thereby to reach at him, this Knight let passe the same blowe euen as hée did all the rest of his blowes, and in passing by hée gaue him such a cruell blowe vpon the right arme, that he cut it off almost by the elbowe.

And when this miserable king sawe himselfe without

out hands, he gaue a great cry and rored like a furious bul, and therewith he claſped himſelfe to the maſt of the galley, and with great eaſe he pulled it out of his place, and in an infernall rage, he would haue entered into the ſhippe, but Roſicleer with his handes once againe thruſt him on the breaſt in ſuch wiſe that he was conſtrained to fall downe vpon the ſide of the galley, and by reaſon of his hugeneſſe & great waight, he lighted with the one half of his bodie ouer bord: and becauſe he had not his hands, he could not helpe himſelfe, but tumbled with his head forwards, into the deepe & wide Sea, wherein beeing drenched, he finiſhed his miſerable and vnhappie daies. Then thoſe which were of his Gallie, ſeeing this his wretched end, and fearing theyr owne miſfortune, in a meruailous great haſt vngrappeled the Ship, which was done with ſuch ſpeede, that when Roſicleer remembred himſelfe, he had no time to offende them, nor to do them any more harme. Then thoſe which were in his Ship and had beheelde this ſhort and victorious battaile, beganne a new to fall downe at his feete & moſt humbly craued pardon for their former feare. Then the Prince turned towards the Tartarian, who all the time of this conflict, was beholding his excellent and mightie ſtrength, and much meruailed at that which he had ſeene, and aſked of him what hee hadde determined to doe. And the Tartarian anſwered, that he would in no wiſe depart from his commaundement, and being in talke, they vpon a ſodaine ſawe two ſhippes, which ſeemed vnto them, that they were in a great fight. Theſe Princes were meruailous deſirous to be with them, to vnderſtand what they were. So this valyaunt Greeke, tourning to the Tartarian, hee ſaid, Prince of Tartaria followe mee, and in great haſt hee leaped into his Boate, and he was no ſooner entered there, but that it beegaune to make waye like a Thunder bolt in the aire, ſo that it ſeemed ſparkes of fire flew out of the water, in ſuch ſort that the Tartarian hadde no time to followe him, but by reaſon of the ſwiftneſſe, hee had quickely loſt the ſight of him.

So for that it is requiſite, let vs leaue this Tartarian, who was very ſorrowfull being left alone, and commaunded the marriners to make way with his ſhippe, towards the other two that were a fighting. So this valiaunt Roſicleer ſayled on in his inchaunted boate, not without great ſorrow, for that vpon a ſodaine he had loſt his perfect friend: neuertheleſſe for that he did vnderſtād that he was carried to conclude the things that were more for his contentment, he was driuen to comfort himſelf, with that which moſt hee loued. So with theſe great thoughts, hee ſailed two dayes without any aduenture worthy the telling. But this third day very earely in the morning, at ſuch time as Appollo ſhewed abroad his glittering beames, they diſcouered land, whether the barke with terrible furie made away: and it ſeemed vnto him to be a very ſmall Iland, where they arriued, neuertheleſſe by the proſpect of ẏ riuers, it appeared to be a place of great delight, and full of meddowes and other greene fieldes. So by the reſting of this barke a grounde, Roſicleer vnderſtood that ther hee ſhould goe a land, wherefore he deſcended out of the barke, and after him came his good horſe, and to the end he would trauell in more ſafetie, he mounted on his backe, and loked round about him, if hee could diſcouer any way or path. But not farre from the place whereas he was, hee beheld very faire and ſumptuous buildings, wherwith he toke the way that led him thether, and being nigh therunto, he ſaw ẏ it was old ẏ ancient building. And as he went round about it a while for to beeholde the ſame, he ſaw ẏ ouer the principall gate, was this ſuperſcription written. This is the famous and auncient Temple of the goddes Venus, from whence the noble Paris of Troy, ſtole the faire Queene Helena: this is the Iland of the mother of that cruell Cupide, the greateſt ſower of diſcord in all the world. This valiant Knight did very much content himſelf in beholding that old and ſumptuous Temple, the name wherof was ſpred through all the world, and left not anye thing, neither without nor within, but beheld it fully to his contentment. After that he had ſpent a little time in peruſing

ſing this he put himſelfe in a ſtraight way, which was not farre from a foote path thereby, whereas he ſaw a man that was cutting of woode, of whom he aſked what countrie it was, & who was Lord of it. This man perceiuing that hee demaunded ſomwhat of him, was not able to anſwere him, but made ſignes vnto him ỳ he was dumbe, & moreouer, ỳ he ſhould returne backe againe, giuing him to vnderſtande that if he did proceede forwards, he ſhould finde great perill. This noble Roſicleer ſayd then to himſelfe, I do not know what ſhall chaunce or happen mée: notwithſtanding, if a thouſand that had their tongues ſhould tell me, (yet would I not doo it, nor leaue off to follow this my pretended purpoſe) much more thou, whom I cannot vnderſtand. And ſo without any more tarrying, he tourned vnto his new bégun iourney, and at the going vp of a hill, hée beheld a Caſtle of a mightie and ſtraunge bigneſſe, which was edified vpon another hills ſide. Ye was a good mile from it, when he diſcouered it, and ſo iourneying thetherward, hee had not trauailed farre, when he found himſelfe in a faire, broad, & ſmooth way, whereinto when he entred, he ſaw certaine footing of horſes, which appeared not to be made long béefore, but that lately they had paſſed that way: the which footings he followed, although hee found other faire wayes, and as much occupied as that wherein he was, yet for all that, becauſe he would ſée what footings they wer, he would follow that way and none other, ſo not very farre from that place wher he was, he heard (although it was somwhat diſtaunt from him, to his ſéeming) a great ruſhing of harneſſe, & the more he trauailed forwards, ỳ more plainer his eares wer occupied with this martiall muſick. Till in ỳ end, drawing nérer, he perceiued it was a notable & well fought battaile, for which cauſe he pricked his horſe onwardes the faſter, in ſuch ſort, ỳ at ỳ going down from a mountain, into a fayre & broad plaine, he beheld at the foot of the caſtle verie much people and amongſt them Giants, all which were in battaile againſt one onely knight, of a meruailous great & well proportioned ſtature all armed in ruſſet harnes without any

other

other deuise thereon, who with his sword in both his hands made a meruailous & cruell slaughter, for that at his féete ther lay many of the knights dead and also of the Gyants, notwithstanding they did trouble him very much, so that he was brought to a very ill passe, for he had hewing, & striking on him more then forty knights & two great Gyants, it was a thing of great admiration to sée how the knight did beturre himselfe beholding himselfe so beset, yet for all that ther was nothing looked for of him but death. Somewhat on the one side a little distaunt from the battell, hée saw a Damzell of a meruailous & excellent beautie, who w̃ great sorrow complained hir selfe. This valiaunt warriour séeing what this knight did for his defence, and by his mightye prowesse appeared to be of high estate, he descended and left his horse, & with a quick pace he procéeded forwards with his sword in his hand, pretending to aide and helpe that one knight, séeing he had such néede therof. Before I procéede any farther in this battaile, I will (although it bée somewhat troublesome to the reader) declare the rest of ỹ terrible battaile that was betwéen the two gyants in the great hall of the Court of the Emperour. You haue heard how we lefte these two Gyants Bustrafo and Bramidoro in great contention of the battaile, each one of them endeauouring thẽselues to winne the victory, although of each part they denyed to either other the same. He that séemed to be most troubled in this battaile, was the Sardenian King, and with the thicke breath that procéeded from his impacient hart, his face was inflamed with the heate thereof. The which his aduersarye perceiued, & like a terrible and outragious Tiger, hée liste vp his mightie sword, letting it fall w̃ such furie, as though fire hadde fallen from heauen. The King séeing that by no meanes hee could escape it, liste vp likewise his sworde, toward that terrible blow: but by reason that that of the giaunt Bustrafos was of better stéele, and of more strength, he cut the sword of the Kings in two péeces, and the blow descended vpon his shoulder, and did a little hurt him. When this King saw that his sword was in two péeces, hée was

ſomewhat amazed, yet for all that, he left not his knightlye courage, but with a valiant hart preſſed to his enimie, and with that litle that remained of his ſword, he ſtroke Buſtrafo, vpon his helme ſuch a blow, (that if it had bene with the whole ſword, hée had cleared himſelfe at that time of this daunger) yet it was not of ſo ſmall force, but it cut off one of his eares, and carried away a péece of the iaw bone. This Giant Buſtrafo féeling himſelfe ſo ſore hurt with this terrible blow, pretended to repay him with double intereſt (the which if it had chaunced to take effect) it had made an end of his daies: but this new conuerted Knight, ranne in vnder the blow of Buſtrafo, ſaying: O Ieſus, kéepe and defend this thy new conuerted ſeruaunt. And ſo ioyning together, they embraced one another, wheras bégan a meruailous & ſtrong wraſtling, wherein they continued a good while proouing their ſtrengths, and procuring the victorie, the one ouer the other, till at the laſt both being not a little weary, they fell downe to the ground, tumbling héere and ther from one place to another, without loſing their holde, & in this ſtrife Buſtrafo his helme fell from his head, by reaſon that the laces wherewith it was made faſt, were cut in péeces, ſo that his terrible and mightie face was plainely diſcouered. But they ſéeing that this wraſtling did litle profit them, vnlooſed themſelues: but the king was the firſt that roſe vp, as one that ſhewed himſelfe to haue the beſt ſtomacke, and ſéeing that all Buſtrafo his head was bare, in that he wanted his helme, he bent his armed fiſt, and ſtroke him ſuch a blowe vpon his forehead, that his braines flew out, and his eyes ſtarted out of his head, and there this vnfortunate Gyaunt fell dead to the ground. The King ſéeing then ſo good a ſucceſſe in his battaile, fell downe vpon his knées to ý ground, and lifting vp his eyes vnto heauen he ſaide. I giue thée thankes moſt mightie Ieſus, that thou gaueſt me to vnderſtand thy power, & lightneſt my vnderſtanding for to leaue this error in the which I was led, and to come to the knowledge of thy true light. Then the Emperour came vnto him and imbraced him, ſaieng. Worthy Gyaunt, vnto whom it

hath

hath pleased God to impart so much of his grace, I do most „
hartely desire thée to tell who thou art, that we may know „
who it is, that hath shewed vs so much fauour and curtesie, „
to the end we may render thée thy due deserts, for this thy „
worthye déede. The Giant toke off his helme, and shewed „
his face which was of a sober countenance, all to be spotted
with his owne blond, and without moouing from the place
wherein hée kneeled, replied and said, I am Bramidoro king
of Sardenia, who of long time haue bene subiect to the super- „
stitions of fained Gods, and by the prowesse of thy sonne the „
Knight of the Sunne, I am come to the knowledge of the „
almightie God, and am now ready to receiue the sacrament „
of baptisme. Therefore I desire thée (souereigne Emperor) „
that it may be straight waies ministred vnto me, and like- „
wise one that may instruct me in all that shall be necessa- „
rie for my saluation. The Emperour receiued great ioy to „
see a person of so great estimation, tourned vnto the know- „
ledge of the law and seruice of God, and said. Noble King
you shall a while repose your selfe, to prouide remedy in the „
curing and healing of your wounds, for it is right néedful, & „
when you are well of them, then shall all things be fulfil- „
led that you do desire, that shall be necessary for you. This
he said, for that he would haue it done with the pompe and
right, that to so high a thing is requisite, and with the solem-
nitie ỹ in such cases they accustomed to vse: & saying these
words he toke him by the hand, & raised him frõ ỹ ground,
& led him vnto the chamber of the knight of the Sun, where
as he was cured of his wounds that he receiued in the bat-
taile, and was visited of all the Kings, Princes & Knightes,
that were in the Court. The dead Giant was drawen out
of the pallaice, and carried without the citie, where, in stéed
of a graue to bury him, they made a great fire and consu-
med him to ashes. The third day after this aduenture was
ended, ỹ king of Hungary departed wt many other knights,
that were very desirous to go into their owne countries to
take their ease, at which the Emperour remained very pen-
siue. So the other day following, being on a sunday, they did

ordaine a ſolẽpne feaſt for to miniſter the ſacrament of baptiſme vnto Bramidoro, for he had ſo great deſire to be baptiſed, that he would tarrie no longer.

How the king of Sardenia was baptiſed, and how that a Lady demanded a promiſe of the Emperour, which he granted, for the which all the Court was very ſad. Cap. 11.



THE next daie in the morning bẽing Sunday, as you haue heard, the king of Sardenia was brought to the Church to receiue his Baptiſme, accompanied with al the nobilitie that at that preſent were in the Emperours Court. Ther went with him for his Godfathers, the king of Bulgaria, and the king of Niſa, and the Emperour vſing his magnanimitie went alſo with him ſide by ſide, vntill he came to the Church of Saint Sofia, wheras the Cardinall of Conſtantinople ſayd Seruice and did baptiſe him, and confirme his owne proper name, when this was done w̃ all the ſolempnitie belonging, they returned againe vnto the Pallaice, in the which vpon ẏ one ſide was a very faire Damzell, apparelled all in blacke, hauing no company, but alonely one Page, ſhee hadde hir beautiful eyes all ſwollen with weeping, hir countenaunce was very ſadde, which did very well declare the ſorrowe of hir hart, and beholding ſo noble a company to enter in, ſhe was in quiet till ſuch time as the Emperour entered, and by his ſide the king of Sardenia, who was meruailouſly well adorned, & of godly greatneſſe, & of faire and gentle diſpoſition. This damzell did well know which was ẏ Emperour, whom ſhe did come to ſeeke for, ſo drawing nigh vnto him there diſtilled frõ hir ſorrowfull eies ſalt teares, reſembling orientall pearles, which ranne downe hir cheekes, giuing very ſorowfull and grieuous ſighs, that all thoſe which ſaw hir, were moued with compaſſion. The emperour when he heard this heauy mourning, loked thetherward, and when he ſaw hir vſing his accuſtomed vertue, hee put himſelfe before hir, and

And at ſuch time as he would haue knéeled downe(héeing hir ſo faire, & of ſo excellent beautie)would not conſent vnto it,but kept hir vp by the hand,and with ſweet wordes gaue hir a comfortable welcome, & like entertainment.Hir ſeuere countenance,with hir well proportioned body did declare that ſhe was worthy of all this honour.To the comfortable words which the Emperour had ſpoken, this faire and diſtreſſed Lady anſwered.

Surmounted Emperour,this my great ſorrow is ſo rooted in me,that I haue no ioy to receiue any comfort,neuertheleſſe if it be true which I haue heard,both of thee and thy royall Court,the fame wherof,all the world doth reſound: then I am ſure that thou wilt not denye me of my requeſt, for that hetherto thou haſt not at any time denied any lady or Damoſell, which hath requeſted the ſame, hauing neceſſitie and néede thereof: much more now, being demaunded of thée by ſo afflicted a Damoſell as I am,being martired by the ſonne of that adultreſſe Venus,whom I may reſemble vnto ỹ Vulture,which alwaies taketh for hir repaſt and féeding, the bowells of that vnfortunate Ixion,and the more paine he ſuffereth, the more hir hunger increaſeth, ſo that euermore by hir grédineſſe,he ſuſtaineth a laſting griefe. Euen ſo(ſouereigne Lord)loue doth torment me,& alwayes is gnawing of theſe my afflicted bowels,yet neuer do I féele them without loue,but rather alwaies,both in the Winter and Summer,in preſence & in abſence it doth ſtill increaſe: ſo that I am at no time without loue,and continuallye my faith increaſeth: and by no meanes can I receiue remedie for this griefe,but by the force and ſtrength of ſome ſtraũger,whom I do ſéeke for continually, with great ſorrowe. Therfore I do deſire thée (O ſoueraigne Emperour) if at any time thou haſt paſſed ỹ paines of loue,that thou wouldeſt pitie them that are ſo ſore afflicted & vnfortunate, and do not deny me thy aide & help: for if I were the daughter of baſe parents, yet in reſpect I am a woman,thou art bound to ſuccour and aide me.Much more,for that I am Lidia the daughter of the King of Lidia, who for the loue of

" that liberall Brenio of Lusitania, I am constrained to procure
" his libertie, and for the performaunce therof, your highnes
" shall not deny me a promise or bone that I will demaund, &
" in so doing, thou shalt performe all that is due vnto thy e-
" state, and by duety thou dwest owe vnto such as I am. The
emperour who was meruailous attentiue vnto all that this
faire Lady had said, & very much beholding hir great beau-
" tie, he aunswered and said. Of my faith faire Lady, I will
" not let to remedye this thy sorrow, much more then I am
" bound to dwe by my high estate, and will procure by all
" meanes to ease this thy afflicted euill. Therefore now aske
" what thou sæmest best for thy purpose, for I am hære ready
" to performe all, that by thée shall be demaunded of me. The
" Ladie said, I loked for no other thing but this, of thy Em-
" periall dignitie. Therfore (louereign Emperour) it is requi-
" site that alone without any other company, you goe with
mée to giue me this remedie. The Emperour although hée
sawe that it was a haynous thing at that time to leaue his
whole Court and estate, yet did he not show any such coun-
tenance, but with a valiant courage he called for his armor
the which was straight way brought vnto him, being all of
russet colour, and the shæld of the same colour, & there was
portraied in it the picture of leane death, with a sharp flesh
hooke in his hand. All the Kings and Lordes that were pre-
sent at that time, would haue dissuaded him from this his
enterprise, but especially and aboue all the rest, the ancient
Princes of Clarencia sayde. Soueraigne Lorde, it is not
" conuenient nor agréeable vnto your high estate, to ven-
" ture your selfe in that, which appertaineth vnto trauail-
" ling and ventrous Knights: behold Lord, Princes, although
" they be liberall in promising, yet they ought to moderate
" themselues in performing, neither should princes be so boun-
" tifull of themselues: for many times by procuring to extoll
" their fame, they abate the worthinesse of their estate. And
" againe, he that hath not to whom to giue reckoning, but vn-
" to himselfe, to him alone doth Fortune faile. Notwithstan-

ding,

ding, thou (O souereigne Emperour) art more bound to
loke & haue a care vnto your owne subiectes, more then to
your owne person. And a good Prince ought rather to sub-
iect his will to ỹ fauouring of his people, then to please his
owne appetite. For which cause, honourable Lord, you must
pardon vs, for that we will not willingly consent, that one-
ly for desire of this pompous fame, that you doe pretende
we should lose your person. Tell mée (noble Emperour) if
that Fortune should as shée was wont to dwe) tourne hir
whele, and kæpe your honour from vs, it would not onely
make an ende of you, but also depriue vs of the most noblest
and worthiest Lord vnder the Sunne. All those that were
there present, and heard these reasons which the Prince vt-
tered, did greatly praise and allowe his discréete sayeng. So
this honourable Emperour without shewing any alterati-
on, aunswered and said. Noble Kings and Princes, and my
very friends, I giue you great thankes for the good will you
do show mée, in that you would not that I shuld be absent
from you: likewise you shall vnderstande, that it doth as
much græue me, to seperate my selfe from your companies,
and I do think my selfe blessed to haue such noble Knights
as you bée vnto my subiects: not withstanding you must con-
sider, that as you dwe loue the bodye and person of your
Prince, so likewise you should desire and procure his fame
and honour, for you know you haue many meates that are
very sauourie to the talt of anie man, and yet to the con-
trarye very hurtfull to the stomacke. It is a verye good
thing to liue vnder compasse, and that gouerning is good, by
the which fame and honour is not diminished, as this, for
that he that is bounde, must procure, perfourme, and main-
tayne his promise. For if I of my owne fræ will, and to
fæde mine owne appetite, hadde procured and mœued this
iourney, you had had great reason for to haue dissuaded
mée, but bæing sought for, and procured hæreto, by this
noble and distressed Damosell for his defence, then what
reason is it that I should abandon my faith? Tell mée

" I pray you if now I should falsifie my promise, what hope
" of confidence hereafter shoulde remaine in you of my ver-
" tue? Of truth I say vnto you, that Prince which doth not
" keepe and maintaine his faith which he hath promised in
" giuing his word, hee was vnworthy of life. And seeing that
" I haue graunted this iourney, although you bee displeased
" therwith, I beseech you comfort your selues, for that by in-
" stice I am constrained to goe, trusting in almighty God to
" returne againe vnto you with great honour and renowne.
" What would the worlde say, when that for feare of hu-
" mane thinges I leaue to mainetaine iustice and righteous-
" nesse, and the obseruation & keeping of my worde: Surely
" they would report me for a Prince of small vertue, & deeme
" you (so perswading me) not worthie of a good Prince, for y
" many times God doth shew his power, whereas the weak-
" nesse of humane things bee without all hope. Therefore I
" do desire you all (my friendes) that you will not withdrawe
" me from this my pretended purpose, for if I were not wil-
" ling therunto, you were all bound to complaine of mee. And
" making an end of these his reasons he began to arme him-
" selfe. The Empresse that of all this thing was ignorant,
when she vnderstood therof by some of them that were pre-
sent with the Emperour, she came with shedding of manie
teares for to hinder and withdraw him from his iourney:
the Emperours hart was somewhat greeued to heare hir
sorrowfull wordes, but with an heroycall courage he com-
maunded hir to returne vnto hir closet, and willed all those
that were present to goe and beare hir company, and would
that none should remaine with him but Brandimardo, vnto
whom the Emperour in great secret said: That when Ro-
sicleer or the Knight of the Sun should returne to y court,
that he should tell them that hee was gone to Lidia at the
instaunt of the Ladye, for to restore hir againe to hir King-
dome. With this hee did charge him verye much, and that
they should straight waies and without any delay de-
parte for that place: Brandimardo thought greate friend-
shippe in this which the Emperour commaunded, and gaue

him

him greate thankes, with faithfull promise to accomplish the same, and taking his leaue, the Emperour straight way entered into a Foyst that was there ready with fire oares on a side, and hoysing sayles they made such way that in a small time they had lost the sight of the Citie. This fayre Damosell was very gladde, and did exercise hir selfe in no other thing but in seruing the Emperour. In this sort they sailed all that day and all the night till the next morning: this noble Emperour sate in the powpe of the Galley, and by him sate this faire Ladye, on the one side, of whom hee asked the cause why she brought him out of Constantinople. Vnto whome with many teares distilling from hir Christalline eyes, and with great sighes that proceeded from hir dolorous hart, shée said.

I haue told you noble Emperour that the force of loue hath brought mee to this extremitie wherein you now sée me. Also I tolde you that I am Lidia, daughter vnto the king of Lidia, and was meruailously and daintely brought vp, & much set by of my parents, and now all alone with no other company then you doe sée I goe subiect vnto this miserye. The great fame of this my surmounted beauty was so spred abroade, that it was the occasion that many Knightes of straunge Countries resorted vnto the Court of the king my father, and amongst them all there was one that came from a farre, whose name was called Brenio, of the Country of Lusitania, being of a meruailous beauty and no lesse valiaancie, which did so surmount, that in all the Countrye hath neuer beene séene the like, and cruell Cupide, I know not whether it was to vse his accustomed policies, or whether he was enuious of his beautie, hée stroke me with his poisoned arrow, in such sort, that I was constrained by that force to loue this vnhappie knight, & therewith constrained to forget ý roiall estate frõ whence I descended, I did exercise my selfe in no other thing, but thinking on his loue, & determined to giue him vnderstanding thereof in as secret wise as I could, so long it lasted ý I wared blinde in loue, & feared that he would not vnderstand ý I loued him, wherefore

" foꝛe I did plainly declare it to him, which grieued him no-
" thing at all,(but rather vnto my ſæming)he was very wel
" pleaſed therewith,ſo by all meanes poſſible I did pꝛocure to
" ſpeake with him, and imagining which ſhoulde bee the beſt
" way, I thought it good to oꝛdaine a hunting,thinking there
" to haue oppoꝛtunitie to be alone in the thickeſt of the Foꝛ-
" reſt, and there to eaſe and lighten my ſelfe ſomewhat of
" that heauy loue,which by ſoꝛrow I receiued,in giuing him
" to vnderſtand the whole effect of my determined minde: ſo
" this hunting I put in vꝛe, and toke the mountaines and
" woods,and the hunts men pꝛouided the game,being a great
" Hart,which Hart was(as in the end it pꝛoued) accurſed in
" my ſight,yea,moꝛe woꝛſe then the ſheeld of Pallas in the eyes
" of Meduſa, which made all people to deſire to follow hir:
" ſo the hunts men followed their game with ſuch haſt, that
" there I was left alone,remaining only in my company this
" Knight, who was halfe perſwaded of my determination,ſo
" I had ſcant well framed my eyes to content mée in behold-
" ing of his chꝛiſtalline countenaunce,when that vppon a ſo-
" deine we were beſet and betraied of a great & furious Gy-
" aunt,and with him eight Knightes moꝛe, in ſuch ſoꝛt,that
" my Brenio had no time to defend vs, noꝛ I to call foꝛ helpe
" and ſuccour,ſo that wée were their pꝛiſoners, & they carri-
" ed vs,and put vs into their théeuiſh galley,wheras ſtraight
" way, they hoyſed ſaile, and carried vs to ſea, wée béeing
" without all hope of ſuccour, and there was I with great
" trauaile deliuered from the hands of a vile théefe,that would
" haue diſhonoured me. And ſo hauing the winde pꝛoſperous
" to their deſire, wée aꝛiued very ſhoꝛtly after at an Iland
" called Otono, which is adioyning vnto one parte of your
" Kingdome,whereas we went a lande. Noble Pꝛince,I did
" not féele ſo much foꝛce by my impꝛiſonment,neyther did I
" receiue ſo much griefe foꝛ mine own ſoꝛrow,as I did foꝛ my
" beſt beloued Brenio, who was ſo laden wᵗ yꝛons & chaynes,
" that my heart could not by any meanes ſuffer it, but I
" béeganne to call them traitours, and that they were no
" Knights,but théeues, and robbers,ſayeng that ouer one a-

lous

lone & an vnarmed knight they haue ſtrength to worke ſuch violence, but not able to make any reſiſtaance againſt armed knightes. And the Gyaunt aunſwered. Oh how ſimple doeſt thou ſhew thy ſelfe, in thinking that there is any who is able to reſiſt our ſtrength, and for that thou ſhalt vnderſtand and ſée how little wée doe eſtéme the ſtrength of men(yea,the ſtrength of the Gods wée make no reckoning of)take this Gally and all thinges that ſhall bée neceſſarie for thy voiage,& take with thée one of theſe my Pages, and goe and ſéeke the Emperour Trebatio, or eyther of his two ſonnes, whoſe names are ſpread throughout the world, and bring them hether, and ſée whether theyr ſtrength is ſufficient for to deliuer this thy Knight out of priſon.So I put this iourny ſtraight in practiſe,& departed, and in the voiage I eſcaped with great daunger to be robbed at ſea,by rouers and théeues,ſo in the ende I came and preſented my ſelfe béefore your highneſſe. The Emperour who was verie attentiue to all this which the ſorrowfull Ladie had tolde him,and vnderſtanding the cauſe of all hir trouble,he anſwered.Oh happie & venterous knight,to whō loue hath ſhewed ſo much fauour,to cauſe ſo noble a Damſell as thou art,with thy trauaile to procure his libertye:how much is he bound vnto thée faire Lady,ſéeing that thou doeſt deſerue the praiſe of all other women that hath béene wounded with loue,& theſe thy déeds to be regiſtred for a perpetuall memorie,& for an example to all other ladies. Noble Lidia,of truth I tell thée,ẏ my departure from Conſtantinople was with ſome ſorrow, to leaue my Empire & ſubiects, but now I am voide therof,& am glad ẏ I am come to procure thy remedy,& the death ſhall be vnto me a happie death, receiuing it for a lady that is ſo loyal.Theſe & ſuch like reaſon of a perfect louer ẏ Emperour expreſſed,whē vpon a ſodaine they were conſtrained to leaue the way they toke,by force of ẏ winde, which came with ſuch gales, ẏ they were faine to take another way,which carried them vnto a deſolate Iland,wher by force of wether they entered into a port, ẏ was knowen by the marriners,& ther let fall their ankor.

The

The Emperour who was moued with much compaſſion of the great trauaile of this Ladie, and ſomewhat to refreſh hir in the aire, he cauſed hir to goe a lande, and taking hir by the hand, hée did helpe hir out of the Gallie, and they reſted themſelues vpon a litle mountaine, from which place they might diſcouer a great part of the Ilande, and more they diſcouered a great way from thence, another ſmall moũtaine, vpon the which there ſæmed to be a fire, or light, and making little account therof, they aſked ſomewhat to eate, which ſtraight way was brought them by the marriners, & ſo they refreſhed themſelues. They had ſcarce made an end of eating, when that they heard a terrible ſhrike, which was ſuch, that the faire Lady loſt hir colour: but the Emperour roſe vp on his fæte, and loked round about him to ſæ if hée could perceiue what it ſhuld be, but he could ſée no more thẽ, than hæ ſaw at the firſt, and ſo returned and ſat downe againe: but he was not ſcant ſetled, when he heard the lyke ſhrike againe. The Emperour turned and roſe vp the ſecond time, and ſaid: Who art thou, that doſt thinke to make me afraide with theſe thy ſhrikes, I tell thée that thou art very much deceiued: thou wilt rather giue me occaſion thus in offending me, to ſéeke what thou art that makeſt this terrible noiſe. And with theſe words he ſaide vnto the Lady, that ſhe ſhould returne vnto the galley, for that he would goe ſée what thing it ſhould be, the which ſhe would not conſent vnto, but would néedes goe in the company of the Emperour. And when the Emperour ſaw the determination of ỹ courragious Damoſell, hée threw his ſhéeld vpon his arme, and laced and made faſt his helme, and ſo a fote they toke their way towards the place whereas the light was, for that towardes that part they heard the noiſe. And trauailing in the middeſt of the way, at the fote of a hill, they found an Image of fine Chriſtall, which ſæmed to be wrought by the handes of ſome excellent workeman, all to bée ſpotted with bloud. And it appeared by the woundes that were formed in the ſame figure, that it was the Image of one that had ſuffered great torments, as well with terrible cuttings,

of

of yrons, as with cruell whippings. The legs and the armes did ſéeme as though they had bene martired & wrong with cordes, and about the necke, as though it had bene ſtrangled with a towell hard wrong, and ther was written vpon the breaſt, with letters of liuely blood, this Epitath: I am Herea the Kings daughter of Cimarra, violated and ſlaine by Noraldino King of Numidia. And thou knight that this preſent ſpectacle ſhalt viewe, I doe deſire thee, that if thou doeſt goe forward this way, let it be with great courage, for to take vengeaunce on his crueltie, for that I am not of my ſelfe able to ſeeke reuengement. This emperour, who had wel considered ỳ great cruelty ỳ had bene vſed againſt that vnfortunate lady, being moued with great compaſſion he ſaide, I do vow that if ther be any meanes whereby to be reuenged of this thy death, to procure it with all my power: and with this determined purpoſe, they proceéded on their way, and went ſo farre, that they perceiued, that the light which they had ſéene, did proceéde of two gates of fine Chriſtall: and there they ſaw in the high way, a great piller, wheron was hanged a written table, with theſe contents: Knight looke wel vnto the oath which thou haſt taken, for that this is a perilous enterpriſe: and from this place thou haſt licenſe to retourne backe a gaine, and not to fulfill thy promiſe, for that the King of Cimarra, will not conſtraine nor force any manner of Knight. The Emperour ſaid, As well they maye raiſe from death to life all the famous Romanes, which haue béen from the time of Romulus vnto Cæſar, and all the reſt vnto this time, as to perſwade me to returne from my promiſe, which I haue made: & if they were all preſent liuing, they were not ſufficient to cauſe me to leaue my oath. Therfore héere now I do ſweare again, neuer to returne into Greece, till ſuch time, as I haue performed that which I haue ſaide. And thus burning with great deſire to ſée ỳ end of this ſorrowfull aduenture, he proceéded forwardes, vntill ſuch time as they came to the Chriſtall gates, the which they founde open, and at the threſhold of the entring there laye a long a great and huge Gyaunt, who when he ſaw this knight,

héé

he aroſe on his fæte and went into a place thereby, wheras was made faſt to a piller a verie furious griffon, which wᵭ great ſpæde he did vnloſe out of his chaines, and hée was no ſoner at liberty, but that with great fury he flew vp into the aire more ſwifter then an Eagle, and as you doe ſée a Hawke houering in the aire, till ſuch time as the Yearne riſeth out of the water, and then with great furie falleth downe right on hir pray, ſo likewiſe this furious Griffon when hée ſaw his time, with a meruailous and infernall furie deſcended right downe, but when the Emperour ſawe that he deſcended with ſuch furie, hée cauſed the Ladye to ſhrowd hir ſelfe vnder an old houſe that was there at hand, and hee couered himſelfe with his ſhéelde, and hauing his ſworde in his hande at that time as the Griffon deſcended with ſo great violence (that it ſomewhat feared the Emperour) notwithſtanding he lifted his ſhéeld for to receiue that terrible blow of his clawes, which fall was with ſo great force, that he pulled the ſhéeld cleane from his arme, but this valiant warriour ſtroke him ſuch a blow with his ſworde, ẏ he thought he had cut him in two péeces, but yet he found his feathers to be ſo harde, that he had done him no harme, & although his hard feathers did defend him, not to receiue any hurt with the ſworde, yet could it not bée but hee muſt néedes fæle ſome griefe by the greatneſſe of the blowe, for that with a gréeuous ſhrike hée mounted vp into the ayre, giuing a thouſand tournings. When the Emperour ſawe himſelfe without his ſhéeld which that infernall Birde had carried with him into the aire, and let it fall downe againe a great waies diſtant from the ſame place wher he was, it made him to haue alwaies a very good and diligent eye, to ẏ griffon to marke when he would diſcend, who ſtraight way began to deſcend, vnto his thinking with much more furye then at the firſt. And loke euen as the Eagle when ſhée hath caught a Viper, doth procure to pull off hir ſkinne in ſtriking hir vppon a harde ſtone, whereby to ſaue hir ſelfe that ſhée bée not ſtriken with that ſtrong poiſon, and ſo in

safetie to deuoure hir pray: euen so did this Griffon flying hére and there from one place to another, to sée where hée might lay holde on the Emperour, without receiuing such lyke harme as béefore hée did. And as by force of the water the Mill carrieth the stone about with great furie, euen so this worthie warriour bestowed himselfe for to defende him from this furious beast, yet hée could not doe so much, but that he must nédes receiue some of his terrible blowes, and his swiftnesse was such in rising into the aire, and falling downe, that hée could not fasten one blow on him with his sword, that he did hurt the Emperour with his clawes sometimes on the armes and sometime on the healme, but yet could hée neuer haue any fast holde on him to do him harme, for that hée neuer stode still, but mouing hére and there, shunning his blowes, & euen as a furious Lyon, who in the time of sléepe is molested and troubled with small beasts, créeping on him in all places, which he féeling w̄ his mouth, snappeth hére and there on euery part rounde about, so long, til in ỹ end being throughly incēsed, at once they pay for all the iniuries that they did him: euen so this valiaunt Emperour vsed himselfe with this terrible Griffon, flourishing with his sword round about on euerie side, awaiting opportunitie at one time to requite him for all the sorrow that hée did him, but in the ende séeing that it did little profit him in doing this, he sodeinely bethought him of another remedie, which was to knéele downe with one of his knées on the grounde, that when the Griffon shoulde descend more lower to hurt the Emperour, that then with as great lightnesse as he coulde, hée would rise vp, and with more ease strike him, which he presently did put in practise. So this terrible Griffon descended downe, and with one of his sharp clawes he clasped fast holde on the Emperours healme. Then the Emperour séeing this fierce Griffon now to discend down more lower then he did before at other times, he thought it not good to be idle at anye time, but with exceéding greate lightnesse he arose vp and carryed

this

his ſwoꝛd right vp with the point, and by reaſon that hée was faſt with his clawes vpon the helme, he could not looſe himſelfe ſo quickly, but that the Emperour did hurt him in ſuch ſoꝛte, that hee thꝛuſt all his ſwoꝛd into his bellie. And when the Griffin felt himſelfe ſo ſoꝛe hurt, he pulled with ſo great ſtrength, that if the helme had not left his head, he had pulled the Emperour vp into the aire with him, which wold not haue fallen out well with him, but God was ſo pleaſed, that in that time the laſes with the which it was made faſt bꝛake. This Griffin fœling himſelfe pearced with this moꝛtall wound, cut thꝛough ẏ aire, as a whirlewind, with great and terrible ſhꝛikes, but ſtraight he fell downe dead to the earth, foꝛ that the woumde reached vnto his hart.

The Gyaunt when hæ beheld his Griffin to bæ dead, made no moꝛe a dw, but entred into the caſtle to arme himſelfe, the which the Emperour well perceiued, which made him to make ſpæde to fetch his ſhæld, wheras this infernal bird had let it fall. So not long after this gyant came foꝛth all armed wt armour of a boyled ſkinne, with a great club full of knots in his hand, ſayeng with a hoarſe and terrible voice. Doe not think thou knight of the Diuell, foꝛ all that thou haſt ſlaine the kæper of my Caſtell, that the entering is any whit the moꝛe at thy commaundement, and hæreof thou maiſt be ſure, wherat ẏ Emperour anſwered neuer a woꝛd, but rather inuited him to battel, ꝛ they ioyned together like two furious tigers, hauing their defence in their hands, burning with great fury the one againſt the other. Then they thꝛuſt themſelues foꝛwardes with meruailous foꝛce and ſpæde one againſt another, diſcharging their great and mightie blowes that it was wonderfull to bæholde. But the Emperour did not determine to receiue ẏ blowes of his enemie fully and whole, but rather pꝛocured that he ſhould diſcharge them in vaine, and ſo hæ did, foꝛ the Gyaunt lift vp his great and huge clubbe to ſtrike him therewith a marualious and mightie blowe, which when the Emperour perceiued it to deſcend, he ſtepped a ſide wt ſo great lightneſſe that it ſæmed to be wonderfull, in ſuch ſoꝛt that his clubbe

fell

fell downe to the ground without doing any harme. Then this valiaunt warriour before the Gyaunt had time to recouer and lift vp his beaute club againe, stroke him on both his armes such a terrible & furious blowe, that he cut them both off, and they fell to the ground. When the Gyant sawe himselfe so sore arayed, like a rauening Wolfe he ranne to him, and would haue imbraced him, but the Emperour with his accustomed knighthode gaue a thrust at his breast, that by the great strength thereof hée thrust his swoorde cleane through his body, so that the point came out at his back almost the halfe sword, wherewith the Gyant gaue so great a fall to the earth, that it séemed a whole Towre had tumbled downe. When the Emperour saw this good successe he had against his enimies, and in so short time, hée knæled downe vpon his knées, & gaue thankes vnto our Lord Iesu Christ for the victory, in ouercomming two such infernall monsters as they were. The faire Ladie séeing the Emperour in battaile with so diuellish a monster, ran and fetched his helme which ỳ Griffon had carried away, & brought it vnto him with all the spæde that might bée. The Emperour who perceiued the great care which the Ladie had, & the diligence she vsed to help him in so great nœde, hæ gaue hir hartie thankes, and toke his helme, and put it on his head and made it fast, and when he saw that ther was none to disturbe him of his entering into ỳ Castell, hée went vnto the dore wheras he found the Gyant lying along at the threshold, and entered in thereat, and lead this faire Ladye with him by the hande, for that shee woulde neuer leaue him, and so they entred in at the Castle gates, without finding any to disturbe them, & passed on till they came vnto a faire large and great hall, wheras by certaine windowes very subtilly deuised from the toppe thereof they receiued light, and in the middest therof was a stately bedde adorned all with blacke clothes, and vppon the bedde was the perfect figure of that Image of Christall, which they saw in the middest of the high waye. The Emperour could not by any manner of meanes refraine from shedding

of ſome ſorrowfull teares, in ſeing before him ſo lamentable a ſpectacle, and to thinke that ſo great cruelti ſhoulde be ſhewed vnto a womã of ſuch beautie. This pitifull Emperour had great compaſſion when he ſaw firſt the counterfait of this tormented creature, but much more without al compariſon, his ſorrowfull hart lamented when he beheelde the naturall body, for that all hir fleſh ſeemed to be chriſtalline ſtones, by the great whitenelle and beautie it had, ſhee had all hir legges ſpoiled with the torments of cordes, and all hir body wounded with whippings, and that cruell and ſtrangling towell about hir necke. The Emperour was a great while in grieuous contemplation in beholding of this lamentable ſight (as I haue tolde you) and with him was alwaies this faire and beautifull Lidia, till at the laſt, lifting vp his eies, hee ſaw a Table which hanged vppon a beame, whereon was written theſe wordes which followeth.

" O thou Knight which haſt paſſed by the kæpers of this " my pittifull daughter, if thou wilt confirme the oath which " thou haſt made, lift vp the pillow whereas hir wretched " head doth lye, and vnder it thou ſhalt finde written in a " ſcrowle of Parchment all the ſucceſſe of hir beanie and " ſorrowfull death, for that in vnderſtanding it, thou ſhalt bee " the more prouoked to incourage thy ſelfe to procure hir re- " uengment, ſeing that ſo much without fault or deſert ſhee " ſuffered it. The emperour did as was ther declared, and ra- " tified and confirmed ther a new his oath, and lifting vp the " pillowe hee found a ſheete of Parchment rolled vp together, " which he opened. Heere will I make an ende of this Chap- " ter, to receiue ſome eaſe in telling of this that is paſt, & turne " vnto the other, to declare vnto you the moſt dolorus & grie- " uous hiſtory that euer hath bene heard or ſeene.

¶ How the Emperour did open the ſcrowle of Parchment, and therein read the cauſe why this dead Lady was ſlayne, with ſuch cruell tyrannie, and of the great ſorrow that hee receiued for the ſame. Cap. 12.

YE faire Ladies and Damoſells, for that there bee ſome, which without hauing anye knowledge of your deſeruings, that take great pleſure with their venemous words and poiſoned pennes to intreate euill of your honors and fame, publiſhing vniuſtly that, which with iuſt reaſon and by nature, they are bound with all their abilitie to reſtraine. Likewiſe, all valyaunt Knights, are bound either by force of armes, or elſe by ſufficient concluſions, to defend your fame, from ſuch falſe detractors. So heere therfore I doo requeſt, all you bountifull and beautifull Ladies, to pardon this my ouer much hardineſſe, for that heere I preſume to declare that, which ſhould be of all vnderſtode, & in eſpeciall of your firme loialtie, hauing for a mirrour before your eyes this faire Lady, who hath not deſerued to ſuffer ſo cruell a death. So as I haue tolde you, the Emperor toke from vnder the pillowe, the ſcroll of parchment, and opening it he read it ouer, which contained theſe ſorrowful words.

I the beaute and vnhappie King of Cimarra, which in times paſt haue bene much eſteemed, by reaſon of my great eſtate, wherein Fortune fauoured mee very much, as alſo for two faire daughters, in all points ſo exquiſite, as Nature could poſſible frame, in whom I toke much delight: but yet in the end, that which I thought ſhould moſt content me, the very ſame was the occaſion, ỹ I receiued this great torment, which is ſuch, ỹ no humane creature can ſuffer it. My two daughters (as before I ſaid) were indued with wonderfull beautie, & accompanied with no leſſe honeſty, then was conuenient for their high eſtate: whoſe great fame was blazed all the world ouer, by reaſon whereof my court was honored wᵗ diuers ſtrange princes & knights, & eſpecially with thoſe of Africa, ſo ỹ it grew to be ỹ moſt nobleſt court that euer king had. Some came to ſee ỹ worthy knights, & others with great deſire to marry with my daughters: but aboue all the king of Numidia called Noraldino, who being abſent, by ỹ fame of their ſurmounted beauties was taken priſoner,

" for the loue of them, by force whereof he sent vnto mée his
" Embassadours, desiring me that I would think well of him,
" and to giue him one of my daughters in marriage, so (not
" respecting his accustomed treason, but rather considering ẏ
" great honour that might redound thereof for that he was a
" mighty Prince) I thought it good to conclude with his Em-
" bassadours, and to fulfill his desire, and granted him in mar-
" riage my eldest daughter. Then I ordeining all things that
" was necessary & needefull for the same, in all respects con-
" uenient for hir estate and my honour, I sent hir with all
" the pompe ẏ was possible to the kingdome of Numidia, & I
" retayned and kept in my company the youngest, who was
" named Herea, being of farre more beautie then hir sister, of
" which this traiterous & vnnaturall king was informed by
" them which he sent to company with my daughter, they did
" so much extoll hir for hir surpassing beautie, that there was
" not in him power to make any resistaunce against that cru-
" ell and mortall wound of Cupide, but it constrained him to
" forget his new married wife & sweet companion, surrende-
" ring himselfe wholly vnto ẏ power of ẏ absent Lady, with-
" out any consideratiõ that she was sister vnto hir, that he had
" already taken for wife. So this disordinate loue kindled and
" increased in him euerie day more and more, and he was so
" troubled with his new desire, that he daily deuised with him
" selfe what meanes hee might procure to obtaine hir, in such
" sort, that no man might haue power to withstand him. In
" the end he thought by pollicie and deceit to get hir home to
" his kingdome, and sent vnto me, requesting that I would let
" hir to come vnto hir sister Melinda to beare hir companye,
" for that therein shee should receiue great ioy and com-
" fort, to passe away the troublesome time of hir sisters bée-
" ing with childe, for that shee sayde, whith hir company she
" should thinke the time farre more shorter, and should
" passe it ouer with much more ease, especially for that the
" loue she bare hir sister was so much as to hir owne selfe, &
" although I was not aduertised of the euill euent which
" might happen in sending hir, yet did I make excuse, that

by

by reaſon I was an olde man and had no other comforte
but hir, I durſt not ſend hir, neither ſuffer hir to vnderſtand
therof, for that as I did ſuppoſe, ſhée would receiue great
griefe to leaue me alone and deſolate of comfort. At ẏ which
anſwere this inhumane King thought very much, and was
greatly grieued: notwithſtanding with meruailous crafte
and ſubtilty he did diſſemble it, till ſuch time as my daugh-
ter Melinda his wife, ſhould be brought to bed and delive-
red, and then thinking that with the great ioye and plea-
ſure I ſhould receiue for the birth of the new borne infant,
that I would not deny the ſending of hir. So the time
expired, hée ſent to mée againe foe hir: but I was alwayes
firme, béeing reſolued not to let hir goe from mee, but ſtill
denied it, for that ſhe was the whole ioye and ſtaffe of my
olde age. Then this trayterous King ſéeing that by no
meanes he could get hir from mee, ſtraight way ordayned a
mightie and ſtrong armye, and came himſelfe to fetch hir.
And when I vnderſtoode of his comming, I went to receiue
him with great pompe, as was néedefull for our Eſtates:
and at our méeting he requeſted me with very faire and lo-
uing wordes, that I would let my daughter goe vnto hir
ſiſter, to giue hir that contentment which ſhée deſired, for
that ſhée did lone hir more then hir ſelfe. Thus his craftie
and ſubtill perſwaſions ſo much preuailed, by reaſon of the
humilitie and loue hée ſhewed in his wordes, that I coulde
not frame any excuſe to the contrarie, (hée was ſo impor-
nate,) but muſt néeds conſent vnto his demaund. O immor-
tall Gods, that in ſo ſecret wiſe ye made the heart of man,
that you onely can comprehende the good and euill that is
hid in it. Who would haue thought, (much leſſe haue beléé-
ued) that this traiterous King by his ſwéete wordes and
ſubtill ſpeaches would haue robbed me of my onely daugh-
ter. So ſtraight way, when hée had in his power, ẏ which
his ſoule ſo much deſired, hée would not make any delay of
his departure, giuing me to vnderſtand that hée would not
let any time, but carry hir vnto his wife, for whoſe ſight ſo
much ſhée had deſired, and at whoſe comming ſhe would re-

" ceiue great ioy & contentment. But what sorrow did I then
" feele, (nothing thinking of that which should happen, for
" that my heart was ignorant of the knowledge therof) but
" to see hir depart from me, for whose absence my hart remai-
" ned in so great sorrow and heauinesse: giuing to vnderstand
" by the outward shewes, & by the teares that proceeded from
" my eyes, the great paine and passion that the lacke thereof
" wold shortly procure: & in this sorrowfull sort, I was forced
" almost without any remembrance, to retourne vnto ỳ pal-
" laice. And they were not so sone entred into his ships, but
" as one very gelous to keepe close his treason, hee comman-
" ded straight to hoise vp sailes, and commit them vnto the
" winde, and hauing too good and prosperous a weather, in a
" very short time he arriued in his owne Countrye, wheras
" two leagues from the Citie, he was receiued of his subiects
" with great maiestie, who brought with them both horse and
" Palfrayes needefull for the company. So being all in a rea-
" dinesse, he commaunded that they should beginne to martch
" forward towards the Citie. This false King still persisting
" in his euill determined purpose, commaunded (as I saide,)
" that all the company should proceed forwards, and he with
" my sorrowfull daughter Herea, remained a good waye be-
" hinde. And when he saw his company so farre before, and
" they two alone together, he stepped on the one side, and led
" the way into a little groue which was hard at hande, fast
" by a Riuers side. Ye without any more tarrieng carried hir
" into the thickest part therof, & as it appeared he was well
" acquainted in the same, and where he thought it most con-
" uenient, hee alighted off from his horse, and willed my most
" welbeloued daughter that shee should likewise alight. Shee
" in whose heart raigned no kinde of suspition, alighted, and
" sate hir downe by the Riuers side, and washed hir fayre
" white handes, and refreshed hir mouth with the same wa-
" ter. Then this dissembling traitor could not refraine, but
" by some outward shewes and darke sentences, gaue hir to
" vnderstand, the kindeled fire of loue, with the which he was
" tormented, and in the end he did wholly declare his diuelish

pretence

pretence and determined purpose towardes hir. So my lo- »
uing daughter Herea, being sore troubled with his impor- »
tunate and continuall requests, with great anger, yet not »
without admisement, she began to reprehende him, giuing »
him to vnderstand, all that was needefull against so diuelish »
a pretence. This vncleane King when he heard, that so ear- »
nestly and contrary to his expectation she aunswered, and »
would haue rose vp from the place whereas she sate, held »
hir fast by hir apparayle, and would not suffer hir to arise, »
but began with softe and milde wordes to perswade hir to »
bee quiet, and saide. O my best beloued Lady, wherefore »
wilt thou consent, that for thy cause I shoulde dye, & mayest »
now very well without being discouered of any, giue mee »
remedie for the same? Be not then obstinate to denye mee »
that, which with so great loue I do desire of thee. Who is »
here that can beare witnesse of this my priuie desire, and »
bolde enterprise, neither discouer thy gentle liberality shew- »
ed mee: not one surely, but onely the immortall Gods. Vn- »
derstande this for a certainty (my sweete Ladye) that the »
God Iupiter doth receiue more griefe in this my sorrowe, »
then in the paine which thou dost suffer. This deceaued da- »
mosell, when she sawe that hee held hir so fast with his tre- »
cherous hande, that shee could not deliuer hir selfe, with »
furyous anger shee said. Traytor do not thou thinke that »
these thy lecherous words haue power to moue my heart, »
to graunt and fulfill these thy filthy, diuelish, and lasciuious »
thoughts: for here I do sweare vnto thee by the high and »
soueraigne Gods, that first I will permit & suffer my body »
to bee torne in peeces, then to open my eares vnto the hea- »
ring of so great treason. Therefore false King let mee alone »
and consider with thy selfe, that I am sister vnto thy wife, »
whome I see well thou hast forgotten, by reason of this »
thy insatiable dronkennesse, and greedye desire of fleshlie »
lust. Therfore if it please thee to determine to let me alone, »
and defile mee not, or else to the contrary be fully perswa- »
ded of this, that I will rather die the death in my defence. »
Then this cursed King seeing that this chaste Ladye »

" did defend hir selfe, he toke fast hold by hir necke, and saide
" Doe not thou thinke O cruell Herea, that thou canst dely-
" uer thy selfe out of my hands, except first thou graunt vnto
" this my desired will, and if not, I do promise thée in pay-
" ment of this great pride which thou dost vse vnto me, to put
" thée vnto the most cruell death that euer was deuised for a-
" ny Damosell or maide. This distressed Lady was nothing
" dismaide to heare that she should die, but without all feare
" shée answered. Thinke not false traitour, that the feare of
" death shall cause mée to yéeld to thy filthy desire. The which
" béeing well vnderstoode by the king, hée saide. Understande
" then and bée well perswaded, that either liuing or dead I
" will performe my will & pretended purpose, which so with-
" out measure and with vnquenchable fire doth burne in my
" heart. Thus with great strength she did defend hir selfe, and
" with manly courage shée kepte hir honour, but this cruell
" and lasciuious king séeing that hée could not fulfill his euill
" desire, in a great madnesse hée cut off a great parte of the
" traine of hir gowne, and bound it very fast to ỹ haire of hir
" head, in such sort, that with the great strength he put therto,
" and the tendernesse of the same, together with his euill in-
" treating, all the gréene grasse was sprinkeled with the bloud
" that issued out, wherat he beléeued that she would haue ben
" quiet, and haue consented vnto him, but she respected not the
" euill intreating, but the more he procured to torment hir, ỹ
" more angry she shewed hir selfe against him with continu-
" all denial. When this cruell traitour sawe that all would
" not serue, he bégan to forget all faith and loyaltie he ought
" vnto knighthode, and the respect hée shoulde haue vnto such
" as she was, but blasphemed against heauen, and tearing hir
" clothes all to péeces, he stripped hir starke naked, and with
" the raines of the bridle of his palfray he all to bée whipped
" and scourged hir white and tender backe, that it was
" full of blew spottes, with such horrible crueltie that it
" was a very gréeuous and sorrowfull sight to béeholde. And
" yet this did profit him nothing at all: he séeing that this da-
" mosell did still perseuer and continue in hir defence, hée

straight

straight wayes like a bloudie monster heaped cruelty vpon cruelty, and toke and bounde hir well proportioned and christalline armes and legges with cordes, and made them fast very strongly vnto a træ, saying. O cruell and more cruell then euer any woman in all the worlde hath bæne, wherefore hast thou bæne the occasion to bring thy selfe to bæ thus so euill and mischieuously intreated, and onely for not giuing consent vnto him, which alwaies woulde haue procured thy ease? What doest thou thinke, is it better to suffer to bæ thus martyred, then to liue a most louing, swæte, and contented life. Then this euill intreated Ladye with a hoarse voyce aunswered and saide vnto him. Oh wicked traitour, more harde hearted then euer Knight hath bæne, wherefore doest thou make any delaye, tell mee thou enimie to the Gods, why dwest thou not finish thy cruelty, and take the soule from this my miserable and wofull body? Doest thou not do it, bæcause it shall not goe and complaine whereas thou shalt receiue the reward of this thy mercilesse humanitie. O you Gods, denie mæ not my right iustice against this falle and traiterous king? Let not to be true executioners of iustice in reuenging so dampnable a dæde. And thus bæing wearied with the cruell and terrible torments, she held hir peace and saide no more. But for all this, the king did not let to prosecute his crueltie, and with great anger hæ loked on hir hauing his accursed eyes fired, in such sort that hæ coulde not withdrawe them backe. Then this tormented Ladye sæing him, and bæing very desirous of the death, with a furious voice, shæ saide: What dwest thou thinke thou traitour, the greatest traitour that euer was in the world, wherein dost thou contemplate thy selfe, thou fleshly Butcher, thou vnmercifull Tyger, thou lecherous hog and dishonourer of the royall crowne, make an end of these thy tormentes, for it is now to late to repent thæ, giue mæ the death, and sende mæ into the bosome of Diana. This vnpittifull King, sæing the stedfastnesse that shæ hadde in the defence of hir honour, with a cruell and infernall

" hart, he toke a towell which this Damoſell had girded at
" hir waſt, and with a bratall anger doubled it about hir neck
" and pinched it ſo ſtraight that the ſoule departed from the
" body. O thou Knight that by thy prowesse doeſt come to read
" this Parchment, conſider the great conſtancie and chaſtitie
" of this vnfortunate Damoſell, & let the griefe therof moue
" thee to take vengeaunce of this great cruelty, ſhewed with-
" out any deſert. So when this infernall king ſawe that ſhee
" was dead, hee toke his horſe and returned from whence he
" came, and in a ſhort time hee ouertoke his company, and lo-
" ked with ſo furious and irefull a countenaunce, that there
" was not one that was ſo hardie to aſke him where my
" daughter was, but one of the knights of my Court which I
" ſent to beare company with my daughter, having a ſuſpiti-
" on by the great alteration that appeared in the king, and be-
" ing very deſirous to know what was become of the Prin-
" ceſſe, for that hee came alone without bringing hir with
" him, neither could hee haue any ſight of hir, hee then pre-
" ſently withdrew himſelfe backe, and following the fot-
" ings of the horſe, he ceaſed not vntill he came vnto the place
" whereas this cruelti was wrought, wheras he found this
" miſerable Ladye lie dead, in the ſame ſort as I haue decla-
" red, at the view whereof hee remained almoſt beſide him-
" ſelfe, in ſuch ſorte that he had almoſt fallen to the grounde.
" This Knight remained a good while before he could ſpeake,
" ſo when he was come againe to himſelfe, hee beganne with
" a dolorous complaint, crying out againſt the Gods and for-
" tune, becauſe they had ſuffered ſo great cruelti to be com-
" mitted vnto this damoſell, and making this ſorrowful com-
" plaint, hee vnlaced hir from the tree, and laide hir vppon
" parte of hir apparell, and couered hir with the reſt, and
" ſaide on this wiſe : O cruell hands, what an infernall hart
" was that, which did beare thee company to doe this vncha-
" ritable ſacrifice? Was it not ſufficient that this surmoun-
" ted beautie ſhould haue moued thee to more pittie. So with
" theſe and other like ſorrowfull wordes that this Knight
" ſpake vnto the dead corps, he cut downe branches from the

trees

trées for to couer the body, and left it lying so, that it séemed to bée a mountaine of greene trées, & then determined with himselfe in the best manner that he could to dissemble the knowledge of this fact done, hée toke his horse & went the way towards the Citie which lead to the kings Court, in which hée rode so fast that hée ouertoke the king and his company at the entering into the Citie, wheras the king alighted, & without speaking to any person hée entered into his closet, by reason whereof this my knight had tyme to declare vnto the quéene all that he had séene, and the dolorous end of the Damosell Herea hir sister. The sodayne and vnlooked for sorrow mixed with great anger and wrath, was such in this quéene, that she commaunded the knight not to depart the court vntill such time as more occasion did serue, and shée hir selfe remained making meruailous and great lamentations to hir selfe, all in secret, for that shée would not be perceiued, yet with a soft voice she said: O vnfortunate quéene and borne in a sorrowfull houre, oh vnhappye destenie, which madest me to be subiect vnto the most cruellest king amongst all Kinges, I suppose ý fortune cannot be so much against me, but ý she will procure to take reuengement of thée: Oh immortall gods reuenge me of this so great and horrible an homicide, and if not, I do sweare vnto you that I will with my owne handes put in practise such an enterprise, that you looking downe from the heauens shall tremble for the feare therof: What do yé, you deafe Gods, altogether without iustice, will you not hearken vnto this my grieuous cõplaint, well séeing you regard me not, I will sée if ý you haue power to withdraw me from executing of mine owne will. This saying she toke in hir hand a dagger of the kings, and in hir armes hir youngest sonne, saying: I doe not wish so much euill vnto the world, ý I will leaue the sonne of so wicked a father to sojourne in it, & in this order she entered into the chamber wheras the king was, and there shée founde him tumbling vppon his bedde from the one side to the other, without taking anye rest, and with sorrowfull wéeping, and a terrible voice, she called him

tray-

" traitor, and like a fierce Tygreſſe with the dagger, which
" ſhée carried, ſhée cut the throte of that innocent infant, and
" threw it to him on the bedde and ſaid, take there thou cru-
" ell traitour, the fruite which thou madeſt within my body,
" and then ſhée threw the dagger after him to kill the King:
" but Fortune would not that it ſhuld take effect. This wret-
" ched King, when hée ſaw all this which the Quéene hadde
" done, he was therewith meruailous ſore troubled, and in his
" furye, hée laide holde on hir, and did intreate hir very euill.
" But when the Quéene ſaw that the blow toke no effect,
" & that ſhe could not bring that to paſſe which ſhe had deter-
" mined, ſhe returned vpon hir ſelfe hir outragious furie, ta-
" king that bloudy dagger, & thruſt it to hir hart, in ſuch ſort,
" that ſhe parted it in two péeces, and ſo ſhée fell downe dead
" into the armes of him, which was the occaſion of all this
" euill and crueltie. The great ſorrow that this falſe and
" vnhappye King receiued was ſtraunge, in ſuch ſort that
" hée knew not what counſell to take, but thinking vpon the
" great puniſhment, that might ſuccéde theſe cruell actes, hée
" ſtraight waies procured ỹ the body of the quéene ſhould be
" buried in great ſecret. At that time there was a ſothſaier, a
" wiſe man in his court, who aduertiſed him ỹ for this cruell
" fact which he had cõmitted, his kingdome ſhould be deſtroy-
" ed, and that it ſhoulde fall into the handes of him which hée
" moſt hated, who was his brothers ſonne, his couſin. The
" King being aduertiſed of all that which ſhoulde happen, hée
" determined to vſe a cruell pollicie, which was, hée woulde
" ſet watch and warde throughout all his kingdome, for to
" take and arreſt all ſuch trauellers, as by aduenture landed
" vppon his Iſlande, not ſuffering them to paſſe, till ſuch time
" as they hadde promiſed him by oath to aide and aſſiſt him
" euen vnto the death againſt certaine his enemies, which
" went to diſpoſſeſſe him of his kingdome, making them beléeue
" that vniuſtlye and without occaſion, they entended to take
" it from him. Then this my aforenamed Knight, which
" had ſéene and hearde all the tragicall dealing that is héere
" declared, in the beſt wiſe hée could, returned againe to my

Court,

Court, and told me all that you haue heard, which was vnto me very sorrowfull and heauie newes. Iudge heere then gentle Knight what sorrow I poore and vnfortunate King receiued, and what bitter anguish I sustained. So herewith entered in the great soothsaier and wise man, called Artemidoro, who came to comfort me, & certified me, that all this crueltie should be reuenged by a mighty and strong arme, although before that should come to passe, there should bee fought many fierie battailes, and perswaded me to beleeue it, for that he told me the truth. So because that this wise man was so well knowen, I did beleeue him, & gaue him credite vnto his wordes, & requested him for his part, to procure all that in him did lye, to prefer this my reuengement. So straight way he put it in practise, and caused a Chariot to be brought, and bad me enter into it, and in a trice he caried me wheras my daughter was, and commaunded me to put her into the Chariot, and brought her vnto this Iland, assuring me, ý hee which should ouercome ý keepers which he would heere set, should be ý Knight that should reuenge my iniury. And seeing that thou hast ouercome the keepers that had the charge of the body of this my murdred daughter, performe now the oath which thou hast made lyke a valyaunt Knight: and for the better performaunce, thou must goe vnto Citarra, wheras thou shalt finde me the vnfortunate King thereof, awaiting thy comming.

At the reading of this sorrowfull history, the Emperour and he that was with him did shed many salt teares, wherwith there did increase in him a farther desire of reuengement. And so they departed to the Sea side, whereas they did refresh themselues, and returned vnto their voiage late begun.

¶ How the Emperour Trebatio did land himselfe at the Iland Citarea, and of all things that happened there. Cap. 13.

You

HEere you haue heard tolde how that after the emperour had read the ſcrowle of parchment that was written and laid vnder the pillowe at the head of the dead bodye of the Lady Herea, how he retourned to proſecute his iourney which he had taken in hand, for the defence of the faire Lidia, and howe that they did imbarke themſelues in their Galley, and the ſea being pacified of that boiſtrous tempeſt which they receiued in their laſt voyage, the Gallie ſailed forwards with a very good and proſperous winde the ſpace of three daies without meeting with any aduenture. In the end whereof they landed at the Iland of Oromio, which by another name is called Citarea, which ſtraight way was knowen by that faire Lady to bee the Iland where hir beeloued Brenio was, and ſhee ſaid vnto the Emperour. Lord, this is the Iland that keepeth bid from me the whole comfort of my hart. So ſtraight ways the Emperour went a lande and toke with him the fayre Lidia, and commaunded that his horſe and his Speare, and the Ladies palfraye ſhoulde likewiſe bee taken out of the Galleye, and when the Emperour hadd well peruſed his armour, hee armed himſelfe, and toke the waye which lead him towardes the Caſtell, leauing on the right hand the famous Temple, which from farre did ſhew the great ſumptuouſneſſe thereof, in the gate whereof they did diſcouer and ſee an armed Knight, who contemplated himſelfe in beholding the greatneſſe of that Knight. But the Emperour had no care to knowe who it was, but with great haſt they went forwardes on their way, & when they drew nigh vnto the Caſtell, it ſeemed vnto them to be the faireſt that euer they had ſeene, and as the Emperour proceeded to goe vp the hill towarde the Caſtell, hee heard one which with a great voice sayde. O thou Knight of the Dinell or of death, goe no farther vp, but tarrie a little, for by hir which thou doeſt bring with thee I doe vnderſtand thy demaunde, ſtay a while and I will be ſtraight way with thee, for I thinke that thou haſt already repented thy comming

hether,

hether. The Emperour who heard these wordes, would very faine haue seene him who spake them, and lifted vp his eyes towards the Castell, but hee coulde beholde no bodie. But he tarried not long, when that out of a narrow waye comming downe the hill he saw a great Gyant, shaking in his hand a heauie Speare, and when hee came to the place whereas the Emperour abode, hee sayd. Knight, tell mee, art thou the Emperour of Grecia or any of his sonnes, The emperour answered and sayd, I am hee (who by the helpe of God) may frustrate thy force which thou hast done vnto this Damosell. Then the Gyant said. O misereble wretch, how thou art deceiued, what doest thou thinke thy selfe so strong and to haue so much strength to doe that alone, which all the world is not able to vndoe, and with great anger for the wordes which he heard the Emperour speake, hee toke his Speare and did leuell it in his hand, and threw it at the Emperour with such fury, that the aire did sound therwith, the Emperour made his defence and receiued it vppon his shælde, and the point slidde in such sort, that it glaunced and broke in two peeces. When the Emperour sawe that hee threw it at him dart wise, hee toke his Speare fast in his hand and firming himselfe in his stirroppes he raised vp his bodye and threw his speare against his enimie with great strength, who would haue receiued it vpon his shælde, but the furie was such wherwith it was throwen, that it pearced both through his shælde and likewise the body, that the head was seene come out at the Gyauntes backe, the which terrible blow beeing seene by them which were in the Castell, was the occasion that there arose a great vproare therein. The Emperour gaue thankes to God for this short victorie, and tourned himselfe vnto the Page which came with Lidia, and bad him take the Speare out of the Gyants body and bring it vnto him, for that it was whole, which presently the Page accomplished. Hee hadde no soner receiued it, but hee sawe presently to descend out of the same path way another great and huge Gyaunt, which seemed

to

ſo be no leſſe furious then the firſt. Hée came mounted on a very ſtrong and mightie horſe, (for hée had néede to be of a great ſtrength, in that he did ſuſtaine the carriage of ſo mightie a monſter as the Gyaunt was) and when he was come whereas the Emperour abode, hée looked whether the other Giant were altogether dead or not, but when he ſaw there was no life in him, and that by that onely blow hée
" was ſlaine, hée ſaid: Is it poſſible mightie brother, that a
" thing ſo vile as this is, hath had power ſo quickly to ſlay
" thée. And tourning vnto this noble warriour, hée ſaid: Tell
" me Knight of ſo wonderfull a courage, what diuell hath
" brought thée hether, to doo vs ſo much harme, as the Gods
" themſelues were not ſufficient to haue done. The Emperor
" replied. The Lady which thou ſeeſt héere, brought me hether,
" to deliuer and ſet at liberty a Knight, which without all
" reaſon thou doſt kéepe in thy Caſtle, and which with great
" treaſon thou broughteſt hether. Of truth I tell thée Gyant,
" that it ſéemeth verie euill in ſuch Knightes as thou art, to
" commit ſuch outrages, for that nature hath not beſtowed on
" thée theſe well proportioned members, nor giuen thée a bo-
" dy of ſo mightie a greatneſſe, for to exerciſe it in doing of
" ſo great wrongs, as you do daily practiſe. I therefore doo de-
" ſire thée, by ỳ honour which I owe vnto the order of knight-
" hoode, and for that thy diſpoſition doth greatly content mée,
" that thou wouldeſt make ſatisfaction vnto this faire Damo-
" ſell, the which onely I am come to demaund of thée, & like-
" wiſe that thou wouldeſt apart thy ſelfe from theſe wicked
" cuſtomes: otherwiſe, beléeue this of a certainty, that euen as
" thy brother was ſlaine with ſo ſmall a blow, (not being by
" my weake arme killed, but onely by his great tiranny con-
" founded) ſo likewiſe if thou doſt pretend to lead this tiran-
" nous life, as thou haſt hetherto done, beléeue mée the like
" death will happen vnto thée. Tourne and repeate that once
" againe which thou haſt ſaid (aunſwered the Gyaunt) per-
" haps thy words may winne me to doo ſomewhat of ỳ which
" thou doſt requeſt me, although not altogether. Haſt thou me
" in deriſion thou vile beaſt (ſaid ỳ Emperour) thou ſhalt ſone

vnder-

vnderſtand that I know better how to beſtow my ſword vpon thy bones and fleſh, then againe to declare that which thou doſt demaund, for that I ſee my reaſons do litle auaile, and that I vtter in vaine my ſpeeches vnto thee, thou ſhalt ſone ſee that the ſharpneſſe of my Speare ſhall bee no leſſe bitter vnto thee, then it was vnto thy late brother: & in ſaying theſe wordes they retourned their horſes the one from the other, like the ſwift winde, and when they were one ſtraight againſt the other, both of thē ſtroke their horſes with the ſpurres, and bare their ſpeares very lowe, in ſuch ſort that neither of them fayled of their blowes, the giant ſtroke the Emperour in the middeſt of the ſhælde, and by reaſon of the great ſtrength thereof, the ſtroke glaunced on the one ſide, and the Speare ſprong vp in the aire without doing any harme, but the Emperour chaunced to ſtrike him vnder his ſhælde where he was a little open, ſo that the point of his ſpeare entered into his belly, and if his Speare had not ben ſomewhat blunt, with the blow he gaue to the other Gyaunt, he had at this time finiſhed the battaile, but with great haſt both of them laide hands on their ſwords, and tourning their horſes ther beganne a cruell and fierce battaile. The Giaunt with the great paine that hee had of the hurt which he receiued, felt himſelfe very ill, ſo that his anger did the more increaſe, & traueſing his horſe from the one part vnto the other, procured by all meanes to hurt the Emperour, who was not at that inſtant idle, but according vnto his accuſtomed valiauntneſſe auoyded his blowes, and ſmote at him ſuch furious and heauy ſtrokes, that hee made the bloud to follow in what place ſo euer he chaunced with his ſword to hit, and with the great paine that the Gyaunt felte, there proceeded from his helme a very thicke and hot ſmoake, his furie and anger was ſo much to ſee himſelfe beeſtow ſo many blowes, and not one of them could hurte his enimie, he threw his ſhælde from him to the earth, and toke his ſworde in both his handes, and very fiercely ſtroke his horſe with his Spurres, which made him to leape thether whereas the worthie warriour was, and without

any defence hée stroke him such a blow vppon the healme, that hee made him to decline his head to the mane of his horse, and being troubled with that great and cruell blow, his horse carried him a while hære and there about the field. The terrible and fierce Gyant would haue giuen him the second blowe, but hée could not, for that the Emperour was come againe to himselfe, and béeing setteled in the saddle, he firmed his sworde fast with both his handes, and béeing incensed with great anger and fury, insomuch that fire flashed out of both his eyes, hée strake his horse with his spurres, and thrust himselfe forward, saying: Tarry, tarry thou furyous beast, for that I meane to reuenge my selfe of the blow past that thou gauest mæ, and without delay send thy dampned soule deseruedly to the diuell of hell, and therwith he stroke the diuellish Gyaunt such a blowe vpon the helme, that he made it sound like a bell, and he without any remembraunce fell downe backwards vpon his horse crouper, the blow was so terrible and deliuered with so greate strength, that the blood started out both at his eyes & at his nose. And as the emperour would haue turned to haue stroken him againe, he heard one with a great noise that called aloude and said: Stand still vile knight and hold thy hands, except thou wilt die the death. The Emperour lifting vp his head to sée who it was that with so great arrogancy threatned him, beheld another giant which descended downe from the Castell, of a greater stature, and séeming to bæ of more strength and fury then the other two, which by reason of his greatnesse was faine to goe on foote, for that there was no horse able to beare him. When the Emperour saw a thing so monstrous comming towards him, he said with an angry voice: Cursed be that euill and diuellish generation from whence such monsters doth procæde, if it please God I will doe my best to abate this thy courage, and in this time the Gyaunt was come to himselfe and rose vp againe, and was prepared against the Emperour, who séeing him so nigh, with purpose to strike him, toke the aduantage, and stroke first, with such an ouerthwart blowe, that by the force ther-

of

of it cut his throat, neck and all, so that the head fell downe to the earth, and the body also like the corner of a great castell. This other Giant seeing his brother dead in such sort, cryed out reuiling his Gods, and with blaspheming of all creatures hee descended downe the hill, and drew out his huge and mightie sword, pressing towardes the Emperour, with such furie, as commonly the fierce Lyon doth after his pray, which being wel perceiued by the Emperour, he auoided a litle on the one side with his horse, & lighted in great hast, and with his accustomed courage he went to meete the Giant, who was ready with his sword in his hand, & came & stroke at the Emperour a mighty blow, which he receiued vpon his shéeld, that did then deceiue him, & by reason therof it fell downe vpon his healme, and made him stoope with both his knees on the ground, losing somewhat of his sight by force of that furious blow. The Emperour seeing that it was not then time to sleepe, and that the Gyant had his sword ouer him to strike him againe, hee beeing somewhat troubled, stepped a side and cleered himself from the fall therof, & therewith preased to the Gyant before he could againe recouer his terrible sword, to bestow on him a blow correspondent to his rage, and stroke him vpon the arme, but by reason that the emperour was not wholy come to himselfe of the former blow he receiued, he could not repay him with his whole strength as his hart desired, or as he would if hee had ben come to himselfe, notwithstanding it was not so litle, but that his sword cut his arme to the bone, wherwith he was so sore hurt that he could not lift his sword from the ground, with the paine whereof the Giant did féele himselfe verie ill, and was constrained to change his sword into his left hand, with the which he stroke blowes verye much out of order. In this time the Emperour stroke at him so terrible & thicke, that it did almost amaze him, & when the Gyant sawe himselfe so ill intreated, he began with a terrible voice to call for helpe of his people from the Castell. The which beeing vnderstoode by the valyaunt and heroycall Emperour, he said: no thou traitour, for neither thy strength

noꝛ thy Gods, noꝛ thy people ſhall deliuer thée, but thou ſhalt die by my hands, and therewith hæ ſtroke at him the faſter and with moꝛe courage, but within a ſmall time after he ſaw deſcending from the Caſtell another mightie gyant, and in his company moꝛe then foꝛty knights, who with great ſhowting deſcended downe the hill, the which hæing ſæne by the woꝛthy Trebatio, he was perſwaded certainely that there hæ ſhould dye. And although hee was ſomewhat weary of ẏ great trauaile which had paſſed, yet he purpoſed to ſell his life very dære, determining that they ſhould pate well foꝛ it bæfoꝛe he loſt it. Then all thoſe which deſcended from the Caſtell did compaſſe the Emperour rounde about, and ſtroke him on euery ſide without mercie oꝛ pitie, whoſoeuer had bene ther to haue ſæne this woꝛthie warriour, ſhould haue had iuſt occaſion to ſaie that there was the valiant Emperour Trebatio, the flower of all knighthoode, foꝛ that he alone defended himſelfe againſt his eninimes, in that great extremitie, and if thoſe giants had not ſo preſſed vpon him, he had eſtæmed ẏ other knights very litle, but it were the gyants that did moſt trouble and moleſt him, neuertheleſſe he that did come in the daunger of his blowes, might thinke himſelfe bewitched oꝛ to haue euil foꝛtune, foꝛ either hæ was ſlaine oꝛ elſe maimed, oꝛ beaten downe to the ground, but yet all this valour that hæ vſed little pꝛofited him, except hee did firſt pꝛocure to deſtroy theſe two diuelliſh Gyauntes, who thꝛough their might bꝛought him into great perpleritie, making him ſometimes to decline with his hands to the earth, and at other times alſo to ſtagger hære and there. And theſe ſhameleſſe people by the impoꝛtunate noiſe of their Loꝛdes, pꝛocured on euery ſide to hurt and moleſt the Emperour, and with the ſame noyſe there deſcended frō the Caſtell moꝛe then thꝛa ſcoꝛe perſons, bæſide them that were there beloꝛe. But when the Emperour Trebatio ſaw himſelfe ſo euill intreated and beſet on euery ſide round about, hæ called vppon the name of God, and deſired him of pardon foꝛ all his ſinnes, and that hæ would haue mercie on his ſoule, foꝛ that he thought verily there to

end

end his life and therewith be encouraged himselfe a new, & gathered such strength to his hart, that what with the iust quarrell he had, and the great anger he conceiued, hee gaue vnto the Giant (who had called for succour) such a terrible blow vpon the waist, that for all the great force of his armour, it had almost parted him in two peece, wherwith hee fell dead at his fet. And at the very same instaunt he stroke one of the knights such another blow vpon the helme, that he deuided both it and his head down to his shoulders. The other Gyant when hee saw such meruailous blowes began to exclaime out against Mars, reuiling him, that he had bestowed so much strength and force on one knight, to declare such prowesse as ther the Emperour shewed. The rest of the knights were somwhat afraide of that which they had seene done, and durst not preasse so nigh as before they did, yet by reason of the great feare they had of the giant, they did not let greatly to molest and trouble him, & they preased vpon him in such wise that he wared weary, so that his good hart and noble courage wold litle preuaile him, but that he must needes bee ouercome and slaine. The sad and sorrowfull Lady Lidia when she saw the Emperour in such great perplexity, with crossing and wringing hir hands, and with bitter weeping shee said.

O most vnhappie and vnfortunate wretch that I am, it had beene much better that I alone had suffered these my paines and passions, then that this noble Emperour should lose his life in my quarrell, which will be the occasion of very much sorrow and great tribulation vnto the most high and noblest lady in the world. O famous knight of the Sun, oh renowmed Rosicleer, what may you say when you shall heare that for my cause your father that worthy emperour shou'd be slaine, it had ben better for me (miserable as I am) to haue bene transported into a plant as Daphne was, & not to haue caused y for my comfort so much harme should bee done, vnlesse it had pleased y Goddesse Iuno to make an euerlasting memory of this my true and perfect loue, as she did by Celos in so many Nymphs, of whom vnto this day their

" memorie doth ſurmount the high Throne of their celeſtiall
" ſeates. O noble Emperour, who by thy ſurpaſſing excellen-
" cie haſt brought thy ſelfe to die amongſt barbarous people,
" whereas without all hope of any help, or any reſpect of thy
" mightie eſtate, thou muſt receiue the death. Heere I do make
" a vow, that before death doth depriue thee of this great va-
" lour and ſtrength, to deſtroy my ſelfe in recompence of the
" great wrong that I haue committed againſt thee.

This valiaunt Roſicleer which at that time God and good fortune had brought into ỹ place, did cauſe him to ceaſe this his ſorrowful lamentation. If you do remember, this is ỹ battell I tolde you of, whereas I lefte Roſicleer beholding the great wrong & outrage that ſo many did againſt one onely knight. And likewiſe he did conſider the ſurmounted prowe ſſe whith that one knight vſed, and becauſe he was armed with contrary armour, he could not know who it was, and much meruailing at that he ſaw, without any more tarrying, he lighted from his horſe & laide hand on his ſword, & with great furie and anger he preſſed in amongſt theſe falſe knights, and the firſt that he did incounter with, was ỹ diſordinate Gyaunt, to whom he lent ſuch a blow vpon the leg that he cut it a ſunder, & with the force thereof he hurt the other legge by the knee, in ſuch ſort that he muſt needes fall to the ground, not being able by any ſtrength to ſuſtaine or helpe himſelfe. The Gyaunt ſeeing, & to his paine feeling ſo furious a blow, cryed with a loud voice, ſaying: Vpon them valiant warriours, for they are of no force, nor ability to reſiſt, at which noiſe the Emperour tourned his head aſide, and ſawe whereas the Gyaunt lay all along on the earth, by force of that moſt terrible and cruell blow. Alſo hee ſawe how this noble Knight beſtirred himſelfe amongeſt the reſt of the Gyauntes Knightes, which was a valyaunt ſight to bee ſeene, wherfore hee remained a good while in beholding and viewing him till at the laſt hee knewe him to bee his worthy ſonne, euen that renowmed and inuincible Roſicleer. I neede not heere to declare the exceeding great

ioye

ioy and comfort which this worthy Emperour receiued in seeing him, and especially at such a time being in great neede and necessitie, for of long time before that hee had not seene him, neither had he thought euer to haue seene him after that time any more, if at that instant he had got come vnlooked for, in ỹ hee could not chose but to haue bene slaine by those barbarous and vnciuile people. Then gathering vnto himselfe new strength and courage, he prested in amongst those false and wicked knightes, in such sort that they beganne to runne away, as well because they sawe their Lordes and Captaines slaine, as also for that they could not in any wise abide the terrible blowes of the Prince. So these two valiaunt warriours beestowred themselues, that they were constrained in hope to saue their liues to turne their backes, and toke the way vp the hill towards the Castell, but this valiaunt Rosicleer followed them with so great lightnesse, that before they came halfe way vp the hill, hee had slaine the greater part of them. Then the rest which saw themselues so euill intreated, tourned altogether and presled on him in such sorte, that by their force they hadde almost constrained him to tumble backwarde downe the hill, at which hee was mernailously wroth, and therewith like a corragious knight hee presled amongest them with so much furie, that with cutting off armes and heads, hee made them lesse then they were by the one halfe. The Emperour by reason of his great wearinesse and trauile which hee sustained, remained at the foote of the hill whereas the first incounter was, but when he heard the moouing and rushing of the people, hee toke the waye vp the hill with so great lightnesse, as though the battaile had but then begun, and after him followed this faire and beautifull Lidia, but when the emperour came in sight, he beheld how the prince with great courage followed after those wretched pepie euẽ to ỹ gate of the Castle, for they thought to saue themselues if they might by any meanes get in at the gates, pretending to make it fast vnto them, but this valiant Greeke pursued them wᵗ so great swiftnesse that they had no time to ful-

fill that, which they hadde determined, for at such time as they would haue shut the gates, hee approched them and disturbed their desire with cutting and hewing them, in such sort, that he entered into the Castell in spite of their harts, and those that were within would haue made resistance at such time as he was in the great Court, but this valiaunt Prince did threaten them, saying. O you wicked & contentious villains yeeld your selues prisoners, for be certainly perswaded you shall finde more in mee by humilitie thē by making resistaunce. There was one knight which remained, and hauing more ciuilitie then the rest, answered and sayd.

"Valyaunt Knight, if wee hadde thought euer to "haue found in thee so much mercifull clemencie, as we haue "found mightie courage, verily long sines we wold haue yeel"ded our selues: now therefore we doe desire thee if ther bee "in thee any iot of pittie, to manifest thy clemencye vnto vs, "for considering wee were seruauntes vnto those Gyauntes, "we were by duety bound to defend them, and on the contra"rie to our powers, offend you. Thē this noble prince promi"sed them their liues, conditionally that they should yeeld and "surrender themselues. In this time the emperour letted not to inlarge his pace for to come to the aide and defence of the Prince, but when he came thether, hee found that he was in quiet, & that all those that were left in the Castle requested peace, and when the Emperour saw that it was then time to discouer himselfe full of great ioy he fell vpon Roscicleer his necke, and said.

"Oh my sonne, I did well vnderstand that in the time "of my greatest necessitie, that thou wouldest neuer deceiue "me, with great reason I may call thee my fortunate sonne, "not for that thou wert borne in a good daie, but also that "loue did cause so great affection to thy mother, of whome hath proceeded such fruite as thou and thy brother. Nowe of this worthie Prince what shall I saye, that with very ioye he was almost beside himselfe when he heard his Father the Emperour speake, for by the sounde of his voice

hee

he did know him. So straight way the Emperour pulled of his helme, wherewith this valiaunt Rosicleer was fully resolued and without all doubt. When he saw the maiestie of his rigall countenaunce, and his beard adorned with some royall white haires, his face somewhat high coloured, by reson of the great trauaile he receiued in his late battailes in the which hee showed his great power, and the prowesse of the progenie from whence he did procede: his sonne bowed downe his knees to the earth, and lifted vp the visour of his healme, and kissed the Emperours hands, bathing them with the teares, that fell from his eies, which was forced by his hart, for the great ioy which hée receiued. The Emperour toke him by the hand, & raised him from the ground with great loue. If I should here declare the rest of the extremities, that passed in this their ioyfull mæting, it should be very tedious vnto ỹ hearers, therfore I do remit it vnto such a father, whose lot it is to haue good children, & therwith their like help in necessitie. So without making any more delay the Emperour would haue deliuered out of prison ỹ Knight of this faire Lidia, the which beeing vnderstode by them of this Castle, they straight way brought him before the emperour, with many other moe, which were partakers with him in the succour of the Lady. These Knightes altogether gaue great thankes vnto the emperour, for ỹ friendship hee had shewed them, in helping them out of this their terrible imprisonment. And thus they remained in great ioy and pleasure, as well the Emperour for the sight of his son, as also all those which were prisoners, for the good successe, that they had, but especially and aboue all the rest, was the ioy of Lidia, which with the contentment that shee receiued to see hir Brenio in hir company, so that she was almost rauished of hir wits: but in the countenaunce of the Knight, it appeared by his outward show, that he receiued no pleasure: the which being vnderstode by this faire Lidia, not knowing the cause wherof it should procede to moue him therevnto, all hir great ioy and delight, was tourned into despaire.

Then the Emperour commaunded thoſe of the Caſtle, that they ſhould giue him ſomewhat to eate, and likewiſe to all the reſt which were taken out of priſon: vnto him for the great trauaile which he had paſſed in this battaile, and vnto the reſt, for that they had great need therof. So it was ſtraight way made ready, and that in very good order, and they all ſate downe together, at the Emperours table. So when they had almoſt dined, and that they were well refreſhed, the Emperour tolde vnto Roſicleer, who that King was whith he had ſæne in the waggon, & the occaſion thereof: for the which hæ deſired him that no other aduenture ſhould bæ the occaſion to let him, but to goe ſtraight vnto Conſtantinople, and to take in companie with him Brandimardo, & procure that the Lady might bæ reſtored againe vnto hir kingdome, vſing all your diligence to giue hir him to wife: for that the noble Prince is worthye of no ſmall honour. And hære my ſonne I dw proteſte vnto thée, that a more beautifull Ladye in all my life I haue not ſæne, but onely the Empreſſe Claridiana. Alſo if that fortune dw ſo ſerue, that thy brother the Knight of the Sunne, come to thoſe parts, thou ſhalt will him, that he do not moue nor departe from thoſe parts, for any kinde of aduenture that ſhal ſucceede, till ſuch time as I owe retourne, for that now at this preſent I cannot retourne, for that I haue ſworne and giuen my word. So there hæ tolde vnto them all the hiſtory of that vnfortunate Herea: at the which all they preſent receiued great ſorrow, ſauing onely Brenio, which ſæmed that he receiued neither pleaſure nor ioy. So when the word was voyded, Roſicleer toke his leaue of the Emperour his father, and leaped vpon his horſe, and toke the way which led him whereas he left his boate. He was no ſoner entred into it, but it began to make way, and ſailed with ſo great ſwiftneſſe, that the third day he arriued at Conſtantinople, whereas at this preſent we will leaue him.

¶ How the Ladie Lidia talked with hir Knight Brenio, who was very ſad, demaunding of him the cauſe of his diſcontentment: and of other accidents. Cap. 14.

Hære

HEere you haue heard of the great discontentment that Brenio did showe, at such time as hæ came out of the prison, and in how short time, the ioye that Lidia received, was tourned into sorrow and sadnes: and that she could not demaund to knowe the occasion, by reason of the company that was ther: so she was driuen to passe all that day with bitter sorrowes, and anguish of minde, and without all comfort, till such time as the night approched, thinking ý when shee was alone with him whom she loued more then hir selfe, to aske of him the occasion of all his paine. Thus hir desire being brought to passe, this false Brenio did vncloath himselfe, and the time that hæ was making vnreadie, hæ neuer lefte wæping, till such time as hee was laid in his bed. This faire Ladye leaning with hir breast vpon the bolster, ioyned hir hands with his, and said.

My swæte Brnio, what thing hath caused thæ, thus against the firme loue that I haue towards thæ, to shew thy selfe so sad, as it doth appeare by thy beaute chære: tourne my loue, and show a ioyfull face, and giue mæ some comfort with thy smiling countenaunce, & let my troubled hart receiue some ease, of that vnmeasurable sorrowe which I haue sustained, during the time that these vnknowen and traiterous people, haue kept thæ in prison and absent from my sorrowfull sight. What is this my swæte Brenio, hast thou seene in mæ any occasion to dissolue this faithfull loue which I beare thæ? Let the great trauaile, sighs & sorrowes mœue the which I receiued to finde out the Emperour, and bring him to set thæ at libertye: and if this bæ not sufficient, consider with what great loue I haue passed many sorrowfull waies and terrible stormes, for to attaine thy presence, as now I do. And hære I do sweare vnto thæ by the true & faithfull loue, which caused me so sorowfully to wæpe beinge on the dæpe sea, that if I the infortunate Lidia bæ not acceptable in thy hart. Onely for that, I will not displease thæ, I will with mine owne proper handes open this my

louing

" louing breſt, and ſprinkle the blood therof round about theſe
" thy ingratefull fæte. Oh what paine and ſorrow was in the hart of this faire Lidia, when ſhe ſpake theſe wordes vnto hir vngratefull Brenio, and yet not one of all hir ſorrowes was ſufficient to cauſe him to ſhew any kinde of comforte vnto hir. With theſe and ſuch like extremities, the night paſſed away, and when the lightneſſe of the day had entred in at the windowes of the chamber hee aroſe from his bed, and likewiſe this ſorrowfull Lady, which had paſſed all the night, with beaute weepings, and ſorrowfull ſighes, without putting of hir clothes, in ſuch ſort ſhe went out and followed him.

The Emperour was then riſen and readie, and was putting all things in order that was neceſſarie to paciſie and make quiet the people of the countrie: the which was done with great eaſe, when it was knowen that their Lords wer dead, whom they did without all meaſure hate, for that they were ſo great tyrants: and foure great Cities, beſide many other faire townes and villages, did yelde and ſurrender themſelues vnder his iuriſdiction. The Emperour cauſed them to ſweare to receiue Roſicleer as their true Lord, and they to be his faithfull ſubiects, and with them likewiſe all the whole dominion, the which they did with a verye good will: and the Emperour appointed a gouernour amongſt them, to gouerne all the land. All this beeing finiſhed, and that the Iland was in peace and quietneſſe, he commanded to make ready two galleyes, the one for the faire Lidia and hir Brenio, and the other for his owne perſon, for that he would depart for Africa. So all things was prouided preſently in good order, and being readie, the Emperour commaunded the faire Lidia to imbarke hir ſelfe, and to carrie with hir hir Knight, who ſtraight waye went aboorde the galley, and commaunded the marriners to take their courſe towards Spaine. Likewiſe the Emperour did take his leaue of all them of the Caſtle: who for his noble cuſtomes and valiaunt Knighthoode, after that they knew who hee was, they both feared and loued him with all their hearts. And

when

when he was imbarked in the galley, hée commaunded the marriners to take the way towards Africa.

What is he that could signifie by any reason the small contentment and ioy, that the faire Lidia receiued, in beholding the sad and melancholike countenaunce that hir Bremo continually shewed: who without speaking any word, sayled on till they found themselues in the Ponticke sea, whereas continually it is accustomed with his furie, to terrifie those, which do naugate that way. So there arose a mightie and great tempest, which was such, that it caused the galley to tumble and tosse from the one parte to the other, in great perill and daunger. Thus they remained thrée daies, & thrée nights in this great danger, & the fourth day they wer driuen a land, at a small Iland vninhabited, that was called Rees. This Iland was hid in the sea very farre from anye land, and was poynted with very great rockes. Ther they came to an anker with their galley, and for to refresh and ease themselues of their great trauaile which they had passed, they went a land, and commaunded to raise vp a faire Tent which they brought with them, and therin they made a bed, whereon Bremo laye downe to ease himselfe: and this faire Lidia leaned on the bed side by him, and was somwhat in quiet, for that shée sawe that the sadnesse of hir knight was a litle abated. And by reason of the great paine and dolor that she had receiued, and the vnquietnesse in the tempest: and againe for the contentment she had, to sée hir knight in better quiet, hir wearied body required some rest, in such sort, that as she was leaning on the beddes side, shée fell a sléepe. This false Bremo when hée saw hir at rest and in a sound sléepe, in great secret he arose from the bed, and went vnto the waters side whereas hée had left the galley, and entering therein, he commaunded all those that were a land to imbarke themselues, and to hoise vp the sailes, and wold not by any meanes tarry, til that the seas were calme, but rather did put himself in ý peril of these furious waues, then to inioye the swetnesse of this faire Damosell: and lefte hir all alone, in this desolate and vnpeopled Iland.

Oh Neptune that gouerneſt the ſeas, let loſe thy furious & outragious waues and ſinke ſo vnnaturall and inhumaine a Knight, and ſuffer him not to liue, that vncourteouſly did leaue this louing Lady in this diſtreſſe, who for his deliuerie had put hir ſelfe in all this trouble. This ſorrowfull lady ſtill ſleeping, dreamed, that there was a great and fierce wilde man, which ſtood before hir, with a very sharpe ſword in his hand, making as though hee would kill hir, and ſhee was ſo troubled with the great feare that ſhe receiued, that ſhe gaue great ſhrikes, and called vnto hir Brenio for aide & ſuccour, and as ſhe thought, with his handes he ſtopped his eares, for that he would not heare hir, and ſeemed that hee would not moue himſelfe in any reſpect. This dreaming lady ſeeing this, determined to make hir owne defence ſo well as ſhee could, it ſeemed vnto hir that there appeared before hir a Centaure, which ſaid, feare not faire damſell for I am come hether to aide & ſuccour thee: yet for all that, this wilde man did not let to ſtrike hir vpon the breaſt, and as it ſeemed to hir, hir breaſt was all open, and how that the Centaure put his hand into the wound, and pulled out hir hart, and threw it at the wild man, and ſaid. Take vnto thee this hart, ý without all conſideration loued a man, which with ſuch ingratitude hath rewarded hir. So ſtraight at the ſame inſtant there appeared a Knight, which likewiſe layd holde on the hart with the wilde man, & they two ſtriued greatly betweene themſelues with much contention, who ſhould pull the hart out of the others handes: but in the end, each of them remained with his peece in his hand, and the heart parted in two. So the peece which remained in the power of the wilde man, tourned into a harde ſtone, and that peece which remained in ý power of the knight, tourned into red bloud, & being in this great perpleritie, this ſorrowfull Lady did awake, thinking to haue tolde this terrible dreame vnto hir beloued Brenio, but ſhe found him not in place, and tourning hir face to the other part, to ſee if ſhe could ſee him, but ſhee could neither behold him, nor any other perſon, of whom ſhee might inquire. Wherewith ſhee leaped from the

bed

bed,and with a loud voice, she began to call for hir Brenio: but all was in vaine. So with a swift pace she went down to the waters side, thinking to haue found him there. But at hir comming thether, she found neither him nor any other person, neither the galley which brought thē thether. Then she loked to sea wards, to see if she could discouer any thing, but she could see nothing but water, which was the occasion that shee made great lamentation. And being very hoarce with the terrible shriks which she gaue, she went vp vpon a litle rock which was nigh the waters side, from whence she did discouer the galley, in the which was hir vnlouing Brenio, whereby she perceiued plainly how she was deceiued, & how she bestowed hir affection, whereas was nothing but falshode: although before time shee could not perswade wᵭ hir selfe, that so great treason remained in his heart. The great sorrowes and lamentations which this forsaken Lady made, was sufficient to moue the stones vnto compassion. Thus being weary with lamenting, shee sate hir downe vpon the litle rocke, and leaning hir cheeke vpon hir white hand, shee fell in a great sound, in such sort, that in a long space shee moued neither hand nor foote, but when shee came againe vnto hir selfe, she began a new to make great lamētation, and did publish hir paine with terrible shrikes, saying: Why was I not drowned in the Sea, that the fishes
therof might haue torne my body in peeces, or else to haue
beene deliuered into the handes of tyrauntes, to haue vsed
their tyranne against mee, that my heart might not haue
felt this sorrow, neither mine eyes haue seene this cruelty?
O vnhaphie chaunce, oh cruell fortune, why diddest thou
not make mee to passe this bitter and sorrowfull life in my
childhode, in such sort, that it hadde consumed mee. Wher-
fore did the Gods permit and suffer mee to liue so long,
it had beene farre better that I had died in my Cradell, and
not to liue to see my selfe in this great affliction with-
out all helpe: O you mountaines, O you wilde beastes,
O you deepe sea, ther is not in you any sence to hinder mee,
but that I may publish heere the great disloyaltie of that

trai-

traytor, who is the cauſe of all this my harme. O cruell and ingratefull fortune, I ſee that here plainly without all pittie, thou doſt driue me to the death, and although ỹ fault be others, yet thou doſt apply the paine to mee mine. And in this ſort, with great griefe, the ſorrowfull and vnfortunate Lady did torment hir ſelfe.

So likewiſe, by reaſon of the great tempeſt and torment of the ſea, (whereof we before ſpake) there arriued nigh the ſame place, a knight, with no leſſe daunger, then the others that landed there before. The Pilot ſeeing that Aeolus had ſhut vp the windes, and made faſt the gates in ſuch ſorte, that the ſayle beate againſt the maſte of the galley, that they were conſtrained by the force of oares to retourne againe to ſea. For that they did ſee all the ſea-faring tokens, that the weather would be troubleſome: they did perceiue it alſo by the Corneſa, alſo by ſeeing the Dolphins, leaping and plunging in the ſea, more then they were accuſtomed to do. Theſe and ſuch like tokens the wiſe Pilot did conſider off, who deſired to take part wheras hee might defend himſelfe from that terrible weather looked for. So with this great deſire they ſtroke the water with their Oares, & with great fury they tormented their armes, to get to the land: but the fatall Queene Atrapos, would not conſent thereunto, for that at the houre when the troubled Mone, did extend hir beames vppon the face of the earth, and vpon the large and deepe Sea, then the winde Boreas began to blowe his blaſt, ſo that it conſtrained them of the gally to bring their ſaile to a bow line, and to ſtrike it very lowe, which made the veſſell to tumble & roll from the one parte to the other, in ſuch ſort, that euery time of hir tourning, all they that were in hir, thought to bee drowned. Then the marriners thought good to ſtrike and amaine theyr ſayle, the which they did in great haſt, and laboured to profit themſelues with their oares and by the ſtrength of their armes. But in the ende, when they ſawe that neither ſayle nor oares would profite them, they committed themſelues vnto God, and lefte the Galley and all their goods vnto his gracious

will,and the furie of water,which beganne presently to intreate them in such sort,that it gaue them plainly to vnderstand of their destruction.This was the Galley in which the Emperour departed in,at such time as the Ladie Lidia did take hir leaue,wherein he toke but small rest,alwaies labouring to aide and helpe whereas most necessitie required, in throwing out water which troubled them very much,being driuen by those mightie waues into the Galley. Thus were they tossed and tumbled all the night, looking euerye houre for death,at length the Sun appeared and shewed his golden face,whereby he did declare the cruell stormes & tempests which was past,and likewise gaue shew of that which was to come,by reason that it was darkned vpon a sodaine, and shewed a heauie cheere : so the windes began to arise & blew more and more,and the waues increased and rose of a great and huge height,beating vpon the galley with such violent force,that being taken betweene two billowes,the galley brake a sunder in the middest. These sorrowfull marriners which vntill that time had trauailed and fought with the wind and sea to defend their galley & to saue their liues, were now constrained to striue with death, and indeaueur with all their strengthes by swimming for to come to the shoare,but all would not serue for their defence,for waxing weary by the great force of the waters,being able no longer to indure,they yeelded themselues into the handes of God, and their bodies to the fury of the sea,wherin they finished theyr liues,the Emperour Trebatio being holpen by ỳ mightie hand of God,vpon whom he alwaies called in his hart, desiring to deliuer him from so terrible a death,praieng him for the merits of that mighty mediator Iesus Christ,that he would succour and defend him, who of his wonted mercye heard him,& would not permit that he should perish,for ỳ he laid hold of a bord which was broken from the Galley,and made himselfe fast therto,though it were with some labour, neuertheles this distressed Emperour thought ỳ the end of his daies were at hand,for ỳ the mightie waues kept him a great while vnder the water,& when he discouered himselfe

aloft, ther came another great waue which ſtroke him with ſuch violence, ẏ it threw him vpon the ſhoze, almoſt without any remembzaunce, whereas I will leaue him amongſt the ſhingles which were at the ſea ſide, & of all that happened, I will tell you hereafter.

¶ How the Emperour when hee was recouered of the wearineſſe which he receiued by the great trouble of the ſea, he trauailed in the ſame Iland, and how hee met with certaine knights, with whom hee had battaile, and what happened. Cap. 15.



Mighty pzinces & valiant knights, and you excellent barons, & all you which finde your ſelues mounted vp in the triumph of felicitie, & haue all the contentments & pleaſures of this wozld, euen all you together, I dwe here admoniſh, ẏ you ſtand not too much in your owne conceits, neither be you negligent noz forgetful, foz ẏ you know, oz at the leaſt you haue heard ſay of the ſodaine and variable changes of peruerſe foztune, who reſpecteth no man, foz vnto them which be moſt mounted & are in greateſt pzoſperitie, vnto them ſhe giueth ẏ mightieſt fal: let none ſhew himſelfe pzoud noz vſe any crueltie, becauſe he is in high eſtate, but rather in authozitie let him vſe all humilitie: foz here you haue ſeene ẏ great ſurmounted quietneſſe & peaceable eſtate, in which the emperour hath indured vntill this pzeſent, & now you may ſee vnto what an ebbe foztune hath bzought him, there he lay along vpon the ſands a great while, vntil ſuch time as the Sun had almoſt run thzee parts of his daily courſe befoze he came to himſelf, at which time he rather deſired to die thē to liue, cōmitting his ſoule vnto almighty God, whoſe onely it was. The night dzew on when ẏ w̄ his black mantell he pzocured to couer ẏ bzightnes of Appollo, at which time this emperour was ſomwhat refreſhed of his paſſed trauaile, & aroſe vp, but he was all to be mired & full of ſand, wherof he made himſelfe cleane,

in

in the best manner ẏ he could, & began to take his way thorough a very narrow path, but he could not trauaile far, for that the night came so fast & it waxed very dark, so that he was constrained to seeke a place where he might rest himself, for that he wold not lose the path wherinto he had entered, so he laid himself down vnder a broad pine tree, wher as hee passed the most sorrowfull & afflicted night that euer knight indured: next vnto god he had great cõfort by meanes of his mightie courage, for to passe ouer all his aduersities, thus he passed all the night wᵭ great desire ẏ the day wold come, & when the day brake it seemed very faire & calme, & the aire appered quiet, & he trauailed out onwards his way in that straight path, vntil such time as he came to a verye faire & delectable forrest, wheras sundry chirping birds had gathered themselues together to refresh and shrowd themselues from the parching of the Sun, yelding verie delectably diuers swéet notes. In this forrest, he trauailed wel nigh two houres, & then he went vp to a small mountaine which was at hand, frõ the which he discouered a very faire & wel towred citie, vpon the farther side whereof the sea beate against the faire & high walls, & towards that part wherunto the narrow way did lead, without the city ther was built a princely pallace very sũptuous to behold, & moted round about, which moat made a seperation betwæne the city and ẏ pallace, ther he receiued great pleasure to finde himself in a peopled country & of so goodly building, for that before hee thought he had ben in a desart: likewise he discouered from ẏ hil, a faire fountaine all wrought of Marble, piller like, with a great bowle in ẏ middest also of marble, out of which did proceed foure spouts running with water, which fell into a great cesterne, & comming vnto it he washed his hands and refreshed his face, and sat him down by it vpon the græne graslle, with a great desire to eate somwhat, but ther was no body to giue him any thing, so he rested himself vpon his elbow, & what with ẏ wearinesse of his way & with his hunger, & being very pensiue for his troublesome sorow, he fell a sleepe. Not long after ther came out of that faire pallaice cer-

laine knights which rode abroade to solace themselues, and by chaunce they came to the place whereas the Emperour was, and when they saw him of so faire a fauour and of so goodly a stature, and to their thinking he slept without all feare or care, one of them saide: Out of all doubt this is a knight of a straunge Country, and by his countenaunce and proportion, it seemeth that he is of some high lignage, & that peruerse fortune which alwaies is fickle vnto mankinde, hath caused him to come hether, & brought him to be in this estate. To the which aunswere one that was in companie, who seemed to be of greater estate then all the rest, sayde: that he doth rather seeme to be some robber and theefe, and one that doth lead an ill life, more thē a knight of prowesse, and that the sword which he weareth, he hath stollen from some trauailing knight, let me come and I will awake him out of his sound sleepe, and I will take his sword from him which doth not become him to weare, for it is not to be bestowed on him, and with out any more delay he alighted off from his horse to seeke his owne death (as it fell out) for when he came to the Emperour, he pu'led him by the beard with so much strength, that spite of his hart hee did awake him, but when the Emperour awaked and saw the hands of that villanous knight fast vpon his beard (which was full of haires) he with his left hand stroke him such a blow vppon the breast, that he made him to recoile backe, & whether hee would or no, he fell to the ground with the force thereof, and with great anger he rose vp, (not making any outward appearance of the great & incomperable trauaile that he had passed) he laid hand on his sword, and without tarrieng till the other did arise, he stroke him such a blow vpon the head that he cut him downe to the breast, so that he fell downe dead to the ground, in this sort he gaue him his paiment for his great & vnseemely pride: these knights that came together were eight in number, but when the rest saw ỹ which the emperour did, they prepared thēselues to fight, & lighting from their horses they laid hands on their swords, & wrapped their cloaks about their armes, & thē began a cruel battel,

but

but when this mightie Trebatio saw himselfe so beset with the other seauen knights, he determined to sell his death derie dære, or else to kill them all, & as you dow sæ the grædye Lyon ranging the country with his haire bristeled and raging with great hunger to finde his pray: euen so the valiant Emperour began to strike wt his strong arme, flourishing with it in such sort, that on whom it chaunced to light, he had no nœde of a Surgion to heale him. In a little space of the eight that were of them, ther were foure of thē slaine, and the rest were so scarred with his terrible and mortall blowes, that they durst not come nigh him. Ther was a lackie, that came with them, which when he saw this great destruction of the knightes, toke the horse of one of them that was slaine, and in great hast he galloped with him towards the pallace, crying with a loud voice: Armour, armour, come knights quickly and help, for that there is slaine the Earle of Modique his sonne, and all the rest that were with him, the quæne and Ladie of that country, when she heard that great noise, she looked out of hir closet, and asked who had done that murther, to whom the Lackie answered, that one onely knight vnarmed, whom they found a sæpe at ỳ marble fountaine, hath slaine them. These wordes caused great alteration amongst all them in the pallace, and in great hast they called for their armour to arme themselues, but this faire quæne asked farther of the Lackie, what was the occasion why these eight knightes offered, to cause ỳ knight to attempt so hard an enterprise. who told and declared vnto hir all that you haue heard, and when shee vnderstoode the whole circumstance, she commmanded straight that vproare to cease, & that there should other eight knights goe and procure to take and bring him prisoner, without doing him any harme for that she was desirous to know what hæ should bee that was of so valiaunt courage and so great a strength. So straight way at the commaundement of the quæne these eight knights were ready & armed, and went to the place wheras they were still in battaile, and at such time as they approached, ther was but two left of the eight

that were firſt againſt him. And when thoſe two ſaw the other eight knights comming, they ſtepped on the one ſide, & with a loud voice, cryed, Knights kill this diuell, kill this diuell, who in this ſort hath intreated vs. When the Emperour ſaw that there came other eight armed knightes againſt him, he could not but iudge himſelf to be in great danger of death, for that he was vnarmed and without any defence, yet for all that, his accuſtomed courage did not faile him one iot, but he put himſelf in defence with ſo great hardineſſe, as though he had ben armed with all his accuſtomed armour. Then one of the eight armed knights who would ſhew himſelfe to be of a more courage then the reſt, preſſed forwards with his ſword in his hand and his ſhalde on his arme, making ſhew as though hee would ſtrike him, the Emperour did ward that blow on his ſword wheron it fel, and with his left hand he toke ſo faſt hold on his ſhæld, and with ſo great ſtrength, that he pulled it from his arme, and with great ſpæde he couered himſelfe therwith, and with a valyaunt ſtomacke ſaid: Owe not thinke you diſloyall and cowardly knights to take me priſoner or doo mée any outrage, firſt I hope to put you all to the point of my ſword, or to die in my iuſt defence, but by reaſon that he ſpake to thē in the Græke tongue, they could not vnderſtande him one word, wherfore forgetting that which the Quæne had commanded them, they ſtriued with all their ſtrength to kil him: the Emperour by reaſon of the fountaine had his backe defended ſo that they were conſtrained to fight with him face to face, but he which by his hardineſſe did ſéeme to preaſe forwards more then the other, was ſtraight ſlaine or very ſore hurt. Amongſt theſe knights there was another which was of a more hardier courage then any of the reſt, who manie times did preaſe forwards, & had hurt this valiant Trebatio in two places, & although the wounds were not very great, yet it cauſed his aduerſaries to haue ỳ better ſtomacke to aſſault him. This knight which had hurt the Emperour ſaw well, yf euery one of the reſt had done as much as he, ỳ this vnarmed knight had ben ſlaine, & with a loud voice he ſaid:

O ye Knights of Tinacria, how is it possible that one onelye knight, & without armour, hath brought vs into this ieopardie and great extremitie, the which wordes he spake in the Tuscan tongue, and with so great hardinesse & mighty courage hee pressed forwards, but the Emperour who well vnderstode his wordes, stepped forwardes to receiue him, two steps more then he did before, the which was done w̄ great lightnesse, & followed his blow so hard, that the knight was constrained to receiue the blow vpon his healme, the which was giuen with so much strength & furie, that it parted it in twaine with ỹ head, & before that he could returne back againe into his standing, they hurt him in two or three places, but it was not much, but the Emperour as he recoiled, stroke two of them, & that with so much furie that they fell dead to the ground, the rest of the Knights which remained were meruailously afraid, for that they had felt his mighty blowes, and againe with the sight of those that were slaine before them, therefore they withdrew themselues backe so ỹ his blows might not reach thē. The Emperour seing himselfe at more quietnesse, retired to the place where hee first was, by the fountaine, and there he remained in more safety being better able to make his defence, so there was left of all those sixteene Knights, but seauen, of the which, three of them were more importunate then the rest, and dealt with him euen as a company of small spaniels with a great mastiefe, who with their barking runne round about him both before and behinde, yet not daring to touch any haire, but when they come before him, the mastiefe maketh thē afraid, and forceth them to runne away: so in the same sort was the Emperour amongst his enimies, and being in this conflict, they heard a great noise in ỹ citie of making hast vnto armour, and anon they perceiued how ỹ old Earle did know of the death of his son, who by reason of the great sorrow & passion that he receiued was almost beside himselfe, & commaunded to bring him his armour and his horse, on whom hee mounted, and toke in his hand a great and mightye Speare, and rode forth towardes the Fountaine whereas

the Emperour was, and after the old Earle iſſued out many of the people of the Citie, as well knights as other Citizens. The quæne vnderſtanding all this vproare & tumult, fearing ý by force of all thoſe people, ther ſhould bee ſlaine that knight, who amongſt all other was worthie to liue for his great valour & knighthood, ſhe determined to goe forth accompanied with all ý nobilitie of hir court, & with many faire Ladies & Damſells to aide and deliuer him from perill, but before the quæne could come thether, the old Earle was ther wheras the Emperour was, but when he ſaw ſo many men there dead, and all by the force of one vnarmed knight, if it had not bene for griefe to ſee his ſonne lie ſlaine amongſt the reſt, and alſo the fatherlye loue which did prouoke him to wrath, I promiſe you he wold haue ben the firſt that ſhould haue procured to ſet him at libertie, for that he thought it not poſſible ther ſhould ſo much valiantneſſe reſt in one knight and alſo vnarmed, againſt ſo many armed knights, except ſome of ý Gods had diſcended down to help him, but the great affection which the father ought to haue to his ſonne, cauſed him with great ſhowts & cries to preaſe in amongſt the knights that were fighting, & to put them apart, & likewiſe all the whole multitude ý were ther ioyned together, & with his ſpeare in his hand he came to the place wheras the emperour was, whom I will now leaue, for ý the South wind blew in my eare, & hath conſtrained me to moue my purpoſe and returne to Conſtantinople, wheras ý court of the Emperour remained in great ſorow for ý departing of their Lord, whoſe carefull countenãce ſæmed to prognoſticate ý great daunger that the Emperour ſhould be in, & if ther had not chaunced at that time to come to ý court the wiſe Artemidoro, who did very much comfort the Empres, in willing hir not to torment hir body with ſo many lamentations and paſſions, for that in this his trauaile all things ſhould fall out very well and vnto hir great honour, to whoſe wordes the Empreſſe gaue great credite, otherwiſe ſhe would verily haue bæne ſlaine with ſorow. The Prince Clauerindo was hee which did moſt lament

at

at the ſorrow of the Empreſſe, and determined to goe forth in the queſt of the Emperour, for that he accounted nothing to be grieuous to comfort the ſorrow of the Empres, which would be mittigated by the ſéeking of the Emperour. This ſecret determination came vnto the eares of the king of Sardenia, and he declared vnto Clauerindo, that he would beare him companie, who ſtraight waies determined together to take their voyage, and commaunded to make ready a faire and ſtrong ſhip. So without giuing any to vnderſtande, in a night they imbarked themſelues, and hoyſed their sayles, and committed their ſhip thether, wheras Fortune would carrie hir. The Empreſſe, although ſhée receiued great diſcomfort by hir béeing alone, yet ſhée did diſſemble it in the beſt wiſe ſhée could, and did labour with great diſcretion to gouerne hir Empire in quietneſſe, thinking thereby to mitigate hir griefe, for the abſence of the Emperour. So one day béeing in this ſorrow, there was heard a great rumor, which was ſuppoſed to proceéde of great ioy and gladneſſe. The Empreſſe hearing it, could not by anye meanes imagine what it ſhould be, and being doubtfull, ſhe ſent one to know what it was, that cauſed that great tumult in the Court: but quickly ſhe was reſolued, and put out of all hir doubt, for that it was giuen hir to vnderſtand, that the ioy was becauſe of the Prince Roſicleer, of whom I haue tolde you, who did then at that inſtaunt diſimbarke himſelfe at the waters ſide.

What ſhould I héere ſpeake of the great ioy which the Empreſſe receiued, I am not able fully to declare it, but it was in ſuch ſort, that for the great loue ſhée did beare vnto the Prince, and againe for the great comfort which ſhe receiued in hir ſorrowful minde, that with both hir armes caſt about his necke, ſhée receiued him and imbraced him, with great ioy and contentment. Roſicleer did kiſſe hir Emperiall hands with great humilitie. The Dutches was preſent at this méeting, who knew very well Roſicleer to bée hée that did make ſuch ſlaughter of hir Knightes comming by the way, and when ſhée came vnto the Prince, ſhée ſaide.

the Emperour was, and after the old Earle iſſued out many of the people of the Citie, as well knights as other Citizens. The quæne vnderſtanding all this vproare & tumult, fearing ỹ by force of all thoſe people, ther ſhould bæ ſlaine that knight, who amongſt all other was worthie to liue for his great valour & knighthood, ſhe determined to goe forth accompanied with all ỹ nobilitie of hir court, & with many faire Ladies & Damſells to aide and deliuer him from perill, but before the quæne could come thether, the old Earle was ther wheras the Emperour was, but when he ſaw ſo many men there dead, and all by the force of one vnarmed knight, if it had not bene for griefe to ſæ his ſonne lie ſlaine amongſt the reſt, and alſo the fatherlye loue which did prouoke him to wrath, I promiſe you he wold haue ben the firſt that ſhould haue procured to ſet him at libertie, for that he thought it not poſſible ther ſhould ſo much valiantneſſe reſt in one knight and alſo vnarmed, agaynſt ſo many armed knights, except ſome of ỹ Gods had diſcended down to help him, but the great affection which the father ought to haue to his ſonne, cauſed him with great ſhowts & cries to preaſe in amongſt the knights that were fighting, & to put them apart, & likewiſe all the whole multitude ỹ were ther ioyned together, & with his ſpeare in his hand he came to the place wheras the emperour was, whom I will now leaue, for ỹ the South wind blew in my eare, & hath conſtrained me to moue my purpoſe and returne to Conſtantinople, wheras ỹ court of the Emperour remained in great ſorow for ỹ departing of their Lord, whoſe carefull countenãce ſæmed to prognoſticate ỹ great daunger that the Emperour ſhould be in, & if ther had not chaunced at that time to come to ỹ court the wiſe Artemidoro, who did very much comfort the Empres, in willing hir not to torment hir body with ſo many lamentations and paſſions, for that in this his trauaile all things ſhould fall out very well and vnto hir great honour, to whoſe wordes the Empreſſe gaue great credite, otherwiſe ſhe would verily haue bæne ſlaine with ſorow. The Prince Clauerindo was hæ which did moſt lament

at

at the ſorrow of the Empreſſe, and determined to goe forth in the queſt of the Emperour, for that he accounted nothing to be grieuous to comfort the ſorrow of the Empres, which would be mittigated by the ſéeking of the Emperour. This ſecret determination came vnto the eares of the king of Sardenia, and he declared vnto Clauerindo, that he would beare him companie, who ſtraight waies determined together to take their voyage, and commaunded to make ready a faire and ſtrong ſhip. So without giuing any to vnderſtande, in a night they imbarked themſelues, and hoyſed their sayles, and committed their ſhip thether, wheras Fortune would carrie hir. The Empreſſe, although ſhée receiued great diſcomfort by hir béeing alone, yet ſhée did diſſemble it in the beſt wiſe ſhée could, and did labour with great diſcretion to gouerne hir Empire in quietneſſe, thinking thereby to mitigate hir griefe, for the abſence of the Emperour. So one day béeing in this ſorrow, there was heard a great rumor, which was ſuppoſed to proceéde of great ioy and gladneſſe. The Empreſſe hearing it, could not by anye meanes imagine what it ſhould be, and being doubtfull, ſhe ſent one to know what it was, that cauſed that great tumult in the Court: but quickly ſhe was reſolued, and put out of all hir doubt, for that it was giuen hir to vnderſtand, that the ioy was becauſe of the Prince Roſicleer, of whom I haue tolde you, who did then at that inſtaunt diſimbarke himſelfe at the waters ſide.

What ſhould I héere ſpeake of the great ioy which the Empreſſe receiued, I am not able fully to declare it, but it was in ſuch ſort, that for the great loue ſhée did beare vnto the Prince, and againe for the great comfort which ſhe receiued in hir ſorrowful minde, that with both hir armes caſt about his necke, ſhée receiued him and imbraced him, with great ioy and contentment. Roſicleer did kiſſe hir Emperiall hands with great humilitie. The Dutches was preſent at this méeting, who knew very well Roſicleer to bée hée that did make ſuch ſlaughter of hir Knightes comming by the way, and when ſhée came vnto the Prince, ſhée ſaide.

" knight, I neuer thought to giue you so louing entertainmẽt as now I do, by reason that you did intreate mee very ill, & all my people, & caused mee to receiue great griefe: neuertheless, the amends which I hope to haue of so worthye a knight, doth cause me to craue of you pardõ for this my former anger, for that the little knowledge and acquaintance I haue had of you, hath bene the principall occasion of my discourtesie. Then the prince did call to remembraunce, that shee should be the Lady which was in the Chariot, as well by hir speaches, as by the apparell she wore, to whom he answered and said: Ladye, for your great griefe I am verie sorie, and surely I should receiue much more griefe, if occasion should not fall out, wherin I might do you seruice. Not for so much in that I owe by duetie vnto knighthode, as it is to be at your commaundement: and more, it is the wil of ỹ Emperor my father, to labor to obtaine you all the ease and contentment, that possibly I could: and therefore onely for this cause and purpose, he commaunded me to come vnto the Court: so that whensoeuer you thinke it necessarye to put your necessitie in vre, I am heere ready at your commaundement, to do all that in your seruice is conuenient. And for that all things in your seruice shall bee fulfilled in more ample manner, I will that the noble Brandimardo goe with me in my company, for that your defence shall bee the more certaine. And although the attainment be neuer so difficult, yet hauing him in my companye, I hope to make all things dead sure. Brandimardo rẽdred vnto him great thanks and did accept his desire to haue him in his companye. The Quéene of Lira was not a litle ioyfull of this she heard, and gaue great thanks both vnto the one and vnto the other, for their great courtesie shewed, and saide. Noble and valiant Princes, I owe conceiue very much ioy in this your great curtesies offered vnto me, touching the restoring me againe vnto my kingdome: but in the meane time that you owe pretend to make mee this restitution, and likewise in satisfaction of this great curtesie which you haue offered, I beseech you to procure vnto me (hauing so good opportunitie, &

nons

none moze woꝛthier foꝛ this effect then you, of wꝛ[illegible]wardes the receiue it) the oꝛder of Knighthood, which is the[illegible]re gouern-
I so much desire. This she deliuered with so good[illegible]d whereas
that the Pꝛince stode and beheld hir, and was moꝛe amased at hir meruailous beautie: and replieng vnto the woꝛds of the Quæne, he said. Oh foꝛtunate Empire, that shall bee gouerned by so valyaunt a Pꝛinceſſe, the oꝛder of Knighthood, Lady, I know not how to giue it, foꝛ that it doth wholy and altogether consist in you. Ther is nothing lacking but the girting an of the ſwoꝛd by the hands of some woꝛthye Knight : but who is he that hath deserued to obtaine to doo so woꝛthie an act vnto so noble a Quæne, notwithstanding seeing at this pꝛesent it is offered vnto mee, I will enioy the benefite of this great desert, although I well know my selfe, not woꝛthye thereof. And with this hee toke off his owne ſwoꝛd, and put it about the Quænes necke, who with a meruailous and cheerefull countenance said, I do receiue it by the hands of the best Knight of the woꝛld, and heere I doo returne it vnto you againe, foꝛ with it, I hope to be reſtoꝛed into the Kingdome of Lira. And whiles shee was saieng these woꝛds, hee girt himselfe therewith againe. Then the Pꝛince said. Faire Ladye, I haue this ſwoꝛd now in such estimation, that I doo beleeue no Knight may esteeme moꝛe thereof, noꝛ haue it in greater pꝛice, neither will I chaunge it foꝛ any thing in all the woꝛld, and heere I doo giue you great thanks foꝛ this your curteſie, and desire of God speedely to giue me occasion, that I may pay this great debt, in the which I am indebted. And foꝛ that I maye the better satiſfie my desire, I doo requeſt of you to graunt me a boone, which vppon my faith, I doo pꝛomiſe you, is the very first that euer I did demaund of Ladye, and that I pꝛoteſt by the honour I owe vnder the oꝛder of Knighthoode: Verilye said the Quæne, and it shall bee the first that euer I graunted vnto any Knight. And beleeue mee it is vnto me no small pleaſure and contentment, that this my first grant shoulꝺ be giuen vnto a knight of so noble valour as you are, let it be therfoꝛe what it shall be, I will graunt it vnto you.

And

" Knight, Inel
as now I do reſoning in this manner, they were cut off from all my people by the comming of the Empreſſe Claridiana, who theleſſe, the ading by the hand, the Lady Oliuia, who came from hir cloſet, whereas being together, they heard of the newes of the arriuall of the Prince. If Roſicleer did receiue great pleaſure when he did ſee Oliuia, (vnto them that haue reaſon & diſcretion of vnderſtanding, I leaue the conſideration(: ſo likewiſe hee did much meruaile, at the great leanneſſe of Claridiana, for the which hee was very ſorrye, and with ſome reſons he did comfort hir, as one that knew all the ſecrets of hir heart. All the whole Court receiued great ioy and pleaſure for the comming of the Prince, and all the Knights and Gentlemen came to viſite him. And being dinner time they ſat downe at the table, and at the end of the dinner, when that all was taken vp, they did determine and thought it good, that out of hand they would procure to giue battaile to the Gyaunts, vſurpers of the kingdoms of Lira, and that the Quæne and the Dutcheſſe ſhould remaine in the Court: and with this concluſion they commaunded, that for the next day, ſhould bee made ready, all that ſhould bee neceſſarie for their iourney. In the Court was made great lamentation and ſorow, for that the prince wold ſo ſone depart, & leaue it without any knight of eſtimation or accompt to be made of: for that they were all departed in the Queſt and ſeeking of their Lord and Emperour: whereas I will leaue them. And the Princes Roſicleer & Brandimardo going onwarde in their voyage, left ỳ Empreſſe with the gouernment of hir Empire, and in hir company the Empreſſe Claridiana, and the Quæne of Lira, and the Princeſſe Oliuia. Where let them reſt, and now I will tell you of the ſucceſſe of the two children of the great Alphebo.

¶ How the two children of the great Alphebo, were ſtolne away, by the Giant Galtenor, and what afterward did ſucceed of the ſame robbery. Cap. 16.

within

WIthin the wide and deepe sea, towardes the part of India where the people are gouerned, vnder the pole antarticke, and whereas the furious waters with their great waues & terrible noise, with violent force do make hollow and vndermine the rockes, & strong defence of the port Palato, and the sumptuous citie of Sina, are two very faire Ilands, the one of them is called Trapona, a very great Iland and plentifull of all things, wherein raigned a knight of great fame called Delfo, which was not farre off from the other Iland, named Arguinaria, being likewise very abounda nt of all kinde of vittailes, & very strong and was gouerned by a Gyaunt called, Gedereon Brandembul, a very fierce man. His power and strength was such, that he was not onely feared of them of the Iland, but also of all other Kings and Knights, borderers and confines vpon his land. He was fiftæne cubites in height, and his face very furious and wilde, and his strength surpassed the power of men. And aboue all hée was very cruell, and had vsurped that land of another Gyant, who by lineall discent should haue had the gouernment, whose name was called Galtenor. This was hee, which in a Serpentine figure entered into the chamber of the Empresse Claridiana, and stole away hir two children, for that hée did know by his arte Magicke (in the which he was very cunning and expert) ỹ he could not recouer his Iland, but by meanes of the young sonnes, wherof the Empresse should be deliuered. For which cause he did steale them away in the forme as I haue tolde you, I say the two young children newly borne. Then this Galtenor, hauing these two yong infants in his power, trauailed onward his iourney, and ouerpassed all Greece, hée came vnto the vttermost parts and confines of Armenia. And approching vnto a Castle, by reason that the infants were out of quiet with hunger, he vsed the effect of his arte and did inchant all them that were within the Castle, and depriued them of their wits, sauing onely one Lady, that was newly brought a bedde, whose childe straight died, to whom

whome hée did commend the two infants. And as at that time this faire Lady was not sufficient to giue them both suck for lacke of milke, he did by his arte likewise prouide a Lionesse, which had newly whelped, and a shée Goat, which did helpe hir with their milke, to the nourishing of these two infants. This Lady for the refreshing of the Infants, did aske licence to vnswaddle them, which béeing graunted vnto hir, she vnswaddled the young infant out of his rich clothes wherin he was, and in making cleane of his little bodie, with a fine linnen cloth, shée saw on his breast, a very faire speare, at the which shée was greatly amazed, & for this occasion they gaue him to name Claridiano, of ý speare: and the other infant they called Rosaluira. So in this order as I haue told you, wer these infants nourished two yéeres, with these their nourses, and euerie daye more then other their exceéding faireneste and beautie increased, so that they seémed to be heauenly creatures. This Gyant did determin not to depart from that place, til such time as they came vnto age, for that the country did like them very well. So they were there fiue yéeres without remouing from thence to any other place, in the which time these Infantes were so great of body that they seémed to be of a dossen yéeres of age. Claridiano was of a mernailous and faire beautie, but the infant Rosaluira was without comparison, more then anie humane creature. Then Galtenor seéing ý it was time to carry them vnto Trapobana, hée caused by his art to bée brought a Chariot, which was drawen by two great Griphons, and therin he put the children, and also their nourse: for that the children did cry pittifully for their nourse, and the nourse likewise shed many teares, and began to tormét hir selfe, when they should bée carried awaye, and so béeing in the Chariot they trauailed, and left béehind them Armenia, and the faire and white Albania, the great sea of Caspro, and likewise Marmantina, the Gran Tartaria, with his surmounted seas, which is seperated from ý great sea, they passed likewise by Armenia the great, and came vnto the head spring of Euphrates, which doth begin a hundred miles

from

from Damasco, & is compassed about with two faire cities, & one of thē to the Eastward called Ierosolima, & the other is scituated to the Ponents, called Sabiosca. Hēre he caused his waggon to descend for to ease themselues, and that the children should take some refreshing: the which was done to the great contentment of them all: and being somwhat weary of their iourny, the Gyant fell a slēpe, and so likewise the nourse, who was called Formisa with Claridiano in hir armes, who also was a slēpe, but Rosaluira was awake, and being apparailed with very rich apparell of white Damaske, all spotted full of Iewells of golde and pearles, thē descended out of the Waggon, and with hir faire yellowe haire, which sēmed to be gold wiers, all hanging down behinde on hir back, garnished about with very rich iewells, & without all feare she went vnto the riuer side, the which was beset on euery side with very faire Orchards and gardeines, and all the fields garnished with diuers kindes of swēte flowers and grēne hearbs, which serued for the fēding of many shēpe that were nigh at hand, fēding by the riuers side. And she receiued such cōtentment, in these swēt delights, that before she was aware, she was very far from the place, wheras hir brother and the rest were a slēpe.

There was nigh that place a shepheard, which kept certaine shēpe, & with that exercise he passed his life (although with great misery) and in a poore and very little cottage, who seeing that Infant all alone, and so gallantlye adorned with rich apparell, he drew nēre the place whereas she was, and loked round about him towards all parts, to sēe if there were any that came after hir to sēke hir, or if shē had any kēper: but when he saw that there was no body thē toke hir by the hand, and the childe followed him with a very good will, alwaies loking him in the face. The Sheapheard spake vnto hir in the Tartarian tongue, and the childe spake vnto him in the Chaldean tongue, and asked of him somewhat to eate, with a smiling countenance: this shepheard did partly vnderstand hir & lead hir vnto his house, and gaue hir a dish of milk and sops of bread, and the

childe

childe being a hungred did eate it with a very good will. The ſhepheards wife who was ſomewhat diſcrete, ſeing the great riches, that this infant Roſaluira had about hir, ſaide: Huſband, I do beleeue that this child is of ſome high lignage as it doth appeare by his apparell, and ſurmounted beauty. It ſhall bee verie well, that we do keepe hir heere till ſuch time as we do know what ſhe is. For in keeping and making much of ſuch a faire creature, cannot chuſe but redound vnto vs great profite. And if it ſo fall out, that wee cannot learne nor know what ſhe is, with this riches ý ſhe hath about hir, we may bring our ſelues out of all trouble, and be more richer then any ſhepheard in all this Country. This ſhepheard receiued great ioye with the finding this childe, acknowledging all that which his wife had ſaid vnto him, to be very good and well ſpoken: and ſo in great ſecret they kept hir eight daies, maintaining hir in the beſt wiſe they could, with ſuch meates as they wer accuſtomed to eate, alwaies hauing a great care, at all times when he went to Ieroſhlima, to demaund if there were any inquirie for ſuch a childe, although he beleeued for a certainty, that ſhee was of ſome ſtraunge Country, by reaſon of hir apparaile, and different language, which was an occaſion that they put in practiſe their determined purpoſe: & laying all feare apart, they toke from hir, hir rich apparell, and put on ſhepheards apparell, as was accuſtomed amongſt them, wherwith this childe was as well content, as with the other: and vnder that courſe raiment, ſhe did diſcouer ſo great and ſurpaſſing faireneſſe, ý Diana was almoſt aſhamed to extend hir ſiluer beames, whereas this young feminine ſhepheard did walke, who alwaies carried in hir hand a litle ſhepheards crooke, and following the ſheepe whereas they did feed, many times with hir golden haire about hir ſhoulders, being of ſo great beautie, that the gliſtring beames of Appollo paſſing thorough, appeared to haue no vauntage of it. The olde ſheapheards wife did very well intreate hir, and made as much of hir as ſhe could, for that thoſe iewells was the occaſion of their great wealth. And againe this ſhepheard was wiſe,

for

for when hée saw himselfe rich of money, yet would he not begin to vse his wealth too spéedely, béecause hée would not giue any to vnderstand of his sodaine riches, but by little & little he did imploy it in buying more shéepe, in such sorte, that he came to bee the richest shepheard in all that Prouince, accounting and estéeming of that childe more then if she had ben their owne daughter. Now let vs returne vnto the Gyaunt that we left slæping, who when he awaked and found missing the infant, was verie sadde, and toke a booke, and beganne to make his accustomed conturations to know where she was become, but he could not come to the knowledge of hir nor any thing touching hir, and when hée saw that he had not so much learning to know where this infant was, hée called to remembraunce the wise Lyrgandeo and Artemidoro, béléeuing surely that one of them had carried hir away, and being in this béléefe, hée straight wayes without any more tarrieng went into his Wagon, and began againe to trauaile: but the great sorrow and lamentation that Claridiano made for the absence of his sister was verie grieuous to heare. Likewise the Nurse Formisa did beare him company with many teares and sorrowful sighs, but the Gyaunt caused them to holde their peace, and did comfort them in the best manner he could, and so trauailing he left behind him the riuer Euphrates, the kingdome of Syria and of Babylonia, the great Kingdome of Media, the Gran Tartaria, and the high mountaine Masarpicoronas, in the which Alexander did shut vp the Centaures. Likewise hée passed other great mountaines, riuers, and kingdomes, which I do heere omit for to auoide tediousnesse. So long they trauailed till they came to the Kingdome of Tigliafa, and passed the Port of Palato, and left béehinde them Sina, and put his wagon in the pleasant Iland of Trapobana with in the Pallace of the king of Delfo, béefore whome hée did present himselfe with this young Claridiano by the hande, and said.

O good and bountifull king, héere I do present thée a present „
& greatest that euer was presented vnto any king: take vnto „

" thée this child, & loke vnto him as thou wouldest loke vnto
" thy owne person, for you shal vnderstãd, that this is he that
" shall restore you into your kingdome, and shall set you at li-
" bertie frõ this subiection in the which you now are in, and
" shall put mee in my kingdome, taking it out of that tirants
" hands who doth now inioye it: therefore O King dwe not
" forget to dwe this which I haue tolde thée, for if wée dwe
" lack or lose this remedie, all the hope that wée haue in this
the restoring of our kingdomes is lost. The King which in
the words of the Gyaunt had great confidence, giuing vn-
to him great credit, toke the childe by the hand and set him
" vpon his knée, and kissing his fayre face, hée sayde: Ah my
" good friend, where hath beene seene a thing of so great beau-
" tie and of so fayre and perfect proportion, it is not possible
" that amongest humane creatures should bée any such, but
" rather some of the Gods hath descended from aboue, & hath
" ingendered him. And héere I dwe sweare, by that which I
" doe owe vnto the deseruing of the mightie Apollo, to haue
" him in possession, & to intreate & intertaine him as though
" hée were my owne proper & naturall Lord, and thinck my
" selfe in this dwing to bée the most happiest King in all the
" world, and thou my friend, in the meane time procure to
" kéepe thy person from the most cruell dogge, whom I dwe
" think is feared of the high throne of the supernal Gods: one
" thing ther is which onely doth greeue me & put me in great
" feare, which is, that I wold not we should bring vp so ten-
" der and fayre a yongling as this childe is, for to bée a pray
" héereafter vnto so cruell & monstrous a beast as hée. Then
" the Giant answered and saide: O king put thy selfe out of
" all doubt, for hée shall not onely abate the courage and fu-
" rie of this great and sauage tyrant, but also in hearing him
" named, all the countrie shall be in a feare & quake: trauaile
" therefore in no other thing but to bring him vp with all
" the maiestie that thou maist, for thou shalt vnderstand that
" hée is sonne vnto the most valyauntest Prince in all the
" world, at which words the childe was in a great dumpe,
" and blushed in such sorte that his face séemed to bée a Ru-

bie:

die: so the Gyant toke leaue of the king, not without great sorrow to a part himselfe from that young Prince. The King tourned and gaue the childe agayne to Formisa his Nurse, vntill such time as he came to the bigneſſe and stature to exercise himselfe in learning and in feats of armes, the which hée didde in so short time, that it put them in great admiration that did teach him, for that in lesse then the space of three yéeres hée was so expert in both of them, that they neuer heard in times past of any lyke vnto him.

Moreouer, in speaking of all manner of Languages, hée was so perfect, that it seemed how that all his lyfe time hée had béene brought vp in the place where eyther of all the Languages were spoken. His vnderstanding and pollycie was such in all manner of things, that not onely the King but all others were perswaded that hée was the sonne of some of the Gods, by reason whereof they did vse him with such reuerence as though hée hadde béene a thing sent vnto them from heauen. And when hée came to be twelue yéeres olde, hée was of such greatneſſe, that hée seemed to bée twentie yéeres olde, his height was according vnto the mightineſſe of his members, which were exceéding wel proportioned: perticularly he shewed in his coũtenance a great grauitie and sober disposition, verie little talke, but when hée spake, it was with great discreation, and his words verie well placed, verie full of humilitie, and if at any tyme hée were angry (as verie seldome hée was) it was in such sort, that béeing blinded therewith, hée respected nothing. The wise Artemidoro sayth, that if this anger doth proceéde of base things it were a great vice, and that it would ouershadow and darken all other vertues that a man was indued withall, but hée sayth that it dyd not come vnto him, but by too much force of the heart, and that it was alwaies accompanied with reason, which dyd nothing at all hurte him, but rather dyd the more exalt his déedes, and if it dyd chaunce at any tyme that hée were angrie, in loking on them that were present hée put them in great feare.

Béesides this, hée was very pitifull, for that many

times, hearing talke of anye terrible cruelties, hée would wæpe for the compaſſion hæ had thereof. The king which euerie day did ſæ his mightineſſe and vertues more & more increaſe, thought himſelfe very happie to haue in his power ſo precious a iewell. Manie other thinges I could tell you hære, of the nobleneſſe of this Prince, according as the wiſe Artemidoro doth diſcouer, but the ſucceſſe of his worthie father doth cauſe me to change my ſtile, to tell you of his high and mightie déedes.

¶ Of the great paine that the Prince did ſuſtaine for the abſence of his coſin, and how hee had battaile with a certaine knight that was verie dolorous through loue, & of all that which chaunced heerein. Cap. 17.

THE griefe was very great which the Grecian Prince receiued for the ſodaine abſence of his coſin, but hæ did comfort himſelfe, for that hæ vnderſtode that the veſſell was gouerned by the art of Lyrgandeo, and perſwaded himſelfe that it was conuenient, for that which ſhould ſuccæde, and ſo diſſembling his ſorrow in the beſt wiſe he could, he went onwardes his voiage, verie deſirous to ſæ land, purpoſing that if he went alande, bæing on firme land, not as then to goe any more to Sea, and bæing ſtill in this determination, hæ ſailed forwards two dayes. The next day following when that the Sunne had runne a great part of his courſe, they ſaw comming towards them a great Boate or Galley, of which the winde with his bluſtring gales did fill their ſailes, and alſo it was rowed with foure Oares on a ſide, and hadde the Sea likewiſe fauourable vnto them, and the Princes ſhippe loſt hir way, for that the winde was againſt hir, and therfore they ſtroke their ſailes and made a ſtay, intending to ſæ what was in the other Shippe: drawing nigh them, they hearde the ſound of a Harpe, which made a meruailous ſwæt and pleaſant noiſe in the eares of all the hearers.

And

And beholding with good aduiſement, they ſaw that within their boat they brought hanging at ỹ maſt an image, which ſeemed to be of ſiluer, of a meruailous great beauty, with this title written thereon: Floriana the daughter of the Duke of Cantabria, Lady of all the beauty in the world. At hir fat ſhe had hanging by little chaines of ſiluer, many images of faire Ladies & damſels, amongſt them all there was two which did hang higher then all the reſt. ỹ one of them had a crowne on hir head, which ſeemed to be an Empreſſe, & the other to be a quœne, and euery one of them had their names written what they were, & reading ỹ titles of thoſe two which hung more higher then the reſt they ſaw ỹ one of them was Claridiana Empreſſe of Trabiſond, & vpon ỹ other was written, Oliua Princeſſe of great Britaine. O beauſy God, how great was the ire that vpon a ſodaine appeared in the prince, whē hœ bœhelde the image of his Lady at the fœte of the other which was higheſt, & blowing like vnto a wilde bull, he ſaid: O my verie friend & one of great vnderſtanding, if thou doe not ſpœdely aſſiſt to puniſh this great outrage offered me, frō this time forth I will renounce thy friendſhip & accoūt thœ as my mortall enemie, becauſe I ſœ, for ỹ more augmenting of my paine, thou haſt ſhewed me ỹ which might haue bœne eſcuſed by ſhunning ỹ ſight of it. Tefereo which likewiſe did behold ỹ which ỹ prince had ſœne, & ſaw the great alteration which ỹ ſight had cauſed in him, & fearing ỹ his outragious choler, would be the occaſion ỹ he ſhould do ſome vnſeemly act, he had great care of him, & ſurely he had done no leſſe, but ỹ litle & litle they drew nigher with their galley vnto ỹ other boat, & they were ſo nigh ỹ they might plainly heare the muſick that was within the boate, & for ỹ it ſeemed vnto them to be very pleaſant, they gaue attendāt eare therto, & alſo to a ſong that a knight in ỹ galley ſung, which hœre followeth.

FAine would I cloake and hide my heauy care,
and cloſely beare the burthen of my griefe,
If ſpite of will, my woe did not declare
my ſundry ſorrowes, voide of all reliefe:

Prouokte by hir,that laughes when I lament,
And in my torments ſeemes to reſt content.

Oh blinded ſence,whereby I was miſled:
and headlong tumbled into Cupides ſnare,
Where I a while was with my fancie fed,
which meate ſeemd ſweet: but ſauce hee did prepare,
[A ſhaft of gold,whoſe head was dipt in gall]
This hit my heart,and ſpoyld my taſt with all.

I know right well,that louers findes delight,
which now and then hath pleaſure mixt with paine:
But well may hee bee deemd a hapleſſe wight,
that voyde of hope,doth helpleſſe ſtill remaine:
So wretched I,haue ten yeeres ſued for grace,
And for reward,haue frownes in friendſhips place.

Ah cruell loue,that firſt didſt make mee blinde,
when I beehold the beautie of that face,
Which made mee iudge hir of celeſtiall kinde,
and deeme hir heart dame Mercies onely place:
But too too plaine I now in fine perceiue,
That ſmootheſt ſhewes,doe ſooneſt men deceiue.

If thou deſire my death for thy delight,
with willing hart I will the ſame forgoe:
But know,in heauen there is a iudge moſt right,
that iuſt reuenge will for thy rigour ſhow.
Take then no pleaſure in my reſtleſſe paine:
Bloud guiltleſſe ſpilt,requireth bloud againe.

The world likewiſe of mee would deeme the beſt,
and beeing dead,will tearme mee,firme and trew:
But thee (ſtill liuing) they will ſo deteſt,
as thou wouldſt ſoone with teares thy rigor rue:
Wherefore way all,and pittie my diſtreſſe:
Leaſt thou thy ſelfe in fine bee comfortleſſe.

I well doe know thy beautie is so braue,
that onely it deserues ado'rde to bee:
And such it is that none the like can haue,
Lady or Damsell, whatsoere shee bee.
As Queene of beautie, thou deseruest to raigne:
And this will I gainst any Knight maintaine.

This is that which I denie, aunswered the Prince vnto these words, and with a high voyce, hee sayde, Knight whosoeuer thou art, come forth and defende this great lie, which euen now thou spakest, for it shall not be answered with any other thing, but with the losse of thy life. So their barks were ioyned one with another, which the prince seeing, he went and would haue leapt into the other boat: but hee was disturbed by the comming forth of a verie well set Knight against him, being of a good proportion, who had heard the words which the Prince had sayde, and for to see who it was which spake them, he came from vnder the hatches of the barke. Hee was armed with greene armour, the most richest that euer knight did weare, & was full of these two letters F.F. all guilt. This Knight of the barke issued out not hauing his helme on his head, who discouered a very faire face, such as hath not beene seene, but onely that of the Prince, his beard began to bud as yelow as the gold, and his haire was of the same colour. And when hee saw that the Knight of the Sunne had his healme on his head, and that he saw a Knight of so gentle disposition, and with so rich armour, hee almost suspected who it should be, & sayd with great grauitie, It is not seemely (especially in a Knight of such disposition as you seeme to be) to speak such proude words as you haue vttered, and aboue all, vnto one that doth esteeme them so little as I doe. The knight of the sun at ỹ time was not to straine any curtesie, but ans were It is worse in thē which do presume of themselues as thou dost, to speak lies & commit villany, in esteeming so little of thē, ỹ are not onely in beautie far passing ỹ fairnesse of this Lady whome thou so honorest, but also of more, then any in

the world, & yet thou dost put her a degree lower, making her whom thou dost serue to be the Princesse of all beauty, what diuel hath bewitched thee in this wise, & deceiued thee, not to esteeme nor to make any reckoning of the excelent Claridiana. Dost thou thinck that the Grecian Prince is not in the world, or else dost thou understand that he is so olde, that he cannot vse his members to maintaine her quarell against such like falsehood as this is, which londly thou forcest thy self to defend, take vnto thee thy helme, thou vile and naughtie Knight, for thy bold hardinesse is worthye of no other thing but death. By these reasons which ỹ knight of the Sunne had vttered, that was confirmed in the other, which beefore he did suspect, & rested halfe doubtfull to deale with him, but seeing he must of force, he laced on his helme, and commaunded the Marriners to grapple fast the barks together, the which was done with a trice, which caused the one to ioyne fast to the other, and so without any more words betweene them, they both drew theyr swords, and the Knight with the greene armour toke the aduauntage, & stroke the Prince such a blow vpon ỹ healme, that he made him stoope, and firme his hand vppon the ship bord, and in great hast he doubled another with so great strength, ỹ he was almost astonied, and it made him to recoile backwards two paces, that he had almost fallen downe. The Knight of the sunne came strayght way to himselfe, and lyfting vp his mightie arme, he chaunged such a blow vpon the helme of his enimie (which was as hard and strong as a Dimond) that it gaue such sound, that all the sea was occupied with the noyse thereof. And made him to bow with both his knees to the ground. The great Knight merualled very much of that great blow which he had receiued: but for that he was strong and of great courage, he arose streight vp agayne on foote, and lent vnto the Prince such another blow, and with so great anger, that as it hit him on the waste, it made him to fall sidewards to the fore ship.

The Prince dyd not meruayle much thereat, but was straycht way with him agayne, and stroke him so mightie

a blow vpon the helme, that it made the blood start out at his eyes and at his nose, and he was so troubled therewith, that he thought a great tower had fallen downe vpon him. The Prince seing him in this traunce, did procure to leape into his barke, but the greene Knight by reason he was not fully astonished, with both his hands thrust at the Knight of the Sunne vpon his breast, for to hinder him from his entring, so that spite of his hart he made him to recoile, and that in such sort, that hee lacked but a little to fall downe backwards, which was the occasion, that his anger dyd the more increase. And either of them firming themselues on theyr feet, ther began a new the battaile, with so great anger & fury, that the Warriners thought, that at euery blow the battaile would haue been ended. Neuertheless, the more they did fight, the more their anger dyd increase, so ỹ theyr fierce blows wer incõperable. Oh how much ỹ knight of the sun foũd himself troubled to sée ỹ great strangth of his aduersarie, for ỹ except it were in the Knight of Cupide only, he neuer in any other had found the like courage & strẽgth, as hee did in this Knight with the greene armour, who likewise did no lesse meruaile at the power of the knight of the Sunne: and with this, in either of them increased great courage, with like desire to ouercome their enimies, procuring to strike the one the other with great fury, and multiplyed so theyr blows, that neyther of them was without his payment. The Prince was meruailously amazed to sée that the courage of his enimie dyd so long indure, which caused his anger in very straunge maner to increase in such sort, that hee strake at him such strong and incomperable blows that they were not to bee suffered, & almost no resistance to bee made. So long they indured the battaile, that the Sun had made an ende of his ordinary course, and the heauy and mourning night began to throw his mantle ouer all the earth, in such sort that they could scarce sée: but they were so kindled in their anger, & so furious in their battaile, that the darknesse was not sufficent to seperate them, but they called with a great noyse for lights, that they might make

on

an end of their battaile, but Tefereo seeing their determination, conceiued great griefe that such a valiant knight as he with the greene armour should run in any danger of perill, he did perswade with ỳ Mariners, & made signes that they should vngrapple their barkes, & being moued with great compassion they procured to do it, so priuely that the knights might not perceiue it, the which was easily accomplished, for that they were so blinded in fiercenesse of this their battel, that they could not intend to marke it. The grapples were no sooner taken off, whē ỳ the barke of ỳ knight of the Sun with great force did seperate himselfe from the other, which when the Prince did see, & that he could not finish his desire, he was purposed to throw himselfe into the sea, for to come vnto his aduersarie, but considering that it would little profit him, he began to exclaime against Lyrgandeo to be his enimie and a robber of his honour, and saying that he was a vile man and of base bloud and lignage: with this and such like reproches, and other irefull thoughts, the Prince went onward his iourney, and vppon a sodaine his Galley stroke a land, and in a trice he leapt out of hir, and after him went out Tefereo, and caused their horses to be taken out, and put them into a faire meddow full of verie faire and greene grasse. where as they did feede. The knight of the Sunne being verie full of thoughts and pensiue, he would not consent that any should speake with him, but got him amongest a companie of fresh and greene trees, where as he remained till the morning. So verie early in the morning at the break of the day he called for his horse, and when all that were with him were in a readinesse, he began to iourney, and toke his waye through a verye streight and narrow path, which brought them vnto a very broad & common beaten way, so they had not trauailed long in it, when they saw comming a Damsell with a very sad and sorrowfull countenaunce, as appeared by the great quantitie of teares which proceeded from hir eyes, and she came in great hast riding on hir Palfray, and when she came nigh whereas the Prince was, he and all that were

with

with him did salute hir, the Damsell did returne vnto them the thanks, & with the great sorrow that she had in hir hart shee spake vnto them in the French tongue, and said: Oh soue-» reigne Gods, that I might finde in these knights so much » strength as the outward shew & appearaunce of their well » proportioned persons doth promise, then they would sone » giue remedie as to this my troubled sorrow. Tefereo who » was not so troubled in his minde as the Prince was, aun-» swered and said: Of truth Lady your petition beeing iust-» ly demaunded and the cause conformable, wee will not one-» ly aduenture our persons for your remedye, but also our » lyues, for that wee are therto bound by the order of knight-» hode, in the fauour and defence of Ladyes and Damosells. » The Damosell answered and sayd: I haue so much iustice » on my side, that I doe meruaile how the heauens dwe con-» sent vnto it, or why the humane force of strength of men » will maintaine such falsehode, notwithstanding, gentle » Knight, if you promise me to dwe your best to remedie mee » herein, I will declare it vnto you, and in the performing » thereof you shall redresse three things. In the one you shall » deliuer mee of this great sorrow and payne in the which I » now am in, the other, you shall set at libertie the faire La-» die Artalanda, who is accused by the greatest and falsest » treason that euer was inuented in the world, and most » shamefully imputed vnto that innocent Princesse, and by » the third you shall get to your selues great honour, which » is the thing that all good and valyaunt Knights doth pro-» cure and desire in this world. The Knight of the Sunne » aunswered: Wee know well that these three are to bee » esteemed, therefore fayre Damsell, for my selfe and for my » companion I thus much say, that wee doe offer our persons, » with the cõditions aforesaid. In the meane time ỹ hee spake » these words, the Damsell did behold him very much, & it see-med vnto hir that hee was of a great valour, & seeing him of so good a proportion and so well armed, shee imagined in hir minde that he should be the knight of the Sun by all likely-hoods, according as shee had heard talke, and declared often

times

times in the Court of the French king, and was perswaded that it was none other, as appeared by all tokens that shee before had heard, & comforting hir selfe with these new and joyfull thoughts, shee desired them to alight from their horses, and that if it pleased them to sit downe under a faire greene arbour which was there at hand, shee would declare vnto them the greatest treason that euer was inuented in the world, to the which these knights did condescend with a verie good will, & being set downe amongst those greene hearbs, the Damsel with a verie dolorous complaynt began and saide.

" Noble knights and Lords you shall vnderstand that you " are in the kingdome of France, vnto the king wherof it pleased God to giue a daughter, of so great beautie & fairnesse, " that it caused great admiration vnto all them that beheld " hir, the which fame was spread abroad, which caused verie " many great and valerous Knights and Lords of this and " other kingdomes to repaire vnto the Court: amongst them " all there came one who was sonne vnto the Prince of Scot- " land, & named Dalior, a man of a verie good grace & gentle " disposition, and one indued with all feats of good knighthood. " Likewise there was another who was sonne vnto the duke " of Guyan, one of the greatest noble men that was in all " Fraunce, a strong and stout man and of great pride, and by " lignage of the most valyaunt and strongest Knights in the " world, called Lidiarte. These two Princes had discord bee- " twéene themselues, & did contend in the seruice of this fayre " Lady Artalanda. The great contentmét the which they receiued, & the great brauery they vsed in apparell in this their " seruice, I cannot heere expresse. But this faire Lady did so go- " uerne hir selfe with discreation (who was indued with it as " much as with hir beauty) ỳ she made as though shee vnderstood nothing of their desire, although alwaies shee had a better affection to the good will of the Prince of Scotland then " to the loue of Lidiarte, & for that, loue doth not permit that " any thing which appertayneth thereunto should bee kept secret, this vnbeloued knight did apparantly perceiue it, by

which

which occasion, the great griefe which he receiued, abated his
coulour and he waxed very leane, and his face became ye-
low and wan, and did determine to change his apparaile of
ioy and gladnesse, and all pleasures, and to apparell him-
selfe in such sort, that she might well vnderstand his great
sorrow and heauinesse. And to the contrary Dalior did shew
himselfe in his apparell, the great contentment that hee re-
ceiued, for that he did perceiue that his Lady did shew him
some fauour: the which was vnto the young Earle ỹ cause
of great sorrow and griefe. Then Loue, who neuer resteth
from finishing his effects, but alwaies doth with great effi-
cacie make perfect his workes, did wound with firme and
faithfull loue towards Lidiarte, a damsell whose name was
Tarsina, being in the seruice of this beautifull Princesse be-
fore named, who loued him so firmely, that this miserable
Damosell could finde in hir selfe no kinde of quietnes nor
rest, and most of all she now tormented hir self, for that she
saw so sodaine a change in hir louer. This cruell paine did
so much constraine hir, ỹ she of necessity was driuen to seeke
all meanes & pollicies, to procure how she might at hir ease
talke with him, and giue him to vnderstand, with hir owne
mouth, all the paine and griefe that she did suffer, and the
onely cause thereof. And putting this hir determination in
vre, it chaunced on a day, (as shee might say bitter and vn-
fortunate) after dinner when the Table was taken vp, shée
found time conuenient to declare vnto him all that hir
hart desired, for finding hir louer leaning against a cupbord
all alone, shée came vnto him and saluted him with great
curtesie, the Earle did receiue hir with no lesse gentlenesse
(beléeuing for that she was a Damsell of his lady the prin-
cesse, that she had come from hir of some message) shée séeing
so good opportunitie spake vnto him in this manner. Many
times noble Lidiarte, I haue ben moued to demaund of you
what thing it shuld be, that hath so much strength & force,
which onely doth not cause you to change your gorgeous &
braue apparell, but also doth take away ỹ colour from your
gentle face, and in this manner weaken all your members.

Where

» Where is now all your brauerie and cõtentment, that you
» were wont to haue? discouer vnto mee all your payne and
» griefe, and the occasion of all this your sorrow. Noble Lord
» let mee heere vnderstand of all, & being knowen of this thy
» seruaunt, I wil procure the best and most assured remedies,
» that may bee for thy redresse conuenient. Tell mée Lidiarte,
» if it bée corporal griefe, or whether it be a wound hurte by
» the cruell force of Cupides dart. My louing Lord, I doe de-
» sire you to declare vnto mee the cause of all your sorrow &
» griefe, and heere I do protest and giue my faith to procure
» with al my power and strength, by policie & other meanes
» to finde remedie for this your tribulation. These and other
» such reasons, with hir words wel placed, spake this Damo-
» sell vnto the Earle, with hope that hée should declare vnto
» hir, the cause of all his sorrow, and from whence it did pro-
» cede. These sweet persuasions and louing reasons, tooke
» such effect in the Earle Lidiarte, that hé discouered all that
» was in his heart, and the whole occasion as heeretofore you
» haue heard. This damosell when shee vnderstood the whole
» effect thereof, it greeued hir to the very heart, although shee
» did dissemble it, and kept it secret to hir selfe, and would not
» suffer him therein to know hir minde: and straight way
» for hir remedy, the diuell put into hir head, a meruailous &
» wicked inuention. And for to giue contentment vnto the
» Earle, she tolde him, that she would declare vnto the Prin-
» cesse, all the whole estate of his sorrowfull paynes, and
» passionate griefs, willing him withal to remember, that the
» next day at that houre, he should meet hir againe at ỳ same
» place, for that shée would bring him an answere of all that
» should passe. And with this shée left off hir talke and depar-
» ted, leauing the Earle somewhat comforted, with the hope
» of hir answere, that hee looked for the next day: yet hee stoode
» in doubt of hir retourning at ỳ appointed houre, & thought
» the time verie long: so hee passed all that day & night with-
» out any rest. And on ỳ other side, this amorous Lady was
» no lesse troubled and without rest, desiring earnestly the

appoyn-

appoynted tymes approching: euen as the wearied Mariners being weather-beaten at the sea, and tossed here and ther, by the furious force of tempestes and blustering wind alwayes in hope that they will abate, whereby they may haue fayre and peaceable weather, and so bee eased of their great trauaile. At length, the long desired houre drew on, of their appointment, and the Earle repaired vnto the place: he was scant there, whē that the Damosell likewise approched, almost at the same instant, and the Earle receiued hir with great contentment: but the damsell said, ỹ shee had no time to haue any great talke with him, but onely my Lord this I say vnto you, that this night at midnight shee will tarrie thy cōming, whereas thou shalt fulfill all thy desire, & giue thee to vnderstand, how that shee is not culpable of all these thy passed sorrowes and griefes, (naming a meeting place, which after shall bee declared.) And pardon mee, I pray you, for that the time doth not giue mee any more leasure to talke with you, and so without any more tarrying shee went away, and left the Earle in such great ioye, that hee was almost in an extasie therewith. The Earle went vnto his lodging, where hee remained, and tarried vntill the time appoynted, the which hee thought very long, imagining euery minute a whole houre. The houre being come, he went alone vnto the place appoynted, and couered himselfe with a mantle of cloath of gold. Hee tarried not long ther, when that this infortunate Trafina, put hir selfe vpon a wal, wher as she put downe a peece of timber, wherby the Earle shuld laye holde on for to goe vp.

The earle with the great desire which hee had, thought all very easie to bee done, & so with great lightnesse hee got vppon the wall, and descended downe on the other side into the Garden. And when the Damosell had him therwithin the Garden, shee saide: My Lord and Earle tarrie there a while, by the posterne gate of the pallaice, being the enteraunce into this Garden: for thereout will issue thy Lady and mistresse the Princesse, & in the meane time will I goe and

" and aduiſe hir, that thou art hære, & kæpe thy ſelfe as cloſe,
" and in as great ſecret as may be. The Earle with no ſmall
" pleaſure kept himſelfe ſecret and was quiet, abiding (as hæ
" thought) the Princeſſe comming. He had not taried ther long
" when that this wicked damoſell came forth, adorned with
" the ſame garments, which hir Ladie the Princeſſe had worn
" the daye before, and opening very ſoftly that poſterne gate,
" ſhe iſſued out, and drew hir ſelfe towardes the light of the
" Mone, for that the Earle might know the garments. The
" which when that the Earle ſaw, and knew that they were
" hir garments, he thought verily that ſhe had bene his Lady
" ſo long deſired, and without anye more thinking, hæ fell
" downe vpon his knées, and taking hir by the handes, he kiſ-
" ſed them many times, and ſo both of them by great pollicie
" and deceit, and with exceeding ioy, did fulfill their deſires,
" and toke their leaue each of other, with many pleaſant and
" ſwæt wordes, fearing that the day would appeare, they de-
" parted. The Earle returned vnto his lodging, wheras hæ
" paſſed the reſt of the darke night with great contentment.
" This Damoſell did the like, putting from hir theſe vſurped
" roabes of the honeſtie and honour of hir Lady the Princes.
" So the next morning when it was day, the Earle roſe vp,
" and apparailed himſelf with the moſt richeſt apparrel that
" he had, and went vnto the kings pallaice ſomwhat betimes,
" and ſo walking round about out of one chamber vnto ano-
" ther, vntill ſuch time as he came vnto the chamber wheras
" the Princeſſe was, hæ lifted vp a cloath which was before
" the doore, where he might well diſcouer the innocent Ladye,
" with a praier booke in hir hand, vſing hir accuſtomed pray-
" ers & daily deuotion. This former diſſembled & fained loue,
" gaue him great coorage & hardines to enter into hir chãber,
" & entring in, he ſpake vnto hir certaine louing and amorous
" words, throwing his armes about hir neck, and ioyning his
" face vnto the face of the Princeſſe: who ſæing this great
" boldneſſe, meruailed very much, and with the great alterati-
" on of hir heart, hir praier booke fell out of hir handes, and
" ſhe aroſe vp vpon hir fæte, and began to cry out with a loud

voice,

voice, and ſaide, O holy God deliuer mee from this vncurteous & vnmannerly Knight. And at thoſe woꝛds entred in the Pꝛince of Scotland and certaine of the Pꝛinceſſe Damoſels, but when the Pꝛince dyd ſee the great boldneſſe of Lidiarte, hee dꝛew out his ſwoꝛd with great anger, and ſayde.

Tyrant, thou ſhalt not cléere thy ſelfe as thou doeſt thinck to doe, hauing committed ſo great treaſon as thou haſt done, & his anger was ſuch, that hee ſtrok at the Carle a terrible blow, which was moꝛe of ire then regarding how hee deliuered it, the Carle let the blow ſlip by, and running in with the ſame, hée ſtroke the Pꝛince ſuch a blow vpon the head, that hee parted it in two peeces, and hée fell downe dead on the floꝛe. The tumult and vpꝛoare was ſuch amongſt the Ladies and Damoſells, that at theyꝛ great ſhꝛikes the king went thether, and his comming was in ſuch haſt, that this vnfoꝛtunate Lidiarte could not by any meanes get away. There came in companie with the king, Beraldo of Burdeaux, and the Carle of Aniow, and the Pꝛince of Viarne, and many other knights and Gentlemen. And when the king ſaw the Pꝛince ſlaine, and the murtherer ſtanding by, the King ſtepped vnto him and toke the ſwoꝛd out of his hand, and ſayde vnto him. Oh knight without meaſure oꝛ mercie what hath beene the occaſion of this thy folly to kill this Pꝛince. There was by a Lady of the Pꝛinceſſes, (who very greeuouſly lamented the death of the Pꝛince) and told vnto the king al ẏ truth of the matter as it ther paſſed, and when the king heard of all this enterpꝛiſe, hée receiued ſo much anger, that he himſelf in perſon did carrie him into a ſtrong towꝛe which was in the pallace and put him pꝛiſoner therein, and commaunded to put on him verie great and ſtrong chains, and without any moꝛe tarrieng he called his counſell together, and opened the matter in publike beſoꝛe them all, whereas he was condemned foꝛ a traitour (although there were ſome which dyd feare much his great power, but the king made no reckoning of it) & ſo beſoꝛe that hée would breake his faſt, hée commanded him to be hanged

out of one of the windowes of the Towre, and commaunded publikely to be proclaimed all the whole treason, where as to all men was seene his sodaine & sorrowfull death. Then hée cõmanded the Prince to bée buried with great honour, as vnto such a person did appertaine. After this the sorrowfull Traina seeing that she was the onely occasion of all this euill, not remembring the losse of hir virginitie, nor respecting any shame, which such as shée was, ought to haue and keepe, began to teare hir haire, and to scratch hir face, & gaue meruailous shriks, that all the Pallace dyd sound thereof, and with great fury shee went vp vnto the place whereas hir welbéeloued Lidiarte was hanged, and when shee saw him dead with so shamefull and dishonourable a death, shée beganne with great lamentation to publish the occasion of all this euill, saying.

Oh soueraigne God, now will I acknowledge this great errour which I haue committed and done, for the which I doe not deserue one, but a thousand deaths: Oh miserable creature that I am, & vnhappy body that hath committed so great harme & villanie, and onely bécause thou couldest not refrayne thy disordinate appetite, thy soule must now pay that which thou diddest consent vnto: Oh cursed delight, that for a little transitorie pleasure I would lose my virginity, therby causing him whom I loued more then my selfe, to receiue so miserable a death & euil end, & haue likewise brought in great suspition the honour of my Lady the princesse, therfore I will giue my selfe the correction that so worthily I doe deserue, paying with my life and honour, the prise of my great lasciuiousnesse and diuelish hardinesse. And with this shee leapt into the windowe with great fury, and layde hold on the roape whereby the Earle was hanged, and slipped downe by it till shee came and imbraced hir armes about the necke of the Earle, and ioyning hir mouth vnto his mouth, which was then very colde and blacke with the bloud, and holding hir selfe fast with the one of hir handes, with the other hand shee drew out a little knife which shee had, wherwith she cut the rope a sunder which he hanged by,

so

so that both of them fell to the ground, whereas they were all broken to peeces, and there thee dyt. The great alteration which was in the court, when they vnderstood of all this that had past, was straunge and without compassion. And although many did heare hir complaint, yet there was not one that could tell wherefore it was, till such tyme as a Lackie which was nigh hir, declared all that you haue heard tolde. for that hee had heard it word for word, but when the king dyd know the effect thereof, hee was very much amased at it. And for that hee would there should bee a perpetuall memorie therof, presently hee commanded that they should bee buried both together, in a Sepulchre without the Citie of Paris, declaring in it the effect of this dolorous act, the which was forthwith published throughout all the whole kingdome. So when that this vnhappie death of the Earle came vnto the eares of his father and all his kinsfolkes, they were verie sorrowfull, and receiued for it great griefe, & waxed verie wrathfull, and determined (if it were possible) to reuenge the death of the Earle, and deuised continually in secret what order might best bee taken to bring it to effect. So in the ende of many inuentions, they concluded, to accuse the Princesse, that shee should bee the onely occasion of all this euill. And the better for to compasse and bring the accusation to passe, they did commit it to the vsing of the brothers sonne of the olde Earle, and cousin vnto Lidiarte, who was sonne vnto the Earle of Prouince, an excellent and valiaunt Knight. The which accusation hee did accept with a very good will, and for to make their determination of more strength, they agreed to send vnto the kingdome of Sardenia, vnto a brother of the King Bramidoro, with whom they had at that time great friendship, requesting him that hee would send them some one of his lignage to fauour them herin, the which hee granted with very great good will. and for that they should the better vnderstand the great desire that hee hadde to pleasure them in this matter, hee sent them two of his lignage, and by reason that they were Gyaunts and of a meruailous

huge bigneſſe (although all the world dyd know that the Princeſſe is without fault and not culpable) yet they dare not put their perſons in aduenture, with thoſe two horrible and diſordinate monſters. So after they hadde made this their traiterous and falſe accuſation, after many and great contentions they grew in the end to this concluſion, that the Princeſſe ſhould within the tearme of fiftæne dayes bring thræ knightes that with theſe other thræ ſhould make and mayntaine battayle in the field for the defence of this falſe accuſed Princeſſe, and if ſo bæ that ſhæ could within that time prefixed finde but two knights, then it ſhall bæ at their curteſſe to take vpon them the enterprize, and neither more nor leſſe then they thræ if ſhæ dyd finde but one knight. Now there is twelue of theſe fiftæne daies paſt, ſo that within theſe thræ daies the full time is expired: therefore noble Lords and Knights, let mæ bæ reſolued what you will determine hærein. To loſe our lyues for to ſet at libertie this wronged Lady, anſwered the Knight of the Sunne, therefore it is conuenient without any more delaye that wæ take our iourney thether-ward. Then the Damoſell ſaid, how is it that you will take the enterprize in hand and bæ but two, & they bæ thræ, and beſides, almoſt inuincible. Then Tefereo anſwered, the iuſtice on the Princeſſe part ſhall bæ the third perſon, take you no care fayre Damoſell for that, for although wæ are but two, wæ doe little eſtæme them. When the Damoſell ſaw theyr liberall proffer and determination, ſhæ was very glad and content, and ſtraight waies ſhæ leaped vpon hir palfraie & they on their horſes, and ſo rode towards the Citie without making any farther delay or tarryeng.

¶ How the Prince met in Paris the Knight of the Images, and of the battayle hee had with him, and how they ouercame the three Knights which dyd accuſe the Princeſſe, and afterward how Tefereo knew who the Knight of the Images was, & of all that happened beeſides. Cap. 17.

With

With great haſt the Prince and all that were with him trauailed that day and the next in the kingdome of Fraunce, vntill they came within two leagues of Paris, ſo the next day very earely in the morning they aroſe & trauailed againe til they came within the ſight of the citie, and for that it was very early to enter into the ſame, they alighted amongſt a company of trees, whereas by the great thicknesſe they might not bee ſeene of any: and refreſhing themſelues by a cleere fountaine of water that was there at hand, they ſat downe and dyd eate of ſuch as the Damoſell had brought with her. So in this ſort they paſſed the time, till they thought it to be the houre to goe vnto the defence pretended, ſo when the time drew nigh, they perfect their armour in all points, and armed themſelues & leapt on horſe backe. Tefero if it had not ſeemed vnto him to bee a point of cowardlineſſe, would haue procured to haue diſturbed this battaile, for they againſt whom hee ſhould fight were his kinſefolkes, but yet hee thought that hee was more bound by the order of knighthode to keepe companie with him with whom he came, and to reſiſt ſuch like wrongs in the defence of truth and iuſtice, then to haue any reſpect to his kindred, and eſpecially in ſuch like falſe accuſations. Hee therefore determined to diſſemble it & ſay nothing, ſo with theſe and ſuch like thoughts they went forwards till they came into the citie, vnto the place appointed for this battell, whereas they found the Princeſſe ſet vpon a ſcaffold, all couered with mourning robes of great ſadneſſe, which did declare and ſhew her great ſorrow and vnderſerued trouble. So likewiſe all the whole ſcaffold, and all the Ladyes and Damoſells that came with the Princeſſe were couered and apparelled correſpondent vnto her attire. The king was at a window of his Palace with no leſſe ſorrow and ſadneſſe to ſee his honour put vnto that blemiſh as it was. And that which greeued him moſt was, that not one knight in all his Court durſt giue the enterpriſe, yet was there preſent

all the whole company of the Knights of his Court. So these two Gyaunts and the other knights came armed into the place very fayre and with strong armour, & mounted vpon great and mightie strong horses, saving the greatest of the Gyaunts, for that there was not any horse that could sustayne so mightie and huge a waight: wherefore hee was mounted vpon an Elephant. So looking round about, the Prince saw on the other side of the fielde the Knight with the greene armour, which he had fought with all in the barke beeing at the sea, as I haue tolde you, who was in a readinesse to make the battaile in defence of the Princesse. This knight there by had hanged vpon a peece of timber all the Images that hee brought with him, in such sort as they were hanged in his barke, the which when the Prince saw that the Image of the Dutchesse was aboue that of the empresse, his anger dyd so increase, that hee had cleane forgot wherefore hee came thether, and spurred Cornerino his horse with so much furye, that by his force hee made the ground whereas he came to tremble and shake. And when he came vnto the place whereas the Images were hanging, he with his strong arme layde holde vpon the deuice and brake the chaines wherewith they were made fast, and swinged it about his head with such great strength, that hee made them flye to the highest partes of all the Pallaice, the which was done in such great hast, that whē the knight with the greene armour was come to disturbe him, it was too late, for that his Lady was flowen vp into the ayre, whereat hee receiued so much anger, that without any more adoe, hee threw his shielde at his backe, and with both his hands hee layde holde on his sword, and stroke the Prince such a terrible blow, that he made him to fal backwards on his horse crouper, without any remembrance, and with the great strength wherewith he stroke him, he made his horse to stoupe vnder him. Cornerino beeing somewhat amazed at this terrible blow, carried his master round about the fielde but before that the knight with the greene armor could double to strike him

him againe, the Prince was come vnto himselfe, and setling himselfe vpon his horse backe, being firmed in his stirrops, with great fury hee threw his shield to the ground, and tooke his sword in both his handes, and pricked Cornerino towards the place whereas his aduersarie was, who was likewise in a readinesse to discharge his blow, so both of them together discharged each vpon the others helme, with such fury and force, that the Prince of the Sunne was constrained to fall vpon his horse neck as though hee hadde beene dead, for that neuer blow that euer hee receiued before that time did bring him to the like perplexitie, but onely one, the which he receiued at the hands of Rosicleer, when he had battaile with him. Likewise the knight with the greene armour did nothing aduance himselfe of his deede, for the blow which he receiued was so terrible, that he fell from his horse to the ground, and the blood issued out at his mouth and nose with great abundance, and hee stretched his armes and legs vpon the sandie ground as though hee had beene altogether dead. The king & all that were with him, were very much amazed, to see that so cruell and sodaine a battel should happen, without knowing the occasion wherefore. And more they did meruaile, imagining a little by the tokens of the horse who that Knight should bee, which hauing his enimie for so valiant a knight in so short time had brought him into such extremitie. Now when Tefereo did see the Prince thus put to his shifts and in such great necessitie, and how that hee lay vpon his horse necke without any remembrance, hee began to crie out vpon fortune, and with great fury hee drew out his sword and went against the defenders of the euill accusation, and called them traytours, although they were his brothers children.) Heere you may see what great force and strength the truth hath, that although they wer his brothers children, yet hee did procure their deaths, for that they came out of their owne Countrey, into a straunge and forreine land to defend treason. The sonne of the Earle of Prouince was the first that did offer to put himselfe forwards, to whom Tefereo gaue such tirrible and strong blowes

vpon his helme, that without remembrance hee made him fall to the ground as one that were dead. The Giants when they saw themselues so ill intreated, both of them set spurs vnto their beastes, and drawing out theyr great and sharp cutting swords, they dyd procure to hurt him with theyr beaue and terrible blowes. In this contention the valiant Sardenian dyd shew his mightye and strong courage with great pollicie and cunning, now striking at the one, and then at the other, and alwaies prouiding to let their blowes slippe aside without receiuing any harme, and such was his pollicie and lightnesse, that in a great while they could not fasten one full blow vpon him. Now was the Knight of Prouince come to himselfe, and seeing himselfe on the ground, and his enimie so courageous betwixt these two mightie Gyaunts, hee approched vppon the one side whereas Tefereo could not see him, and cut off one of the hinder legges of his horse, the horse when hee felt himselfe hurt, would haue risen vpright before, but by any meanes hee could not, but recoyled backward with his crouper to the ground, which was yet in such sort that Tefereo had time to goe out of his saddle, with so great anger, that the blood burst out at his nose, and without any feare before him, he prested at the knight of Prouince, and thrust such a foyne at his breast, that his armour could not onye the passage but that the Sword came out at his backe, so that hee fell downe starke dead to the ground: hee had scant drawen his sword out of the body of the knight, when that (without any pollicie to defend himselfe, hee receyued such a terrible blow with the breast of the Gyaunts horse, which came with such a great fury that (albeit against his will) he was constrained to fall tumbling vnto the ground, and although the fall was somewhat heauie and grieuous vnto him, yet with a trice hee was a foote againe, and seeing both the Gyants readie prepared against him, for his better defence hee thought it good to put himselfe on the other side of the dead horse.

At this instant the Knight of the Vnicorne came against

to

to himselfe, and looking towards the place whereas the battaile was, hee saw that his friend like a furious Lyon made resistaunce against the two Gyaunts. My pen is not heere sufficient to signifie vnto you the great furie, that on a sodaine came vnto this worthy knight of the Sunne: so that I suppose no Diamond rock had beene at that time able to make resistaunce against him: for with a furious & hoarse voice hee saide. Away, away you vile knights, not worthy of these your great members, and double forces which you do possesse, seeing that with so much shame this day you haue maintained such great treason. The prince carried his sword in his hand, hauing reared it on high, redy to strik him that first came in his way, and raising himselfe in his stirrops, hee stroke the Gyant with the Elephant so terrible a blow vpon his shoulder, that his double armour was not able to make resistaunce against this great force, but that it passed thorough, and diuided it in such wise, that hee cut off the one quarter therof, together with the head, and the rest which remained, fell downe to the ground, with so great waight, that it made the earth to tremble. The other Gyant in the meane time had stroke the Prince such a terrible blow vpon the helme, that it made him to gnash his teeth together, with the paine he felt, which was the occasion that hee was wholly incensed with anger, insomuch that hee pressed towards him with no lesse rage, then the Hawke which pursueth the Hearon, and stroke such a blow at his head, that for the defence therof, the Gyant was constrained to lift vp both his armes, and the blow descended in such sort vppon them, that it cut them both in peeces, and his sword beeing fast in his hands, they fell altogether to the ground All the whole Court greatly mernailed at these fierce and terrible blowes: and hauing thus concluded all that they had to do, the Prince returned vnto Tefereo, and saide vnto him. Brother, do you remaine heere till such time that all be concluded that is heere necessary to be done, and in the wildernesse of Ardenia you shall finde me, in the very same place, whereas we do rest our selues this day, and I desire thee to pro-

cure to know who is that knight with the greene armour, and whether hée bée dead or no. And without any more tarrying hée spurred his horse, who made as swift way as the thunderbolt, and presently departed the Citie, and neuer rested till hée came vnto the place, whereas hée told his companion hée would remaine. Then Tefereo went vnto ỹ Iudges, and asked them if there were any more to bée done, in the defence & fauour of the Princelle: and the Iudges answered, that it was sufficient which was done, & that there was no other thing to be done in that matter. When Tefereo saw that all was done that was nédfull, he went vnto the place, whereas the knight with the greene armor was, and pulling off his helme, he saw that al his face was swollen with the terrible blow that he had receiued, and hée seemed as though hée had béene dead. At the same instaunt, the King was come downe from his window, into the place whereas the battaile was: onely for to honor these knights and to know who they were. And when hée could not sée the knight of the Sunne, he asked for him and strayght way it was told him in what great hast he went from that place and out of the Citie: for the which the King was very sorry, and if they had not tolde him, that it had béene labor lost to séeke him, hée would haue followed to sée if hée could haue séene him, and haue made him to retourne to haue honoured him in his court. Then the King with amorous wordes requested of Tefereo to tell him who that knight was, and hée tolde him with a very good will. And whē the king knew that it was the Greeke prince, he receiued great sorrow, because he could not do him the honor, as vnto such a Knight appertained. But considering that they could not impute vnto him any fault for the lacke thereof, hée commaunded that the knight with the greene armour, should bée carried vnto the Pallace, and asked his Knights what hée was, & it was tolde him, that hée was the Prince of Spaine, who was talled Torrismundo.

And when the King vnderstood, that hée was a Knight of

of so high linage, hée commanded ý all his Phisitions should ioyne together, and prouide all remedies possible for his recouerie, and that they should apply no lesse cure vnto him, then vnto his owne proper person, the which presently was done, and they did apply the best remedies that could be gotten, till such time as they brought him somewhat to his remembrance, although it was with great labour. The prince of Spaine, when hée saw himselfe in his naked bed, his sorrow was verye much: and calling to his minde all that which had passed, the very griefe hée receiued, was almost the occasion of his death.

When Tefereo knew who that Knight was, and that there was no more to bée done, without any tarrying hée toke his leaue of the king, & of the Princesse, who wept very sorrowfully at his departure. Tefereo toke the horse of the lame Gyant, (who with very anger to sée himselfe in that pickle, would not consent to the receiuing of any cure, neyther would hée eate any thing, but there desperately dyed) and leaping vppon him hée went to séeke the Knight of the Sunne. Where wée will leaue them: for that I am now inforced by the sweet dartes of Cupide, to refresh the wearied ears of the hearers, and to declare some of his loueing wounds, and to leaue the furious Sword of Mars for a while.

Now to returne to the storie that is past, whereas if you doe remember, that the Prince Eleno of Dacia, entered into that barke wherein the Knight was, which would haue forced a Lady, and how that vpon a sodaine their gallies did seperate themselues, so that hée lost the sight of his Cousin the Knight of the Sunne, and of Tefereo, and béeing entered, hée would haue made resistaunce agaynst his aduersarie, for to disturbe him, that hée should not commit the violence that hée had offered. But vpon a sodaine they were all banished, so that hée saw neyther Knight, nor Lady, nor Marriners, nor yet any other person, but onely himselfe in the Barke, with his inchaunted Horse,

neyther

neither could hæ ſæ who brought him thether and thinking to returne againe into ỹ galley whereas his cousin was, hæ could not finde him: but looking about, hæ discerned no other thing, but the Element & the water. When the prince Eleno saw himselfe absent from his bælourd cousin, his sorow was very great that he receiued, & bægan to curse all the wise inchaunters, and all those that owe permit & suffer them, for that they were the occasion that in the world, ther was so much euill done. When this Prince Eleno saw himselfe all alone, and not one with whom hæ might passe away the time, there came vnto his minde his Floraſdama, which was the occasion that hæ tourned to his accustomed sadnesse, & imagining that hæ was in hir presence, hæ said:

» Oh cruel Lady which dost now reioyce thy selfe, and art at
» ease in the Kingdome of Dacia: art thou fully pleased with
» these my paines? Art thou now pacified, ỹ thou hast brought
» mee into this extremitie & trouble? wherein I am in the
» power of I know not whom, and owe naugate I cannot tel
» vpon what. Thy cruell hart I am sure is now content, see-
» ing that without desire, for thæ I ow suffer so many trou-
» bles: which as yet I am not certaine, whether thou hast pre-
» tented or procured it should be so or no. Oh cursed inchaun-
» ters, how many euils haue you wrought by the help of di-
» uells, so that by reason of your inchauntments, many wor-
» thy Knights are brought into such lyke troubles as I am.
» Heere you may see into what extremitie this Magical arts
» hath brought mee, so ỹ I can by no meanes profit my selfe
» of the strength of these my yong armes, but am bære in the
» power of a diuell, who will ouerthrow this bark: but that
» which doth most greeue me, is, ỹ I am brought into a place
» to dye, where of my death shall bæ left no memorie, but
» must dye disdained of that cruell Lady. So with great sor-
row and trouble, hæ passed thræ dayes, in the end of which, he discouered a very small Iland, which was in the middest of the sea. The barke made thether with great swiftnesse, so that in a small time hæ was fast a ground vppon the sand. It was not long after that the Prince leapt a shore, & when

hæ

hée found himselfe out of the barke, hée loked round about him on euery side. And towards his right hand amongst a company of greene trées, hée saw a small tent armed. Toward which the prince directed his way, with an easie pace, and entring into the Tent, hée saw no body, although hée remained a while, and harkened if hée could heere any stirring, but hée could neither heare nor see any thing: but onely hée found the print of a little foot vpon the sand, and hée had a great desire to know whose footesteps they were, for that they séemed to bée of some Lady or Damsell, and finding the trace, hée followed them, and the more he went, it séemed vnto him that the more hast they made, whosoeuer it was that had left that signe, which made him more earnest in his desire to sée the ende therof. So long hée followed that trace, that in the ende hée came vnto a little Mountayne, whereas hée found scattered about vpolow hayre, which séemed to bée threds of gold: and stoping for to gather them vp, hée perceiued that some of them were wet with spots of blood, whereby hée well vnderstood, the great anger where with they were pulled of from the head. Likewise he saw in diuers places, how the earth was spotted with drops of liuely blood. Then with a more desire then hée had beefore, hée went vp to the top of that little mountaine, and hauing lost the footsteps, he recouered it by gathering vp ỹ golden haire, hée had not trauailed far vp the Mountaine, when that towards the water side he heard a great complaint, which séemed to be the voice of a woman, & by the faint sound there of hée might wel perceiue that they wared wearie, for that a while they would rest and be still, and straight way wold returne vnto theyr accustomed sorrow and complaint. And the words (which the Prince dyd well vnderstand) were these. Oh loue, now shalt thou no more reioyce, neither haue any longer dominion ouer me, for that gentle death wil shew me so much fauour as to finish these my sorrowfull passions, and therewith vnlose and frustrate this string of loue, with the which thou hast bound mée, hauing a desire to aske reuengement of him, which haue bene the occasion of all this euill,

euill. I haue asked the same reuengement, but it hath not pleased the Gods to heare my request: nay rather they haue stopped their eares against these my continual complaints: and with this shee held hir peace, giuing a very sorrowfull and terrible sigh. The Prince Eleno tourning his eyes towards that place, from whence he heard this complaint, discouered amongst certaine greene trees, a Lady, who was indued with marualous great beautie. It was so excellent, that it depriued him of his hart, which he neuer thought againe to haue lost. Shee was with hir haire all about hir eares, & meruailously ill intreated by the violence that shee vsed against hir selfe, and leaning hir cheeke vpon hir delicate & white hand, which was all to bee spotted with bloud in many places, which was constrained by the scratching of hir nailes. The spots was the occasion to dissolue the great passion which the Prince did feele for his Floriſdama, representing in his heart, the figure of this beautie & sorrowfull Lady: who seeing hir of so great beauty, and in such affliction, was ouertaken and wounded with the demeanour of hir faire face, and greeued to see hir so euil intreated, in such sort, that in a sound he leaned to a greene tree (amongst many other which were vpon that mountaine) cleane without any remembraunce.

Oh Cupide, thou beeing but a Boy, why dost thou vse these cruell kinde of feates. Who hath thaught thee to vse such deceits, which is the occasion of great and endlesse vnquietnesse. Thou dost show thy selfe to bee blind, & yet thou art more quick of sight then a Hawke. How is it possible that thou dost make vs beleeue, that without seeing thou canst hit so right with thy arrowes, and that with so good an aime ỹ dost wound whereas thou wilt. Thou subtill boy, do not so plainly show thy selfe what thou art, if thou dost thincke to deceiue mee with thy fayned innocencie? It is sufficient thou showest thy selfe naked, for that thou art void of al pitie. Oh yee Gods giue me vnderstanding, that I may declare the subtilties & deceits of this false Cupide, for that I care not for him, neither haue I any feare of him. Heere

this

this noble Dacian did fæle himselfe cleare of the loue of Florisdama, and his heart was new set on fire with the sight of the faire Lidia, vnto whom he had subiected himselfe, and remayned moze without hope of help foz his last wound, then hæ was of the first. And when hæ came vnto himselfe, & felt that hée was freshly wounded, hæ did delight himselfe with the yeolow hayze, the which hæ had in his hand, and considering with what yze it was pulled of, and also calling to remembzance his complaint, he did plainely perceiue that the occasion of all this his sozrow was loue. So with these considerations hæ lifted vp his eyes, & dyd behold the great beautie of Lidia, & gazed on his fayze face, which was disfigured with the wounds ý shæ had made with his nailes in scratching it, and it was all to bée spotted with the blod that pzocæded from the same wounds: likewise hæ dyd meditate in the great and thick teares that distilled from his sozrowfull eyes. All these was the occasion wholly to confirme his new griefe, and with a sozrowfull sigh loking on the yeolow hayze hæ saide. Oh hayze, if with the great fury of loue thou wert tozne off, with how much moze fozce is thy owner grafted in my heart. It had bæne far better, haire, that thou hadst still remained to haue garnished that gallant face, which (as it doth appeare) at other times did much estæme of thée, then hære to be scattered abzoad vpon this mountaine, and hauing lost a mistresse of so great valoz, thou dost giue occasion of death vnto him, which neuer offended thæ. But in recompence of this euill which ý hast caused vnto me, hére I do pzomise to make much of thée, & to put thæ within my bosome, & lament with teares thy desolatenes. And hærwith, he went towards ý place where she was: at which noyse ý Lady did lift vp his eyes, & seing the Pzince, with a soft voyce shæ sayd: A my friend, is my Breno come back again, doth he take any grief foz his distressed Lidia. This new louer whose heart yerned to sæ his paine, replied with wæping eies. Faire lady, I cannot answere vnto this which you do aske me, foz that I am a strange knight bzought by foztune to beare thæ cõpany, & to be partaker of

thy

thy ſorrow and payne, and to wound my ſelfe in beholding thée. This fayre Lady gaue eare vnto the words of this Knight, beléeuing that hée would haue giuen hir ſome good newes, for the mitigating of hir ſadneſſe, but ſhée perceiued that hée was a ſtraunge Knight, ſhée lifted vp hir head, and with wéeping eyes ſhe ſaid. Gentle knight, if my loue haue béene the occaſion of this thy ſorrow which thou doſt ſhow, I do deſire thée to depart, for in me thou ſhalt find no other thing but that which only I deſire, that is, death. For what loue can they haue, that ſo cruelly are forgotten, what poſſibilitie is there of help in them, that are without all hope. With ſo great griefe Lidia deliuered theſe and ſuch like reſons, that ỳ ouer much anger ſhée had, cauſed hir to retaine hir words, ſo that ſhée could not ſpeake, but gaue a maruaylous and ſorrowfull ſhrike, that the ſtonieſt hart that euer was, would haue béene moued with compaſſion. This good Dacian, ſéeing at that time there was no remedy for his euill, by reaſon of the great paine and griefe, that the fayre Damoſell ſéemed to ſuſtaine, cõſtrained himſelfe by diſcretion to ſuffer a while, conſidering ỳ time did giue eaſe vnto all things: ſo hoping in time to haue help of his diſeaſe, and turning to talke vnto Lidia, hée requeſted hir that ſhée would ſhew him ſo much fauour, as to declare vnto him the cauſe of all this hir ſorrow and paine. So this Ladye did declare it vnto him, in ſo ſorrowfull a ſort, & with ſuch pitifull ſighs, that ỳ tempeſtuous ſea béeing moued with compaſſion, contrarie vnto his accuſtomed noyſe made a new & ſtraunge rumour in the eares néere vnto the ſhore. The Prince with no leſſe payne attended vnto hir ſorrowfull tale, ſo that it was euen a tragedie to béehold the beautie & lamentable proſpects of either of them. Then in the end of relating this beauie hiſtorie, the faire Lidia held hir peace, and remained ſilent with wonderfull ſadneſſe. This troubled Dacian wholly yéelded vnto his new griefe, replyed: What furie, what cruell, and what a hardened and ſtonie heart had hée, that a beautie ſo farre ſurpaſſing, could not moue him to yéelde.

Then

Then the fayre Lidia, who well vnderſtood from whence theſe grieuous & ſorrowfull ſpeeches which the Knight had ſpoken proceeded, yet not giuing him to vnderſtand that ſhe had any knowledge thereof, ſayd. Sir knight, I render you great thancks for the ſorrow which you ſeeme to receiue at my griefe, but if you bee a knight of eſtimation as by your perſonage it doth appeare you ſhould bee, heere I doe deſire you by ỳ honor you owe vnto the order of knighthood, to performe two requeſts which I ſhall deſire thee. The valyant Eleno anſwered: I owe not onely Lady grant vnto this which you do demand, but I am wholy ſubiect to your ſeruice, and will not refuſe to do any thing that you will commaund mee. Well, ſeeing it is ſo, ſayde this fayre Lady, I firſt requeſt thee to carry me from this ſolitarie land, wherin I haue receiued ſo much wrong, and therewith ſhee aroſe vp, and beeganne to deſcend from that little mountaine towards the waters ſide, at ſuch time as Phœbus finiſhed his accuſtomed courſe.

¶ Of all that happened vnto this faire Lidia and to the Prince Eleno, after they departed from the little mountaine whereas they met. Chap. 19.

BY reaſon of the great darknes of the night, and agayne for that they would take ſome reſt, they would not enter into the Barke at that preſent. The Damoſell Lidia that night entered into the Tent ſomewhat to reſt hir wearie limmes, but the Prince remayned without wheras hee walked vp and downe all the night. And as the ſolitarie night is an enimie vnto quietneſſe, ſo beeing alone there came to his remembraunce many things paſt, which cauſed him to ſuſtayne ſundrie paſſions, wherefore to comfort himſelfe, hee went vnto his Galley for his Lute, and returning a land, hee ſat him downe behind the Tent, and beeganne to put his Lute in conſort, although the force of loue bee more full of diſcord

then concorde. So when his Lute was in right tune, hée begainne forthwith to play vpon it, and with a swéete and pleasaunt voice he sung these vearses following.

HArd is his hap that still of helpe hath neede,
crooked his chance that neuer ease can finde,
And great his care that fresh is forst to bleede
By Cupides shaftes, that tyrant most vnkinde,
who ceaslesse plagues the poore afflicted minde,
and hauing once possest at will the heart,
The same dornes with wailing, woe, and smart.

Amongst the crew of those that feele this care,
euen I my selfe may most of all complaine,
Which now haue twice bene caught in Cupides snare,
wherein I felt dolor, distresse, and paine,
with which oppresion yet I doo remaine:
And so shall still for ought I can descrie,
Till friendly fates accord that I may die.

For why? the Dame whom I in hart adore,
disdaines mee not, I will it not denie,
But both with teares hir owne mishap deplore,
in that a knight she loude, from hir did flie,
iudge then (ye heauens) what simple hope haue I.
She followes him that left hir comfortlesse,
And kils my hart that yeelded hir redresse.

When hé had made and end of this song, with the great griefe that he sustained he fell into a sound, so that his Lute fell out of his hands, but within a smal time he came againe to himselfe, and crossed his fingers and wrong his handes, and distilled from his eies many salt and sorrowfull teares, and lifting vp his eies vnto heauen he remained in this case a great while without any remembraunce. This sorrowfull Ladie did well héere and vnderstand this swéete and chéerefull song, but by reason that all hir minde was vpon

hir

hir cruell Bremio, his delicate musicke had no strength to remoue one iot of hir loue. In this sort as you haue heard they passed all the night till the morning, so the day bæing come, this faire and afflicted Ladie arose vp and went out of the Tent, whereas shee found the Prince walking vp and downe, and with a sorrowfull and soft voice she requested him once againe to take hir out of that vncharitable Iland. The Prince without anie tarrieng toke hir by the hand and lead hir into his Galley, wherein they were scant both well imbarked when that the Galley began to shove from shoare, and to saile with such swiftnesse that in a smal time they were in the deapth of the great Sea, as though he which did gouerne it had bene the wise Artemidoro, who for the deliuerie of this sorrowfull Damosell had ordained all this that you haue heard. This Lady was very much amazed to sée hir selfe carried away in that manner, and durst not aske the prince any manner of question, for that he was verie sadde and pensiue. Likewise the Prince Eleno considering the great sorrow and trouble that Lidia receiued, durst not say any thing vnto hir, so in this sort they trauayled all that day and all the night, till the next day that they discouered lande, without speaking one worde, the one to the other, and in a small time the Barke came so nigh the land, that they might discouer a very fayre and well towred citie, the which was adorned with a verie faire hauen, full of meruailous great and strong shippes. So this Galley sailed in amongest the thickest of them all till it came to the shoare side, whereat their arriuall, they discouered a land, a verie well foughten and bloudie battaile, bæing hard by the hauen which was made by verie many Knights, which fought onely against three knightes, who valyauntlye did defend themselues, the one of them was Bargandel, the other two, Lyriamandro and Zoylo the Tartarian, that if you doe remember, when that the valyaunt Roficleer in mortall battaile slew the King of Tiro, who was a verie mightie and strong Gyaunt, and how that they saw

a good way from them two Foistes, in battaile together the one with the other, & determining to goe vnto them to see what it should bee, the valiant Rosicleer leapt into his galley, which was carried another way with so great fury, that Zoilo was driuen to remaine, & he departed in great hast. So this Tartarian Zoilo remayning alone in his ship, directed it towards them that were in battell, and came vnto them at such time as they had great need of his succour, for that they were oppressed by the same ship of the rouers that met with him, and they were in a meruailous great fight, but with the aide of the Tartarian, they assailed thē in such sort, ỳ if they had not yēlded thēselues to mercie, they had sonke them all in the sea. & taking all their oths, they made them to sweare that they should leaue that euill & naughtie life. Then they all entered into ỳ ship wherein the Tartarian was, with determined purpose to proceed forwards whether their fortune would carrie them for to get them fame, & to increase their honour. So the wether cōstrained them to arriue in the port of Numidia, whereas you haue heard tolde, in that countrie they did cōstraine all knights that ther did arriue, to sweare vnto them to aide and help that traitour their Lord. These Princes would not be sworne except first they wold declare the cause wherefore, and hereupon they multiplied words, which was the occasion of the cruell battaile, which ỳ prince Eleno dyd see beeing in his Galley. So it seemed vnto him to bee a very vnseemely thing & vnequall, so many against three knights onely, who according vnto the great and worthie feates which they dyd, they gaue the lokers on to vnderstand that they were of noble estate, and for to succour them hee would willingly haue leaped a shoare, but first he desired the faire Lidia to remain in quietnesse vnder the hatches of the galley, for that he was determined to go forth to aide and help those three Knights. And without any more tarryeng with great spéd hee leapt to the shoare carrieng his sword in his hand, and his sheld on his arme, hee pressed in amongst them all, sayeng.

O vyle knights, cowards, and of small estéemeation, where-

wherefore are you not ashamed so great a number of you to fight onely against three knights, and therewith stroke such a terrible blow on him that he did first meet, that hee made him in two peeces to fall to the ground, so that in a short time by his furious entering was knowen the great power of his arme, in such sort, that wheresoeuer he went, he made a broad way, and with small trouble he ioyned with ỳ three knights, who when they knew of the help that was come vnto them, eche of them recouered new strength, and did procure to doe straunge feats, because the other should haue no aduauntage of them. And they very much meruailed who that knight should bee of so great prowesse, for ỳ the blows which he stroke might well bee knowne from all the rest, for if it had not beene by the armour that he wore, they would haue thought him to be one of ỳ sonnes of Trebatio. These foure knights kept so good order in theyr fight against their enemies, that they gaue ouer to fight with them, and began to showt and crie against them, so that they were constrained to goe and seeke their enimies, the which they found to be no good remedie, for that they did intreat them euilly at their backs, and being very angrie herewith, they determined to put themselues amongest the thickest of them, which did not fall out well with them, for that there was of them together more then ten thousand, the which this valiant Eleno seeing, he threw his sheild at his backe, fullye incensed with anger, and with his sword in his hand all aloft, hee pressed vnto that part whereas most people were, and the first he met withall, hee parted him in the middest, and the second hee cut off his head, and so went forwardes cutting and wounding now one and then another, with so great furie, that there was none that durst abide his blowes. Is there any doubt that whilest this Prince was thus troubling & molesting his enimies, that the other three knights which were with him did stande by and loke on, no not so, but for to sociate his worthie actes, they wrought such wonders in armes, as the reporte would seeme almost increadible vnto the hearers, in striking such terrible blowes

that they ſeemed to be no humane creatures. They did fight with ſo much courage that their enemies wer conſtrained to withdraw thẽſelues back, it was a great trouble vnto theſe knights that they were a foote, for if they had bẽne on horſ-backe all foure together, without doubt verie quickly they had made an end of ẏ conqueſt, ſo being in this conflict they ſaw come forth of the citie a great number of knights, and before them came a well proportioned Gyant, armed with verie fayre & rich armour, who with great haſt came vnto the place whereas the knights were, and when he ſaw the great harme which was there done, with a terrible & fearfull voyce he ſayd.

Oh immortall Gods, is it poſſible that foure knights hath done all this harme, ẏ a thouſand of very good knights are not able to doe, and is their ſtrength and pollicie ſuch, that not one of thẽ haue receiued any hurt. O wretched knightes what had you rather to die in my power then to ſweare vnto ſo iuſt a demaund as they haue aſked of you in ẏ behalfe of the king Noraldino. Then Lyriamandro who hearde the words which the Gyant had ſaid, aunſwered. There is not one of vs, that for the feare of death will ſweare vnto any thing. but firſt we wil know if the cauſe be iuſt, becauſe wee will not fall vnto any crime of that which ſhall be contrary vnto the order of knighthood. So then I do perceiue ſaide the Gyant, that you do not purpoſe to ſweare in any thing except it be firſt declared vnto you what it is, and the occaſion thereof. To the which aunſwered Zoylo, no. Well heare I ſweare vnto you by the high Gods (ſaid the Gyant) that I my ſelfe alone will bring you all to that ſtate, that you would willingly ſweare, but then you ſhall haue no time. And therewith hee drew out a broad and gliſtering ſword and flouriſhing therewith hee preſſed forwardes, then the Prince Eleno ſtepped forth and requeſted the other that they would let him alone with ẏ gyant, the which although it were againſt their wills, yet they conſented to it, and the other putting themſelues all on the one ſide, they began againe their mortall battaile. The Gyaunt with the great

furie

furie hée had, did discharge his blowe, but it was in vaine, for that the Prince did let it slippe by in such sort, that hée could not strike him, and in putting the blow aside, hée cut the sayde Gyaunt vppon one of his legges, and made a wound, which although it were not great, yet there ranne out of it very much bloud. When the Gyaunt did féele himselfe hurt, and that he saw his bloud ranne downe, hée did so kindle in ire, that hée let his shéelde fall to the ground, and laying holde on his great and broade sworde, with both his handes hée lift it vp, and stroke at the Dacian, thinking with that one blowe to haue finished the battaile, but the Prince for that he was nimble & light, did procure straight waies to cléere himselfe from the force therof, the which hée did in such sort, that the sworde fell downe to the ground and by reason of the great force and furie wherwith it was discharged, the gyant was constrained following his blowe to fall likewise downe vpon the earth. Héere the Dacian was not idle, but with both his hands stroke him vpon his strong helme with great courage, and although hée could not cut it at that time by reason of the hardnesse, yet it astonished him & brought him out of his remembraunce. The Gyant which saw himselfe in this perplexitie, with great furie in the best manner he could, tumbled himselfe on the one side, and procured to arise vpon his féete, but it was not possible for him, for that he was tormented with great and heauie blowes, and forced to fall downe agayne vpon the sande, but yet as soone as hée could, hée tourned once againe and forced himselfe to arise, but hée could not do it with such spéed, but first he must proue againe the sharpe edge of the Dacians sword, who stroke him such another terrible blow vpon the helme, that it yelded, & hée cut his flesh. The Gyant did féele himselfe very ill with that blow, and with the great furie and anger which he had, he stroke at the knight a terrible blowe which was in such sorte, that by any meanes hée coulde not shift himselfe from it, but must néedes receiue it vpon his helme, the which was with such force, that it made him to fall downe to ỹ ground, but this knight wᵭ great lightnes tũbled

himſelfe away vpon the ſands, and in a trice he was on his feete againe, and went towards the place wheras the Giant was, with full pretence to ſtrike him ſuch a blowe, that hee ſhould not be able to make any more reſiſtance. The Giant when hee ſaw him comming would haue ſtroken him, for to diſturbe him of his blow, but he could not, for that this Dacian ſtroke him ſuch an ouerthwart blowe, that lighting on his foote, he cut it cleane off, and the Gyant chaunced a blow on his helme, that it made the knight to tumble on the ſand, the gyant ſeeing him downe, would haue turned to haue ſtriken him againe, but he could not for the lack of his foote, for when he thought to firme his foote on the ground to preaſe forwards, he could not make a ſtep, but gaue a terrible fall to the ground, and being ſore troubled with the wound of his head and other wounds, he yelded vp the Ghoſt, and ſent his ſoule to whom it did appertaine. The Pagan people when they ſaw their ſtout Captaine dead, with great ſhowts and ſhrikes they preſſed altogether vpon thoſe foure knights, but they found thē neither baſtards nor cowards, but they gaue them well to vnderſtand ẏ they were of great valour. Then they ioyned themſelues together backe to backe, and ſtroke ſuch ſtraunge blowes vpon their enimies, and with ſo great force and furie, that he which had receiued one blow would not turne to them againe, wᵭ great feare they were ſo ſcarred. Prince Eleno being incenſed with anger, at the fall that he receiued by the blow of the gyant, it cauſed him to claſpe his ſword faſt in his hand, and with double furie he preſſed amongeſt his enimies, that vnhappye he might thinke himſelfe that came to the receit of the firſt ſtroke, for that with an ouerthwart blowe, hee cutte his head cleane from his ſhoulders, and returned vnto another, and ſtroke him vppon the waſt, ſo ẏ it had nere hand parted him in two peeces, ſo with ſuch like blowes & feates of knighthood they made them to retire. And at the ſame time they ſaw comming forth of ẏ citie a great number of knights & gentlemē, which they iudged to be about fiue thouſand in an armie, and all on horſ backe. It could not be choſen but ẏ this valiant Prince

Eleno

Eleno ſhould haue ſome feare, ſeeing ſo many knights: notwithſtanding with a loude voyce, and with great courage he ſaid. Excellent & valiant knights, now is the time, (moſt noble & ſtout warriors) that wee ſhow the great ſtrength & courage of our heartes, by a plaine teſtimoniall in leauing our bodies as ſacrificed vnto theyr wills and our bloud to bee ſprinckled abroad, receiuing more ioye and honour in our deaths, fighting in our owne defence, then to giue conſent vnto our enimies in ouercomming vs. Notwithſtanding, this yong warriour did not forget himſelfe, but rather with more furious blowes hee preſſed on his enimies, and working ſuch terrible feats, that it is very wonderfull to bee heard: and ſo without all hope of their liues committing themſelues vnto God, they did procure by all meanes, to cut off and make leſſe their enemies, killing them in ſuch ſort, as it ſeemed to mans capatitie impoſſible. The quantitie was ſo great, that by reaſon of the bloud that ran from them, the water on the ſea ſide was made red, and loſt his naturall colour, and beeing in this conflict, there approched all that great companie that came forth of the Citie. And beefore them all ther came a knight armed with very faire and rich armour, all gylded, and ſomething of a good ſtature and bigneſſe of body, & he had on his head a royall crowne: who when he came vnto the place whereas this bloudy battayle was, hee commaunded all the people to ſtand aſide, & with a ſeuere voice, ſhowing great humilitie, he ſaide. Valiaunt and worthy Knights, whom Iupiter defend and keepe, I feele my ſelfe very ſore troubled, in ſeeing knights of ſo great valour and worthineſſe as you are, to be indued with ſo much crueltie againſt your ſelues, and onely for not ſwering an oath, (conſidering you haue chaunced vpon this aduenture) wherby you ſhould make defence againſt ſo great treaſon againe me practiſed, of traitours, which onely by tirannie pretend to take away my kingdome from mee. To the which words, the valiant Prince Eleno made anſwere, and ſaide. If thou haſt iuſtice on thy ſide, as thou ſaiſt thou haſt, wherefore doe you conſent to ſuffer ſo vyle a cuſtome

in this your Countrey, constraining all strange knights by force to sweare vnto your defence, the which by iustice and order of knighthood they must doo it of their owne frée wil, if you giue thē to vnderstand the truth thereof. To whom the King answered and saide. Gentle knight, all this which hath bene done, was neuer by my commandement, but by this my captaine whom thou hast here slaine. And for that I did vnderstand ý great harme which he did, & that without all reason, I am come hether to remedy it: for which cause I doo desire & pray you, to let the furie of your strong armes to cease, & to pacifie your stout courages, and to take in good part, to come & rest your selues with mee, the which you may doo with all securitie. And here I do promise you to hold and kéepe my faith and word the which I doe giue vnto you: and then wil I declare vnto you all my trouble, whereat you will not onely take great contentment to sweare that which I shall request you: but also I beléeue that you will of your worthinesse take the demaund to bee your owne according vnto the great right and Iustice, that I haue on my part. So these foure Knights were satisfied of all that this Morish king had promised vnto thē, & by his words were ouercome and yelded vnto that which hee had demanded of them, and were determined to goe with him: at ý which, ý king receiued no small ioy, for to haue so valyant knights wt him in his companie. Then ý king alighted and caused thē to put vp their swords into their sheathes, and dyd them as great honour as though they had bene in their owne Countries. Then the Prince Eleno séeing how that all things were finished, hee determined to goe for his faire Lidia, but whē the King knew who shee was, himselfe did beare him companie, and toke hir out of the galley, and brought hir a shore. All that did beeholde hir, dyd mernayle at hir great beautie, béeing mixed with so much sadnesse. So the king toke hir by the hand and bare hir company, till he came vnto the Citie, & carried hir vnto his pallaice, which was very rich & great, for this king was one of the mightiest princes in all Africa. So straight way it was cōmaun-

ded

ded to make ready dinner, for that it was very nædfull, the which was accomplished very sumptuously. When they sat downe to dinner, they pulled off their helmes, which before that time they had not done: & when the Prince Eleno had pulled off his healme, all the rest did thinck verely, that it had bæne the valiant Knight Rosicleer, (for that as I haue told you) he was very much like him, complaining for that he had kept himself so close, without shewing what he was in so long time. The Prince with a smiling countenaunce did put them out of all doubt, in showing them who he was of the which they remained very much amazed, & for al that, if he had had a little more beard, they would not haue beleæued him. The Knight was very well content & pleased that he had such knights in his company, & told vnto thē a great circumstance of treason, cleane contrary to that it was, applying all ỳ iniurie to be offered vnto himself, mingling his tale with counterfet teares, which caused these Knights to giue credit vnto his words, in such sort that they did sweare vnto the King all that he would demaund, of the which this traiterous king remained greatly contented, and ordained for thē very fayre & rich chambers to ease thēselues, with all seruice nædful, & likewise for ỳ fayre Lidia, for he lodged hir in the Queenes chamber, & caused many Ladies and Damosels to come and beare hir companie, and to serue hir in all that was necessary, for that he perceiued how the prince Eleno did receiue great pleasure therein. In the end of twentie dayes that these Knights had sojourned with the King, there came one & aduertised the King, how that there was ariued in the port of the Citie, a faire ship, & how that ther descended out of hir a Knight, and a well proportioned, Gyaunt: and by reason that they would not harken vnto the accustomed oath, which they that dyd ariue there should sweare, that there was begun a meruailous and stout battaile, with them that did kæpe the port, wherein the knight did meruailous & worthy feates, & likewise the Giant. The which bæing heard by those knights ỳ wer with ỳ king, they called for their armor, & wer w̄ a trice armed, & ther were

brought

brought vnto them very fayre and streng horses, which the King had commanded to giue them, and mounting on their backs, in great hast they went out of the Citie to the hauen side, to the same place whereas they fought their owne battaile, whereas they found these two knights with no lesse rigor & fury, then they themselues were before. So straight way, three of those Knights dyd know, who that Knight & Giant was, which were in battaile, & sayd, that it was Clauerindo and the King of Sardenia, whom I told you departed out of Greece in the quest of the Emperour, and by fortune they were driuen into those parts, for that the King might haue more ayde for to execute his tyranny. Then the valyaunt Zoylo pulled off his helme and sayde. What is the matter valiant Prince, that you show your selfe so furious against him, which in all poynts is redy to be at your commaundement. At which words, the Prince lyft vp his eyes, and when hee beheld those three Princes and knew them, he very much meruailed to see them, and left off his battel, & so likewise dyd Bramidoro, and all three with their armes abroad, came to imbrace him. And Clauerindo saide, It had not gone very well with vs in this conflict, if these knights had not knowen vs, and in saying these words, hee threw his armes about their necks with great ioye that he receiued to see them: and with no lesse ioye and pleasure all the rest did show themselues & sayd. We are those which haue most gotten in the knowing of you, for that we haue put apart the great battaile that was prepared for vs. So with the like courtesie they receiued the Prince of Dacia, who, if that the other had not told him what he was, he wold haue beleeued that it had beene Rosicleer. So with these and such like reasons, at the request of other Princes, they went with them vnto the Citie, at such time as the King came forth, accompanied with a faire companie of Knightes and very well armed, who receiued them with great courtesie, & caused ỳ prince of Fraunce to ride w̃ him side by side. So they altogether returned vnto the Citie, and thẽ to the Pallaice, wheras they were meruailously well intertained,

and

and there the King tolde vnto them all his contrarie and chaunged treason, wherefore these two knights did sweare and promise vnto the King, the same which the others had done. The prince Clauerindo had so great affection vnto the Prince Eleno, that hée would not at any time depart from him, neyther would the Prince Eleno doe otherwise vnto Clarisians, declaring vnto him all his euills and strange aduentures. At which communication was present the king of Sardenia, and when hée heard him tell of his aduenture in Tinacria, and of the battaile that hée had made with Tetereo, and how that he was ouercome, hée with more affection beebelde him, and requested him to beare the whole estate thereof. So the prince did declare all, and how that hée departed, & how that afterward hée found the princesse Lidia, that Lady which carried the Emperour out of Constantinople: the which being all knowen vnto them, they would straight way goe and visit hir, and shée receiued them with hir accustomed sadnesse.

Now for that I haue long time forgot that noble Emperour, I will retourne, and tell you what happened vnto him, at the fountaine of Tinacria, where I left him.

¶ How that the Emperour went vnto Tinacria, and of all that passed in the battayle, which hee had with the Earle of Modique. Chap. 20.

IN great trouble and affliction wée left the valiaunt Emperour Trebatio, in the Iland of Tinacria, hard by the fountayne of marble, at such time as the Earle of Modique with his speare in his reast, was prepared for to hurt him. The Emperour seeing him come, he had great care of himselfe, and being in a place that neyther to the one part nor to the other hée could slip back to saue himselfe from that blow, hée did determine to stoope with both his knees and shorten in his body, for that he was sure hée could not ouerrunne him with his horse, by reason

of

of the fountaine that was at his backe. The Emperour defended himselfe in such sort, that the speare without doing him anye hurt went ouer his head. The blow was not so soone past when that the Emperour rose bolt vpright, and cast such a thrust at the horse breast, that his sword entered in vp to the hilles. The horse when hee felt himselfe hurt, gaue a leape into the aire with so great swiftnes, as though it had bene a whirlewinde, and in the end, he fell downe to the earth with great force, & in the fall, he caught ỳ Earles leg vnder him, in such sort, that he could not by any meanes arise. Yéere might the Emperour haue slaine or hurte him, but he would not, for ỳ he seemed vnto him to bee a Knight of great estimation. Then all the people that were there, both them a foote & those on horsebacke, with great shouts and shrikes they would haue set vpon him: but they could not come nigh him at their wil, for that the dead horse was betweene them: & against the Earle was a shield for his defence, who was prisoner vnder his horse right before him. So at this instant came forth of that faire pallaice, a great number of knights and Ladies, and amongst them the faire Quæne Garrofilea. And when all the people saw hir they put themselues out of the way towards the one side, by the which the Emperour vnderstood that shee was Ladie of all that countrey. She came formost of all that company, being so faire and so well proportioned, that shee seemed vnto the Emperour to be as beautifull as euer hee beheld any in all the world: shee was of the age of fourteene yeeres, but yet hir body was of a meruailous and great stature. Shee was adorned wt very rich robes, & vpon hir head a crowne of gold, which was very great, placed with such grauitie, as hir state required. And when shee drew nigh vnto the place wheras this warriour was, she very much meruailed at his well proportioned bodie and good disposition, and at the seuere and faire countenaunce of the Emperour, and turning vnto him, in the Tuscan tongue she said.

Worthye and valyaunt Knight, whatsoeuer thou art, thou dost seeme vnto vs, that thou art a straunger. Not-

withſtanding, thou muſt not thinke that thou art in a place, whereas ſhall be done vnto thee any thing without reaſon, although I do not know, how thou canſt excuſe thy ſelfe, for doing of all this harme, which I ſee thou haſt done vnto ſo valiant & worthy Knights, as theſe which I do ſee dead before thee, onely by the ſtrength of thy arme. And wherein I may moſt excuſe thee, is in their ſmall proweſſe: for although they were armed, and thou naked without armour, yet had they neither power nor force to bring thee vnto priſon. And therefore ſeeing their ſmall force, I determine, beeing a woman and a damoſell, to come forth of my pallace, to make an end of that: which without great harme and damage could not bee ended by Knightes. Therefore now ſeeing there is no other remedie, I doe deſire thee that thou wouldeſt yeeld thy ſelfe to be my priſoner, and giue vnto me the glorie and triumph, that ſo many worthy Knights could not attaine: and put thy whole truſt and confidence in me, and I do promiſe thee that no man ſhall do thee any wrong, or offer thee any thing againſt reaſon.

The Emperour did well vnderſtand all that the Queene had ſaid vnto him, but hee made as though hee did not vnderſtand hir, and tourned to aſke hir what ſhe had ſaid, in ſaying that he did not vnderſtand the laugnage, and how that he was a Grecian borne. Then the Queene who was very diſcreete, & could ſpeake the Greeke tongue very well, renewed hir talke, and ſpake that in the greeke, which before ſhe had done in the Tuſcan tongue. Then the Emperour bowed hir knees to the earth, and with an humble voyce, he ſaid. I cannot deny, moſt excellent & faire queene, ẏ great griefe which I haue, for that which I haue done, neither can your knights deny ẏ iuſt occaſion ẏ I had to do it. For they finding me aſleep & taking my reſt by this fountaine, beeing conſtrained therto, by the trauaile I receiued at ſea, and being caſt a land in this your countrie, they did intreat mee as they would not intreate a plough man, conſtraining their courteſie againſt my will, and doing that, which the grauitie of my heart would not permit.

In

In the ende seeing that they dyd so ill intreate mée and in such manner, I dyd determine first to dye, then to yéeld my selfe vnto them as prisoner, neyther would I haue altered my intent, if it were not now by occasion of your great beautie, accounting my selfe happie to dye at the commaundement of so excellent a Lady: all this time that the Emperour was speaking vnto the Quæne, shee neyer withdrew hir eyes, from beholding of his personage, and had great admiration to see the Maiestie of his countenaunce. O cruell Cupide, wilt thou now beginne to vse thy accustomed mallice. O false tyrant, I can neuer talke in these or such lyke matters, but thou art alwayes at hande. This quæne was so blinded with loue, that without any more consideration, shee went vnto the Emperour, and toke him by the hand, and made him to stand vpon his feete and sayd. Maliant Knight, I doe account my selfe very happie, for that I haue had so much strength, that only with my person I haue moued your stout courage to so great humilitie. And with this shée caused him to put vp his sword into his sheath, and promising him safetie, she led him with hir into the pallaice, and commanded that the Earle should bée taken from vnder the horse, for at that time he had not so much strength to cléere himselfe from that fall: for that it was in such sort, that it did bruse and intreate him very ill. And when they came vnto the Pallaice, the Quæne commanded that there should bée giuen him a meruailous faire & rich lodgeing. And for the great complaints which were made of him, shee commanded, that hee should bee kept in a good ward, although the prison which she gaue vnto him, was not so strong, as that which the Emperour had giuen occasion vnto the Queene to haue, & although it wer not very grieuous, yet ỳ Emperor could not chuse but féele it, when he saw himselfe locked vp, being neuer accustomed vnto any such trouble: the Quéene had great care of him, and caused him to bee healed of those smal wounds which he had, and that with great diligence, in such wise, that in a small time hee was whole of his paine, swellings and other griefes. In all this time, the

Earle

Carle and all the kins folkes of them that were slaine made great halt and sate vnto the quæne to execute iustice vpon this knight that was prisoner, but she did defend the case verie much, and excusing him in declaring vnto them the small right she had to doe it, and giuing them to vnderstand how that they had their payment according vnto their deserts, but by reason of the great importaunce that those knights made, she was constrained to kæpe him straighter in prison, which was vnto hir so great paine, that she could scarce dissemble it. So the Quæne bæing thus sore troubled shæ went vnto hir chamber, and there was betwæne hir chamber & that, whereas the Emperour was but one wall, and out of the Quænes chamber ther went a doore, whereas many times shæ commuined with him. Thus bæing verye pensiue and sore troubled, for that she was constrained to commaund that which hir hart would not consent vnto, she went hir selfe close vnto the doore to sæ if she might comfort hir selfe with the sight of hir prisoner and captiue, and she chanced to come thether at that time as the Emperour did complaine verie much of his fortune, vttering meruailous pittifull and sorrowfull wordes. Oh cruell fortune without all stabilitie, enuious, & the onely causer of all my vnquietnesse. I sæ that no mightinesse nor the power of any Monarch is sufficient to bridle thy disordinate appetite. Art not thou cõtent in doing me so great euill, in ỹ thou broughtest me out of my worthy Empire, cleane contrary to the will of my subiects, and didst not hold fast thy whæle till such time as thou haddest deliuered mæ into the handes of straunge people. It hadde bæne better for me to hane died in the deapth of the Sea, or else with the edge of the Sworde lyke a Knight, then to sæ my selfe in the power of barbarous people. O Emperour Trebatio, now after so many & great troubles in the which thou hast sæne thy selfe, and hast ouer passed them, and by this misfortune thou art put vnto that great necessity, that neither thou cannest profite thy selfe of thy valyaunt courage, neither of the strength of thy worthye and valyaunt Knights.

And so in such like anguish hee walked vp and downe the chamber, and swore that if hee did see himselfe at libertie, he would not giue credit vnto any such faire wordes as the queene had promised him, and sometimes he threw himselfe vpon his bed, calling for his valiaunt sonnes, and his wise men, saying. Oh my sonnes and my friends, if that you did know of all these my troubles, I am sure that you wold giue mee aide and succour with the strength of your armes, in leauing this Iland desolate, which by you was once restored, & now as it is happened to the hurt of your father: or at least wayes, if thou Lyrgandeo or Artemidoro, or any of you would giue mee succour with my armour and horse, I do heere sweare vnto you by the almightie God, that in the anger and furie that I am in, that in spite of all Tinacria I would set my selfe at libertie, and leaue them so plagued as their deserts do deserue. And with this he held his peace for a while, and loked round about to see if he could finde anie place wher he might get out, and seeking he found a verie faire and well proportioned Lute, hanging vpon a naile on the wall, the which hee take downe and dyd put it in tune, and beganne to play with verie swat melodie, accompanied with a verie beaute and harmonious voice, & against fortune he sang these verses following.

You worthie wights which fortunes frownes haue felt,
and headlong falne from top of high estate:
And all, with whom she mutably hath dealt,
consent with mee hir falsehood to relate.
Whose double face when smoothest it doth smile.
Then meanes she most the mightie to beguile.

Aye mee poore Prince a patterne of hir spight,
Who earst on top of all hir wheele was plast:
And now haue care in steed of late delight.
for regall crowne with captiues life disgrast.
From Croesus wealth farre worse then Codrus pore:
Fie froward fortune what canst thou doo more?

Well,

Well, since that I haue felt thy fartheſt ire,
in this diſtreſſe I flatly thee defie,
And for redreſſe, I onely death deſire,
hoping that then my ſoule to him ſhall flie,
Whoſe due it was beefore that I was borne:
Who with his wiſdome laughs thy ſlights to ſcorne.

And thus making an end of his ſong, hée threw his Lute vpon his bed, and turned vnto his accuſtomed vnquietneſſe, and againe complaining of Fortune he ſaid. O vile coward and ingratefull, tell mee where is thy habitation, and thou ſhalt ſée if this wheele in the which thou goeſt, canne profit thée any thing or deliuer thée, that both thy ſelfe & the wheele be not broken all to péeces by my ſtrong hand, if I goe out from hence: and I will neuer reſt till ſuch time as I haue found thée. and although thou doſt hide thy ſelfe in the deepe and infernall places, yet will I not leaue to follow thée till ſuch time as I haue rooted out all thy power. Theſe and other like words this ſorrowfull Emperour vttered, with ſo great anger, ỹ if he had found himſelfe with armour, ther had béene no doubt but that he wold haue broken the chamber whereas hée was priſoner, and in ſpite of all Tinacria haue ſet himſelfe at libertie. The Quéene which was harkening vnto all that which the Emperour ſayde, was not ſo much kindled with the loue of the Emperour béefore, but now it increaſed without meaſure, when ſhée heard and vnderſtood what hée was, and if it had not béene for the reſpect of hir eſtate, out of all doubt ſhée had entered in where as the Emperour was, but bridling hir owne will, conſidering what an euill report ſhée ſhould haue amongeſt hir ſubiects, if they ſhould by any meanes attaine to the knowledge thereof. With this and ſuch like extremities ſhée remayned a great while ſilent, till ſuch time as the force of loue did ſo ouercome hir, that ſhe forgot cleane all that touched hir honour and royall maieſtie, and determined to open the doore, which without any delaye ſhée dydde, which ſtraight wayes the Emperour hearde, and thinking

to bée ſome other thing, hée aroſe vpon his feete, & toke his ſword in his hand (for the Quæne would neuer conſent that his ſword ſhould bée taken from him,) and when hée ſaw that it was the Quæne, hée did quiet himſelfe, and diſſembling his anger in the beſt wiſe hée could, the Quéene drew nære vnto the Emperour, and diſſembled what ſhe had heard, ſhée ſaluted him and ſayde. Gentle knight, how doo you feele your ſelf of your paſſed trauaile. To whom hée anſwered, I can make no other anſwere, moſt mightie Ladie, but the very ſame which you your ſelf may think, if you were priſoner, eſpecially for ſuch an occaſion, as you ought rather to receiue fauour & comfort, and therefore I cannot but muſe at your highneſſe, knowing in how little fault I am, that you ſet me not at libertie, but I do wel ſée that you are a Damoſel and ſubiect vnto the will of your ſubiectes, for loke what they ordain you dare not reſiſt againſt them, therefore ſayde Lady I doo deſire you if you pretended to ſet mée at libertie (as by promiſe and iuſtice you are bound) let it be out of hand, and if any of your ſubiects will ſay to the contrarie, I requeſt the acceptation of the battayle for the defence of my right, with eight or tenne, or if they will, with twentie of the beſt in all your kingdome, and I doubt not but in mine owne perſon againſt thē al, to deliuer my ſelfe from this enthralled perill: vnto whom ỳ quæne anſwered with a very good grace. I doe well vnderſtand gentle knight, that the highneſſe of your heart cannot ſuffer ſuch ſtraight impriſonment, as well for that which I haue ſæne of thee, as alſo for that which I haue heard. So likewiſe thou maiſt wel beléeue, that which I haue done, hath béene partly to content my ſubiects and people, for that this euil hath fallen out vpon ỳ perſon of the moſt mightieſt man amongeſt them, & of this be you aſſured, that the thing which you wold haue done, & ſo much deſire, ſhall not bée done, onely for that you are without fault, although they charge you with it greatly, but alſo for that thou art father vnto that excellent knight of the Sunne, whom in this my Iſlande they honour for one of the moſt high and ſouereigne Gods, as a

reſto-

restorer of the same, and againe, that it is not decent that so
high and mightie an emperour should in this Iland be so ri-
gorously intreated, as that his cause should be determined by
the termes of iustice, vnto whom not onely they, but the
whole world, willingly ought to serue, for that thou art an
Emperour, and father vnto such a sonne. The Emperour
was very sore troubled when he perceiued ỹ she was know-
en, the which this faire Ladie marking, went forwardes in
hir talke, and said: Doe not vexe your selfe, neither bee anye
whit troubled (most mightie Prince) for that you are know-
en considering that of such a one as thou art it is reason we
doo esteeme, according to thy desert. neither can my captiue
heart consent vnto any other thing but the exalting of thy
honour. Alasse what shall I saye, who hath receiued most
wrong for their imprisonment it hath ben onely my christal
breast and captiued hart, they haue wronged thy body but
for a time, but me, loue hath bereaued of my former liberty,
in wounding my hart, so that it is almost vncurable. In this
(my good Lord) you may vnderstand that I alone am shee
which hath the greatest wrong. Thou valiaunt Emperour
hast taken away from the Earle of Modique his sonne, but
thou hast robbed me (most infortunate) of my hart. Oh how
much better had it bene for me to haue bene partaker with
him of death, then now to liue, not knowing what cruel loue
will doo. Oh immortall Gods, how is it that you haue per-
mitted that the tender hart of a poore damsell, being alwaies
willing to offer vnto you sacrifices, and exercising of my self
daily in your seruice. and now in payment of all this, you
haue permitted it to be sacrificed vnto the cruell will of Cu-
pide, who hath forcibly pearced my feeble hart with this fu
rious darts. I beseech thee (O Emperour) doe not deme mee
this my vnreasonable demaund, although thou seest it so far
to exceed the meane. Oh virginitie, thou maist well be com-
pared vnto a rose, which so long as the leaues are reserued vn
in the bud, it keepeth the naturall coulour, but when it once
begins to blow then doth it quickly change, euen so the flou
rishing beautie of virgins doth no sooner blome, but Cupide

" bloſſeth it with his diſpiteſull blemiſh. O ſoliſh quæne what
" cauſed thæ to depart out of the Pallace wheras thou wert
" at liberty and without griefe, didſt thou it for to do honour
" vnto the Emperour, yet not knowing him. Well, for what
" cauſe ſo euer it were, ſæ now what is become of it, for that
" fræly thou haſt yelded thy ſelfe vnto him, without reſerving
" any thing in thy owne power. All this the quæne deliuered
with ſuch ſorrow and lamentation that it would haue cauſed
a ſtone hart to haue relented. But the emperour who with
a ſingle heart did loue the Empreſſe Briana, and moreouer
being a very good chriſtian, was not moued with one of theſe
lamentable words, neither made he any ſhew of loue vnto
the quæne, but wiſhing rather to haue had battaile with one
of the hardieſt knights in all the world, then to haue found
himſelf ſo ſodainly aſſailed by this amorous woman: wher-
fore when this faire Ladie had plainly declared all ỹ whole
ſecret of hir heart, the Emperour vſing his accuſtomed diſ-
creation, did ſhew himſelfe to be verie heauie & ſad for that
which the quæne had heard, and taking hir by the hand they
ſate downe together vpon the corner of the bed, and began
to anſwere vnto hir amorous reaſons, although not ſo much
vnto hir purpoſe as ſhe deſired, ſaying.

" Faire Ladie and quæne, I am fully certified that from ſo
" high nobility and beautie ther can proceed nothing without
" reaſon, and therefore I did now loſe the confidence of your
" fauour, when I was vnknowen, much more now that you
" do know me to be the Emperour of Greece, the truth wher
" of I do here confeſſe. And although I finde my ſelfe in the
" land where all the people be my mortall enimies, yet for all
" that I will not denie who I am, becauſe my heart wher-
" ſoeuer it becomes, cannot but vſe manifeſtly his noble cou-
" rage. Here the Quæne did cut off his anſwere, ſaying: Oh
" Emperour I do not aſke of thee any recompence, neither
" doe I demaund of thee whether thou be our enimie or our
" friend, but the thing which I alone deſire of thee is this, to
" giue a remedie vnto this my paine, & a plaiſter for my ſore,
" for that the view of thee hath beene the onely occaſion ther-

of,

of. Oh Emperour, what trifling is this, to talk of that which » is not anſwerable vnto that which I demaund: Oh wor- » thie Emperour, haue compaſſion on me, for that thou alone » muſt remedie this my euill, for thou ſeeſt apparauntly the » neede I haue of thy help: Oh that it had pleaſed the Gods » that my remedy were as ſure as thy liberty, reſtore vnto me » (I beſeech thee) that whereof thou haſt beereaued mee by » beholding thee yelde vnto mee. O ſweet Emperour, ſeeing » that I am alreadie yelded vnto thee, inſomuch that there » is no doubt, but to put into my hands the ſpoile of my roy- » all marryage. »

The Emperour dyd leane his cheeke vpon his hande verie penſiue, all the tyme that this Lady was declaring hir complaints, not for that he was without pittie, but for that he was moued with great compaſſion, and yet not with determination to ſatiſfie hir diſordinate appetite, but with fayre words to put hir in good hope of remedie. And verie fayne ſhee would haue anſwered, but that ſhee was cut off by a Damoſell which called hir. The Queene diſſembling hir beauineſſe in the beſt wyſe ſhee could, went out of the chamber to ſee what they would haue, vnto whom the damſell ſayde. Lady, there is a meſſenger come from the king of Mauritania, which doth tarrie for you beelow in the Pallaice. wherat this faire queene did feele hir ſelfe troubled, the occaſion was, for that this king was in loue with hir, who was very valiant and of great force, and began to gouerne his kingdome very young, with another brother of his, who at that time was not knighted, neuertheleſſe to beare him named in all Africa, it made the people to tremble with feare, therefore manie times by reaſon of his great pride his fame was much abated. This king dyd determine with himſelfe to marrye with the Queene, eyther by fayre meanes, or elſe by force, and for to put this his pretence in practiſe, he ſent vnto hir his meſſengers, and for a more maieſtie, hee made his owne Brother Lord Embaſſadour. And ſeeing this hiſtorie will moſt intreate of this young man who was called Bruſaldoro, y wiſe author wold diſcouer

his cuſtomes & manners, hée ſaith ỹ hæ was in the ſtature of his body well neere a leauen foote high, and all his members conformable vnto his height, being indued with incredible ſtrength, hæ had his countenaunce very graue and of great beautie, without any anger, very tractable, and a gentleman of great curteſie, hæ deteſted to doe any thing that was vnſæmely, hæ was very ready to correct wher it was nedfull, and far from any vnhumane cruelty: all which vertues were extinguiſhed when hæ was angered, for that then in all Africa and Aſia ther was no wild beaſt ſo fierce and cruell. And many times it hath ben ſæne, when his anger had bæn paſt, hæ would haue wept with great ſorrow for the hurt which hée had done, hée had one cuſtome which was very diueliſh (being no ſmall blemiſh vnto all the reſt of his good qualities) that hæ would neuer pardon them of whome hæ had receiued iniurie. So when this pagan was come into the pallaice, and in the Quænes preſence, with a graue countenance and hardie voice hæ declared his embaſſage, & by reaſon that at that time the Quæne had not hir hart at liberty, ſhe gaue him for anſwere, without tarrying to take any farther counſaile, that hir intent was not as yet to marrie, for that ſhæ was verie young, whereat this Pagan departed, & dyd returne to giue this anſwere vnto his brother Bramarandus, at which hæ was very ireſull, & commaunded to make ſacrifices vnto Mahomet, praying vnto him for to chaunge the will of the Quæne, that ſhæ might marrie with him. Then there was made aunſwere vnto him (by the Diuell which hadde entered into that infernall Image of Mahomet) that hée ſhould not tarrie for any other hope to obtayne hir, but by force of armes, and that hée ſhould procure with all his ſtrength and power for to marrie hir, adding that from hir ſhould procéde an infant, at whoſe valyauntneſſe and ſtrength halfe the world ſhould tremble and ſtand in feare. This falſe God dyd well diuine and prognoſticate, but yet hée dyd deceiue the wretched Bramarandus, in ſaying, that of his ſæde ſhold procéd ſuch a child, & when hæ heard ỹ anſwere of this accurſed

ſed

ſed Mahomet, hée commanded, ẏ with all diligence ſhould bée ioyned together, fiue hundred of the moſt valiantest knights that might bée choſen, not onely in Mauritania, but alſo in Numidia and Garamantes, for that not one King of all theſe countries would deny him anye thing, with pretence with them and himſelfe in perſon, to win by force that, which by faire meanes hée could not obtaine: and imbarking themſelues, with a proſperous winde, they came in a ſmall tyme vnto Tingitania: and béefore they would goe a land, they dyd ſend their Ambaſſador a ſhore, to ſée if they did finde hir firſt purpoſe altered. The which meſſage was committed to a mightie ſtrong Moore, called Forimon: who dyd declare it vnto the Quéene with proud and obſtainate words, threatening them with cruell wars, if to the contrary they would not conſent vnto the marriage. There was preſent at this Embaſſage, the Earle of Modique, and the Earle of Modeb, and the Earle Farlera, and the Marques of Apoſto, and many other valiant Knights: and although they made an outward ſhow, that they did not eſteeme of it, nor made any reckoning thereof, yet they were in great feare. The good Earle of Modique with a ſad voice ſaide. Oh mightie Iupiter, how well thou haſt payed thy ſelfe for the great curteſie which thou haſt ſhowed vs, in giuing vs for our Ladies and gouernours, the faireſt damoſels in the world. For not long ſince we did behold one of thē w̄ hir owne hands to thruſt a ſword through hir breſt (which was a pitiful ſight to ſée) & now the other is euen at the point to do the like. Notwithſtanding now ſhall my life periſh, for to maintayne my honor, in the ſeruice of my lady & Quéene. And with this, they dyd all determine, rather to haue wars with honour, then peace with ſhame: waying the litle good wil the Quéene had to marrie with him, & to take him for hir huſband. And with this determination, they gaue him for aunſwere, that the Quéene was not intended to marrie as yet: ſo that if hée pleaſed to tarrie the time hée might, if not, hée might doe as hée thought beſt, and that they would not let, but defend the honour of theyr Lady and Quéene.

M.b. The

The meſſenger not well pleaſed with the anſwere, retourned to declare it vnto his Lord. And when he was gone, all the Quæenes knights determined to fortifie themſelues in the Citie, and make all things very ſtrong, and ſo they gaue the Quæene to vnderſtand thereof, whereof ſhe was very wel content, ſeeing them ſo well incouraged for hir defence. The day following they commaunded to call together all the beſt knights of ỹ land, that they might come to hir aide and ſuccour: for that there were very many in that Iland. But that ſame night Venus would haue wrought one of hir accuſtomed cruelties if ſhe had not bene hindered, as hereafter you ſhall heare in the chapter following.

¶ How the Queene beeing kindled with the fire of loue, and ſeeing that the Emperour would giue hir no remedy of hir paine, wold haue ſtroke hir ſelfe with a ſword to the heart, wherewith to haue finiſhed hir ſelfe: and how the Emperour was cõſtrained to conſent vnto hir will. Cap. 21.

IN the meane tyme that they were putting all things in good order, as you haue heard, Cupide dyd not ceaſe, but continually tormented the Quæne, ſo that euery daye ſhe did not let to trouble the Emperor, with hir louing and amorous complaints, prouoking him in what ſhe might, vnto hir will, who alwayes with great diſcretion did delay the ſame, vntill the laſt night that they were determined to leaue the pallaice, and to enter into the Citie. Then this fayre Lady induced very great paine, vntill ſuch time as the cleare Diana with ỹ fairenelle of hir beames, had paſſed the halfe part of hir iourney, when that all the people were at their accuſtomed and naturall reſt. Then this faire Garroſilea aroſe vp from hir bed with a deſperate determination, which the force of loue inforced hir to practiſe, and couering hir ſelfe with a very rich robe, ſhe take a ſword which had bene the King hir Fathers, and

and put it vnder hir lefte arme, and in hir right hand shée carried a light that she might the better finde the doze, the which she opened as softly as was possible, at such time as the Emperoz, was very fast a sléepe, and when she saw that he did not héere hir entering in, shée went vnto the bedds side, with the light in hir hand, that she might contemplate hir selfe in beholding the graue and faire face of the Emperour, and vnto hir it séemed that in all the world ther was not such another, noz that there could be any greater thing to be desired, then that which hir heart did require. In this sozt she was beholding him a great while, vntill such time, as the sozrowfull sighes Garrofilea set, caused the Emperoz to awake, and when he saw the Quéene, he was very much amazed, and would haue risen vp, wherto ý Quéene would not consent, but caused him to lie still, and setting the light vpon a table which was in the chamber, she came and sate hir downe vpon the bed by the Emperour, & shedding many teares of perfect and true loue, she said.

My Lozd, I would very faine know what thou dost pre- ,,
tend towards me, most vnfoztunate Quéene wounded with ,,
the dart of Cupide, onely by the sight of thy excéeding per- ,,
sonage. Foz knowing it, with thy aunswere I would put ,,
in ozder, that which I haue to do, concerning this my mi- ,,
serable life. I do well know my Lozd and Emperour, that ,,
this my bolde discouering of my selfe, hath béene too much, ,,
and beyond all reason: but if at any time thou hast loued, ,,
and dost know the great griefe that loue doth cause, thou ,,
wilt not blame me, noz put me in any fault: & I would ý I ,,
could show thée my woũded hart, ý in séeing it so soze afflic- ,,
ted, thou mightst take some compassion of me. & that which ,,
doth most torment me, is, that I haue yéelded my selfe vnto ,,
one, ý hath so little pitie on me. Who had euer heard, ý wo- ,,
men should woe & require of men to loue them? But I most ,,
vnfoztunate Quéene, haue broken that lawe and custome. ,,
O immoztal Gods, what haue you conceiued against me? Is ,,
not ý apparant which you vsed against my sister, & now wil ,,
you vse it also wt me. I shuld be requested of Emperours & ,,

Kings,

" Kings: and now I come to request one, that maketh no ac-
" count of me, neither both my present destruction mœue him
" to any pittie. Go to Emperour, make an end and answere
" mée, that therwith I may receiue either life or death. Heere
may you, which haue knowen what loue is, iudge what the
Emperour Trebatio might conceiue in himselfe, in this cru-
ell case. One way he did consider the great loyaltie that he
ought vnto the Empress his wife: and this constrained him
to deny her. Another way, the great desire that hée had to
sée himselfe at libertie, and the great loue that he did know
Garrosilea bare him, caused his hart somewhat to yéeld. Not-
withstanding, he did procure with faire and swéet wordes,
to sée if he could cause her to chaunge her thought and pur-
" pose saying, Lady, I do sée very well, that the force of loue is
" so cruell, that whosoeuer he doth wound, he leueth them in a
" manner without remedie, except it come from them, on whō
" they haue fixed their hart. I do not denie, but that your a-
" morous desire is such as he hath ordained it, who spareth no
" creature. But considering your highnesse and great estate, &
" the honour that all such as you are, should haue by your
" royall marriages, I doe more reioyce that you suffer paine,
" then you should take your ease with that, vnto which sensu-
" all loue doth constraine you. Most soueraigne Quéene, heere
" I do desire you, to bridle your affection, and restrayne your
" appetite, that you fall not into that infamie, which will bée
" the onely blemish of your estate, séeing it appertaineth so
" much vnto your honour. The quéene séeing ý his reasons did
" not incline vnto that which she desired, shortened his talk, &
" said: Emperour, all that which thou hast saide, and all be-
" sides that thou canst tell me, I do already vnderstand, and
" ther is nothing that may be spoken heerein, but I haue be-
" fore this time considered of it. Notwithstanding, loue hath
" more force, then any regard or consideration I should haue
" vnto my honour. Therefore I am heere come, fully deter-
" mined to make a second sacrifice vnto my gods, which after-
" wards shall be lamented by thee. And in saying those words,
she take out the sworde which she brought in secret vnder

her

hir roabes,and with great haſt ſhæ ſet the pommell therof vnto the ground,and would haue throwen hir ſelfe vpon the poynt thereof. The worthy Trebatio ſeing hir in this deſperate minde,leapt quickly out of his bed,and with a mightie courage caught holde of hir, and toke the ſword out of hir hand,ſaying. Oh blinde quæne, what diuelish determination is this? The Lady anſwered. Vnlouing Lord, no other thing,but to eaſe my ſelfe by death,for that I would not longer liue,as one dying. And ſaying theſe words, ſhæ fell in a ſound in the armes of the Emperour. Yæ re could not the ſtoutneſſe of the Grækes hart make ſuch reſiſtance, but that with great Loue hæ toke hir, and caſt hir vppon the bed,ſhedding many teares with much compaſſion, and conſidering the firmneſſe of the loue that the Quæne hatde ſhewed him,hée was confoũded in his owne thought,and inforced to haue done that which hæ neuer thought to haue done, & ſo purpoſed to giue hir all hir whole contentment: and ſo ioyning his mouth to hirs, hée remained kiſſing hir till ſuch time as this ſorrowfull Lady came agayne to hir ſelfe. But when ſhée perceiued ſhæ was of him ſo louingly imbraced,being the thing ſhe onely deſired,ſhe ſtraight way recouered all the ſtrength that ſhæ had loſt, and caſt hir armes about his necke with exceeding loue, which grieued not the Emperour any thing at all: & in ſuch ſort they vſed thẽſelues,that the Quæne was made Lady,with great contentment vnto them both. So with like ſport they paſſed the reſt of the night, in great ioye and pleaſure. The Quæne Garrofilea when ſhe ſaw that it was day,returned vnto hir chamber very pleaſant & merrie,vntill ſuch time as it was hir accuſtomed houre of riſing,which was ſomewhat early that day,for ỹ the two earls made very great haſt that they might enter into the Citie, the which was ſtraight way done. And the Quæne brought with hir the Emperour,and made him to ſweare to bæ hir true priſoner, and not to depart from thence without hir will and leaue. So the quæne toke the Emperour by the hand,& in this order they went out of the Pallaice. The Earle of Modique when hæ ſaw

this,

this, could not chuſe, but receiue great griefe, let he dit diſ-
ſemble it, for that hæ conſidered, that in ſuch extremitie, ſo
valiant a knight was na dfall, and ſo altogether they entered into the Citie. The Quæne was very gallant and pleaſant, whereat all hir ſubiects receiued great delight, and in the chiefe ſtræt of the Citie there was erected the Images of two knights, made all of ſtone, of a marvelous good proportion, and they had ouer them a couer like a Tabernacle, very rich and well wrought, bæcauſe the water ſhould not fall vpon thẽ nor any other thing to hurt them. As ſone as the Emperour ſaw thoſe figures, he knew that the one was the Image of his ſonne without reading of the ſupercription: but when he came nigh vnto it, hæ red the ſame, which ſayd. This is the great Prince of Grecia, called the Knight of the Sunne, reſtorer of the auncient kingdome of Tinacria, and the abater and breaker of the ſtrength of the moſt ſtrongeſt Gyants in all the world. And going a little farther, hæ ſaw vpon the other knight this Title: Prince Eleno of Dacia, couſin vnto the moſt valyaunt Sonnes of Trebatio, the well-ſpring of all our quietneſſe. Vpon this hæ looked with great affection, and earneſt deſire to ſæ his perfect perſonage. The Quæne dyd well vnderſtand the great ioye that the Emperour receiued, in bæholding the figure of his ſonne, & of his brothers ſonne: for which cauſe ſhe commanded that to be told publikely, which was ſpoken in ſecret: & then entred into the Quænes pallace, and the Emperour was carryed into a very faire and rich lodging, whereas by force he muſt bæ ſhut in, to make as if hæ were priſoner, for that the nobles of the Realme, would not conſent that hæ ſhould goe abroad at his will. The third date following, this braue Bramarando with all his knights, came before the walles of the Citie, and ſpread abroad their Ancients: and he himſelfe vpon a fierce horſe, drew towards the walls of the Citie in great haſt. Hæ was armed with very ſtrong armour, & had at his neck hanging a very rich horne of Iuorie, and when hæ came to ỹ gate of the Citie, hæ lift vp the viſour of his healme & ſet his horne vnto his mouth, & bægan to ſound it

with

very ſtrongly, to the end that the knights of the Citie ſhuld come thether to heare what hæ would ſay. So when ý ſome of them, ſuch as were nære at hand approched, hæ ſaid. O you Knights of Tinacria, whom the ſoueraigne Gods confound, that according as I am informed, by your counſell, I cannot inioy as mine owne that faire Garroſilea. What dw you, that you come not forth with your armor against mæ? and ſhew your ſelues if you bée as valiant to ouercome, as politike to giue counſel. Some of the nobles of the court did well heare what this Pagan did ſay, and ſtraight way, they went vnto the Quæne, for to ſæ what was beſt to be done in this caſe, to whom ſhæ anſwered. My friends, you dw well ſæ and vnderſtand, how little knowledge I haue in ſuch matters, bæing but a weake and fraile woman: in ſuch a caſe as this is, vnto you it belongeth to take counſell, for that you are knights, and together you may eſtabliſh that which is conuenient, for bærin I haue little knowledge and can ſay almoſt nothing: and with this ſhæ helde hir peace. These Earles, ſæing that with great reaſon the Quæne had anſwered them, they would argue no farther with hir, but talked a counſell. At which time, the King the ſecond time did ſound his horne, to call them againe to hearken vnto his ſpeach: and bæing attendant vnto that which he would ſay, hæ vttered theſe wordes. O vile Tinacrians, what dw you, why come you not forth with your armour. How is it, ý you are not aſhamed to hide your ſelues from one onely knight, which calleth you. Hære I dw promiſe you, that your high walls and dæpe diches which you haue about your Cittie, ſhall little proſit you, but ý you ſhall all die in my hands lyke vile knights. And if amongſt you ther be not one that is able to make his partie gwd in the field with me alone. Then come forth two, or thræ, or foure, or ten, for that altogether I will driue you out of the field: and if theſe tenne be not ſufficient, then come you all forth together ſuch as are able to beare armour: for hære I dw ſweare vnto you, to make you dye like cowards: but I take you to be ſuch, ý you will not put me to this trouble, but kæp your ſelues in your cittie.

The

The Earles did heare all that was spoken, at which worde they were very much grieued, but because they knew the strength of the African, they feared much his furie, but yet shame would not suffer them to beare the force of these wordes, but did determine to goe out and take the aduauntage which the Pagan did offer them. So amongst them all they chose ten of them that were most esteemed: who were, the Earle of Modique, and a sonne of the Earles, a valyant young man, being of fewer yeares, then hee which the Emperour slew at the marble fountaine, and Fabiniano of Hena, and Robio of Yscla, and other fiue chosen Knightes. So when they were armed and vpon horsebacke, they opened the gate of the Citie, and they went out into the fielde, all very well horsed. So when this King of Mauritania sawe them, hee let goe his horne, and put downe the visour of his healme, & called for a great speare, which straight waye was giuen him by a Knight of his, and with great arrogancie, he went towards the place, whereas this faire company of the ten Knights abode and with a loude voyce hee sayde that they might heare him. Who gaue you counsel to make resistaunce against my furie, for that you can finde no other thing therein but death. Then Don Rubio aunswered, none other: but onely to abate thy pride, therfore take thy choice of the fielde, for heere I defie thee to the death. All this while Bramarando stoode and beheld him with a terrible loke, and seeing him vse so great nimblenesse, he thought him to bee a good Knight, & giuing a tourne vnto his horse, he put himselfe into his place, and being both readye, they spurred their horses together, & ranne one against the other, & in the midst of their course they met. & neither of them missed their blowe, in the which incounter this gentle Rubio fell downe to the ground, and the Pagan somwhat stooped in his saddle, and his speare remained whole, and straight way hee put himselfe in good order. But when hee saw that all the rest which remained, did prepare themselues to make resistaunce, he could not refrayne but with a loud voice, hee saide.

O vile cowards and defamers of the order of knighthood, come hether vnto me, euen all of you, for I dow no more eſteeme of you, then of one onely Knight: and ſo ſpurring his horſe, hee ranne againſt them, and they did the like and at one time he receiued the incounter of fiue ſpeares, albeit hee mooued nothing at all in his ſaddle: but he did incounter the Baron of Monflet in ſuch ſort, that the ſpeare paſſing thorough his bodie, he fell downe dead to the ground, and there with he turned about his horſe, with wonderfull lightnes, and drew out his ſharp cutting ſword, and preſſed amongſt the reſt, whereas began a meruailous and terrible battaile Then the Knights of Tmacria perceiuing that they muſt either die or ouercom, they began to lay about them on euery ſide, with ſo much furie, ý it was ſufficient to haue hewed an anfield in peeces. Yet for all their force, they did not ſeeme to moleſt him any whit. But he which did ſhew him ſelfe moſt valiant amongſt them all, was the Marques of Modique his ſonne, and next vnto him was the Marques of Mondeli, and Don Fabino. But this ſtrong African layd about him ſo valiantly, and with ſo great furie, that he aſtonied thē, inſomuch ý with the great furie hee had, out of the viſour of his helme, proceeded a thicke ſmoke. At this time, he threw his ſhield on his backe, and tooke his ſworde in both his hands, that whoſoeuer he met, hee ſtroke him with ſuch terrible ſtrength and furie, that helme and head he cut in two parts. The Earle of Mondeli was not at this inſtant vnoccupied, but with his ſword faſt in both his hands, he ſtroke him on the one ſide of his helme, which was verye fine metall, that he made it ſound like a bell, which cauſed him to turne vp the white of the eye, and hee was almoſt beſide himſelfe. Hee had ſcarce giuen him this blowe, when likewiſe ý Earle of Modique gaue him another, that made him to decline his head to his breaſt: wherewith Fabinio gaue him alſo another blow, which bereft him cleane of his remembrance, inſomuch that his horſe caried him round about the field, euen as one dead, with his armes hanging downe.

The Knightes of Tinacria with great furie did follow him, to ſee if they coulde make an end of this their battaile, but ſtraight way hee came to himſelfe, and ſeeing how they had compaſſed him about, and conſidering into what great perill they had brought him, he recouered againe his ſworde the which hung by the writ band, and tourning about his horſe he roared like a wilde Bull which had beene bayted, and preſſed vnto Fabinio, and ſtroke him ſo furious a blow, that hee carried away both his ſhælde and healme, with a great part of his head, and hee fell downe dead to the earth. Then the Earle of Modique forthwith ſtroke the Mauritanian ſuch a blow on his armes, ỹ both of them were wounded, but moſt of all the right arme, for that the force of the blow was more on that ſide then on the other, wherwith this furious African ſeeing him within his reach, with his left fiſt he ſtroke him vpon the viſour of his healme ſo great a blow, that without anye remembraunce hee made him to fall backwards vpon the crouper of his horſe. Then the Earle ſtroke at him an ouerthwart blow vppon his healme with ſo great force, that hee made the ſparkes of fire to flye out, the which did grieue him verie much, and as one deſperate, hee lift vp his ſworde with great furie to ſtrike the Earle, who with verie much nimblenеſſe put him ſelfe on the one ſide, and cauſed him to loſe his blow, at the which he was verie angry, and flouriſhing with his ſword hee chaunced to light vppon the waſt of one of them, and cutting him in two peeces he fell downe dead to the ground, and not reſting with this, but continuing his furie, he liſted vp his ſharpe and cutting ſworde, and ſtroke anōther a blow vpon the left ſhoulder, whom hee deuided downe to the girdle. At this verie ſame time the valiaunt Rubio of Yſela was come to himſelfe, and recouering his horſe he leapt vpon his backe with exceeding great lightneſſe, and ioyned himſelfe with the foure knightes which remained of all the reſt, and there he beganne with great furie ſtriking on the Pagan in ſundrie places, and the Earle of Modique & Mondeli likewiſe did multiplie their blowes in great haſt. At

the

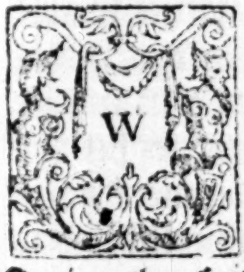
the which the Pagan was so furious, that without all patience he began to redouble his strokes, and stroke the Earle of Mondeli vpon his healme that hee made him fall to the ground verie sore hurt, and voiding bloud out of his mouth: yet this blow was not giuen so much at his ease, but hee must needes receiue for it foure blowes, which had almost depriued him of his wits. Hære Rubio of Yscla beganne to multiplie his blowes with so great hast, and therewithall so mightily, that he put the Pagan into great extremitie. This furious king tourned for to strike him a blowe at his pleasure, but the nimblenesse of this Tinacrian was such, that many times he made him to lose his blowes, at the which this Pagan was verie much amazed, but bécause hée could not strike him at his will as he intended, hee determined to leaue him and to returne vnto the rest, and at two blowes he ouerthrew two knights, the one starke dead, and ỹ other verie sore woũded, so ther remained no more but he of Modique & Rubio of Yscla, & the earle, which turned again to horseback, so like desperate mẽ without hope to escape they stroke at the furious Moore, but he séeing himselfe more at liberty, began to worke wonders vpon them, cutting them on the right hand and on the left, in this order they trauailed more then two houres, that the strength and valiauntnesse of the Moore was not sufficient to subiect them. Then this Pagan séeing such resistaunce he firmed himselfe in his stirroppes, and lifting vp his sword on high, hee stroke such a blow at him of Modique, that without any remembrance he made him fall vppon his horse crouper, and would haue doubled that blow for to haue made an end of him, but Rubio did disturbe him giuing him such a side blow vppon his helme, that hée made him to lose that which he was striking, causing his sworde to fall out of his hand, that hée could not execute it, and the Earle séeing him in that plight, straight waies retourned another on his left shoulder, which grée-ued the Pagan verie sore. In this time the Earle of Modique was come againe vnto himselfe, and setteled himselfe againe in his saddle, and being firmed against the Pagan, hée

ſtroke him ſuch a blow, that glaunceing hée gaue him a lit-
tle wound, whereout iſſued bloud. The Moze fæling him-
ſelfe hurt, returned againſt him of Modique, but this light
Rubio was with him at a pinch, and ſtroke him another
blow on his ſhoulder, that hæ made him thinke in all his
bodie, of which hæ made little account, but deſired onely to
goe vnto him which had drawen his bloud, who likewiſe
with great courage did attend his comming, hauing both
his handes on his ſword, ſo they diſcharged theyr blowes
both together. which were verie mightie and ſtrong, wher-
with hæ of Modique, all his healme being barbed in bloud,
fell without any remembraunce to the ground, and the furi-
ous Pagan in ſpite of his hart declined his head to the hoꝛſe
necke. Then the valiant Tinacrian quickly turned to ſtrike
him, and beforе that he could raiſe vp himſelfe againe, hæ
ſtroke him ſo ſtrong a blow, that without all remembꝛance
hæ made him to ſtagger vpon his hoꝛſe, ẏ hée lacked verye
little to fall to the ground. The Tinacrian ſæing him in this
traunce, neuer left ſtriking him vntill ſuch time as hæ dyd
ſæ that hæ beganne to come againe to himſelfe, and know-
ing that his power was not ſufficient to make reſiſtaunce,
hæ tourned his hoꝛſe head and with all haſt rodé towardes
the Citie, in ſuch ſoꝛte, that when the Moꝛe was wholye
come againe vnto himſelfe, the Tinacrian was in ſafetye,
wherein he did wiſely, foꝛ if hæ had tarried, it could not
haue fallen out otherwiſe but that he muſt nædes haue di-
ed by the handes of the cruell Pagan. Then the Moriſco
king ſæing all the field clære and without trouble, hée felte
himſelfe to bée verie ſoꝛe vexed with the ſpædie blowes
which the Tinacrians had beſtowed vpon him, and comman-
ded to carrie thoſe knights which were aliue from the reſt,
vnto the tent wheras he ſhould be, and he likewiſe went to
take his reſt & eaſe, foꝛ that it was verie neceſſarie & næd-
full, and was quickly cured of that ſmall wound which he re-
ceiued. And as foꝛ them of Tinacria, he willed ẏ they ſhould
pꝛonoũce their healths with many remedies, & intreat them
honourably, foꝛ that hée knew verie well what they were.

Rubio

Rubio when hée came into the Citie, without any tarrying went vnto the Pallaice to declare vnto the quæne hir vnhappie ſucceſſe. The quæne with great ſcurritie, not ſhewing any ſorrowfull countenaunce, aunſwered that he ſhould goe and take his reſt, and cure his wounds, ſaying, that ſhée had ſuch confidence in hir Gods, that they would remedie all theſe euils, and without any more tarrying, ſhe aroſe from the place wheras ſhe was ſet, and went vnto the Emperors chamber, & told vnto him all that had paſſed, & of that which happened, in the next chapter I will declare.

¶ How the Emperour went into the fielde with the Pagan, and of all that happened in the battaile betweene them. Chap. 22.



When the quæne came where the Emperour was, ſhée tolde him all that had happened in the battaile, as I haue béfore ſaide, of the which the Emperour receiued no griefe, but rather he was very well content therwith, yet not ſhewing any ſigne thereof vnto the Quæne, hée ſaide. Ladie take no griefe at this which is paſt and gone, for that God will vndoubtedly prouide that which ſhall bée requiſite for thy defence. Commaund that I may be prouided of very good and ſtrong armour, for that I haue ſo great a confidence in my God to abate the great pride of this Pagan. This ſhall be done with a verie good will anſwered the Quæne, for I will giue thée ſuch that no ſtrength ſhall be able to pearce it, the which did belong vnto the king my father, and ſtraight wayes at the houre appointed, ſhée commanded them to be brought, the which were of the coulour of verie fine Rubie, all to bée ſpangled with verie delicate and gliſtering ſtars of gold, and all the graunges were garniſhed with rich orientall pearles, wrought with great ſubtiltie. The ſhield was of the ſame coulour, and the fielde therof was a mightie great ſtar which couered all ý whole ſhield, they were ſuch that no prince or Lord euer had ý like.

The Emperour when he saw them he would straight of his owne good will haue armed himselfe & haue gone out into the field but the quæne would not consent vnto it, but they passed that night together with great ioy & pleasure, which was so much, that I dare not hære with my pen declare it, but of this I am sure, that when the Quæne departed from the emperour she remained with child, as hæreafter you shal heare. So when the morning was come, the emperour arose vp with great desire to goe out to the battaile, and straight waies there were called certaine knights onely for to arme him with those rich armes, and the faire Quæne Garrofilea did helpe to arme him, & when hé was armed he went out of the pallaice, & at the fote of the staires he found a verye faire & strong horse, who was very richly barbed and well shod, and calling for a horne he hung it about his necke, and toke his leaue of the quæne, and so without putting his fot into the stirrope he leaped vpon his mightie horse, and then béeing accompanied with a company of noble Knightes, he went out of the Citie, not without great griefe vnto thē all, which praied earnestly for his returne. And when he was in the field wheras he might be heard, he lifted vp the visour of his helme and set the horne vnto his mouth, and began to make a fearefull sound, and after that he had done with a high voyce hee said. Thou fierce Pagan that with so great ease lyest in thy bedde, and boastest thy selfe that there is none in the world that can bring downe thy proud stomack, take vnto thee thy armour, and do thy best to driue me out of the field, for I doubt not but before thou doe it, thou shalt finde in me some resistance: and with this he held his peace. This stout Pagan which at that time was at his rest, was sore troubled, and could not imagine who that knight might be, which was so arrogant, that he durst alone call him into the fielde, and desiring to know what hæ was that was so hardie, hæ caused to bæ brought before him the Earle of Mondeli, & the Earles sonne of Modique, and with an irefull voice said. Did you heare with what great pride that knight hath spoken and challenged me. The Earles answered, yea,

then

then hée saide: Who haue you in Tinacria that is so hard to call mée to battaile with such vppropbrious wordes, I cannot beléeue that he is of this kingdome, but if hée bée, it séemeth he should be some vaineglorious fole and one of little vnderstanding. The Earle of Modique answered, I doe sweare vnto thée. O king by the soueraigne Gods, that I am in the same doubt: but it may be that it is a knight which a few daies past being verie ill intreated by the tempests of the sea was driuen into this Iland, and béeing without armour he made such a battaile with certaine knights, & with so great furie and strength, but being as I haue said, without armour, hee did meruailous & heroycall feats of armes, where he slew many knights, and amongst them hée slew a brother which I had, and it may be, that the Quéene béeing desirous of his liberty, hath giuen this enterprise vnto him, and therfore I thinke that this is he that hath spoken these arrogant wordes. Well, let it be who it shall be, replied the king, for héere I doe sweare vnto thée by Mahomet that I will make him déerely to pay this his follie and hardinesse, and speaking this he heard him sound his horne againe with much more furie then at the first, and said.

O vile Pagan coward and of an euill nation, thou king of little estimation, what makest thou? wherfore dost thou tarry? why commest thou not out to take reuengment of these my wordes? dispatch and come forth or else vnderstand that I will come and séeke thée in what place so euer thou abidest: O mightie and vnmercifull wrath, how is it that thou hast so much power ouer this proude African, who with a hoarse voice and terrible wordes called for his armour, and because it was not brought him straight way, he did entreat them all very ill which were nigh him, so ý there was not one of all his knights but at ý time would haue ben glad to haue ben far from ý place wher the king was: when he was armed he leaped vpon his horse, & with a reasonable pace he pricked towards the place whereas the Emperour abode, who when he saw him come he threw his horne from him, and let fall the visour of his healme, and toke a great

ſpeare in his hande, wherewith hée flouriſhed meruailous ſtrongly about his head. This Mauritanian was ſo inflamed with wrath, that he had no minde to ſhew any agilitie with his ſpeare, but rather with a wrathfull voice hée ſaide: I do beléeue that with the flouriſhing of thy ſpeare & braueneſſe of thy horſe thou thinkeſt to ſcarre mée, hauing ſpoken words that could not be vttered but by ſome fooliſh man, or by ſome knight of little eſtimation, or by ſome one that is enimie vnto Mahomet. The Emperour anſwered: ſo much thou maiſt ſay, that thou maiſt happen vppon the truth, and héere I giue thée to vnderſtand, that I am a Chriſtian, and ſeruant vnto my Lord Ieſu Chriſt, and enimie vnto Mahomet, and much more vnto thée, therfore make thy ſelfe redy to the battaile, and take that part of the field which pleaſeth thée, & I will make thée to know what my Speare can dwe. The furie of the Pagan was ſuch, that he was almoſt without all feeling, yet he comforted himſelfe in thinking to make reuengement of the wordes which hée had ſaide, and had a great deſire to know who that knight was which with ſo great hardineſſe and courage did ſpeake vnto him, and hée aſked it of him, ſaying: Knight, héere I dw giue thée licence to ſpeake all that thou wilt, for that thou art now in place wher none can deliuer thée from my hands but onelye Mahomet, neuertheleſſe I do deſire thée by that God in whom thou ſayſt thou dwſt beléeue, and that ſo truely & vehemently thou dwſt ſerue, that thou tell mée who thou art, whereby I may know what he was that hath ben ſo arrogant againſt mée. Thou haſt ſo coniured mée (anſwered the Emperour) that I cannot let but tell thée. Thou ſhalt therefore vnderſtand ỳ I am the Emperour Trebatio of Greece, father vnto thoſe cléere lights of al knighthood, the knight of ỳ Sun, & that valiant Roſicleer, which by another name is called ỳ knight of Cupide, if at any time thou haſt heard any talke of them. When the Pagan heard that it was hée, whoſe fame was ſo much ſpoken of in all the world, and no leſſe feared, without any more tarrying, hée defied him to mortall battaile, and without any more wordes they tourned their horſes,

and

and not ſtayeng for the ſound of trumpets, they pricked the with their ſpurs, and with great violence in the midſt of their courſe, they brake their ſpeares ſo eaſilye, as though they had bẽ made of Canes, and neither of them receiued any harme, nor once mœued out of the ſaddle, and tourning their horſes about, they laid hand on their ſwords. The Emperour of Greece did firſt ſtrike the Pagan king ſo terrible a blow, that he threw downe to the groũd a very rich mirrour which was vpon the creſt of his helme, hauing in it, the Image of Mahomet, and it was with ſuch ſtrength, that it made his teeth chatter in his head. At this blow the Pagan did not meruaile, but rather gratified his courteſie in the lyke ſort, but the Emperour dyd beare it off with his ſhield, and it cut off one corner thereof, and deſcended vpon his helme, with ſuch force, that it made him bow his head. At the which the auncient warriour, toke ſo great aunger and wrath, that throwing his ſhield to the ground, hee toke his ſword in both his hands, and ſtroke ſuch a blow at his aduerſarie, that if it had not bẽne that he dib defend it very well with his ſheld, with that one blow he had finiſhed the battayle: but yet his ſhield was cut in two pẽces, and the blow glaunced from his ſhoulder downewards, & lighted vppon the Pagans knée, whereas it made a wound, for that the bloud gaue teſtemonie thereof. This fierce Pœre, when he ſaw his owne blood, with great fury he threw frõ him the reſt of the ſhield that did remaine in his hand, and ſtroke ſuch a cruell blow at this heroycall Emperour vpon his helme, that it gaue a great and merualious ſound thorough al the plaines and fields. The ſurmounted fury wher with this tirrible blow was diſcharged, was the occaſion, that hée without any féeling fell downe vppon the horſe necke with all his body. When the pagan ſaw him in this caſe, hée procured to giue him another blow, but by reaſon of the Emperours ſtoping, hée pricked his horſe with his ſpurs, and with a little remembraunce he held himſelfe faſt for not falling. His horſe with great lightneſſe lept on the one ſide, whereby this valiant Trebatio was cleare of that

blow. And when hée ſaw himſelfe ſo cuill intreated by that Pagan, he recouered againe his ſwoꝛd, and claſping it faſt in his fiſt, he diſcharged vpon the Moꝛe ſo ſtrong and tirrible a blow, that hée made him without all remembꝛance to fall backwards vpon the hoꝛſe cruppe, & there iſſued out of his helme very much bloud, which pꝛoceéded out of his mouth and noſe, & ſeéing him in this traunce, hée ſaid, I ſweare by God, King, that thou haſt ſmall remembꝛance, but tarrie a little, and I will make thée remember thy ſelfe better, and giuing a turne vnto his hoꝛſe, thinking to cut of the Pagans head, his tourning was with ſuch great haſt, that his hoꝛſe doubled in ſuch ſoꝛt, that he fel to the ground with the Emperour on his backe, neuertheleſſe with great lightnes, with out putting his foote into the ſtirrop, he lept into the ſaddle againe. But yet it could not bée ſo quickly done, but ỹ this ſtrong Mauritanian was come to himſelfe, and ſeéing that he was all bebathed in bloꝛd, hée knew ỹ he had bene in great perill. Then with wonderfull courage hée recouered his ſwoꝛd, and ſettled himſelfe in his ſaddle, and with furious blowes hée bégan to ſtrike, ſo that at euery blow, it ſeémed his ſtrength dyd ſtill increaſe, which indéede was true: foꝛ the moꝛe his wꝛath & yꝛe kindeled, the moꝛe his fiercenéſſe and ſtrength increaſed, in ſuch ſoꝛt, that euery blow which hée ſtroke, was almoſt ſufficient to ouerthꝛow a great Tower. All theſe feates the Quéene dyd behold from a tower which was in the Pallaice, greatly fearing the ſucceſſe of this terrible battaile, and pꝛaying with all hir hart vnto hir Gods foꝛ the Emperours victoꝛie. This furious Pagan was halfe aſhamed, foꝛ that he could not bꝛing the Emperour into ſubiection, although his terrible blowes dydde double increaſe, & ſeéing hée could not, hée begun to exclaime againſt his Gods and ſayde. Oh Mahomet, where is now all thy power & ſtrength? how is it that thou doſt conſent that one onely Chꝛiſtian ſhold make ſo great defence, & indure ſo long. The Emperour which heard all that the Moꝛe had ſaid, with a wꝛathfull and angrie voice, aunſwered. O thou wꝛetched infidell, how greatly art thou deceiued, in

thincking

thinking that he which hath no power to help himselfe, can help thee and deliuer thee out of my hands. I beleeue with the assistance of my God, before that night doe come, to hew thee all in peeces by the strength of my armes, & herewith he neuer ceased to strike him with so much fury that many times he was without any feeling. Thus they continued foure houres without any resting of themselues, but wounding one another. Whē this furious pagan saw, that he could not bring to passe his pretence, but that he was in great perill to bee ouercome, hee stroke such a blow at the Emperour, that with the mightie strength wherewith it was stroken, hee made him to lose his remembraunce, and forced him to stoope vnto the horse necke, and after that, hee stroke his second blow vpon his backe, that the great noise that it made, was the occasion that the Emperour came againe to himselfe. And hee was not scarce setled in his saddle, when he lift vp his sword, intending to strike the Moore a mightie and terrible blow: the which when this African beheld, & knew the great strength wherwith it came, with meruailous policie hee put it aside, and made him to lose his blow, & at the same time flourishing with his sword, he discharged such an ouerthwart blow vpon his throte, that if the harnesse had not ben forced by Magicall art, the Emperour had ben in great perill. Oh what great anger and fury dyd this mighty Trebatio feele, to see himselfe so ill intreated by that furious Moore, and therwith hee raised himselfe vp in his stirrops, and strake at him in such great hast, and with so great strength, that it seemed that thē the battaile was but new begun. But whē this Mauritanian saw that the Emperour had not lost any of his strength, but rather that it was more increased, with a terrible and scarefull voyce hee sayde.

O Mahomet, what is this? for that I see, that if all the strength of Mars were heere together, it were not sufficient to make resistaunce against this Knight: and in saying these words, hee dyd procure to offend his aduersarye, with tirrible and furious blowes.

Amongst

Amongst them all, this Mauritanian chaunced one vpon the Emperors helme, that he made him to gnash his teeth, wher with without any remembraunce, he fell vpon ỹ horse crupper: in such sort, that the horse being scarred with the blow began to run, and carried the Emperour in that traunce, a good while about the field. The Moze had well thought at that time ỹ he had finished his worke, and with great shouts & thriks he followed him, but all his thought was in vaine. For ỹ the Emperour recouered & setled himselfe in his saddell, and when he saw himselfe so ill intreated, ther was neuer Tiger of Hircania, nor any other wilde beast so furious as he was at this time, with his great anger. Yea, hee was so vexed with himselfe, that with the madnesse thereof, hee crushed his teeth together, and tourning his horse about a great deale lighter, then at any other time, hee firmed well his sworde in his hand, and lifting vp his mightie & strong arme, went whereas this Morisco king was, who in ỹ like sort came towards him, at that time the Emperour neither remembred life nor death, nor any other thing, but to take reuengment on his enemie, procuring to bring him to cruell death, and raising himselfe vp a good span in his saddle, beeing firmed in his stirrops, hee strake such a blowe, that at the fall of his mightie cutting sword, the sparkles of fire flew into the aire, and it lighted on the Pagans healme, so that all the strength thereof did little profite him, but he cut his head and all downe to his stomacke, that this pagan fell dead to the ground, the which being seene by his knights they gaue a meruailous and lamentable shout and cry, and without vsing any more curtesie, they altogether put their speares in their rests, and went against this strong warriour, all on horse backe, but heere the mirrour of all knighthood did abide their comming with his accustomed courage, & hartial these Moores made their encounter on him together, & many of thē brake their speares, but for all that he moued no more then if they had runne against a tower. The Emperour seeing their villany, begun to reuile them wt shamefull words, and retourning towards them, he made them to

runne

runne away lyke vyle cowards. Unhappie was hée that hée stroke, although it were but with halfe a blow, for it made him that he had final minde to returne againe, but by reaſō that they were very ſorrowfull and angrie for the loſſe of their king, many of thē dyd ſtrike at him on euery ſide, procuring to defend themſelues, & not to come nigh his terrible blowes. The Emperour then remembring that if he did not procure to come whereas the priſoners wer to ſet them at libertie, that it were poſſible ý they would intreat them euill. Wherfore he put himſelfe among the thickeſt of his enimies, wounding and killing all that he found in his way, & all that he could ouertake, although his armour were as hard as Diamonds, yet he could not eſcape from the death ſo in this ſort in ſpite of all the pagans he came vnto ý kings tent, and ſeeing that there ioyned together much people to make reſiſtance at the entering, it gaue him the more deſire to enter into the tent, not knowing ý the Tinacrians were there priſoners. The Mauritanians with all theyr powers they had mad reſiſtance, but their ſtrength dyd little auaile them, for in ſpite of them all the Emperour went into the Tent, whereas he met with the Earle of Modique, and the Earle of Modeli, who were put there in priſon. At this preſent time Don Rubion of Tinacria when hée ſaw that the Moore of Africa was ouercome, and the great villany of his knights, hée made great haſt to goe out of the Citie, & with eight hundred knights, all very well armed, they preſſed on their enimies with ſo great force, that they made them loke better about them, then before that time they did. When the Emperour ſaw the diligence of this knight Rubion, he procured to ſet the priſoners at libertie, the which thing beeing done, hée ſayde vnto the Earles ſonne of Modique. Gentle knight, this ſuccour doe you receiue & your honourable father, in recōpence of the great griefe which I cauſed you to receiue, & without ſpeaking any more words hée returned vnto the battaile which was very much increaſed, but when hée came amongſt thē it was quickly brought to an end, for by reaſon that they had no gouernour to gouerne them, and

that

that the fury of ꝑ Greeke was not to be suffered, they durst not abide, but with great shame they bægan to run away. Then those of Tinacria dyd follow them till they came to the sea side, killing and wounding all that euer they could come by. So when the Emperour saw that all this conflict was brought to a good ende, & that the valyant Rubio was by him, hæ called him vnto him & saide. My friend, goe and tell your Mistres the Quæne, that I request hir to pardon mée, for that I dw not retourne againe into hir Citie, for I was so ill receiued the first time, that I haue no will to retourne the second. And more, I desire hir of my part, that she dw intreate better, & giue better intertainment vnto such knights as I am, then she gaue vnto me, least shæ get vnto hir selfe the name of a wrathfull Quæne, and be accounted as one subiect vnto hir owne opinion: & of all other things, if any thing dwe chaunce, let hir thanke none but hir selfe, for that she hath bæn the onely couse therof. And moreouer, I do desire hir not to trouble hir self in sending to sæke me, for that I say, not hir power alone, but all the power in Africa is not sufficient to retourne mæ agayne into so great straights, as once shæ had mæ in. And so without any more speaking he spurred his horse, and rode a reasonable pace towards the sea side, which was not far from that place, and when hæ came thether, hæ sought to sæ if hæ could finde by chance any bark or galley, to carry him whether he would, with his good will or else by force. Hæ had not gone farre, when that hæ saw a verie fayre and great barke at the sea side, hard abord the shoare. The Emperour entered into it to sæ if there were any Marriners: his horse which was hard by him, without bæing constrained by the Emperour, very lightly leapt into the bark. Hæ was not so sone within, when that the Barke bægan to make way, in such sort, that in a small time they were very far at sea. At ꝑ which the Emperour was greatly amazed: but ther was a voice, which dyd satisfie him, that sayde: Mightie Trebatio, Lyrgandeo doth gouerne thee: at which the Emperour was very ioyfull.

So

So he put his horse in a place by himself in the bark, whereas hée found sufficient of all things nædfull. Likewyse hée found all that was conuenient for his owne person, which was ready vpon a table in very good order, all kinde of dressed meates: and bæing set downe to eate, he was serued so bountifully, and with so great diligence and care, as though he had bæne in Greece. In this sort ỳ Emperour went sayling eight daies, in ỳ end of which he discouered land, which had belonging vnto it, a faire hauen or port, & nigh vnto it, a very faire and great Citie. The barke went straight into the hauen, and brought hir selfe to the shore. Hære wée will leaue the Emperour in his barke in the hauen, & will tell you of the great lamentation that the fayre Garofilea made for that the Emperour departed in such sort.

¶ How the fayre Queene Garrofilea made great lamentation for the departure of the Emperour, and how at their last beeing together, shee remained with childe by the Emperour Trebatio. Cap. 23.

After that all the Knights of Trebatio had ioyned themselues together, and had made an ende of theyr battaile and trauaile, they repaired vnto the Citie with great ioy and gladnesse for theyr good successe. Rubio of Ysela went to declare vnto the Quæne his message ỳ the Emperour had commanded him: at which, the Quæne was so troubled, that she could not in any wise dissemble it, but in a great sound straight way she fell downe as though she had bæn dead. This couragious knight when hée saw hir in this trance, toke hir vp in his armes, & carried hir vnto hir Serado, or seate: and straight way whē the Ladies heard the noyse, they all came forth to sæ what the matter was, & when they saw their Quæne in that trance, they began to vse all meanes and remedies til such time as she came againe vnto hir remēbrance. And although it was

with

with great trouble the quæne lifted vp hir eies, & ſæing that ſhæ was compaſſed about with Ladies and others, ſhæ ſhut hir eyes agayne, & gaue a great ſigh which came from the bottome of hir hart, and in this ſort ſhæ remayned a great while, and hir Ladies and damoſells ſæing that ſhe was ſo troubled, determined to vncloath hir & to carrie hir to hir bed. Then ſhe made ſignes with hir hands that they ſhould depart and leaue hir all alone, whoſe commandement they ſtraight waies obeyed, not without great ſorrow of all thē that did bæholde hir, for that the quæne was meruailouſly well beloued of hir ſubiects. There was not one that could vnderſtand the cauſe of this ſodain euil, but onely the earle of Modique, who diſcrætly did imagine what it might be, who kept it cloſe to himſelfe ỹ time, vntil ſuch time as time & the matter it ſelfe ſhuld declare, whether his imagination or thought ſhould fall out true or no. This afflicted quæne whē ſhe ſaw that ſhe was alone, began to exclaime againſt
„ hir fortune, putting forth theſe ſorrowfull reaſons. When
„ wilt thou be content thou peruerſe enimie, and without al
„ reaſon. Thou which haſt warped ſuch ſtraunge webbes in
„ this kingdome. Thou gaueſt me into my power the Græke
„ Emperour very pore, and without all comfort of thæ, and
„ abſent from all his Empire. This thou didſt, for that with
„ his ſight I ſhould be wounded with the cruell dart of loue,
„ that without all remedie of any comfort, I moſt vnfortu-
„ nate damoſell ſhould bæ conſtrained to ſet my lyfe to ſale,
„ and to ſell my honour as it were with the common cryer,
„ compeiling mæ to do vnto my ſelfe that, which I onely did,
„ being made blinde by him, which would ỹ all others were
„ as blinde as he himſelfe is. And although my life wer ſet at
„ libertie, by him which without any wepon bæreaued mæ
„ therof, yet am I not at ſo much liberty nor ſo fræ, but that
„ whereſoeuer hæ goeth my heart doth follow him. Woe is
„ me for my virginity (which my parents gaue me ſuch great
„ charge to haue a reſpect vnto) ỹ it hath bæne ſo euill kept,
„ and ſo lightly regarded mæ. I will ſo chaſtiſe my ſelfe for
„ thus forgetting of my ſelfe, & bæ ſo reuenged for the little

regard

regard that I haue had of my honour, that it shall be an ex- »
ample to all others which be of high estate: Oh miserable »
Queene, Oh vnhappie Lady, thy speach is too too foolish: for al »
though this thy desperate hand should pull out the despised »
heart of my miserable and afflicted body, yet shouldest not »
thou make satisfaction of ỳ dishonour which thou hast com »
mitted against thy selfe: Oh cruell death why dost thou not »
with thy sodayne furye set at libertye (mee most vnfortu- »
nate) from these grieuous paines: Oh Emperour of Greece, »
these loving and amorous wordes which thou speakest vnto »
me, I would they had neuer ben spoken: O false and decei- »
uing Lorde, thou shouldest haue suffered mee to haue tasted »
death, when with so great good will myne owne hand would »
haue ministred it to mee, & not now to cause mee to indure »
a thousãd deaths, only by thy departure. With these & other »
lyke lamentations this afflycted Lady passed away ỳ time,
till at last she found hir selfe to be quick with chylde, at the
which she receyued double payne, for that it was impossible
to couer or hide it, & seeing hir self in this case, lyke a womã
hated & abhorred, she determined to discouer hir selfe vnto
her subiects publikely, and to deliuer hir body vnto them to
sacrifice it vnto their Gods, & with this determination one
day she caused certaine of the nobles to be called before hir,
who straight way came at hir commaundement. Amongest
the rest there came the Earle of Modique and his sonne, &
the Earle of Mondeli, & the valiant Rubio, and many other
knights and Gentlemen of honour, when that the Queene
saw them altogether about hir, couering hir selfe with a
rich roabe, shee sate vp in hir bedde, being so leane, that all
them that saw hir had great compassion, being all set round
about the bed, and keeping silence, she said. Our Gods would »
make vs so subiect vnto time, that onely they doe not bring »
vs vnder their malitious yoake, but also altogether submit »
vs vnder their hands, to the end that they may liberally do »
whatsoeuer it pleaseth them, and as their malyce is more »
then their vertue, hauing vs so yelded at their commaunde- »
ment, they owe intreate vs lyke vnto publike slaues. And »

" so much honour is obteyned by him which is altogether vn-
" fortunate, as may be gotten by any kinde of worthinesse. Oh
" what base & vile thinges doe they cause them to doe whom
" they get vnder theyr winges, if it were lawfull for mee to
" speake, it I might tell you many examples of them of the
" olde time, where as fortune vsing hir accustomed deedes, did
" get vnto hir selfe many & diuers names according vnto hir
" strange effects. Some called hir Fortune, venture, or chance,
" some honoured hir as a Goddesse for hir liberalitie, others
" despised hir as a diuell for hir mutabilitie: But what shall
" I say to you of hir (my good friends) for þ I cannot tell by
" what tearmes to name my selfe neither doe I know whe-
" ther she were the beginning of all my euill, or that blinde
" Cupide, who hath so cruelly handled me: well, which of them
" so euer it was, they caused mee to put my hart into the po-
" wer of another, onely for the remedie of this my Countrye,
" for whose weale (alas) I haue lost the libertye of my heart,
" with all my wonted ioy, and now indure perpetuall paine,
" and an euer pining death: I haue lost my honour and reco-
" uered shame and infamie. To conclude, I haue lost the liber-
" tie of a Queene, & remaine in continuall captiuitie, and yet
" of all this, I my selfe am onely in fault. Therefore without
" making any excuse, heere I do surrender my selfe into your
" powers, for that you may as an euill Queene doe sacrifice
" with me, as also that which I haue in my womb. For now
" my friends you shall vnderstand that the knight who with
" his mightye & strong arme slew Bramarando, was the Em-
" perour Trebatio, father vnto him whom you now honour
" as a God. This is he that robbed me of me honor, but with
" my good will (I must confesse) and left me for a testimony of
" this my euill deede, bigge with child. And with this she made
an ende of hir lamentable speech, and without anye more
strength to sit vp shee fell downe againe in hir bedde. So
when these Earles and noble Knightes that were present
vnderstode all that the Queene had saide vnto them, they
were all of them greatly amazed and chaunged their co-
lours loking one vpon another without speaking any word,

but

but printing in their hartes the fault done by their quæne, yet not without consideration that there remained fruit of that surmounted træ. euen that Grecian, which gaue vnto them great ioy and mirth, in such sort, that this worthye fame had in them more force then the blot, that their quæne and Ladye had receiued in hir honour. And with this ioy the Earle of Modique rose vp, and aunswered for all that were present, saying. Souereigne Ladie, there is not one of vs that can denie but that there was a fault, and that you are worthye of blame for committing this fact, not respecting your royall estate, for y which we cannot but receiue great griefe in our hearts, neither can wæ denye but that in reseruing the fruit of him which hath bæne the occasion of this dishonour, will bring vnto vs a particuler ioye, and cause great contentment vnto all your subiects, so that wæ shall easily forget the losse of your honour and honourable virginitye: Therefore wayeng equally the fault with the profit which shall redound vnto all Tinacria, in recouering such a successour, wæ doe finde that thou art worthye of no payne, therfore soueraigne Lady looke not vpon the errour, for that verily it was so ordained by the Gods, that at that instaunt and without looking for this Greeke Emperour came for the defence of our kingdome, and for thy reskuing, and hath left vs this good successour which we hope shall bæ deliuered out of thy wombe, who shall bæ a defender of these thy kingdomes, and a maintainer of vs thy subiects. And hære wæ do desire thæ to put away all these imaginations & griefes from thy heart, and to forget it, and renue thy former ioye and pleasure, in making sacrifices vnto the Gods, that they may giue strength to thy person, whereby thou mayst haue good deliueraunce of that which thou goest with, which vnto vs will bæ most acceptable. Great was the ioy which the Quæne receiued at these comfortable wordes which hir subiectes hadde spoken, and giuing them great thankes thæ requested them to depart till such time as thæ should bæ brought to bedde. So the time bæing nære approached, thee was deliuered of a very fayre sonne, and likewise of

a daughter of a wonderfull beautie, for the which ther was made great ioy throughout all the kingdome, & they called the formes name Polifebo, & the other young infant Rosalaira. The great beautie and fairenesse that was in these two infants, was such, that in all the kingdome they estemed thē for diuine creatures, they were nourished and brought vp with great care and honour: but for all this, the quæne conceyued in hir hart a mervailous hatred against the Emperour, and many times she would goe vp into a towre which was towards the sea, to see if that she looking towardes the parts of Grecia, might receiue any comfort to take any pleasure, but all was in vaine, for ỳ greatest pleasure & comfort ỳ she receiued was, to see these infants to be children vnto such a Father, and indowed with such surpassing beauty, & sometimes she would sit and talk to them, saying: Oh figures of him, who without all pittie wounded my heart, & left me cōfortlesse with the greatest cruelties that euer woman was left withall by any knight or Gentleman: how is it possible ỳ I haue the force to bring vp children of that Father, who hath bereaued me of my liberty: Oh souereigne Gods, that with your powers haue sowed in this vnhappie land, the offspring of that vnmercifull Trebatio, graunt that I may establish in my hart so much anger, that it may cause me to put from me the loue of that adulterous father: Oh children born for a farther griefe, hære I do desire the mightie Gods that your beautie may haue so much force & power, that with the beames therof you may take reuengement of the dishonour of your mother, & thou my daughter borne in the dishonor of thy generation, by the losse of my virginity, hære I do sweare vnto ỳ celestiall Iupiter, ỳ thy beauty shall not be inioyed by any, but by him ỳ shal giue thæ in dowry the head of thy disloyal father, ỳ by it I may recouer part of my former glory. These & other like wordes spake this afflicted quæne, & euen as she had sworne she put in practise, publishing it through al hir kingdome, & giuing information of the effect of hir pretēded purpose, & sent messegers into Africa & Asia cōcerning ỳ same, all which she did contrary to the will of hir subiects.

And

And because that they saw hir so feruent in hir anger, wher to shæ was more prone, by desire of reuengement, then vnto any reason, they did all determine to content themselues, and she for to giue a better courage vnto them which knew hir, and vnto all such as would prosecute this enterprise, shæ gaue diuerse deuices, so that they which did presume hærein were not few in number, but very many and right valiant knights, as hærafter I will declare vnto you. So some there were which did offer themselues for the fayrenesse of the mother, before that hir daughters beauty should come to any perfectnesse, and other some for the loue of the daughter, of which there were verie manye that lost theyr honours in Grecia, and sundry lost theyr liues, and he which first did offer himselfe in this enterprise was ỳ king of the Garamantes, who by hearing reporte of hir great beautye, was in loue with hir. And when he heard the message which was brought from the quæne by hir Embassadours, straight way without giuing the Quæne to vnderstand thereof, hæ went into Grecia, trusting onely in his great strength, of whom when time serueth wæ will speake. And so it fell out, that neither time nor any other thing was sufficient to remoue from the Quæne this great desire shæ had to sæke reuengement, but euerie daye, hir anger did more increase, neyther was the beauty of his children of so much force, as to mollifie the furie of hir stomacke, although when they were at fiue yeares of age, they were of so excellent beauty, that the Tinacrians beleeued that they were the children of some of the Gods, & not of any humaine creature, their bodies and their beauties were so conformable, for all they which did sée the young Prince, would haue iudged him to haue double the yeares that he had, and in his body and face he did so much resemble his brother the knight of the Sun, that it was a thing to be merualled at. Of ỳ young princesse Lyrgandeo would not make any description, for that he said, that whatsoeuer thing should be spoken of hir, his pen were not sufficient to vtter the worthinesse of hir beautye, so this quæne was euer firme in this hir thought, & for to giue them

better to vnderſtand, ſhe commaunded to renue the ſignes & tokens, and more, that they ſhould carrie hir picture into all parts, the which was the occaſion that the court of ỹ quæne of Tinacria was meruailouſly increaſed in honour, with ſo many princes and knights which repaired thether to ſee this Damſell. When the quæne ſaw that hir kingdome was ſo honourably nobled more then at other times, ſhe commaunded that vpon the gates of hir royall pallace ſhould be placed a title, which was conteined in theſe words following.

Attempt not any either Prince or King,
  Within Tinacria Court his loue to ſhew:
Except that hee doe firſt in dowrie bring
  Trebatios head, our moſt deteſted foe.
The faithleſſe father of this Damſell braue,
  That reſtleſſe griefe to mee hir mother gaue.

And when all this was finiſhed, ſhe ſtraight way diſpatched a meſſenger to Grecia, with a letter vnto the Emperour, the which ſhe ſent by a damſel that was very truſtie & one ỹ ſhe loued well, whereas now I will leaue them till time doo ſerue for to tell you of the knight of the Sun. But firſt for ỹ it is neceſſary to this our hiſtory, we will declare what Brufaldoro ſaid, when hee knew of the death of Bramarando his brother, king of Mauritania, who beeing certified by them ỹ eſcaped aliue out of the hands of the Tinacrians, and wer very ſorrowfull for the loſſe of their Lord and king, and landing in their owne country they went and carried the newes vnto Brufaldoro, the which when hæ heard, hæ felt in himſelfe ſo great paine & ſorrow, that in a ſound he leaned himſelf vnto a chaire becauſe he would not fall, he was ſo farre beſide himſelfe, in which trance he did not long indure, but came againe to his remembraunce, and with a terrible and fearefull voice hæ ſaide: Is it of truth that my brother is dead, and the meſſengers aunſwered and ſayde, that it was too true. Oh traitours, aunſwered this fierce young man, how durſt you come before mæ, except firſt you had taken re-

uenge-

uengement of his death. Then they anſwered and ſayd. Yée ỹ did kill him, is not a man ſo ſone to take reuengement of, for that after that wée were cléere of his diueliſh furie, it was tolde vs that he was a chriſtian and the Emperour of Grecia, called Trebatio. Oh vile people, anſwered the Pagan, yet will you reply againſt my words, get you out of my ſight, if it were not but that I am letted for lacke of the order of knighthood, I would with my owne handes teare you all to péeces. Oh falſe Mahomet, thou lyer, periured, & without all faith, is this the honour that my brother ſhould haue out of Tinacria: to be abated and ſlaine by one alone chriſtian, and in ſaying theſe wordes hée entered into a chamber, where hée had the Image of Mahomet all of golde, with twelue Angells on both ſides, this youth toke a heauie club and with both his handes hée ſtroke this poore God ſuch a blow vpon the head, that he made him to fall to the ground, and not reſting with this, he tourned againſt them that bare him companye, & ſtroke on them ſo many blowes, that in a thouſand péeces he made them fall to the ground, and ſayde. O thou falſe traitour, héere wil I giue thée thy paiment and reward for that which thou haſt done vnto my beloued brother. Héere I do forſake and deny thée, and all them that doe beléeue in thée, for that I will neither beléeue in thée nor ſerue thée, but if I did know the waye vnto the place, whereas the diuell hath thée, I would goe and ſéeke thée, to giue thée to vnderſtand that my furie is more then thy power. And when he had concluded with this, he went forth of the chamber, and with a terrible noiſe hée called for his armour, the which was ſtraight waye brought vnto him, and without tarrying to bée made Knight, he commaunded to arme him, with armour that was all white, & made by art Magick, thē he commanded a ſhip to be made ready & furniſhed, & entred into it, with intent to goe to Grecia and ther to aſke the order of knighthode of the Emperour, & when he had receiued it, to defie him to mortall battaile, but it chaunced not vnto him as he thought it would, for that the ſea with ſome of his accuſtomed torments carried him into the coaſt of France, &

by reaſon of his ſmall patience, once being a land he would not retourne to imbarke himſelfe in his ſhip, but remained with onely two lackeyes, and commaunded the veſſell to returne backe againe, and ſo went trauailing whether his fortune would carry him two dayes. The third day very early in the morning, hee heard a great ruſhing of armour amongſt a company of trees, & going towards the ſame noiſe, he ſaw a Knight of a very good proportion againſt a great number of other Knights, in a very fierce and vnreaſonable battaile: And for to tell you who it was, it is requiſite, that we begin another chapter, in the which I will declare the whole matter vnto you.

¶ How that the Knight of the Sunne would haue tarried for Tefereo, in the place whereas hee appointed him, and how he loſt himſelfe in a thick mountaine, and of all that happened vnto him after that. Cap. 24.

THe knight of the Sunne who was purpoſed to tarrie for Tefereo, whereas he appointed him, put himſelfe into the wildernes of Ardenia, with a reaſonable quicke pace: but becauſe of the great thickneſſe of trees & bulhes, being amongſt them: and againe, troubled with thoughts, wherewith his minde was occupied, hee loſt his way, and in ſuch ſort, that although hee turned his horſe euery way from one place to another, yet could he not finde any way, but rather did ſo intangle himſelf, that when the night came, he found himſelfe ſo far from the place wher as he thought to haue remained, that he was in doubt to recouer his waye and his company hee knew not when: for the which he receiued great griefe, which was the occaſion that he vſed very euill words againſt himſelfe. So being in this cholar, the night drew on, which conſtrained him to alight from his horſe, and ſate him downe vnder a greene tree, hauing ſet his horſe to feede in the greene graſſe, of the

which

which there was abundaunce at hande, and so in the best wise hæ could, hæ laid him downe vpon the ground to take some rest for a while: and towards his right hand he heard a great noyse of the running of water, and bæing very dry, hæ was constrayned to arise againe. And so he went fayling & following that pittering sound of water, vntill such time as he found a little fountaine of very faire and clær water, and by reason of the great drought that hæ had, without any moze tarrying, he knæled downe to drinke thereof, till such time as he had mittigated his great thirst, and remayned there a while to refresh himselfe, for that the place was very pleasant: so after a while, hæ returned vnto the place whereas he was bæfore, & layd himselfe downe to rest. Hæ had not remained there long, but he felt the water to begin to worke in him: For you shall vnderstand, that this was one of the fountaines of Marlin, which he made in that wildernesse, and brought the water, from the high mountayne of Olympo. But this fountaine whereof the Knight of the Sunne dyd drinke, was that of Disamore, or without loue. In such sort it dyd worke in him, that he did not onely lose and forget the loue which he had to Lindabrides, but also, if it had not bæne for the great force of matrimonye, and for the pawne that he receiued of Claridiana, hæ had lykewyse forgot hir, and had brought hir as far out of remembrance, as hæ did the Lady of Tartaria. And this water dyd not onely cause forgetfulnesse, but also it forced him to reprehende himselfe, sayeng. Oh fole without any vnderstanding that
„ so long hast had thy hart subiected vnto a Ladye, that is a
„ straunger vnto thy Religion, intreating thæ not as a man
„ that doth procæde from a high and noble generation: but
„ like the most baset and vilest wretch in all the world. Tell
„ me thou lost man, who hath bæne affectioned vnto a Moze
„ without faith, but onely thy selfe? Who wold haue left his
„ naturall wife, for to loue a straunger & Barbarian, but thou?
„ Who would giue so many sighes in vayne, but I most mi-
„ serable, giuing occasion of euerlasting death and damnati-
„ on vnto thy soule.
„

„ Oh baſe and groſe vnderſtanding, in what didſt thou ſet thy
„ loue? What beauty didſt thou ſée in hir, that thou wouldſt
„ follow hir, as one loſt for hir loue? What blindeneſſe hath
„ conſtrained thée, conſidering the great valour of the royall
„ Empreſſe, and with what liberalitie ſhe hath furrendred all
„ hir kingdomes, and hir owne perſon into thy hands. Theſe
& other like complaints hée made againſt himſelfe, without
taking any ſléepe or reſt, but was ſore troubled with this
thought, till ſuch time as the morning came, and that Phœ-
bus with his golden beames couered all the earth, then hée
toke his horſe with a more lighter hart, and cléerer of all
thoughts, then at the time hée came thether: for that he had
as cleane forgot Lindabrides, as though hée had neuer ſéene
hir. So all that day hée trauailed in that wilderneſſe, not
knowing which way to take: and had eaten nothing, ney-
ther had he any thing to eate, the which did trouble him ve-
ry much. So when night drew on, hée diſcouered a heard of
cattell, which were there féeding in the wilderneſſe, and de-
termined to go towards that place wheras the heard men
were, who receiued him very well. This knight did aſke of
them, if they had any thing to giue him to eate, for that hée
was very hungrie: the heard men bad him that hée ſhould
alight, & that they would giue him of ſuch as they had for
thēſelues. So hée alighted & dyd eate with a very good will,
and ſo good a ſtomacke, as one which had not his heart nor
minde occupied with the cares of loue, and there with thoſe
heard men he paſſed all that night, till it was morning. So
when it was day one of the heard men dyd bring him into
a very great & occupied way, to whom he gaue great thanks.
Then the knight toke that way forwards, which led him
towards Prouince, intending to ſée if he could méet with his
friend, and dyd determine to trauaile thereabouts, to ſée if
Fortune would bring him that way: hée had not trauailed
far, when that hée diſcouered another way, which dyd croſſe
ouerthwart the ſame way, in which hée was. And ſtudying
with himſelfe which waye to take, it was tolde him that

it was the way which led straight vnto Paris: of the which hée was very ioyefull, & remayned a while, thinking which way he might take for to finde Tefereo. And béing in this muse, he heard towards his right side a great rushing of armour and armed knights, and casting his head on the one side, hée saw that there was about ten knights which came running towards him with their speares very low, calling him traytor: as sone as the knight of the sunne saw them hée put downe the visor of his helme, and layde hand on his sword: and at the same time, hée beheld on the other side, as many moe knights armed, which made towardes him as ý other dyd. In the ende hée was compassed rounde about on euery side with forty knights, which all cryed out sayeng, kill the traytor, let the traytor dye, of the which the Prince dyd greatly meruaile. So altogether they set vpon him, & ran at him with their speares, and stroke him all at once, yet for all that, he mooued no more in his saddle, then if they had made their incounter against a strong Tower: but at the passing by, he stroke one of them vpon the visour of his helme, that he cut half his head a sunder, and he fell dead to the ground. All the rest retourned with their horses against the Prince, some with theyr swords in their hands, & other some, whose speares remayned whole, ran at him agayne, what on the one side and what on the other, they made a very fierce & strong incounter, as of those which were the whole choyce of them that were in the Citie, onely to kill him. When the Prince saw himselfe so inclosed on euery side, his wrath and anger bégan to kindle in him, insomuch that he toke his sword fast in his hand, & stroke such blows, that whosoeuer hée chaunced to hit, was eyther slayne or maymed.

At this present time arriued in those parts at the Sea side, as I haue told you, Brusaldoro: and this was the battayle, wherein hée saw so many knights agaynst one onely knight. This More dyd stand and béholde them, and was verye much amazed to sée the power of one knight, who brought so many as they were, into such great distres,

which

which made them to repent and were very ſorry that euer they began that enterpriſe, but by reaſon that they were all choſen Knights, they would not but aſſault him very fiercely, which was the occaſion of their farther harme & deſtruction, for that the Prince ire did ſo much increaſe, that it cauſed him to double his blowes, in ſuch ſort, that ſome he killed out right, and ſome hee wounded, that in a ſmal time he left not one vpon his horſe, but all brought vnto the ſtate that they could make no reſiſtaunce, and when the Prince ſaw himſelfe at more liberty hee demaunded what was the occaſion of this ſo ſodaine conflict, to one of thoſe Knights which was very ſore hurt, tolde him how that they were Knightes belonging to the Earle of Prouince, which lay in waite for him to be reuenged of ẏ death of his ſon, for that the whole circumſtance of ẏ battaile came vnto his knowledge. So the Prince left them, and would not ſpeake any word more vnto them, but his intent was to get him out of the Country, for that hee well vnderſtood that neither he nor Tefereo ſhould haue any good intertainment at theyr hands, and when hee would haue departed, there came vnto him Brufaldoro, and dyd ſalute him very curteouſly, the Prince dyd returne him his ſalutation, and had a great pleaſure to behold his good grace and gentilitie. So the Mauritanian began firſt to ſpeake and ſayd. Gentle and valiant knight, the firſt bone or gift that euer I dyd demaund ſince the tyme that I was borne, is this that I will aſke of thee, and the occaſion which doth driue mee to aſke it, is conſtrained by the great valour and proweſſe which I haue ſeene in thee, I ſure it is an eaſie thing on thy part to bee fulfilled, & therefore I do deſire thee to graunt mee my requeſt. The heroycall Grecian which had his eyes fixed vpon him, with great pleaſure ẏ hee receiued at his gentle diſpoſition, anſwered: As yet I neuer denyed any thing that was demaunded of mee, being iuſtly demaunded and in a iuſt cauſe, neither had I any reſpect whether it be eaſie to be done, or difficult, therfore gentle knight aſke whatſoeuer pleſeth thee, for if it ſtād with iuſtice and reaſon, that I may graunt it thee, I do promiſe

miſe thée to accõpliſh it in very ample maner, not onely one bon, but ſo many as ỹ wilt aſke of mée. That which I wil aſke thée, ſaid ỹ pagan, is not to put thy perſon in any peril, no, nor ỹ thou ſhalt moue thy horſe one foot out of the place where he ſtãdeth: but that thou wilt with thy valyant hand giue me ỹ order of knighthod, & arme me knight, the which thou maiſt doo, without any doubt or ſcrupuloſity. For hérs I doe ſweare vnto thée by my mighty thoughts, that I am a crowned King. This noble Greeke dyd accept his demãd, and aſked of him, if that hée had watched his armour. The Moore anſwered, I ſuppoſe I haue watched them inough, for that it is now eyghtéene dayes ſince I haue had them continuallye on my backe. And for mée there néedeth no ceremonyes: for that I am no Chriſtian, neyther Pagan, nor Moore, nor Iewe, nor Gentile, neyther doo I worſhip nor beléeue in God: For that the God of the Chriſtians, I take him for my enimy: and as for Mahomet, I know hée is little worth, & can doo leſſe: and the Gentiles haue for their Gods, ſtocks and ſtones: and as for the Iewes I hate them as baſe and vyle people. Therefore I doo neyther worſhip the one, nor béeléeue in the other: but onely follow my own proper appetite. The knight of the Sun could not refraine frõ laughter at his words, in ſéeing him to bée a man of ſo much liberty, and anſwered him, ſayeng. By God King, I doo ſweare vnto thée, that I haue ſéene few or none of thy Religion: but whatſoeuer thou art, I wil héere accompliſh thy deſire and requeſt. Then the Prince aſked him. Wilt thou bée a knight? The King anſwered, this I doo deſire, and ſéeke no other thing, and putting on his right ſpur, hée kiſſed him on the chéeke in token of honour, and taking a rich ſword, which a page of his carried with him, he ſtroke him a blow with it vpon his ſhoulder, and putting of it vp againe into his ſheath, hée hung it about his necke & ſayde, Now King, thy deſire is fulfilled, for ỹ thou art a Knight. With great good reaſon may it be ſayd, that in the fields of Prouince was giuen the order of Knighthood, vnto the moſt valyanteſt Prince in the world, and by the hands of the

beſt

best knight that euer was. The King was very glad to se
him made a knight, and gaue great thanks vnto the Prince
for the same, requesting him very earnestly that hee would
tell him his name, for that he might know at whose hands
he receiued the order of Knighthood: the which the Prince
with a good will declared. And when he knew that he was
come vnto the Emperour Trebatio, whom he accounted for
his mortall enemie, altering his voyce, hee sayd. Oh Maho-
met, thou vile God, & full of all treasons, thou hast not left
to persecute mee, euen vnto this present time: for thou hast
brought mee to receiue the order of knighthood, which was
the thing that I most desired, at the hands of him, which is
„ son vnto my mortall enemie. Wherefore I do say vnto thee va-
„ liant prince, that I would it had cost me my kingdome, that
„ I had not receiued knighthood at thy hand, for that thou art
„ son vnto the Emperour Trebatio the falsest traytour, that
„ euer hath been seene. The prince somewhat angry answe-
„ red him saying. King, it is not seemly in such as thou art, to
„ speake words which bee so false. It is very true, ỹ the Em-
„ perour is my father, & the mightiest Prince in the vniver-
„ sall world. And not as thou doest account him, a traytour.
„ For the which cause I do tell thee that thou dost falsly ly,
„ like the most vilest Pagan in all thy kingdome: and in the
„ defence thereof I wil driue thee out of the field, and depriue
„ thee of this order which I haue giuen thee, that thou shalt
„ not exercise it, by taking frõ thee thy life. This miserable
Pagan. who streight way was subiect vnto his fury, with
great alteration sayde. Oh wretched & vnfortunate knight,
„ dost thou think that I am one of those knights that wil be
„ tamed by the strength of thy arme, I wish thee not bee-
„ leeue it. For if thou dost proue my strength, thou shalt bee
„ sure to finde another manner of rigor and force, then thou
„ hast found in those, with whom thou hast got thy honour:
„ the prince, whose patience could not suffer such great pride,
„ but as wrathfull as a Lyon replyed. Thou proud Pagan,
„ arme thy head, and prepare thee to the battaile, for by God
„ I do sweare that I will doe my best to cut of such an ene-

mie

wife from the Emeperour my father. The Pagan, without any more replying caused his helme to bee laied on, & lands hande on his sworde. And the Prince likewise was readie to discharge his blowe, who raysing himselfe vp in his stirrops, stroke so strong a blow vpon the Pagans helme that the sound was heard a great way in the fields, and it inforced him whether hee would or not to make reuerence, & to hold downe his head being so astonished, that it seemed a great tower had fallen vpon him: and as hee would haue setteled himselfe againe in his saddle, hee strok him such another vpon his shield, that he droue it vnto his head, which made him to turne vp the white of his eyes with the great griefe which hee receiued: & to keepe himselfe vp from falling, both hee and his horse staggered on the one side, which made the Prince to lose many a blow, notwithstanding, he pressed on him so fast, that he had no time to tourne him to strike againe. This Moore was very much amazed at his great force and strength, and strake at the prince so furious and strong a blow, that he made him to lose his vnderstanding, and almost to stope with all his body vpon his horse neck. The prince came straight way to himselfe, and returned vnto the Moore with so much fury, striking such a blow vpon his shield, which although it seemed to be as hard as a Diamond, yet for all that, hee cut it in two peeces, and the blow descended vpon his sholder, with such a great waight, that the mountaines echoed with the noise: which made the Pagan for feare of falling to hold himselfe fast by the horse mane, very much marueling ỹ in one knight there shold bee so much strength. Then hee threw from him the rest of his shield which was left, and toke his broad sworde in both his hands, and droue such a blow at the Prince, that lighting vpon his visor, it depriued him of his sight, & forced him to fall vpon his horse neche without any remembrance. This stout Pagan would haue retourned to strike him again, but he could not: for ỹ his horse being skarred with the blow, lept on ỹ one side, which saued him frō it. Yet ỹ Pagan folowed to accomplish his wil, which hee could not do so spedely,

but

but that the prince dyd settle himselfe in his saddle, and recouered agayne his sword, & committing himselfe to God, as he alwaies was accustomed to dw, he sayd: Oh holy Jesu for thy names sake, ayde and help mæ. And therwith hée spurred his Cornerino with great fury, that hæ made him run lyke the winde, and in his course he sayd. Tarry, tarry, thou man without fayth, & doe not thinke that thy blowes hath done any other thing on me, but onely caused my yre & anger to increase the more, for to procure to bring thæ to thy ende, and to sende that excommunicated soule of thine to the diuell: & in the running of his horse, when hée drew nigh him, hæ threatened him with his sword, shaking of it in such sort, that he gaue him to vnderstand, that at the next blow hæ would make an ende of the battayle: and therewith hæ stroke him such a blow on his helme, that the blod ran out at the visor thereof, and hæ fell downe backwards vpon his horse crouper almost dead. The great force that the prince gaue to strike him, was the cause that hæ brake the lether of his right stirrop, & therwith hæ fell to the ground from his horse. But straight way with great lightnesse hée arose vp againe, & in the best manner hæ could hæ made it fast, and leaping into the saddle, hée retourned towards his enemy: who was with great trouble setling himselfe in his saddle, and loking vp to the heauen, hæ showed a pittifull countenaunce, as though hée had bæne very sore hurt, as in truth hæ was. And when hæ saw himselfe so ill intreated, and all his head bathed in blod, hée bæganne to cry out against Mahomet sayeng. Oh Mahomet, thou art the falsest god, amongst all the gods, cursed bæ all they that dwe trust in thæ, and bælæue in thæ. And of this bæ thou sure, that I dwe not belæue now in thæ, neither wil I so long as I liue: and this dwe I promise thæ, that whersoeuer I finde any Temple or Image of thine, to breake them downe with the strength of mine owne hand and furious arme. And with this anger hée lift vp his sword aloft, going towards the Prince, who was tarrying for him in the same manner, and with like fury. And both together, they discharged their beauis

heauie and terrible blowes, but the Moores blow was the first that lighted vpon the knight of the Sunnes healme, so that it made him to shake in his saddle, and he lacked but a little to fall downe, the great force and heauinesse of that blow was the occasion that the blow of the Prince could not be executed with the furie wherwith it was discharged, for that peraduenture if it had, he had not found himselfe so well as afterward hee did, for although it hit not right, being stroken with so much madnesse, yet it made him whether he would or no, to stoope with his head, and therwith he straight waies settled him, and seeing that the knight of the Sunne was still remaining in without anye saling, hee saide.

I do not determine to tarry any longer, for that as I do beleeue, thou art none other but ỹ God Mars (although thou hast saide that thou art a mortall man as I am,) and that thou art come downe to giue mee the order of Knighthode, and afterward to make me feele the strength of thy arme, and when hee hadde saide these woordes, hee called his Lackyes in great hast, and rode away with as much spede as possible might bee. At which time with the noise of the battaile came Tefereo, and as hee saw the Prince in that sort, and his enimie going away with so much hast, hee made no longer tarrying, but set the spurres vnto his horse, and with as great swiftnesse as hee could, hee followed after him. The Prince when hee came againe vnto himselfe, and could not see his enimie, was so kindeled with anger and wrath that the bloud ranne out at his eyes with very anger. The Mauritanian did verye well in not tarrying the fury of the Prince at that time, for with the wrath that hee had, harde Diamondes had not beene able to haue made anie resistaunce against him. Wherfore hee determined forthwith to follow after him, but that a Damsel which was by, put hir selfe before him and saide.

Gentle Knight, it is sufficient that Tefereo doeth followe him, wherefore venture not thy selfe a new in that wherein thou doest gette but verye little prowesse,

for hée that doth follow him, will handle him well inough, therefore come and follow me, for that there is other matters of greater importaunce which are tarrying for thée. The Prince when hæ heard theſe words beheld well the Damoſell that was talking with him, and straight waies hæ knew hir to bæ the Damoſell that hée and the Prince Eleno had found in the Barke, who after theſe speeches went onwards hir waye with great speede. The Prince at that time had not his hart ſo quieted within him, as to aſke hir any queſtions, but without saying any word hæ followed hir, till they came vnto the fielde whereas hæ ſaw the Barke wherein the Damoſell had come thether, into the which ſhe entered, and after hir followed the Knight of the Sunne, but when they were ſetteled within, the Barke mœued nothing at all, wherby they well vnderſtood y it tarried for more company whom hæ thought to be for his friend Tefereo, and as you bæfore heard, hæ with great furye on horſe back rode after the Barke, and made ſo much haſt in following him, that he ouertoke him in a plaine fielde, and at the great noiſe and calling that Tefereo made, this Worthy King looked back, beleeuing that it had bæn the Knight of the Sunne, but when hæ ſaw him and knew by his armour that it ſhould not bæ hæ, hæ tarryed for him, & when they drew nigh together, hæ ſayde. Knight, what a Diuell wouldeſt thou haue, that with ſo great haſt thou doeſt follow mæ, and with ſo arrogant a voice doeſt call mæ. Tefereo anſwered him and ſayde.

Coward, to make thæ pay the giuing of that blowe, which thou gaueſt vnto a better knight then thou art. Then the king ſayde. Oh high Gods, what may this bæ, that in the bæginning of my Knighthood I ſhould be ſo reuiled, and vnto Tefereo he replied: Knight thou lyeſt, for I neuer left my battaile for cowardneſſe, but that as I doe well know, he with whom I had battaile is no man, but a Diuell, and againe I left him for that hee gaue vnto mæ the order of Knighthode, but now thou ſhalt pay for all that which hee hath done vnto mee, toyning with the words which

thou

thou haſt here ſpoken, and without any more tarring they began to ſtrike many and vnmeaſurable blowes the one at the other, the Moore ſtroke one at the Sardinian which was ſo terrible, that it made him cleane to loſe his ſight, & to leane on the one ſide of his horſe, ſo that hee had almoſt fallen downe but with a trice hee ſettled himſelfe vpright in his ſaddle againe and finding the Moore at hand, hee gaue a thruſt at him ſo ſtrong and ſtrong, that hee thruſt him cleane out of the ſaddle vppon the croupper of his horſe, ſo that he lacked but a little of falling downe backward, and ſeeing him in this ſort, with wonderfull agilitie hee leapt on the other ſide, and before that the Moore could ſettle himſelfe well againe, hee ſtroke him ſuch another blow vpon his helme, that hee made him to reele forwardes as faſt as hee did backwards, and then hee doubled him another blow vppon the backe, that whether hee would or no, hee made his head to touch the buttocke of the horſe, and with the great furye that hee ſtroke the blow, hee pricked his horſe, which was the occaſion that hee ranne forwards in ſuch ſort, that the Moore had time to recouer himſelfe againe, vſing his accuſtomed curſinges againſt Mahomet, in calling him a thouſand deteſtable names. So theſe valyant warriours without any farther ſtaying, ioyned againe together, whereas there began a new battayle far more rigorous then the firſt, for that they were both furiouſlye inflamed with anger, not ceaſing to torment theyr armes with terrible blowes, without al pitty, in ſuch ſort, that their blowes were deliuered more with ſtrength then with any politicie. Thus with terrible furie they bruſed one anothers fleſh, that either of them did feele it very much: this Mauritanian with great furie lift vp his ſword for to ſtrike the Sardinian, and hee placed it in ſuch ſort that he made him to fall vpon his horſe croupper, but by reaſon of the great furye wherwith it was diſcharged, & againe that the Moores horſe was ſomewhat weary, he ſtumbled & bowed vpon his knees, in ſuch ſort, that in a great while he could not riſe vp againe, and although he ſpurred him very much, yet it profited little.

C.ii. The

The Moꝛe ſeing that all that he could dœ was to little effect, cryed out againſt Mahomet, and with the great foꝛce that the Moꝛe vſed, his hoꝛſe aroſe againe vpon his fœte, at ſuch time as the Sardenian with ſo outragious chelar, that the ſmoke flew out at his viſour, toke his great ſwoꝛd in both his handes, letting his ſhœlde hang at his back, and ſtrok him ſuch a terrible blow vpon the creaſt of his helme, that hœ made him cleane to loſe his fœling foꝛ a great while. The Moꝛes hoꝛſe by reaſon of his wearineſſe was readie to fall downe on euery ſide: This valyaunt Sardenian ſeing him in that caſe, and remembꝛing in what oꝛder he had befoꝛe left the Knight of the Sunne, without anye moꝛe tarrying tourned about his ſwift and light hoꝛſe, and with as much ſwiftneſſe as might be poſſible, hœ returned vnto the place where as hœ had left the knight of the Sun and when he came vnto the place wheras the battaile was fought betwœn the two warriours, he found not the knight of the Sunne there, but returnung backe againe hœ toke his way towardes the Sea ſide, following the fote ſteppes of them and their hoꝛſes, and in a ſmall time hœ came vnto the place, whereas hœ ſaw a barke which was at an anker faſt vpon the ſhoare, & comming nigh vnto it hœ knew it to be the very ſame which had bꝛought them thether, and foꝛ to know of certaintie whether the knight of the Sunne were there oꝛ not, hœ called with a loude voice vnto them which were in the Barke: vnto whom the Greeke made anſwere, and when he ſaw that it was his friend Tefereo that had called, hœ was very gladde, and likewiſe Tefereo did greatly reioyce to ſœ him, and therwith he entered into the Barke, and when he was entered therein, he heard one with a loude voice, which ſaide. Tarrie tarrie, thou cowardly villaine, and do not thinke to eſcape mœ without thy due puniſhment. At which great noiſe the Knight of the Sunne loked about and ſaw that it was the King of Mauritania, which with verye great haſt came towarder them. The Pꝛince would haue gone out to him if the Barke had not ben ſo far in the ſea, as it was, foꝛ the which he was very

ſadde,

sad, & not a little disquieted, yet for all the anger which the Prince had, he could not chose but say that the king was a good knight, and of as much might as Bramarant, and somewhat more valiant and politike, and meruailed with himselfe whether hee were his Sonne or no. So when the Pagan saw that hée could not execute his furie and rage, hée began to roare like a Bull, and although he was not purposed any more to imbarke himselfe to sea, yet at that time he was constrained to chaunge his pretence, and finding opportunitie by reason of certaine Merchauntes which were fraighting of a shippe to Grecia, hée determined to goe into hir. There he imbarked himselfe, and the wind béeing very prosperous they departed, and in a verie short time they arriued at a hauen in Grecia, where as hée went a land, and trauailed in the Countrye certaine daies. So it happened one day that hée found by a house of pleasure, a great company of Knightes, Ladyes, and Damosells, which were recreating of themselues. What they were, and what the king did, in following the Storye you shall vnderstande, and I will now leaue him for to tell you of the heroycall sonne of Trebatio, who for the space of fiue dayes sailed on the Sea with great pleasure, often talking of the great strength and force of the Woze, the seauenth day hée arriued in a very faire hauen or port, which was nigh vnto a verye sumptuous Citie, the which was furnished with great shippes and Gallies, and other small Barkes and Foyskes. Amongest all these they passed verye quicklye, without the interruption of any person, till such time as the Barke was fast a ground, and perceiuing that it was ther conuenient that they should dissimbarke themselues, they leapt a shoare, and likewise toke out theyr horses, and straight way they leapt on their backes, and toke the way which lead them vnto the Citie, wherein they discouered on the one parte a verye fayre and great armye of men, and likewise all the fielde was pitched with verye rich Tentes, and as they loked about, straight waies they saw come forth of the Citie fiue mightye and strong Knightes, and a verie great

and strong Gyaunt, and in the other part of the armie one onely knight, whose armour seemed to bee of a passing fine Rubie, all to bee spotted with starres of gold, and set with Pearles. This sight did lyke them so well, that they were loking on that one Knight a great while verie earnestlie and toke great pleasure to see his good demenour. The Knight of the Sunne was imagining with himselfe what knight that should bee, that was of so gentle disposition and proporcion, beleeuing certainly that it could bee none, but some of his lignage. This knight passed hard by those two friendes, who did behold them verie much, yet hee made no staying, but without speaking anye word hee passed on forwardes, and when he was come into that place of the fielde that was appointed for the battaile, he put his speare in his reast, at the which token one of the fire knights came forth to make resistaunce, whom the Knight of the Sunne did know.

But now for that the historye goeth in order, it is needefull to leaue them in this order, till time shall serue, & to returne againe, and tell you of the Emperour of Grecia, that came to the port of Cimarra, and there did disimbarke himselfe.

¶ How the Greeke Emperour did disimbarke himselfe at the Cittie of Cimarra, and what happened vnto him there. Chap. 25.

YOU haue heard before how that the Emperour arriued at the Port of Cimarra, which was gouerned by the Father of that vnfortunate Herea, where when hee had put in order his inchaunted Barke, hee leapt a lande, and going on foote armed with that rich armour which Garrosilea had giuen vnto him carrying his right hande vpon the reast which was in his armour, and his left hand vpon the pomell of his sworde, and his helme close which couered his face, and hanging at his neck

his

his gallaunt and rich shælde, with a comelye and graue countenance he went forwards to the Citie, and of the first that hæ met withall, he asked what land or Countrie that was, for that hæ was ignorant therof, and straight waie it was tolde him in the Saracin language, that he was in the kingdome of Cimarra, whereat hæ was not a little delighted, and considering the knowledge of the wise Lyrgandeo, he went forwards on his way without staying, till hæ entered into the gates of the Citie, and all they which met with him did verie much beholde him, greatly meruailing at his grauitie, good disposition, and wonderfull stature. There were sundrye that aduertised the King thereof as soone as hæ was come a shoare, how that there was a knight which did disimbarke himselfe at the Port or Hauen, which came without gouernement, beeing armed with verie rich and costly armour, and one that was of an excellent stature and good disposition. The auncient King of the Countrye who was aduertised thereof bæfore by the wise Lyrgandeo, did straight waie know that it was hæ which had passed the terrible kæpers of his murthered Daughter.

For you shall vnderstand, that as soone as the Emperour was departed for the Iland, the wise Lyrgandeo commaunded that the bodie of the Ladie should bæ carried vnto Cimarra, aduertising hir Father, that the long looked for reuengement was not farre of. And likewise how and in what manner the knight which did it should come into his lande, and also who that Knight should bæ. Wherefore as soone as the King was giuen to vnderstand of his arriuall, without any more tarrying, beeing accompanyed with all his noble men, and leading in his hande a verye fayre and young childe, about twelue yæres olde, the most best proportioned that euer nature could frame, of whom you shall heare no more in this booke, for that in that second booke it shall bæ declared at large of him. The King went forth till he came to the chiefe place of the citie, ther to mæt

with the Emperour, whereas likewise hée met with this old and ancient King, who bowing his knées to the earth, and shedding of many teares, with ioy, receiued him, saying. O "high and mighty Emperour, giue me hære your hands, that "I may discharge the duty that all humane creatures do owe "vnto your highnesse: how much more I, that am bound "therevnto, for that with so much firmenesse thou wouldest "confirme thy oath, and take the charge in thine owne person "to worke my reuengement. The Emperour was in a great confusion, to heare himselfe named, and neuer gaue anye in all that land to vnderstande thereof, but straight way, hée suspected, that Lyrgandeo should aduise him of his comming. And hære with vsing of his accustomed bountye hæ toke him by the hand, and lifted him from the ground, sayeng, "good King, the debt which thou sayst is due vnto mæ, thou "hast repaied in shewing the noblenesse of thy hart and cou- "rage, and otherwise I am constrained by ý order of knight- "hode and iustice, to make reuengement of that cursed fact, "which was without all pitie committed vpon thy daughter. "And seeing that there can be no other remedie but onely re- "uengement, hære of my part I do offer thæ to do all, that "in my power is possible to bée done, desiring thée that thou "restraine these teares and giue order that with great spæde "there may be ioyned together all thy power, to the end that "wée may goe and conclude that which in mée lieth. The "King with a sad voice answered. High and mightie Empe- "rour, this hath béene prouided for bæfore, for all my peo- "ple and shires are at an houres warning, to goe to the aid- "ing of so iust a cause, and wée tarried for nothing but onelie "your royall person, who must be the sword of my reuenge- "ment.

Thus with these and such like communications, they went vnto the Kings pallace, which was hanged all with black clothes, for others he would not consent to haue hanged, since the death of his daughter Herea. There was the Emperour vnarmed, and serued with as great highnesse & honour, as though he had bæne in Grecia. Notwithstanding

the

the Emperour, would not soiourne nor rest there much, for the next daye in the morning hée commaunded that all the people should march forwards vnto a hauen which was at the vttermost parts of the Kingdome, whereas they found Ships and Barkes of all sorts, verye well furnished of all things that was néedfull. There was thrée hundred ships one with another, in the which there was imbarked fifty thousand Woores meruailously well appointed, and committing their sayles vnto the winde, all this Naule toke their voyage towards Numidia. So they naugated, and found the winde fauourable, which brought them vnto a Port or hauen, which was but two leagues from the Kings house. There, with great ioy and pleasure they went a shore, without any resistaunce or gainsayeng. So when they were all out of the shippes a land, they displayed their ancients, and in very good order they marched forwards. And at such time as Apollo had made an ende of his iourney, and that the darke night came on, they came in sight of the Cittie, and without taking any rest, towards the land side they pitched their tents, and fortified themselues in the best wise they could, in such sort, as their good captaine which did gouerne them had commanded, without doing any thing to the contrarie. So when all things was put in good order as they would haue it, hée commanded that al the armie, should goe vnto the gate of the Cittie that was most nérest, the which was straight way done: and in thrée daies after they dyd no other thing but ease and rest themselues: for that the people were somewhat out of quiet with their great trauayle.

The fourth daye, the Emperour séing that there was no sturring in the Cittie, (the which was done by pollycie, tarryeng to sée what the enimies would doe) the Emperour called for his armour: and being armed, there was brought a verye fayre and mightie horse vnto him: and with his accustomed courage he issued out from amongst his company, and rode towards the wall of the Cittie, and put himselfe into a fayre gréene plaine nigh vnto the walls, and lif-

ting vp the visour of his helme, hee set his horne vnto his mouth, and did sound it very strongly, which was to warne them that were in the Citie, to come to the walls and harken what hee would say: and when hee saw that there was much people, attending to heare him, hee began to say. O King Noraldino of Numidia, how carelesse thou art in this thy strong countrie, thinking that the strength thereof will defend thee, that thou payest not the price of thy naughtie treason, which thou dydst vse with that vnfortonate Herea. Take vnto thee thy armour, and for that thou hadst a hart to commit this euill deede, haue now likewise a courage to make thy defence: come forth of these thy walls, thou traitour, and destroyer of the royall bloud. All they which were on the walls did heare the threatenings, and straight way went and told it vnto the King of Numidia, who was at that time in communication of warres and of armies, and of all things that belonged thereunto, and when hee heard these newes, giuing a great sigh he sayd. Oh yee Gods, are not you content to see mee in this perplexitie, and so much wronged, but likewise with sound of trumpet suffer me to be outraged in calling me traytor. These fayned griefs and sorowfull words had so much force, that it moued the harts of the Princes that were with him, for to goe out into the field for his defence: and in great hast they commaunded, that their harneste should be brought vnto thē, with determination to die, or to defend his cause. And there was none that had any feare, but only the Gyant, for that hee would not giue any credit vnto the Kings words, although he dissembled neuer so much: but by reason that hee had sworne thereunto, hee was constrayned by his oath to goe forth with the rest.

So in this order as I haue told you, they went forth of the Citie all fiue togethers: and he which gaue the first onset was that valiant & amorous Hleno of Dacia brothers sonne vnto the Emperour, who with a gentle behauiour when he came nigh the Emperour, sayde in the Saracen tongue: It is not the part of good knights to speak any villany, especially against

againſt kings whom they are bound to haue in reuerence & honour. To whom the Emperour anſwered in the ſame language. Art thou Noraldino king of Numidia? Don Eleno replyed. No, but I am a knight, and a very ſtranger in this countrie: but yet by firme oath, I determine to dye in the defence of his right. The Emperour anſwered: He hath neither iuſtice nor right on his ſide, but it is moſt apparent wrong which hee doth maintaine, & there is no reaſon that ſuch a traytor as hee is, ſhould bee by any other defended: neither is it ſeemely that any knight of price ſhould change himſelfe in his behalfe, for that hee is a traytor. And likewiſe hee that doth defend him and take his part (in this, that hee will ſuſtaine and maintaine ſo great vniuſtice) is partaker of his treaſon, and merriteth a traytors name. And for that thou art his defender, heere I giue thee to vnderſtand, that I care not for thee, and leſſe I do eſteeme thee: for that hee which doth take vpon him to defend a traytor, may well be accounted a traytor. This valyaunt Eleno, when hee ſaw himſelfe to bee ſo ill intreated, anſwered: Thou lyeſt in ſo ſaying, for that I was neuer traytor neither do I procede of the linage where traytors euer were: notwithſtanding, thou ſhalt pay me with thy head, the great vncurteſie which thou haſt vſed vnto mee. Therefore it doth ſtand thee in hand to looke vnto thy ſelfe and take that part of the field, which thou thinckeſt beſt for thy purpoſe, & leaue off theſe blazing words to ioyne with me in battaile, that I may ſee if thou canſt as well defend thy quarrel, as thou canſt handle thy tongue. At which words, there drew nigh them the Prince Clauerindo, and as the Emperour would haue departed to put himſelfe in battel, he did behold him, & ſtraight way knew him. And caſting his eyes on the one ſide, lykewiſe knew the other three, but he could not know who the Prince Eleno ſhould bee: and for the great deſire which hee had to know what he was, he ſayd: Knight, I do deſire thee for courteſies ſake to tell me what thou art: & if thou wilt not grant me this, then I pray thee to lift vp ỹ viſor of thy helme, ỹ I may ſee thy face: for heere I giue thee to vnderſtãd that

" thy foure companions I owe know, which is the occasion
" that I haue no desire to enter into battaile with thee. Then
" Don Eleno answered and sayde: Pagan, of the two things
" which thou dost aske of mee (although there is no compul-
" sion) yet will I pleasure thee in fulfilling one of them: & in
" saying these words hee lift vp the visour of his helme, and
when the Emperour saw him, hee beleeued that it had beene
his sonne Rosicleer, & with a loud voyce hee sayde. Oh migh-
" tie God, how can this be true, that vnto knights of my lig-
" nage should chaunce so vile a spot, who hetherto in all their
" doings haue got great honour & praise, and now are come
" to defende such apparaunt wickednesse and treason. Thou
" shalt vnderstand knight, that I am the Emperour Trebatio,
" and wold not willingly now be called thy Father, for that
" thou art come to defend so apparant and knowen an euill,
" for I knowing ỳ vnreasonable naughtinesse that this King
" hath committed, am come to take this conquest in hand, for
" in al my life time I neuer toke a more iuster cause in hand,
" neither was there euer in all the world a thing more wor-
" thier of punishment then this, and seeing that my fortune
" hath beene such, ỳ my first enimie that should come agaynst
" mée, seemeth my son, put thy selfe heere now beefore thy high
" progenitour from whence thou doest descend, and for Gods
" loue do not blot thy stock, in defending traitours & treason,
" & therwith in few words he told vnto thẽ all the whole hi-
" storie, as before I haue told you. Then this excellent Dacian
" answered High & mightie Emperour, although by my name
" thou hast not knowen mée, yet in calling mée son thou dyd-
" dest happen on the truth. For thou shalt vnderstand that I
" am called Eleno of Dacia, sonne vnto the king of Dacia thy
" brother, and in that which thou hast said that wee do main-
" taine treasons, we are to ỳ contrary informed, neuertheles
" I beseech your highnesse to tarrie heere a while, and there-
with hée & the Prince in a great confusion returned to the
" place whereas the rest of his companions were, & turning
" his talke vnto ỳ King, hée sayde. King of Numidia, thou shalt
" vnderstand that yonder Knight is the Emperour of Grecia,

my

my vncle, who in that small time which wée haue béen with him, hath told vnto vs all ỹ effect of this thy matter, cleane contrary vnto that which thou hast declared vnto vs. Therfore King, there is no reason, that Knights of so high bloud and name as wée are should bæ set to defend lyes & treasons: but if it be to the contrary of that which he hath told vnto mæ, haue no doubt but tell vs the truth. For héere I sweare by the loue that I beare vnto that vnlouing Lidia, that I will trauayle so with my vncle, that greatly with thy honour thou shalt goe through with this conquest.

Then this false king answered. O knights which doo confesse your selues to bée Christians, and by the God whom you doe worship haue made a solemne oath to help and defend me by the strength of your armes: how happeneth it now ỹ without any care of your oth, which you haue sworn, you will leaue mæ desolate, & goe from your words, béeing doubtfull of the very truth. The couragious French man answered: Doe thou not think king, that our oathes and words shal be abrogated, rather first we wil læse our liues, both I, the prince, & all our companions: but consider king, that God will not that wæ shall imagine amisse of Trebatio who is a prince of great veritie and truth, and againe, our verie nigh kinsman. Therefore this, and that which hée hath tolde vs, hath moued vs to come and tell thée, and doe say, that none of vs will goe from his worde and oath if thy cause bæ iust. Then the valyaunt Elepo did cut off his reasons, and tourning vnto the king he sayd. King of Numidia, héere doe I most humbly desire thée, that with false illusions thou putte not vs vnto so great trauayle, for that then it cannot bæ, but eyther wæ must dye in the hands, of him whome wæ doe desire to serue, or else, (though far vnlikely) to kill him. Is it possible king, that thou hast brought vs vnto this estate, that cruelty should gouern our wills, without hauing power to doe any other thing. The king when hæ saw that the knights were very earnest, bégan to sweare with great oathes that his cause was iust, & that he had tolde vnto them the truth of the matter, and if

so

so be that the Emperour had tolde them any other thing, it was onely to deteine them, and to tourne them, that they should not make his defence, and charged them again with their oath which they had made and how that they had giuen their woꝛdes to bee his vpholder & defender. This woꝛthy Dacian tourning vnto his companions saide. Knights, what doo you think in this matter, what is it best that wee doo herein? Foꝛ well you doo see, that wee are to bee vnyapte & bound one against another, & cousin against cousin, yet foꝛ all that wee cannot by any meanes excuse the battaile. So they did all determine to returne vnto the Emperour, and to desire him foꝛ to accept it in good part, & to leaue off that battaile, & to make them beleeue ꝑ hee was falsly informed, & when they came vnto him they sayd. Woꝛthy Emperour, and our onely Loꝛd, take well vnto this false information, wherewith they haue informed you, and hauing well considered thereof, we doo all request you, foꝛ the loue which vnto your sonnes and cousins, and vnto all your friends you doe owe, that it may moue you to take no occasiõ to put vs into this extremitie, foꝛ that by any meanes wee cannot goe from our oath and woꝛd. Vnto the which the Emperour answered and saide. My louing friends, if that you haue giuen your woꝛd and oath to pꝛocure to make defence of so false a King, doo you likewise indeauour to peꝛforme the same: foꝛ the like will I doo to accomplish that which I haue pꝛomised, foꝛ that there is no moꝛe reason foꝛ the one then foꝛ the other. But this one thing I doe tell you, that it is very apparant that you will maintayne the treason of this false King, as it apparethplainly by many reasons, which I haue told vnto you: and the principall cause, wherin you may see plainely his treason and falshoode, is the little haste that hee doth make himselfe vnto the battaile, & if hee knew that hee doth maintaine the truth, let him come foꝛth and make his owne defence. At the which reasons they all helde theyꝛ peace, considering the great reason which the Emperour had declared, and determined that the next daye they would conclude, what were best to bee done, & so these fiue knights retur-

returned vnto the Citie, and the Emperour vnto the campe. Of all this that happened, he that receiued the most contentment, was the Prince Eleno, for hee desired very much to retourne vnto the citie, for that at his departure he left his Lady very sicke, so that he thought not to finde hir aliue, & comming to the Citie, hee was no sooner alighted from his horse, but hee went straight vnto hir Chamber, whereas hee found hir with a mightye burning ague, and seeing hir in that case, hee was as one that was beside himselfe, and the more that hir ague increased, the more furious she did shew hir selfe and farther out of quiet. So this greeuous and sick Lady did aske paper and inke for to write a few lynes vnto him which was the causer of all this hir harme, and making an ende of hir writting, without power to doo any other thing, with ỳ great feblenesse shee felt, shee fell downe vpon hir pillow, & speaking vnto Eleno she sayd. Valiant Knight, " behold heere thy Lidia, at hir last ende: for that there doth " not remaine in mee strength for to giue thee thanks, for so " great benefits as I haue receiued at thy hands: yet I car- " ry one great comfort with me, which is, ỳ although I dye, " yet thy great loyalty doth not die, neyther my firme faith, " and although I was vnloued of an vnfaythfull Knight, yet " am I beloued of the most courageous Knight in the world. " This sorrowfull and troubled Prince would not suffer hir to goe forwards with hir talke, but with shedding of many teares from his eyes, hee sayde.

Oh my sweete Mistresse, doe not giue mée to vnderstand " that thou wilt dye, if that thou meane I shall remayne a- " liue. Oh my loue, I would rather that my hart should bee " parted in twaine, by the greatest enimie that I haue, then " to remain without thee. Oh my louing Mistres, let this thy " youthfull yeers & great beautie which thou hast, incourage " thee, & by not in this order: this feeble Lidia for to shew with " more feruentnesse the good will which thée did owe vnto the " Prince, for his great curtesie forced hir selfe to hold vp hir head, and hee lifted it vp with such quicknesse, as though hir weake members had felt no griefe, & as though the fury of

that

that burning ague was not able to resist hir, but with the force of loue thæ sat vp in hir bed, and with hir face of a fiery colour thæ sayd. My Lord, time doth not giue mæ any
„ place, that with words I might gratifie the great courtesie
„ that of thæ I haue receiued for that I dow faile, that the hower is come, and that the thræ fatall sisters haue the threed
„ of my life betwæne the edges of their shares, so that it lacketh nothing but to put them together: insomuch, that
„ I miserable creature do faile my soule tremble in my flesh,
„ at this my last hower. But one thing, (oh my swæt and
„ true louer) I will desire thæ bæfore that I dwe dye, which
„ is, þ thou wouldst procure, that this letter may bæ giuen
„ vnto that cruell knight, who hath brought mæ vnto this
„ estate, giuing him to vnderstand of this my troublesome
„ death, the occasion wherof, was his vnreasonable cruelti.
And making an end of saying this, this miserable Lady fell downe, without hauing any more strength to sit vp, but let the letter fall out of hir hand bæfore hir true louer, who toke it vp and sayde.

„ Oh all my ioye, what a cruell knife is this to my heart,
„ to heare thy complaynts, in giuing mæ to vnderstand the
„ great cruelti that loue hath vsed against thæ, without any
„ desert or reason: and verely I dwe beleue, that these my
„ great thoughts & griefes, but most of all thy absence will
„ bæ the occasion of my death. And if þ my enimies are not
„ of power to giue it me, heere I doe sweare vnto thæ by the great & true loue which I beare vnto thæ, that I my selfe with my owne hands will procure to pull this hart out of
„ his place, for that it knew not how to giue thæ contentmẽt
„ paying therwith þ dutie þ I owe vnto thæ. O happy Brenio
„ that didst obtaine so much grace & fauour at Venus hands,
„ for to be beloued of the flower of all beauty. The Clime in
„ the which thou wert borne was not so happie as to the cõtrarie my Clime hath bæne vnhappie & vnfortunate. Take
„ a good hart my Mistres, comfort your selfe and bæ strong,
„ and be not the occasion that I sæke my owne death, & heere
„ I dow promise thæ by thy vnhappy succesle, to bring thæ in-

to

to the Province of Lusitania, or else to die.

Then this weake Lidia sayde: Gentle Knight, there is nowe no time all beeing past, for that I doe feele my selfe that this is the last sight. The sacred Gods will not permit that before my death I should see his face: for if I did, I verily beleeue that I should receiue some comfort. O immortall Gods, into your diuine bosomes I doe commend my soule, asking no other reuengement against the causer of all my euill, but that hee die of the same infirmitie. And thou mighty Greeke, heere I do desire thee by the loue which thou doest seeme to owe me, for that thou seest that my death cannot be excused, and that Proserpina is tarrying for mee, with both hir armes abroad for to receiue my soule. And againe, that this shall be the last request that by me shall bee demanded of thee, as also to verifie this loue which thou hast shewed vnto me to bee true, so that I hope thou canst not by any meanes deny me to doe it. How is it possible my sweet Mistres, said the Prince, that now thou art in doubt of my loue, I promise you that my true loue doth not deserue this suspition, and heere I giue you to vnderstand, that first the mightie riuer of Tigris shall forsake hir course and runne backe againe, before that any lack shall be found in mee of that I owe vnto thy loue, neither any forgetfulnesse to bee the occasion to withdraw me from doing any thing that you shall commaund me, therfore sweet mistres aske what your pleasure is, for that thou canst aske nothing at my handes, but it shall be all thine. This weak Ladie, whose power and strength was wholy decayed, and that hir houre drew nigh at hand with a weake and feeble voice she said. That which I desire, gentle Lord, is, that this my letter may come vnto the handes of Brenio, wherin he may see how cruell he hath ben vnto his Lidia. So this dead Lady spake neuer a word more, for at that instaunt the destinies concluded to cut the thrid of hir life a sunder. Heere the Prince lacked both reason and patience, heere he lost all his comfort and vnderstanding, & comming vnto the dead bodye of Lidia, hee fell in a sound, & when (by the procurement of the Ladies and Dam-

" sells that were ther present) he came to himselfe, he arose vp
" with a furious wrath: saying: Is it of truth swæt soule that
" thou art departed & gone without me? Is it possible my Lidia
" ý I shal not follow thæ whether thou doest goe? Alas what
" shall I doe? wher am I ý I do consent to let thæ depart a-
" lone? how is this my onely loue, shall I lose thæ? What is
" it ý this cruel hart aileth, that it renteth not in peeces? E-
" leno is this the loue that vnto thy Lidia liuing thou diddest
" shew. At which great noise ý other foure Princes entred in
to the chamber, who were meruailously altered to hare his
lamentations. So either of them in ý best wise he could did
procure to comfort him, but this amorous knight with the
great anguish ý he had, fell in a sound in the armes of Cla-
uerindo, who requested the ladies and damsells which were
ther in company with the dead bodie, that they would or-
daine some thing to bring him againe to his remembraunce,
& so with such remedies as they did make he came agayne
" vnto himself, who then with great rage crying out, called for
" his Lidia. Oh my Lidia, what is become of thæ, who for loue
" in another mans armes didst die, & now I die for thy loue?
" Oh the whole state of all my life, wher art thou my Lidia,
" my comfort, dost thou heare me? Doest thou not carry with
" thæ this my hart? No, no, for yet I doe fele it. Is it possi-
" ble that I can liue, or life will long sustaine mæ? I hardly
" belæue it. Oh my ioy doest thou come againe, I pray thæ be
" not so vngratefull but stay a while for I will come vnto
" thæ. For now I am certainely perswaded that I am alto-
" gether without life. Fond Eleno if thou be dead, wherefore
doest thou talke so much of vanities, wherefore doest thou
not hold thy peace. And with these & such like reasons he re-
mained without any fæling, in such sort ý it seemed that hæ
was dead.

The other Princes which were there present sæ-
ing him in that case, toke him bætwæne them, and carried
him vnto another chamber, and procured that Lidia should
be buried, which straight way was done, for that the King
commaunded his Sepulchre should bæ open, in which they
put

put this dead Ladie. The Prince of Hungaria did remaine in companie with the Prince Eleno, for that hée would not let him alone, for hée loued him out of measure, because he did resemble so much the valiaunt Roficleer. So hée remained there till such time as hée came vnto himselfe, and the first word that Prince Eleno sayd, was: Where is the Letter of my Lidia. Liriamandro did giue it him, who taking it in his hand, he said.

O my worke, and the last worke of that white Iuorie hande: héere I doe sweare vnto thée by the honour that I doe owe vnto knighthode, not to apart it from my hart, till such time as the hart of that cruell Brenio bée cut in péeces, & in speaking this hée kissed it a thousand times, vttering a thousand varieties. And straight way with a furious anger, hée arose vp and saide: What is this Eleno, doest thou beleeue that with lamenting thou shalt recouer thy welbeloued Lidia, and not performe that which by hir was commaunded thée. It is more requisite that thou dost trauaile and wander, till such time as thou hast performed that which thou hast promised, gather vnto thy selfe strength and courage, for to performe that which thy hart is bound to doe. So with this anguish hée arose vp at such times as Aurora, with his glistering beames hadde spread ouer the earth.

¶ How that Eleno before hee would goe into the field, would see the Sepulchra of Lidia, and what chaunced in the battaile appointed with the Emperor, his kinsmen and friends. Chap. 26.

THE nert morning when the day was come, all these stout warriours were readye on horse backe, but Prince Eleno, would first goe and sée the Sepulchre of his Lidia, and going into the Temple of Mahomet, hée went straight vnto the place whereas they tolde him that his Lidia was, and hauing no strength

to suffer the great griefe that his heart did feele, he said. Oh my sweet Lidia, if thou doest heare my griefe and lamentation, let it appeare by some outward shew in these hard stones, which hath bewrapt and inclosed thy white and delicate body, that receiuing griefe at these my lamentations, it may giue place that I may see thee, let this my anguish greeue thee my Lidia, likewise let this my misfortune greeue thee. But alas what shall I say, is it not sufficient that the great paine that I doe sustaine for thy death, but I must bewaile my owne sorrow: Oh mistres, at thy death thou madest an end of all thy paines, and mine doth more and more increase. And in saying these and such like lamentations, he drew out his Dagger, and with the point he wrot an Epitath, which was as followeth.

HEere Lidia lou'de, and vnbeelou'de doth lie,
Whose great good will to hir small good did bring:
Shee loue did feele, which causeless did apply,
to hir (perforce) of death the bitter sting.
And though hir corps inclosed heere doth lye,
hir luckless fate and fame will neuer die.

So when he had made this Epitaph, he arose vp, saying: heere I doe promise thee Lidia, since my fortune is such that I haue lost thee, there is no other that shall enter into this my heart and hard breast. But how can I say that it is hard did it not open at the houre when it felt thy absence, and so without saying any more, he went out of the Temple, with all the rest of his companions, and taking their horses, they altogether issued out of the citie, at such time as the emperor was arming himselfe in his rich tent. The fierce king of Sardenia when he saw that they returned againe, vnto ỹ which the day before they did intreate of, he could not be in quiet, but sayde. O King, that for the defence of thy person wee must contend with that man whom wee most esteeme, and thou must remaine in the field onelie for the shew of a knight, & wee inforced to finish the harme, wherof thou art

the

the occasion. Well, doe not thou thinke that it shall be so, but perswade thy selfe, that thou shalt be the first in the incounter, that thou maist proue how euill it is to suffer the furie of the Emperour of Grecia. O worthie king of Sardenia, answered the king of Numidia, how the great affection which thou hast vnto the Emperour, doth cause thee not to giue credit vnto this my iustice and right. Heere I doe require thee by the oath which thou madest vnto me, that thou be the first to put thy selfe in the defence of my person. To which the Sardenian aunswered: First, the heauen and the earth shall ioyne together, before that I wil consent that my arme shal moue it selfe against him, whom I take for my Lord and master. And heere I say vnto thee oh king, that if thou dooest but once againe will me hereto, I sweare to thee by the soueraigne God, that neither thy power, nor all thy subiects shall be able to deliuer thee out of my hands. So their communication was cut off by seeing the Emperour to come towards them vpon a very fayre horse, who shewed so great furie, that it was a wonder to see. At this present time there appeared comming from those parts which was towardes the sea, two knights, who were very well armed. If you do remember, these were the two valiant warriours, ỹ prince of the Sunne, and the strong Sardenian. The great desire that the Emperour had to see himselfe with the Numidian, was the occasion that he litle estemed the tarrying for those two knights, for that he thought the houre was come of the battaile, and that the defender should be (as he had demaunded) that false king and traitour, he put himselfe forwards towards the place whereas the Princes & the king came. And when they were together, these princes with very faire and amorous wordes and of great fidelitie, indeauoured to perswade the Emperour for to leaue the battaile, and that therin they should receiue meruailous great contentment, if he would accept it. The knight of ỹ sunne stood & did beebold their reasonings, & did looke for no other thing but furious battaile, by all tokens ỹ they shewed with their hands and other demeanors of their bodies: & knowing fiue of the

knights, he very much mernailed what should bée the occasion, and with this desire he had to know what should moue them to this controuersie, he saw a Lackie which passed by, and he caled him, & asked of him in the saracen tongue, saying: Friend tell me if thou canst what is the occasion that doth cause them to make this cruell and furious battaile, & who they be that doe make it. This Lackie (by the riches of his armour, and by his good proportion) iudged him to bee a knight of estimation, hee sayd: Gentle Knight, the cause of this controuersie and defence, if I should stand to tell you it all, it would be very tedious, but all the rest that thou doest aske me, I wil giue thee to vnderstand that which I doe know. You shall vnderstand that the Knight which is alone is the mightie Emperour Trebatio of Greece, and that which hee doth maintaine is great iustice and right, & will giue great punishment for the same, which is that that the others doe defend. The Knight of the Sun was very much amazed at that which hee heard, and therwith hee went towards them before they had made an end of their reasoning, and so without any shew of trouble he said vnto the Prince of Dacia (who was still sore troubled with the sorrow, as you haue heard.) Art thou Don Eleno of Dacia, my cousin, and brothers sonne vnto the Emperour, my Lord, and Father? I am he answered the Dacian, who ought not for to die, before I giue thee thy death, for that thou hast caused so much euill to come vpon me, that liuing I doe now dye. The Knight of the Sunne being almost in a confusion to heare his dry reasons, answered. Louing cousin, I feele my selfe somewhat troubled at these thy wordes, and greatly amazed that thou art fallen into so great pride to lift vp thy armed hand against thy naturall parents, and more being informed, that which thou doest pretend to defend is apparant treason. The Prince Eleno did cut of his talk and said. Oh my cousin, heere I doe tell thee, that I do seeke no other thing but death, therefore procure to giue it mee, for that I shall thinke my selfe happie to die in thy hands, notwithstanding I defend thy sel.e as thou wert wont to do, for that thou

knowest

knowest it doth so behoue thée. With this furie and forgetfull vnderstanding, speking no more words, he turned about his horse, crying out and saying: I will liue no longer, seeing I haue lost that, beside which, to mée can be no greater losse. The knight of the Sun verye much meruailed at these his short reasons, not knowing of any thing that had happened vnto him: wondring that his true heart should commit or maintain such wrongs, he turned about his horse for to make his defence, in such sort that all the knights that were ther, were not sufficient to disturb him, but with great fury they met together with their speares, yet not one of thē was moued in their saddles, but remained as though they had bene two towers, and straight way with no lesse force they began to lay hold on their swordes, and for that the knight of the Sun had a respect vnto him, he did rather procure to make his defence, then in any thing to offend him, but Don Eleno stroke such a blow at his cousin, that he made him to stoope with all his bodie to the horse neck. The knight of the Sun would haue taken reuengement of the same blow, (but hee considered that he was his cousin, and that he was ignorant of the cause, that should moue him to commit this folly, for the which consideration he did suffer him, and would make no reuengement. Tefereo who saw all that had passed, & remained in his first place without remouing, til time did serue him to accomplish that which he had determined in his mind to do, and when he saw occasion for the same, hée threw his sheeld vpon his arme, & put his speare in his rest, & made a shew ý he would be doing with ý gyant, ý which he perceiued, & he put himselfe in a readinesse, but more to giue him to vnderstand what he was, then to hurt him. This furious Sardenian stroke his horse with the spurs ý he made him run like the commet which falleth from the side of Trion, & whē he came in the middest of his course, he turned his horse toward the place where as the king of Numidia was (who had put himself a part from the rest) with so great swiftnesse ý by no meanes he could keepe or defend himselfe from ý incounter, but by reason of the strength wherwith it was giuē

he threw them to the ground very euill intreated. He was no sooner fallen when that this courageous Sardenian leapt from his horse very lightly, and found that the king of Numidia was on foote readie for to defend himselfe, and crying out: Knights, succour, succour, or else I am but dead. At the which noise all the other fiue knights looked about, & when they saw the king in the power of that valiant knight, they would haue rescued him, but the light of all knighthode which was the father and the sonne, did disturbe them, and put themselues before them, and would not suffer them to giue any such aide, but did ther great wonders, striking on euery side, in such sort, that now one & then the other they made them to recoile backe. The strong and furious Eleno did but little harme with his sword, neither made he ante great resistaunce, the Giant with a little hast as might bee went to help the Numidian king, & with a reasonable pace he went toward the place whereas the king was, (but for that reason would not consent that such as he is should bee holpen) with the hast that hee made, his horse stombled, in such sort, that horse and master fell to the ground, of the which he was verie sore hurt and bruised, as it appeared by his slow rising vp againe. The valiant Sardenian with great pollicie procured to bring to an end his desire, before that any did come to disturbe him, and being lighted of his horse he made hast to the King and said: Thou traitour, it shall litle profit or plesure thee to call for help, for ỹ in my handes thou shalt leaue this thy traiterous soule, who doth deserue to suffer all the euills that may bee, & therewith hee stroke him such a blow vppon his healme, and with so great furie, that he made him in spite of his hart to kneele with both his knees vppon the earth. So when the Sardenian perceiued him to bee in this case, with great valiauntnesse he straight waies laide holde of his healme with his left hand, and pulled it cleane from his head, and with his right hand hee smote him such a blow vppon the head, that hee parted it in two peeces, and immediatly he fell downe dead to the ground, & looking about to see whether his horse were

gone

gone or no, hæ found that hæ was nigh at hand. Then hée toke the dead king and made him fast vnto the stirroppes of the saddle, and with a trice hæ leapt vpon his horse, and so without anye help of his stirroppes, hæ made his horse to runne, and so drew the King after him throughout all the field. The Gyaunt would haue succoured him, but all was in vaine. In this sort went Tefereo drawing the King after him bæfore all the knights that were there present and sayde: Knights, what dwe you meane to bæ so still? Why dwe you not vpholde and defend this trayterous King, in whose strength was all his confidence? Bæhold now wher hæ hath receiued the payment, that such euill workes as his deserued, and therewith hæ rode round about the field as he did before. The Emperour when hée saw that this fact was ended, would that his cousin Don Eleno, and the Prince his sonne should leaue theyr battayle, which was bætwæne them bægunne a new, and they were giuing one another terrible blowes, but not with such great fury, for that they dyd know the one the other, otherwise it would haue gone ill on both parts. The Emperour put himselfe bætwæne and sayde.

Oh knights, cease your battaile and harken vnto my words. Eleno which was still kindled in wrath, hadde no respect vnto those words, neyther would hæ part, but like a man distraught from himselfe, hée doubled such a blow vppon the vilour of the Emperour, that hæ made him lose the sight of his eyes, The Emperour who was very angrie and not a little grieued, at the small regard that hæ had of his words, would presently haue reuenged the blow, but that hæ was disturbed by the Gyaunt, who pulling off his helme went towards the place whereas these thræ worthy warriours were, and with a beaule and troubled voice hæ sayde.

Hære mée O noble Emperour and you worthie Knights, cease this your controuersie and stay your vnweakened armes, till such time as I haue vttered that which I will say. Then the Emperour with his accustomed mæke-

nesse sayde. Noble king what is it that thou canst demand of me, that I would not willingly accomplish? To whom hee answered. Well, saing it is so my Lord, I doe desire you to returne vnto your tent, and take your ease, and to leaue off this, and such like controuersies: for that the cause therof, my cousin and brothers sonne, hath taken away from betwæne you. And when he had saide these & such like words, he returned vnto his companions, and perswaded them altogether to returne vnto the Cittie, to the which they all consented, although it was cleane contrarie vnto the will of Don Eleno. So when they were entred into the Cittie, they found that all the people and burgesses therof were in great lamentation for the losse of their King and Lord, and the more, for that his death was so shamefull and odious. But they rested not till they came to the Kings Pallayce, whereas they were received, and were vnarmed, and commaunded dinner to bee made ready, whereat they were meruailously serued. And when that dinner and all was ended, the valyant Eyaunt began to speake in this manner.

Worthy Princes, and my Lords and friends, you too well know, and heere you haue sene, how that all our trauaile which we haue had for to defend this king, hath ben greatly against our honours, & that neither our threatnings nor wordes were sufficient for to disturbe the will of the Emperour herin: for that hee knew that his quarrel was verie certaine & iust, which was the occasion, that the punishment of this fact in all things hath been fauourable according vnto his desire. And for the better verifieng of ỹ same, at that present time you saw come in place, his worthy son, accompanied with my brothers sonne my cousin, that with their aide hee should conclude to put in execution his iust & true desired reuengement: which hath been a great reproch and ignomy vnto vs all, neyther was there in any of vs so much force or strength to withstand or disturbe him: but after the king being slaine, as you all did see, they tyed him to the stirrops, and dragged him through all the fielde. So

that

that now you shall vnderstand, ỹ king bæing dead our oath is frée, & wæ at libertie, neither stand wæ bound vnto any other thing. And that which we ought at this present to be agrœued at, is, for that wæ are out of the grace and favor of our Lord the Emperour. Therefore one of vs bæing his brothers sonne, another his sonne in law, and another his brother in law, and all the rest his dære and intire friends, for that wæ do well know that hæ was not the occasion of this our fond offence. Let vs now acknowledge our fault, and procure to enter againe into his favour and friendship, and go altogether and discharge our selues, for that it is no shame vnto vs to aske pardon for our faults and offences. Hære I have declared vnto you my opinion and my will: & I promise you I am determined to doe this, so that euerie one may hærein do, as best shall please him, and as hæ shall sæ occasion. The first that answered hærevnto, was the valyant Tartarian, and sayde.

Excellent king your counsayle hærein doth like me very well, and we ought not to take any other counsaile, but this onely which thou hast given vs: for that wæ sæ plainely, that it hath pleased god to punish vs for that wæ would defend and maintaine such euill and naughtinesse, and without any farther counsaile wæ dyd subiect our selues by our oathes: therefore I doe determine my selfe to follow thy pretended intention. So likewise this counsell sæmed good vnto the rest of the knights and Princes, repenting themselues of all that had bæne past. Don Eleno, who was almost confounded for the controuersie that was betwixt him and his Cousin, with an altered and angrye voyce, hæ presently replyed.

I doe not deny, but that this which hath happened, hath bæn to our infamie as much as may bæ, by the which it is knowen ỹ we have not maintained ỹ truth. But for all that I will not giue vnto the Emperour nor vnto ỹ rest so much glorie, but let them make an end to triumph ouer our baseness: for as for my part, I wil first dy, & be cut all to pæces,

then

then to goe and yéeld my selfe vnto them, nor to any person in the whole world. Let euery one doe as hée thinketh best, for that the Dacian Prince wil not let to be the same, which his fortune hath ordained, & therewith hée arose vp from the table, & made as though hée went vnto his chamber, but hée did not: for incontinent hée called a Lackey of his, and armed himselfe, and commanded him very secretly to carrie his horse out of the Citie, and to tarrie for him there, & the Lackey did as the prince had commanded him. So when hée was out of the Citie, he leaped vpon his horse, and tarried in no place till he came vnto the waters side, & by chance hée came vnto the place whereas the barke was, that brought his cousin thether, into which hée entered, and his lackey put in his horse. Hée was no sooner in, when that with great swiftnesse the barke began to make saile, whereas wee will leaue him till time doe serue.

Now I will retourne vnto the Princes, who after many reasonings, determined to goe forthwith vnto the Emperours tent, and went vnto the chamber of Don Eleno, to perswade him to do the like, but when they came ther, they neither found him nor his armour, for the which they were very sad and sorrie, imagining straight way what hée had done. And seeing that it was labour lost to goe and seeke him, they themselues determined to departe without him. And when they came vnto the scowtes of the host, it was asked them what they sought, and what they would haue? The Gyaunt saide vnto them: Friends, goe vnto the Emperour, and tell him that heere are the knights with whom he had all his late contention, that are very desirous to speak with him. So the scouts sent a messenger straight way vnto the Emperour. And when hée had told it vnto him, hée commanded that they should presently let them passe.

When the Emperour vnderstood that they drew nigh vnto the Tent, with his mightie courage, and with his accustomed noblenes, hée went out to meete them, with his royall armes spredde abroad, and so by one and one hée louingly imbraced them all, and also desired them,

that

that there might bée no communication of that which had paſt, for that it would be the occaſion to diſturbe their ioye and mirth which they ought to vſe together méeting by aduenture together in ſtraunge Countries, ſo hée caſt his eye aſide to ſée where his couſin the Prince Eleno was, but whē hée could not ſée him, hée aſked for him, and it was told him all that had paſſed, & the doloꝛous end of Lidia, for the which they were very ſoꝛrowfull, but eſpecially the knight of the Sunne for that hée loued him very much, and if the Emperour his father had not diſturbed him, he would haue gone to haue ſought him. Likewiſe the great ioy & contentment which the Gyant receiued in ſeeing his couſin Tefereo, was no leſſe then Tefereos to ſée his vncle, ſo that the delight of all of them apparantly appéered. In this ſoꝛt they paſſed away the time til it was night without feeling any paine of their paſſed trauaile. The next day in the moꝛning the king of Cimarra dyd ariſe, meruaylouſly richly apparelled, with roabes of cloth of gold, and went vnto the knights, giuing them to vnderſtand that hée was moꝛe contented & in quiet then any other king, in that he was reuenged in ſuch ſoꝛt as you haue heard. This good king neuer ceaſed in giuing thanks vnto the Emperour for the great curteſie which hée receiued at his hands, and ther they gaue oꝛder that all the whole camp ſhuld returne vnto their owne country, for that which they came for was concluded, & that their departure ſhuld be in ſuch ſoꝛt, ẏ the people ſhuld not doe any harme, ẏ which was ſtraight way accompliſhed, & they appointed for king ouer that countrie a valiant knight, of whom wée wil intreate in the third part of this hiſtoꝛie. So all the people of ẏ King of Cimarra without giuing any occaſion of anger oꝛ harme, by the way which they went, came vnto the place wheras they left all theyꝛ fléete of ſhips, and there they imbarked themſelues, and committed theyꝛ Sayles vnto the winde, which they found fauourable and proſperous, and brought them quickly vnto Cimarra, whereas the King dyd detaine them fiftéene daies, although they were vnwilling. At the ende whereof they determined to depart their way

towards

wards Grecia, and commanded to fraight a very faire ſhip: ſo taking their leaue, and ſhipping themſelues, they had a pleaſaunt and peaceable winde, which brought them vnto the hauen Pireo in Grecia, whereas they went all a ſhoare: and all of them twice horſe ſauing the great Gyaunt, who trauailed on foot ſo they twice theyr way towards Conſtantinople. And when they came within two miles of it, nigh vnto a great houſe of pleaſure, whereas the Empreſſe was at that time. In the middeſt of the way, they ſaw two knights, which were in a very great and well foughten battaile. Whereas we will leaue them, for to tell you what the Moriſco, King of Mauritania did, in the place whereas wee left him.

¶ How that the two Empreſſes went for to recreate themſelues vnto a houſe of pleaſure, and what happened vnto them in that iourney. And how the King of Mauritania found them in their paſtimes, and knowing who they were, hee would haue laid hold vpon the Empreſſe Briana. Cap. 27.

Before in the hiſtorie, if you do remember, the fierce Lord Brufaldoro came vnto the place whereas a company of Ladyes and damſells were, whereas hée ſtayed to looke and behold them: and with them were ſitting knights of a good diſpoſition, and well proportioned. At which time as wee began to intreate of them, I did not tell you who they were: but now you ſhall vnderſtand, that they were the two Empreſſes of Conſtantinople and Trapiſond, who were come vnto that houſe of pleaſure for to recreate themſelues, which was very nigh vnto a faire village. And the occaſion of this theyr going forth, was the great eſteemed Queene of Lira, (of whom till now our hiſtorie hath made no mention, nor of hir ſurpaſſing excellencie, but hath referred them till time did ſerue.) Shée béeing many times with the Empreſſe Claridiana, heard

heard hir tell of some feates of Knighthode that had passed by hir, the which the Quæne with great contentment gaue eare vnto, imagining within hir selfe to bée of as good disposition, & haue as much strength as shée, yea, and rather more: and knowing that hir strength was much, shée purposed very secretly to proue hir selfe. and taking this place (whether as they went to recreate themselues) to bée very fit for to performe hir will, with all secrecie in the world, shée commanded that hir armour (which Lirgandeo had presented vnto hir) should bée carried thether, which was fulfilled & done by the damosells, for that they all had a great delight to pleasure & serue hir, shée was of them so welbeloued, and hir excellent vertues deserued no lesse. So when they were come vnto the house of pleasure, shée went forth to recreate hir selfe with two Ladies towards a fountaine somewhat out of the way, whereas the Empres & hir Ladies were set downe. And for that the Empresse Claridiana did vnderstand, (whether by hir owne imagination, or that Lirgandeo had aduised hir) that in such place commonly doth fall out some aduentures, shée commaunded to giue vnto hir, hir armour, which shée caused to bée brought vnto that house: and whilest shée was arming, came the Moore Brusaldoro, thether: who séeing so faire a company, had a great desire to know who they were, and comming vnto a damsell which was thereby, speaking with great courtesie, hée sayd. Damosell let mée obtaine I pray you, so much fauour at your hands, that you will tell mée who they bée that are in this fayre company. This Damsell séeing that with so great curtesie and good manners he did request hir, & béeing a knight of so good disposition, she sayd. Sir knight, they bée the Empresse of Grecia and hir Ladyes, which are come to this place to recreate themselues: and haue brought bether for their sauegard these well proportioned knights. When the Moore vnderstood that there was the Empresse of Grecia, ther entered straight way many things in his imagination, and many thoughts troubled his minde, till such time, as hée determined to dwe that, which I will tell you.

So

So with a determined purpose he came vnto the place wher as the Empresse was: and without saying any worde, hee toke hir by the arme, and with great strength lift hir vp, till hee had hir on his saddle bow beefore him, and tourning his horse about he toke his way towards that place, from whence he came, with purpose to imbarke himselfe againe, in that Ship in which hee came thether, and so to carrie hir away: but the noyse and shrikes of the Ladyes and Damosells were so pitifull and lowde, that there came vnto them the knights that were dispersed abroad in the forrest and other places. And when they came, and saw all that had passed, they altogether followed the Moore, so fast as theyr horse could run: and in a short time they came for to take away his bootie, so that whether hee would or not, hee was driuen to let hir goe, for to defend himself from the blowes which the knights layde on him, who on the one side & on the other, began to strike fiercely at him: but hee made no more reckoning of them, then the huge and mightye Rocke doth of the troublesome waues of the seas, beating against it continually. Euen so were the blowes which the Greeke knights stroke vpon the Pagan, who seeing himselfe hindered of his purpose, drew out his sword, and stroke one of those knights such a blow vpon the shoulder, that hee cut him downe to the girdle, so that hee fell downe dead to the ground: and not content heerewith, but began so to beestur himselfe, that in a small time, hee seperated them all, some slaine & some verye sore hurt & wounded. In this time, that these knights were in their battaile, the Empresse Claridiano was armed, and set vppon a mightie strong horse, and came with great yre, and sayde. Oh infernall Pagan, what diuell was that, which made thee so bolde with those vyle & wicked hands to come and take holde of the Empresse: and in sayeng these words, shee drew out hir sword, and stroke him such a blow vppon the helme, that shee made him bow his head vpon his breast: but strayght wayes the Pagan came to himselfe, and firming his fete in his stirroppes hee made hir answere, with a blow no lesse furious then that

that

that he had receiued. So ther began one of the best foughten battailes that ever was betweene two knightes. The Empresse when shee saw her selfe cleare out of the handes of the Moze, got on the one side, and sate downe vppon the greene hearbs and did behold the battaile. All the Ladyes & Damosells when they saw her at liberty, ranne vnto the place whereas she was, and in small time they had compassed her with a milde lamentation. At the same time out of the thickest of the Forrest came forth a knight very well armed, with greene armour, all to be spotted with Lillies, and his shalde of the same manner, but in the middest thereof was painted a hand which seemed to be in a lake of water, holding in it a Lilly flower. And as hee saw that furious battaile, he went vnto one of the Ladies, and with a gratious courtesie hee demaunded the occasion ther of. The effect thereof shee tolde, and declared vnto him which was the knight that was in the Empresse defence. At this time the battaile was so kindled, that with the furious blowes that were giuen, it had bene sufficient to haue cut a rock in peeces. This strong Empresse was so wrathfull, that her battaile was more gouerned by yre then by pollicie, and with the great choller that she had, shee stroke the Pagan so terrible a blow, that he fell downe vpon his horse neck, without any remembraunce, and with the sound of that terrible blow the horse was somewhat feared, in such sort, that he carried his master a while about the field. The Empres following him with her light horse, thinking that she hadde made an end of the battaile, when that in the middest of her course, the Moze came to himselfe againe, and with madnesse, he somed at the mouth, and beginning to vse his accustomed cursings against Mahomet. And recouering his sword, taking it fast in both his hands, hee went towards the Empresse Claridiana, threatning her with a furious blowe.

The Empresse who saw the blow comming, shee lift vp her shelde to receiue it therewith, the blow fell so terri-

ble thereon, that it parted it in two peces, and lighted on hir healme in such great force and furie, that it made hir to fall backwards vpon the crouper of hir horse without anie feeling, voiding much blood out of hir visour, with which blow the horse was scarred, and ranne rounde about the field, the which when the Pagan saw, he followed after the Empresse, as the hauke, when you haue taken of hir hood, discouering the Heron, with great furye flieth at hir: euen so went this Moore saying. Now will I se Empresse, whether all the strength of this knight be sufficient for to hinder me, that I carry thee not into a place, where Mahomet shall not be able to deliuer thee, nor take thee out of my hands.

Then the gentle Knight of the Lillyes, did put himselfe before the Empresse, and sayd. Stande thou proud Pagan, for first before thou dost that which thou thinkest to doe, it standeth thee in hand to loke to thy selfe, and in saying these words, he drew out his sword, and stroke him such an ouerthwart blow vppon the visour of his healme, that hee was ready to fall downe on the other side, and with the strength thereof, it depriued him of his sight, and after that he stroke another blow on the other side, that the Moore was not able to make any defence, but that he fell downe vpon his horse head. The Moore beeing kindled with great madnesse, to see two such mightie blowes giuen him, and he not able to make any defence, when hee was come to himselfe he went against his aduersary with his sword fast in both his hands who was in the same sort tarrying for him: & they strake both together such terrible blowes, that both of them were constrained to imbrace their horse neckes for not falling: but setteling themselues again, they recouered their swords, and pressed the one against the other, as commonlye the wilde Bulls doe in their fight, with the like yre these two ioyned together, making one of the most perilious battells in the worlde, striking one another whereas they might do most harme.

It

It was so much without pittye, and with so furious wrath, as though it had beene two Lyons, and giuing such notable blowes, and battering of the copper and yron with such great noise, that it did not onely glow in the eares of those Ladies and the rest that were looking on, but the mountaines there about were moued with compassion and pitie, to see their great crueltie one toward another. At this time the Empresse Claridiana was come to hir selfe, and when she remembred the great peril in the which she was, she called vnto God for his helpe, and tourning about hir light horse with so great swiftnesse, that wheresoeuer he did put his foote, there was no signe seene, shee came vnto the place whereas the battaile was. The Knight with the golden Lylyes with a high voice saide. Most mightie and Emperiall Lady, take you the Empresse and carrie hir awaye, and leaue hir in safetie, and let mee alone to punish this vncourteous Knight.

Then the Empresse and all hir Ladies did call hir and sayd, Mahaunt and worthy Lady, prouide to set vs at libertie, where we may be out of daunger, that you may retourne in time to helpe this Knight that hath done vs so much good. The Empres consented herevnto at their requests, and so taking their palfraies, they went with great haste vnto the Village. But when the Pagan did vnderstand, that it was a woman, which had brought him to so great extremitie, with a great noyse hee sayde. Oh vile Mahomet, false, and of a base kinde: for thou, to do mee more euill and shame, hast caused me to enter into battile with a woman, who hath brought me into this necessitie. Oh traytor, and falsifier of thy faith, come downe from the Cottage whereas thou art, and I will giue thée to vnderstand, that thou thy selfe with all thy might shalt not be able so much to anger me, in that thou hast so despitefully for my dishonour and shame, put mée in battayle before a woman. The gentle knight with the Lillyes to those words sayde.

Hold thy peace Pagan and be still, and speake not so proudly, whereas in respect thereof thou shalt not bee feared: for heere I do certifie thee, that the Empresse Claridiana hath brought into subiection many better then thou art, and made them to stoope. And for that thou shalt understand how little thou art esteemed in Greece, and how much more thou maist complaine thy vnhappinesse, know that I am likewise a woman as she is, and am called Archisilora Queene of Lira, and with the strength of my armes, I hope to cut off his wretched head from thy accursed shoulders. And it was very true which was spoken, for when she went away from the company of the Ladies, she went to arme her selfe, with purpose to demaund battaile of the Empresse Claridiana, but when she came forth, shee found them as you haue already heard.

The Pagan could be no more angry and wrathfull then he was, and without speaking any word, he turned & stroke very strongly at the Queene, who with no lesse fury defended her selfe, and returned his blowes with both her hands, that it made a meruailous noyse. At this present time approched the two lights of all knighthood, the Emperour of Grecia and his sonne, and with them the Graunt and the rest of the Princes that came with them. You shall vnderstand that these were the two knights, that in the high way they founde in cruell battaile, and meruailing very much at the power that was in the two warriours, they stayed to behold them, not knowing who they were. The Knight of the Sunne who had his eies more fixed on them then the rest, did know the Pagan, as one which had first proued his furious force, & turning vnto ỳ Emperor his father he told him all that which had hapned vnto him in the fierce battaile which he hadde fought before with him in Fraunce.

Then they esteemed much the knight with the Lilies, to see how well and how valiantly he did behaue himselfe, not onely in this subtill defence, which against his aduersary he made, but also his pollicie hee made in offending his enemie.

So

So the knight of the Sunne with the great desire that hée had to reuenge himselfe on the Pagan, moued his horse towardes him. At which time there came forth of the village a Knight with white armour, all full of Garlands of gold, made by subtill art. Likewise his shælde was white, and ther was painted on it an Emperiall head, which shewed as though it had bæne cut off with a cruell knife, the throat all to bæ raued with blood, verie artificially wrought, and when hæ saw the battaile, he put himselfe to behold them, at such time as the valiaunt Græke approched vnto the two knights that were in battaile for to speake with them and hæ said: Worthie knight with the Lyllyes, for courtesies sake (if this battaile be of small importaunce) that thou wouldest let mæ alone with this Pagan, for that I haue a iust quarrell against him. This excellent Ladie looking vpon the knight of the Sunne as one which had neuer seene him, meruailing much at his fayre disposition, and replied, saying: I would bæ verie glad sir Knight, for your great curtesie and gentle demeanour, to leaue to you the battaile, if the occasion were not of so great waight. Therefore I doe desire you that you would stand aside, for if my successe fall out vnfortunatly, ther will time enough remaine, for to execute your anger. The Moore did well vnderstand the demaunde of the Knight of the Sunne, and knew him verye well to be the same that gaue him the order of knighthood, and when hæ saw him, hæ roared like a furious Lyon, saying: Oh vile and base Knight, to whom Mahomet hath giuen more power and strength then hæ hath himselfe, come, come, and bring with thæ in company all these that bæ ther with thæ, for of all you together I doe esteeme nothing at all, and in saying these words, hæ prested vnto the Knight of the Sunne, very fiercely and with great courage the knight of the Sunne met him in the way, and put himselfe before the Mueene, but this excellent Lady with great lightnesse returned and did recouer hir standing, and said vnto him.

Knight, bæ not so farre out of measure, to giue ease

and helpe vnto them that giue thée no thankes for it. But the Prince who was then burning with wrath, retourned againe by the left side to put himselfe before hir, and gaue the Pagan so terrible a blow that hée made all his bodie to shake. The knight with the Lillyes did put himselfe againe before and saide. In an euill houre doest thou vse this great vncurtesie with one that thou doest not know. The fearce Pagan in all this time was not idle, but at such time as the Quæne did crosse the waye for to take hir rome, the Pagan stroke hir so stronglye, that it lacked but a little, that she fell not from hir horse to the ground. The knight with the Emperiall head when hee saw that, set his spurres to his horse, and said.

O men of small estimation, come hether to mée one of you, and doe not occupie your selues in such controuersies. And with saying these and such like wordes, hæ stroke the Quæne such a blow, that hée made hir teeth to chatter in hir head, in such sort, that shée had almost lost hir feeling, but hée had no cause to boast himselfe verye much of that blow, for that quickly shæ returned his salutation with so great strength, that shæ gaue him well to vnderstand hir couragious force. Now there beganne a rigorous battaile, and the Knight of the Sun remained alone with the Pagan: Oh wise and warrelyke Eliza, giue mæ to drinke of that water which the nine sisters did discouer, that by the helpe of that swæt liquor I may make sharpe my rude tongue, so that mixing the speach of Mercurie with the prowesse of Mars, I may vnfolde this furious battayle which these foure knightes made, who with exceeding and wonderfull blowes stroke one another, without any ceasing, that they made them whether they would or no. to incline their bodies to their horse head, without anye feeling. In this sorte continued these valyaunt and warlyke Knightes a good space, till such time as the Empresse Claridiana came in great hast, running with hir light horse, and making a great noise, without any consideration, but onely to bæ reuenged on the Pagan and said.

Giue

Giue rome, giue rome, for this battaile doth belong vnto mee to make an end thereof. And without anie more speaking she put hir selfe before the Knight of the Sunne, and beganne to lay on the Pagan with hir furious blowes. The Pagan was nothing abashed at that, but as one which had strength and courage inough, hee receiued them. Then the knight of the Sunne with great anger saide. Tell mee knight what is the cause which hath moued thee to offer such like villanie. This womanly warriour returned vnto him, and straight way shee did know him to bee the Knight of the Sunne. Heere all you true louers may iudge the great ioy that shee receiued when shee beheld before hir, him who with so great loue she loued, and the great desire she had to heare of him. So she replied with very amorous words, and saide.

My deere and welbeloued Lord, seeing that fortune hath brought you hether at this instaunt, procure ioyntly with your reuengement to worke mine against this Pagan. Then the knight of the Sunne did know that it was his Ladye, wherewith his strength increased, and also his anger, vnderstanding that the Pagan had vsed discurtesie agaynst hir, and said: How is this thou false Pagan, that thou hast ben so hardie, for to anger and disquiet such a Ladie: Tarry, for heere I will giue thee thy reward according vnto thy deserts. And with a new strength and valiant courage he pressed forwards. This pagan was amazed in seeing his enimie to shew more strength & better courage, which continually increased more and more, yet for all that hee shewed no kinde of faintnesse, but rather he strok at him such a terrible blowes and with so great strength, as at any time before hee had not done the like. At this time the Emperour, (which till that time did beholde all that had passed, and suffered not himselfe to be knowen vnto any, by reason that he continually had his healme on his head) pulled off the same, that the more better to his contentment he might see and behold this furious battayle. Then the people of the Village

which wer come forth for to see the battaile, when they saw the Emperours face and knew him, they altogether with a great shoute saide. Oh happie is the day, in the which wee haue seene the excellent face of our renowmed Emperour, & ther with altogether they ran to him for to kisse his hands, and he which could first come vnto him, he thought himselfe most happiest. For he was the best beloued Prince amongest his subiects in all the world. Many of them with great hast went to tell the Empresse, for to get a rewarde. The Pagan by the great striuing and rusling of the people, vnderstood that the Emperour was ther, and thought within himselfe, that ther hee could get no honour, wherefore with great furie he lift vp his sworde, and griping it fast in his hand, he stretched himselfe in his stirrops all þ euer he could and strake such a terrible and furious blow vpon the helme of the knight of the Sunne, that without any seeling he fell vpon his horse crupper: when he saw him in that traunce, hee set spurs to his horse, and made him to runne like the winde through the middest of all the people, that were looking on the battell, and like as a Lyon in the mountaynes of Libia, whose breast is wounded by the stout hunts man, leaning his darte in him, and besprinkeling all the grasse, with his bloud, which he doth expell from him without any feare, and tearing in peeces the dart, that was cause of al his harme, he giueth great and horrible roarings with his bloudie mouth, and bristeling vp his rugged haire. So with like furie this valiant Pagan past thorough amongest the people that were there, so that some hee threw downe from their horse, and others he left verie sore hurt, and with this perilous assault he put himselfe into the thicke woods. The Queene which was fighting with the knight of the Emperiall head, did see very well, how that the Moore was escaped, and with the great anger which shee had to see him runne away without taking reuengement of him, shee gaue so terrible a blow vnto her aduersarye that it made him to ioyne his head with his breast, and left him without anye remembraunce, and without any more tarrying, shee went

and

and followed the Pagan. The knight of the Sunne, who at this time was come to himselfe, and had fully recouered his remembrance, and could not see his enimie, he demaunded for him. And there it was tolde him of his desperate running away. The Prince would haue followed him, if the Emperour had not letted him. Likewise the knight with the Emperiall head came againe vnto himselfe, and thinking to haue made paimẽt of that blow vnto his aduersary, hee looked round about and could not see him, and beholding all the rest which were in that company, hee saw that they were all well content and very ioyfull, and full of pleasure, wherefore without any more tarrying hee put himselfe into the forrest, leauing the Emperour and all the rest, verie desirous to know who hee was, as also of the knight of the Lillyes: the which was straight way told him by a Damosell of the Queenes, at the which they all remained much amazed, iudging it to bee one of the most notable things, that was in all the world. The Empresse when shee vnderstood the good newes, straight way went forth for to see the Emperour, with so much ioye and pleasure, that shee scantly knew whereas shee was: & when shee came to cast her armes for to imbrace him shee saide. My Lord, I doe not compare this imbracing vnto that, which an vncurteous knight did giue mee not long since The Emperour did receiue her with great loue and gladnesse, and imbracing her harde hee sayd. My louing Lady, let the delight of this, cause you to forget the despite of the other, and yet by it wee haue lost the most excellent Lady in all the world, which is the Queene of Lira. Then did the Emperour declare vnto her all ỹ had past, there in his sight, at the which the Empresse greatly mervailed, and was sorry for her departure: & with ỹ great pleasure shee receiued at the sight of the Emperour, shee did not looke for the famous knight of the Sonne, vntill such time as hee came to kisse her hand: then was all her ioye wholly accomplished. So there they declared vnto the Emperour of the departing of Rosicleere & Brandimardo, & how that they neuer heard any newes of them.

There

There was no leſſe ioy betweene the knight of the Sunne and his ſpouſe, for the one receiued the other with great reioycing. For by reaſon of the water that hee dronke at the fountaine, hee had cleane forgotten & loſt the loue he had to Lindabrides, which was the occaſion of a double delight with his welbeloued Lady. This fayre Empreſſe ſomewhat diſſimuling the ſorrow which ſhee had for the loſſe of hir Children, declared it vnto hir deere beloued ſpouſe, who with no leſſe diſcretion, did giue hir the hearing, not ſuffering hir to know the griefe that hee receiued. but rather comforted hir, and gaue hir to vnderſtande by outward ſhowes, that hee was very wel content of all that had happened, which was vnto hir great and particular ioy and pleaſure. So in this order they went talking together, till they came vnto the village, whereas they were receiued of all the people, with great ioye and reioycings, and with ſundry paſtimes, and there they dyned: and in this ſort they paſſed the reſt of the day.

The next day in the morning they went towards Conſtantinople. and there was not one who ſaw the Emperour and his company but receiued great pleaſure. But Sindera the Dutcheſſe, and Aunt vnto Archiſidora, was greatly greeued for hir abſence. As they trauailed by the way, the knight of the Sunne determined to giue the Emperour to vnderſtand of all the loue that had paſſed betweene him and the Empreſſes Claridiana. So the Emperour when hee vnderſtood it, was nothing ſorrie for that which had paſt, but rather dyd determine to ſende and call for the ſubiects and vaſſals of the Empreſſe, and ſo in publike to marrie them together: yet at that time hee dyd not giue him to vnderſtand of the loſſe of the two children.

So with this and lyke communication, they came vnto the citie, whereas they were receiued, as vnto theyr eſtate appertayned. And at their entering into the Pallaice, there came forth to receiue them, the Princeſſe Tighaſa, and the faire Olinda, who for the diſcontentment which they receiued for the abſence of their knights, would not goe forth of

Con-

Constantinople. What shall I say to you of the Tartarian Zoylo, hée was so out of quiet and troubled to sée the princesse, that hée was almost beside himselfe, and chaunged his coulour, and lyke a man without understanding hée came downe from the Pallaice, making a great noyse: and without taking any rest, he went out of the citie, and with great fury he put himselfe into the woods and wildernesse of Grecia, leauing the sorrowfull Lady with so much care, that if the wise Lirgandeo had not comforted hir, shée thought verely to haue died at that présent time, by whose counsell she was willed to goe and séeke him, and to carrie in company with hir two of hir damosells: and hée promised hir so to remedie hir sorrow, that shée should bée fully satisfied. The which did fal out cleane contrarie: for that the knowledge of man doth little auaile to hinder the will of the Creator of all things. As hereafter shall bée tould you in the third part of this historie.

Now to retourne vnto the great pleasure which the subiects of the Emperour receiued for his comming: yet was in such sort, that they did no other thing but make feates and pastimes. In the meane time whilest they were making all these pastimes in Constantinople, they sent to call the subiectes and vassalles of the Empresse Claridiana, who came straight waye without anye delay: and they which came, were the King of Pontus, and the King Simonia, and the great Duke of Alafonte. Unto whom was declared the whole occasion wherefore they were called. And when they knew that they should obtayne for theyr Lord so royall a Prince, they wer meruailously wel contented and receiued great pleasure: and without any more tarrying they made them sure together, whereat was made great feastes and pastimes. And there hée was sworne Emperour, and they desired them that they would goe & acknowledge their lands and countries, and gaue them to vnderstand, that the long absence of the Empresse was the occasion of many dissentions, wherein some rebellious people dyd bégynne to shew theyr cankered thoughts.

To

To the which they graunted with a very good will, & they carryed with them Tefereo and his vncle. What shall I here declare vnto you of the honorable receiuings & great pastimes and sports which were made vnto them, it were too much here to write, so the possession of all the Empyre was giuen vnto thē, wheras they determined to take their rest, till such time as fortune caused the contrarie, wheras they reigned with ỳ most highest fame that euer any other obtained. And here we will leaue them till time serueth, and begin to declare of the high and worthie feates of the fayre Archisilora, the Quene of Lira.

¶ How the worthie Queene Archisilora was gone to pursue the Pagan, and of that which happened in the way of hir battayle. Chap. 28.



THE worthie Quene of Lyra which with great hast followed after the Pagan, striking with hir spurres hir light horse (who was without fault of all that had past) yet all was in vaine for to finde the More, but hir swiftnes was like vnto a furious thunder bolt, for she traueled in such great hast, ỳ there was no signe sene where hir horse did tread: but all hir labor was in vaine, for that shee went cleane contrarie vnto the way which the Pagan went. but as the thought of this ireful Lady was for no other thing, but to procure to take him, shee neuer left this hir furious course, till such time as shee came vnto the sea side. wheras for all ỳ fury she was forced to stay: neuertheless shee looked round about hir on euery side to see if shee could discouer or finde him, whom with so great desire shee sought, and in looking about hir, shee saw come forth frō that part of the forrest a damosel, who was very fayre, & saluted the Queene very courteously, who returned againe hir salutation, and asked hir, saying: Fayre Damosell, can you tell mee any tidings of a knight ỳ should come this way, all in white armour. And what is it that you

you would with this knight, answered the damsell: it may bee, that if you will grant me a thing that I will aske you) that I will carry you into a place wheras you shall see him. Heere I doe grant it thee said the Queene: You shal understand, that in great hast hee doth navigate by sea, said the damsell, therefore I doe desire thee (if thou wilt follow mee) to put thy selfe in a barke with mee which is heere by. The Queene loking towards that part wheras the damsell did shew hir, saw the Barke which was very fayre and great. The Damsell lighted from hir palfrate, and put hir selfe in the barke, and saide: Knight with the Lillyes, if thou wilt have that thou seekest, it behoueth thee to enter into this Barke with mee, that I carrie thee whereas thou shalt lose on a sodaine thy great mirth and gladnesse, thy hart remaining in so great captiuitie, that the best remedie that thou shalt conceiue, shal be to desire the death. This faire ladie had no regard to demand the secrets of those words, as she which made no reckoning of whatsoeuer should happen, neither did esteeme it, but without any more wordes, shee lighted from hir horse, & leading him by the bridle, shee put hir selfe into the Barke, hee was not so sone entred in, but as the peece of ordinaunce which by ý force of kindling the powder, casteth out the pellet with great force: with no lesse fury the barke shooued from the shore side. The damsel whē shee saw hir selfe at the Sea, she sayd: Gracious Lady, doe you know mee. The queene turned about to behold hir, and beholding hir well, shee saw that it was the wyse Lyrgandeo, at the which she found hir self sore troubled, Lyrgandeo seeing that shee dyd know him, saide: Worthie Ladie, feare you nothing in this iourney, for by mee ý shalt bee carried whereas thy fame shal be exalted, til such time as the braue Lyon doth rob thy hart, & thou remaining ouercome, shalt ouercome one of the best knights in all the world. And making an ende of these reasons, he banished away, shee knew not how: And although the Queene remained somewhat pacified, with that which Lyrgandeo had sayde, yet for all that, shee dyd not let to thinke and muse of his wordes, and

that

that very much: so straight way came to hir remembrance the furious battaile of the Pagan, and likewise shee considered of the fury of the knight of the Emperiall head, and seeing that shee could not ouercome them, shee remayned verie sorrowfull, and lifting vp hir eyes vnto heauen, with great ire shee blaspheamed agaynst hir gods and blamed much the wise Lyrgandeo for his negligence, but when shee called to remembrance the words of Lyrgandeo, and what hee had sayde, shee altered hir minde and chaunged hir thoughtes, and beganne a new to consider of the sharp cutting sword of the Mauritanian, which more entred into hir heart, then the wilde Boares tooth in the dainty bodie of the fayre Adonis. In this manner this solitarie Queene of Lyra dyd nauigate foure dayes, & was so pensiue in thought, that shee forgot and had no remembraunce to refresh hir selfe in eating, but the wise Lyrgandeo had alwaies a great care that shee should bee serued verie daintely, not knowing who did serue hir. So the fift day very earely in the morning shee discouered lande towardes hir left hande, and the barke in great hast and with verie much swiftnesse made hir waye thether. Shee went so fast, that almost shee had no time to arme hir selfe before that the Barke came vnto the shoare, where shee might most at ease disimbarke hir selfe, according vnto the will of the wise man. So when they were at the shoare, shee toke hir horse by the bridle and went a lande, and without putting hir foote into the Stirop, shee leaped into the Saddle, and guided hir selfe into a narrow way, all garnished with trees of diuerse sorts, whereas the chirping birds dyd make theyr accustomed songes without feare of any man to molest them. Amongst the which trees there dyd not lacke the Sallowes, nourished by Alciades, nor the greene Lawrell, so much estéemed of glistering Appollo, nor the sweet Myrtle Tree hallowed by Venus, nor the high Cypres, so much regarded of Cupide, nor the harde Oake, so much desired of Mars, nor the Pine apple tree, which Iupiter doth cause to flourish. Of all the which this mightie Queene did séele and had great delight, iudge-

ing

ing it to bée the habitation of the Gods, for that the Sunne with his glittering beames dyd passe through those greene and pleasaunt trees, without any let or hinderaunce of the heauens, by reason of their clérenesse, with a verie soft and pittering winde, shaking all those grécne leaues, which dyd make so sweet a noyse that it seemed rather celestiall then terrestriall, and a thousand little brookes which ranne vpon the enamelled ground, making sundry fine workes and deuises, by their crooked runninges and tourninges, and ioyening one water with another, with a very gentle meeting, not making any great noyse. This fayre Ladie béing rauished at the sight of this celestiall habitation, had not any regard at all, whether that hir horse went in the right way or not. And trauailing in this sort shée went forwardes till shée came into a meruailous great and wide medow, béing of so great fayrenesse, that I am not with my penne able to paint out the excellency thereof. Whereas was féeding both wilde and tame Hartes, adorned with their great and cragged hornes. Likewise the furious wilde Boare, the simple Connes, and the enuious Beare, with the fierce Lyon, altogether were féeding with so great friendshippe, as to the contrarie by Nature they are enemies. The Ladye was in such a dump to see and beholde the great difference that was, & the great loue betweene these wilde and tame beasts which were there present, that she did not cast vp hir eyes to behold a very fayre and sumptuous Pallace which was in the middest of the meddow, and vppon that sodayne sight shee fell in a musing and dump, as commonly the husband man doth when hee goeth into the wilde fieldes and cragged mountains, to seeke his simple sheepe which he hath lost, or as one finding himselfe in a royal citie, all garnished with rich citizens, of exceeding good behauiour, staieth at euerie doore & corner of ỳ streete, musing at their strange apparell, béing different from that which hée hath béene before in his owne countrie: euen so was this Queene ouercome in hir owne conceite, and amazed in hir imagination, to see so straunge loue, cleane contrarie vnto Nature.

The

The wise Lirgandeo doth write, for that hée would not put ỳ reader in admiration, he wold not tel all which he might of this strange worke manship, but part thereof, which is requisit to this our historie. Towards that part of the principal gate, and right before the pallace there appeared twelue pinacles of so great and mighty height, that the pyramides of Aegypt were verie low in comparison to them, in such sort, that whosoeuer would looke on them, was scant able with his sight to comprehend the height, and they were all made of different coulours of stone: downe below vnder the towre there was an arch, with a gate, which seemed to be of Diamond, and all was compassed about with a great moat, being of so great deapth, that they thought it to reach to ỳ middest of the earth, & it was almost two hundreth paces broade, and euerie gate had his drawne bridge, all made of bords very red, which seemed as though they had béene all bathed in bloud, and on the vtter parts of all this, ther was a piller of Iasper stone, at the which there hanged a horne, which seemed to hée of a Diamond all wrought full of precious stones of a strange work, the which was of great valour, & garnished with chaines of gold that were made fast vnto it, whereat hung a Parchment as white as the snow, wherein was written certaine Greeke Letters which wer all red, and reading of them, she saw the words were these.

At such time as the great matrone increasing with hir excellencie the fame of the Greeke bloud, with a furious sound, that blowing of this horne he shall be accepted with great cõtentment of the *Aegyptian* (but with braiding and reuiling at one time or other) And giuing hope of that which is certain, he shal come to inioy of the future time to his perpetual fame.

Lyrgandeo for to explaine the misterie of this speech, put in euery demaund the exposition, declaring what it was, with the title in the Greeke tongue, and for that the reader may the better vnderstand it, he hath declared them in ỳ vulgar tongue. So when the excellent Lady had read it, she stayed

to

to beeholde the excellencie of the workmanship of the horne, and the great riches thereof, and taking of it in hir hand, she saw that round about it, there were certayne letters, which being read, she foūd it to be thus: In sounding of me the gate shall be opened to thee. The which when shee vnderstoode, without any more tarrying she toke that rich horne and set it vnto hir mouth, and began to sound it, the which sound was verie shrill to be heard, she had scarce made an end of blowing, when that the gate was open. The Quæne when shee saw it open passed the draw bridge, and entered within the gate into ỳ pallace, till she came vnto a great open court, which was compassed about with thræ rowes of very faire railes, on the which ther was leaning on their breasts many knightes and Damosels meruailous richly apparelled, who when they saw hir within the court, with great hast they vanished away. And in the middest of the Court ther was a verie fayre træ, whose boughes were spread all abroad, & it was of great riches, for that the boughes were, some of golde, and others of very fine siluer, & enamelled with great subtiltie, and when she approched to it, the better to sée the riches, shee saw in the bodie thereof a table which was all of golde, wherein was ingraued this that followeth.

Vnto that knight, to whom is granted the entering into this sumptuous pallace, if it be so that thou hast so much prowesse as to breake one of the braunches of gold, which is vpon this tree, then hast thou made an end and fully concluded all that which thou seest heere: but if thou canst not obtaine to breake it, then laying holde vppon that which is of Siluer, and if by thy prowesse thou doest breake that, it shall bee a token, that hee which shall conclude this aduenture is alreadie borne: and if it bee so, that thy force and strength is insufficient to doe either of those, then thou shalt be throwen from it lyke a vile and naughtie person.

When she had read this ingraued superscription, without any more tarrying, but euen on horse backe as she was,

she drew nigh vnto the golden boughes, and presently laide hold vpon one of them, with so much strength that she bowed it downe vnto the body of the trée, but all hir labour was in vaine, for that they who should conclude this enterprise, ought to be a man and not a woman. And while shée persevered in this hir purpose, shée heard a voice which saide: Wo be vnto me, wherfore do you in this manner so greatly tormẽt me, let not the coueting of this bough ouercome thée: let all this euill suffice thée which thou hast ben the occasion of to me. For perswade thy selfe it shall not profit thée any thing. Behold I am Alpatrafio the vnfortunate Emperour of Aegipt, who for that I was a murtherer vnto my owne daughter, I doe suffer héere this torment. This worthie Quéene did finde great alteration in hir selfe to heare so lamentable a voice, & letting go the braunch out of hir hands, shée loked about to sée who it should bée that spake those dolefull wordes, but shée could not obtaine to the sight of any one: and for to proue and sée if it would againe speake, she toke the braunch once more in hir hand, and pulled it with double furie and with so great strength, that almost shée remained hanging by it as shée was on horsebacke, wherein she got litle honour, for that she did no more then at the first time. So shée stayed to heare what the voyce would saye, which vttered this speech: O grædie Knight, why doest thou contend in such vnsatiable couetousnesse, what dost thou thunk that this siluer is not a sufficient treasure? Héere I giue thée to vnderstand that thy mallice shall not haue so much strength for to atchieue to the end of that which the body of the trée hath declared vnto thée. Therfore get thée hence, & let me alone with this my sorrowfull aduenture, for that ther be many more besides thy selfe which doe torment me, & let this content thée, that by thy arme I am all bathed in bloud. This valyaunt Quéene who was attendaunt vnto all that was spoken, she did perceiue that the sound of the voice came forth of the bodie of the trée, and not béeing then certified who that should bée which

spake,

spake, shée asked, Who art thou, that in so monstrous a figure had requested me to haue compassion? Thou shalt vnderstand, that by prouing at thy braunch, I well hoped to haue made an end of this inchauntment, but this braunch of gold hath resisted mée verie much, therefore I will proue this other which is of siluer, and without tarrieng to heare hir answere, shée laide holde on the braunch with so great furie, that she tore off it from the trée, the braunch remayning in hir hands: and out of the place from whence it was torne, ther issued out a streme of bloud, that all to be sprinkled the Muanes armour, in such sort, that it neuer lost the coulour, and when she had torne it away she heard the voice with a lamentable cry to say: O Knight, the cause of my great affliction: O merciless man, that without pitie hast thus wounded me? What did moue thée so cruelly to teare off these my sorrowfull white haires, leaving me all to be bathed in my redde bloud, make an end to kill me with thy cruell sword, for that by death I shall finish the suffering of these cruell torments, which I passe heere, and in so doing I will take thée for pitifull: O cruell Knight, make an end of this worke which thou hast begunne, and giue mee heere the death. This disquieted Quéene answered.

I doe not determine to doe any such thing, but rather if thou deseruest this torment, suffer it contentedly till such time as thy aduenture come to conclusion. And so without tarrying any longer to heare an answere, shee went towardes a doore which stode wide open on the one side of the Court, and comming thether, immediatly she saw that ther was a paire of stayres, and the steppes thereof went tourning vpwards like vnto a Snaile, and with the great desire that she had to know whether it went, shee alighted forthwith from hir horse and went vp the stayres, which brought hir into a verie great and large hall, whereas she did behold on both sides much people, who altogether made a great and sorrowfull lamentation, and comming nigh vnto them to see what was the occasion of their heauinesse,

shée saw laid along vpon a blacke carpet two dead knights well proportioned and of great beauty, and going more nérer to sée if she could know them, shée knew straight one of them to be the Empresse Claridiana, but the other shée did not know, for that shée had neuer séene him, but by the lamentable words which were spoken by an emperour which was at the head of them, shée vnderstoode that it should bée the knight of the Sunne, and he which made that great lamentation was the Emperour his Father, at the which shée remained greatly amazed, and hearkening vnto that which the Emperour saide, shée heard that hée complained on Fortune, saying: Oh fortune that hath so persecuted me: Oh my sonne Alfebo, flowre of all chiualrie, is it possible that there was so much power and strength in the people of Africa that they haue depriued thée of thy life, and giuen thy bodie to rest on the colde earth: With no lesse complaint this excellent quéene did celebrate that of the Emperour. And if at that présent shée had séene, that which afterward she did sée, (as shall bée told you in the third booke of this historie) much more she would haue complained. Then she went vnto the other side of the hall to know the occasion of that grieuous complaint, she saw likewise ỹ they mourned ouer other two knights, & plainely she did know one of them to be Rosicleer, but the other she did not know for that it was the King Sacridoro, whom shée had neuer séene, for at such time as the quéene came to Grecia, he was gone to his owne kingdome to take his ease, and the chiefe of those which did lament & mourne ouer Rosicleer, she knew to be his mother the Empresse of Grecia, who with deadly griefe and anguish sayde: Oh my sonne, the cause of this my bitter torment, thou my son art in continuall rest, and hast left thy sorrowfull mother in continuall lamentation: Oh wounded hart, what sorrowfull & bitter daies shalt thou passe without anye contentment: ah my Rosicleer, wherfore wert thou so cruel that thou wouldest not call me thy sorrowful mother, that in this traunce she might haue borne thée company. The valiaunt Quéene felt no lesse sorrow and griefe to sée this

this second company, then at the sight of the first, but the lamentable and sorrowful words which the Empresse uttered did moue hir to beare hir company, if that at that time shee had not sæne come forth at a doze which was in the hall, a Ladie, seeming to be of great authorite, accompanied with two faire Nymphs, all apparelled in russet Satten, pinked & cut, and lined with græne Satten, which coulours were very pleasant, and greatly delighted the sight. And when shée came nigh vnto the quéene she said: Knight, whosoeuer thou art, and dost shew thy selfe to be so furious, why doest thou hearken and giue eare vnto this lamention: tell mée out of hand, without any farther delay who thou art, & wherefore thou commest hether, for that thou shalt vnderstand ẏ this place is prohibited to all knightes, except he first bring with him some signe or token of ẏ braunch of ẏ trée, whereas he who was murtherer to his owne daughter is inchanted: so ẏ if it hath ben thy fortune to atchieue ẏ cutting either of the braunch of gold or siluer, shew it mée forthwith, if not, vnderstand that thou shalt die a terrible death. This worthy Quéene who with a sober countenaunce gaue eare vnto ẏ sayings of the Lady, & béeholding much hir great sobrietie: likewise the beautye of those which bare hir companye, held vp the braunch of siluer in hir hand, and with a high voice she said: Lady, I would not haue ben so bolde to haue approched hether, except I had brought with mée the token which you speake off: therfore I ought not to incurre the paine prouided, behold is this it which you sée, and therwith she shewed hir braunch. The Lady when she knew that to be ẏ braunch of the trée that she spake of, did abate hir anger that she before had, and shewed a merrie countenance, and taking hir right hand from the shoulder of the Nimph, she laid hold on the armed hand of the quéene, and holding it very fast, shee said: Excellent Ladie, many dayes past I was giuen to vnderstand of thy great worthinesse, and that thou shouldest giue some contentment vnto ẏ afflicted harts, wherefore come with mée & I will shew thee my habitation, for that vnto thee the sight hath bæne graunted, and not

vnto any other: come on Ladie and reioyce thy selfe in the sight of that which hereafter shall come to passe, without all doubt. And in saying these wordes shee carried him in at the same doore whereas shee came forth in great hast, for that she did know the tenderneſſe of his hart which was moued by the lamentation she heard, and ther shewed vnto him great riches and very faire buildinges, but especially shee carried him into a very faire and foure square Court, which had at euery corner foure pillers, and vpon the toppe of either of them an Image, meruailously wrought, and euery one of them had his title written what it did signifie, and she tolde him that those which shee had shewed him, were kings and Princes, and famous Lordes, that were ther inchaunted. And how that all that should be made fruſtrate by one of the beſt knights in all the world, who shall bring for his deuice blased on his shelde, a braunch of golde, signifieng the same which shee saw in the firſt Court, in the which was the inchaunted Emperour of Aegipt. Likewise he shall deliuer the daughter of the said Emperour, whom hee supposeth hee hath murthered, and shee was the fairest Damoſell in the whole world. And for that in the end of the third booke of this history shall be declared the reſt, where you shall receiue more contentment in the reading: Lyrgandeo will now goe no farther herein. And telling vnto him these and many other things, they went farther, and passed through verie many and faire halls, the which were adorned with the stories of the notable actes of worthie knights, but in one hall, in the middeſt of a Cloth, shee saw the Picture of a knight of a great stature, who was nine foote in height, and armed with Purple armour, and his sheild of the same coulour, without hauing anye deuice, and his face was verye faire. The Queene could not by anye meanes, but by sight thereof stay a while and beholde his great beautie, and felt within her hart a new and strange wraſtling of loue, which tourned afterwarde into an amorous fire. This Ladie did well perceiue her new imaginations, and with a gracious smiling shee toke him by the hand and

carri-

carried hir out of that Chamber, (although shée could not bring hir ont of hir new conceit) she went out so troubled, that all which the Ladie shewed hir afterwardes, she little respected: and when she thought least shée found hir selfe out of the pallaice, betweene the déepe Moate, and the faire and rich walles, euen as one that had béene new awaked out of his sléepe, and tourning hir selfe vnto the Ladie, dissembling hir new paine shée sayde. Ladie, I doe not desire héere to haue gotten more honour, then in that I haue obtayned the knowledge and secreat of so notable a thing as this which you haue discouered vnto mée, and more to haue atchieued the desert of this braunch, so that by you it be gaunted that I maye carrie it with mée. So the Ladie toke the siluer braunch in hir hand, and made it verie small, to the bignesse of a spanne in length, and put it vpon hir healme, and made it so fast and firme, as though it had bene wrought in by force of workmanshippe, and made it to extend the siluer leaues on the one side & on the other with great subtiltie, that it was a thing to be wondred at. And when she had done this, she said.

Worthie and faire Ladie, the braunch is yours, for that you haue won it, and in token of thy desert thou doest carrie it vpon thy healme, where it shall remaine till such time as by the hands of a fierce Lyon it shall be throwen downe, leauing his part wounded, and he remaining vnto thée submitted. And for to doo thée pleasure Ladie, héere I doe present thée these two Nimphes for to bée at thy commaundement. And so taking hir by the hande, without any more communication she brought hir ouer the bridge to the other side of the Moate, they were not so soone ouer when this Ladie did vanish awaye like the winde, and the Bridge was drawen vp, and she heard within the pallaice a celestiall musicke, and looking that waye whereas shée founded the horne, and towards that gate wherein shée had entered, she saw vppon the piller that was there a Nymph of golde, which seemed to bée verye subtillye wrought. And presently without any more tarrying shée leapt vppon hir horse,

which was brought thether for hir, likewise the two Nimphes vpon two white Palfraies, which was likewise brought for them, and so they take their way towards the sea, without any remembraunce of all that which shée had séene, neither did she thinke of it, till such time as shée dide see the perfect figure of that knight, which she saw in the hal, as shall be told you héereafter. So in great hast this quéene and hir Nimphes trauailed till they were all imbarked in their Barke, wheras they found in the one part thereof very rich roabes. The making and fashion of them, and all the rest that happened shall be told you, when time serueth: and let vs now returne vnto the restoring of the kingdome of Lira, which cost the Prince Brandimardo full déere.

¶How the famous Rosicleer and Brandimardo went to the kingdome of Lira, and of all that had passed in the battaile they had with the Giaunts. Chap. 29.

YOV do well remember, how that the worthy Rosicleer, and that gallant and new Louer Brandimardo, trauailed by sea, towardes the kingdome of Lira, to make battaile with the Gyants that had vsurped the kingdome. The time & winde was so prosperous vnto them, that in a short space they arriued, & toke land in the hauen of the great city of Lyra, without any contradiction. And when they were a land, they determined to send a Page to demaund safeconduct of the Giants, giuing them to vnderstand of their comming. This gallant louer would nedes be the messenger, and therwith mounting vpon a very faire horse, he entered into the Citie, and stayed not till he came vnto the Pallace of the Gyants, but went asking wher there abiding was. And straight way they were giuen to vnderstand thereof by a knight, which sayde, that there was a strange knight which did demaund after them, & comming before them, without shewing anye humilitie or stoping downe his head, he said, Giants, ther are two knights come

into

into the hauen of Lira, to defend ỹ right of the Quéne Archisilora, and they dwe send vnto you to aske safe conducte, for that they may not bée disturbed by any person in these kingdomes but only your selues, who doe pretend by might to make you to acknowledge your euill and naughtinesse. Then Mandroco, who had lesse patience then the other, sayd. I do not know wherefore these vnfortunate Knights will occupie themselues in profering to defend that, which many other would haue done, and yet were neuer able. Goe thy waies, and tel them that they make no tarying to come and receiue their death. Brandimardo, who well beheld their fierce disposition, saw that it was no time to spend words in waste, but to put in practise the execution of ỹ. which they came for, and without any replying vnto their words, hee returned vnto the place whereas hée left the Prince, vnto whom hée declared all that had past. So without any more adoe Rosicleere leaped vpon a mightie horse, and they laced and made fast their helmes, and hanged their shéelds about their neckes, and toke each of them a great speare in their hands, and put themselues in to the Cittie, & rested not till they came into the broad place, which was right against the Pallaice. Their comming thether was at such time as Bulfar and Mandroco came forth of the Pallaice, all ready and prepared for the battaile, and brought in their company a great number of Knights. At that time the place was very full of people, who desired secretly in their hearts, that the strange Knights might winne the victory, that they might bée cleare and at libertie from that great subiection, in the which the Gyants helde them: the which they thought to be almost impossible, considering the great worthinesse and strength that was in ỹ giants. And when they wer altogether in ỹ place, Mandroco with a mild voice said: Miserable knights, at such time as you offered your persons vnto quéen Archisilora, with whom did you think to haue battaile, that you gaue credit, supposing your selues to haue sufficient force to execute your wils. Wherfore if you do now thinck your selues deceiued, wée shall bée heere content to set you

at

at libertie of your former promise, with condition that you shal goe and tel hir, that she ought to send knights of great prowesse and strength, and not such as you are. Then Rosicleer sayde. Thou art very much deceiued Giant, in ỹ thou saist, for wée dyd verie well know with whom wée should haue battaile, and were fully informed thereof, and purpose to take the head frõ thy bodie, in satisfaction of these treasons which thou dost vse. The anger & yre of the Gyaunt was such, that without any more tarrying, with great fury he tourned about his horse, and his father did the like, ỹ two knights also dyd the same. And when they were right the one against the other, at the sound of sundry instruments of warres, they ranne the one against the other, in such sort, that not one of them missed his blow, but made the shiuers of the speares to fly in very small pæces in the aire, without receiuing any griefe. So they altogether returned with their swords in their hands. Rosicleer encountered with Bulfar, for that hée found him next at hand, and pressing vpto him, hée stroke at him very great and beaute blowes, and the Giant rendered him the like. With no lesse fury pressed Brandimardo against his enimie, making a very furious & well foughten battaile. At this time, the fierce Bulfar seeing the great resistance of his aduersarie, threw his sheeld at his backe, and his sonne Mandroco did the like, & both together they stroke such blows at the knights, that without feeling it caused the horse of Rosicleer to giue a tourne in the place, & the lyke happened vnto Brandimardo. Yæe his vnhappy fortune would, that his horse should carrie him thether, whereas Bulfar was, who assailed him at his ease on ỹ one side, and stroke at him with both his hands such an vnmercifull blow, that lighting vpon his helme, which was nére hand as hard as a Diamond, he cut it toyntly with his head, and being very sore hurt this vnhappie knight fell downe to the ground, at such time as the Prince was setling himselfe vpon his horse, & seeing Brandimardo downe, & so much blood running from his head, hée did verely beleeue that hée was dead. Wherewith his rage was so much, that the fire

came

came forth at his visor, and setting spurres to his mightye horse, hee made him to moue like the winde, and sayde with a loude voyce.

O vyle beastes, that so villanously haue slaine him, who is more worth then both of you. Here I doe sweare vnto you by the liuing God to force my power in such sort, that onely w̄ two blowes I will send you vnto hell, which is your habitatiō, & therwith he came vnto Mandroco, who likewise came towards him, & strake him such a blow vpon the helme, that ỳ strength thereof little profited him, for by the fury of his arme he parted it in two peeces together w̄ the head, so that the Gyant fell downe dead to the groūd, & by reason of his great waight, ỳ fall seemed almost to shake the earth. The Gyant Bultar when hee saw his sonne dead, with so desperate a blow, roaring out against his Gods, hee lift vp his sword to strike the Prince: but hee, who had as much policy as prowes, spurred his horse a little forwards, & with a furious leape hee cleared himselfe from that blow, and finding himselfe on the left side of Bultar, hee threw at him so terrible a foyne, that his harnesse deceiued him, and his sword entered into his body vp to the hilts, and at the pulling of his sword out, hee drew out therewith his infernall soule, and he fell downe dead to the ground. Then when the people saw the good successe that theyr desires had, they began to cry out with mightie voyces, saying: Lybertie, Libertie, and ranne vnto the Prince, some kissing his hands, some his skirts of Maile, and some his feete, in such sort they pressed on him that hee could scantly stirre himselfe, but by reason of the great griefe and sorrow which hee had for his friend Brandimardo, who could not receiue anye pleasure at all in this high and mightye victorie: and without any care therof, hee alighted from his horse, and went vnto him, and tooke off his healme, and lifting vp his head vppon his knees, hee called for a linnen cloath, the which was straight waies giuen him, wherewith hee wiped and made clane his face which was of a wanne colour.

Then

Then this weake knight ſomewhat lifting vp his eies, and ſeing himſelfe in the armes of Roſicleer, and vnderſtanding that the battaile was finiſhed, to the honour of his Lady & miſtreſſe, with a feeble & fainting voice he ſaid: Ah my Lord, and perfect friend, heere may you ſee how contrarie fortune hath beene vnto mee, in that ſhee would not conſent that I ſhould reioyce in ỳ triumph of this victorie: it doth not greeue mee to dye, for ỳ it is in defending the right of hir whom I beſt loued. There is nothing that doth greeue mee ſo much, as ỳ I cannot obtaine the reward I loked for. Heere I doe deſire thee my Lord, that by you ſhee may vnderſtand of all this my paine: & do my hartie commendations vnto that my great deſired Archi. Heere he cold not make an ende to ſpeake hir name, but yelded vp the Ghoaſt, his vnfortunate body remaining in the hands of the Prince, and with great weeping hee turned vnto the people that were ther, & ſaid, O you Knights and Gentlemen of Lyra, how deerly is this your libertie bought, for in the recouerie therof was ſlaine the beſt knight in all Aſia. Then he ſeing that ther was no remedie for the harme that was done, hee commanded that hee ſhould bee carried vnto the pallace, & by the agreement of all the nobles hee was buried in that place whereas the kings of Lira were accuſtomed to bee buried. So when Roſicleer had ſeene the funeral of his friend, hee would ſtay no longer in that kingdome, but by the conſent of all that were preſent, hee left the gouernement in the power of a worthie knight & noble gentleman of the realme, and toke his oath that ſtraight way they ſhould ſurrender it to their Queene & Lady. And therewith he departed out of the citie, & when hee came vnto the water ſide, and would haue entered into the ſhip in the which he came, hee ſaw nigh vnto it the barke wherin hee was wont to trauaile, & conſidering ỳ it ſhould not bee there without occaſion, without any more deliberation hee entered into the ſame, who ſtraight way began to moue hir ſelfe with hir accuſtomed furie, and ſo without tarrying in any place, ſhe trauailed fiue daies & fiue nights, in the ende of ỳ which the barke brought hir ſelfe a ground

in

into a fayre wide and sandie Bay, whereas hée saw vppon the shoare manie knights which made battaile against one alone knight. The Prince séeing all that passed, with great anger hée went out of the Barke to help him, who with great courage and pollicy did defend himselfe, whereas now we will leaue them, and retourne vnto Grecia for to make an ende of our first part. You doe well remember how that the knight with the Emperiall head, when he saw himselfe clére of that blow which the Quéene of Lyra gaue him, put himselfe into the forrest, euen into the thickest of it, and dyd not determine to goe vnto ẏ court at Constantinople, about a certaine demand which he came to make, til such time as all the knights & the rest of the people were in quiet. When hée thought that it was time, hée went vnto ẏ Court & asked for the Emperours pallaice, when hée came thether, hée alighted from his horse & went into the great hall whereas the Emperour was, with all them of his Court, exercising courtly pastimes and pleasures, and without making any reuerence hée went vnto the place whereas the Emperour was, and hée sayd: God and noble Emperour of Grecia, this speake I for a truth (according vnto ẏ which I haue heard reported of thée) that ẏ art one of those Princes that doth maintaine all iustice and equitie. The subiects and vassalls do not alone make this report, but all the world is ful of it. And (as I vnderstand) although it be euen against thy owne person, yet thou wilt not let to do that which is right, iustice being demanded of thée, wherfore I doubt not but vnto mée shall bée granted licence héere in thy Countrie to put a demaund vnto whom it shall thincke mée best, certifieng thée that it shall bée a iust thing. The Emperour who knew him by the deuice ẏ hée had on his shéeld, that it was hée which made the battaile with the Quéene of Lyra, with a sober countenance he said: Knight, although my fame be not such as you haue héere published, yet demanding any of this with equity (as you do certifie me you wil) I cannot but grant it vnto thée. And therefore héere I do giue thée licence that thou maist propone all that thy pleasure is, although it be a-

gainst

gainſt my ſelfe. The Knight who was very attendaunt to all that the Emperour ſayd, and ſaw that licenſe was granted him to aſke at his pleaſure, hée ſayd. O mightie Prince I would to God that my demaund were not that which it is, that without it I might inioye and comfort my ſelfe in béeing in your company, and the more that I dó certifie my ſelfe of thy vertue, I dóe finde my ſelfe the more troubled, meruailing, how that in ſo noble a perſon, ſhould remaine ſo great naughtineſſe, as that which thou didſt vſe with the Quéene of Finacria, who comforting & refreſhing thée, when thou arriuedſt there in great pouertie and diſtreſſe, in the end, thou didſt leaue hir very ſorrowfull and made a mock of hir. Looke well vnto it Emperour, for that thou canſt not make ſatisfaction for ſo great a fault, neyther will ſhée take any of thée, except it bée with ſending thy head, I will not that thou makeſt any amends, but that for hir, I do defie thée to mortall battaile, onely thy perſon and mine together, that I may fulfill the promiſe that I haue made vnto hir: and if it ſo fall out that fortune bée to mée contrary, I will remaine for the payment of my folly, with my head cut from my ſhoulders. And with this hée helde his peace: and looking on the one ſide and on the other, very ioyefull to ſée ſo goodly a companie of Knightes as was at that tyme with the Emperour, hée expected his anſwere. The Emperour who well vnderſtood his reaſons, without ſhowing any alteration in his countenaunce, anſwered. I dóe not know whether my anſwere ſhall bée ſufficient for to excuſe the fault, which ỹ Quéene without all reaſon doth burden mée with. For ỹ which valiant Knight, I would, as the Quéene hath told you ỹ little reaſon that I had, ſo ſhée ſhould haue tolde you the great reaſon I had to dóe that which I dyd. Héere I dó certefie thée that my thought doth not deſerue, that ſhée ſhould bée vnto mée ſo cruel, nor extend ſo far, for to deſire my death. And certainely in this, the Quéene hath no reaſon, for that the head of Trebatio, may dóe hir more ſeruice liuing, thẽ it can do béeing dead: but ſéeing it is hir will. Héere I dóe tell thée, that ſo long as I do liue, I will

practiſe

practise no other thing but onely to pacifie hir, and so lykewise will I procure to kæpe and defend my head, and not onely mine owne, but also the heades of those which at his commandement do come, thinking to take away mine: and in this thæ shal understand how much I am desirous to serue hir. The battayle hære I dœ graunt it vnto thæ, and if thou wilt, let it bæ out of hand, & hære I dœ promise thæ Knight to procure to kæpe my head, and lykewise to kæpe thine. Oh how the Moze found himselfe troubled, when hæ heard the Emperours answere, and the little reckoning that hæ made of the battaile, and somewhat touched in pride, he replied and sayd. I know wel Emperour, that the great confidence which thou hast in thy selfe, maketh thæ to estæme little of the King of the Garamantes whom thou hast in thy presence: but I do hope and trust in Mahomet, that before one houre when we are in the field, to make thæ to lose thy confidence. And in saying these wozds, hæ went downe out of the Pallaice, and leapt vp vpon his hozse, and went into the fielde, which was right against the Pallaice, ozdayned foz such lyke occasions. The Emperour demaunded foz his armour, and called foz that with the stars, the same which the Quæne Garrofilea gaue him. So in a trice hæ was armed, not without many teares of the Empresse, who sayde. Ah my Lozd I doe well vnderstand, that of so long absence, ther can grow nothing but great troubles, as doth appære by this sodain battaile. The Emperour not letting hir to go fozwards with hir talke, but casting both his armes about hir necke, and with shew of great loue, hæ sayd. Thou my Lady and Empresse wert the occasion of all that euill, foz if it had not bæne onely foz the losse of thy sight, I dowe that thy Emperour would first haue dyed the death, then merited the name to bæ disloyall. And that in not fulfilling hir intent, there should not onely haue happened one euill, but a great number. So it was Gods wil that I should escape out of the battaile, as moze at large I will tell you, hauing moze leasure. And in this manner he departed from the Empresse, leaning hir very sad and sozrowfull.

And

And the Emperour went to take his horſe, carrying with him the king of Lacedemonia, who carryed his helme, and the Prince Clauerindo who carryed his ſheeld, & his ſpeare the Prince of Hungaria carryed. And when they went forth of the gate of the Pallaice, they beganne to ſound a great number of inſtrumẽts, which indured till ſuch time as they were entered into the field, whereas he put on his healme, and the reſt of his armour giuen him which thoſe Princes did carrie. So with a gallant demeanour he put himſelfe on the one part of ỳ field awaiting a token or ſigne that ſhould bee giuen them. So it was not long after that the Prince Bargandel did ſound a Clarion the which he had in his hand, at the ſound whereof they ranne one againſt another with great furie, & in the middeſt of their courſe they gaue ſuch incounters with their ſpeares, not milling of their blowes, but it was with ſo great force that they brake all to ſmall peeces, and without doing any harme the one vnto the other they paſſed along, and ſtraight waies turned their horſes about with their ſwords in their handes. The Moore when hee ſaw that the Emperour remained in his ſaddle, hee was aſhamed, for that he dyd beleeue that onely with one blow with his ſpeare to make an ende of all that worke, his force and ſtrength was ſuch: And as you doe ſee a fierce Lyon conſtrained by hunger to goe out of his caue, and followeth his pray with great deſire to fill his paunch, euen ſo and rather with more furie went this Pagan, & caſting his ſhield at his backe, he griped his ſword in both his handes, raiſing himſelfe in his ſtirrops, he ſtroke ſuch a blow that whether hee would or not, he made the Emperour to fall downe vpon his horſe necke and was ſo without remembrance that he made his ſword fall out of his hands and hang by ỳ chaine, and his armes hung ſo loſe as though hee had beene dead, & his horſe was ſo afraide that a while hee went about the field. The Moore had well thought that the Emperour had beene dead, & ſtood ſtill and ſaide. Well, I doe beleeue Emperour that thy promiſe ſhall be in vaine, and mine ſhal fall out true. At that time the Pagon ſpoke the truth, for that

the emperours promise did not fall out true: so straight way he came againe to himselfe, and saw that he was so ill intreated with one blow alone, he turned and recouered his sword with great ire & wrath, he threw his shield at his back, and fomed at the visour of his helme with very wrath that hee had, euen as an arow driuē out of a bow by ỹ hands of a Sirian, so he pressed himselfe vnto the Moze & said: Tarry thou diuelish Pagan, tarrie, for heere I ow promise thee that by one blow alone I will take away thy life, for that thou with one blow didst depriue me of my vnderstanding. And thus my rude pen waxing wearie, and verie desirous to take his ease as also my hand being gouerned by that Nimph Caliope, causeth me to make an end of this first part, for that in the second part hauing refreshed my selfe and gotten new courage, I may goe tearing of the skies & the troublesome waues, not resting till I come into those concauits, wher as Vulcan doth commaund the Cyclopes hammers for to giue a new aduise vnto this workman which neuer will be wearie, & that he be in a readinesse ioyntly with fierce Mars to assist me to declare the new deeds & acts of knighthood, contained in the second booke of this part.

The end of the first booke of the second part of the Mirrour of knighthood.

The second Booke of the second part of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Of the Prince Claridiano, & how the king of Arginaria sent his brother to the king of Taprobana, and of all that happened to the messenger with the Prince. Cap. 1.

AT that time as the warlike Moze, in the supremacie of his triumph and power, had blased his famous feates of warres, most worthye of memorie, and causing that actiue Vulcan (onely for his contentment) should double the smithly rumour of his

And the Emperour went to take his horse, carrying with him the king of Lacedemonia, who carryed his helme, and the Prince Clauerindo who carryed his sheeld, & his speare the Prince of Hungaria carryed. And when they went forth of the gate of the Pallaice, they beganne to sound a great number of instrumẽts, which indured till such time as they were entered into the field, whereas he put on his healme, and the rest of his armour giuen him which those Princes did carrie. So with a gallant demeanour he put himselfe on the one part of ẏ field awaiting a token or signe that should bee giuen them. So it was not long after that the Prince Bargandel did sound a Clarion the which he had in his hand, at the sound whereof they ranne one against another with great furie, & in the middest of their course they gaue such incounters with their speares, not missing of their blowes, but it was with so great force that they brake all to small peeces, and without doing any harme the one vnto the other they passed along, and straight waies turned their horses about with their swords in their handes. The Moore when hee saw that the Emperour remained in his saddle, hee was ashamed, for that he dyd beleeue that onely with one blow with his speare to make an ende of all that worke, his force and strength was such: And as you doe see a fierce Lyon constrained by hunger to goe out of his caue, and followeth his pray with great desire to fill his paunch, euen so and rather with more furie went this Pagan, & casting his sheeld at his backe, he griped his sword in both his handes, raising himselfe in his stirrops, he stroke such a blow that whether hee would or not, he made the Emperour to fall downe vpon his horse necke and was so without remembrance that hee made his sword fall out of his hands and hang by ẏ chaine, and his armes hung so lose as though hee had beene dead, & his horse was so afraide that a while hee went about the field. The Moore had well thought that the Emperour had beene dead, & stood still and saide. Well, I doe beleeue Emperour that thy promise shall be in vaine, and mine shal fall out true. At that time the Pagon spoke the truth, for that

the emperours promise did not fall out true: so straight way he came againe to himselfe, and saw that he was so ill intreated with one blow alone, he turned and recouered his sword with great ire & wrath, he threw his shield at his back, and fomed at the visour of his helme with very wrath that hee had, euen as an arow driuē out of a bow by ỹ hands of a Sirian, so he pressed himselfe vnto the Moze & said: Tarry thou diuelish Pagan, tarrie, for here I ow promise thee that by one blow alone I will take away thy life, for that thou with one blow didst depriue me of my vnderstanding. And thus my rude pen waxing wearie, and verie desirous to take his ease as also my hand being gouerned by that Nimph Caliope, causeth me to make an end of this first part, for that in the second part hauing refreshed my selfe and gotten new courage, I may goe tearing of the skies & the troublesome waues, not resting till I come into those concauits, wher as Vulcan doth commaund the Cyclopes hammers for to giue a new aduise vnto this workman which neuer will be wearie, & that he be in a readinesse ioyntly with fierce Mars to assist me to declare the new deeds & acts of knighthood, contained in the second booke of this part.

The end of the first booke of the second part of the Mirrour of knighthood.

The second Booke of the second part of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Of the Prince Claridiano, & how the king of Arginaria sent his brother to the king of Taprobana, and of all that happened to the messenger with the Prince. Cap. 1.

AT that time as the warlike Moze, in the supremacie of his triumph and power, had blased his famous feates of warres, most worthye of memorie, and causing that actiue Vulcan (onely for his contentment) should double the smithly rumour of his

forge, for to animate his artificers with his rough and hasty callings, that they might with more furie moue and strike those restlesse hammers, vpon the laboured and well beaten Anuell. At that time did the mightie & prudent Pallas spread abroade hir streamers (with a peaceable blast, holpen by the fresh Fauonio or west winde) ouer the great and renowmed Iland of Trapobana, the heroycall sonne of that renowmed Alliebo, or knight of the Sunne, nephew vnto the magnanimous Emperour Trebatio, being in the same (as it was told you in the first part of this history) who was nourished and brought vp vnder the power of the King Delfo, excelling in all beautie and fairenesse, so much as euer nature bestowed on any humane creature, there lacked nothing in him but onely the knowledge of Iesus Christ, for in that hee was brought vp amongest Pagans hee knew him not. Hee was so indued with vertue and mightinesse of courage, that the wise Lyrgandeo thought it best to hold his peace and to bee in quiet, referring himselfe vnto his workes, as in the processe hereof you shall vnderstand, therfore I will say little at this time, but onely he was one that God had indued with many graces & good gifts, that the Pagans did account him to be one of their Gods. The King Delfo did make so much of him, that hee would not at any time let him depart one minute from him. Hee brought him vp with great maiestie vntill he came to fourteene yeeres of age, and at that time whosoeuer had looked on him, wold haue iudged him to haue ben of more yeeres (according vnto the high stature of his bodie,) for ther was no knight, although he had bene a gyant, that could be equall with him, but onely in his height, but also he was so well set & knit, & double membred, conformable. At which time this great giant vsurper of ỹ great Argynaria (when hee saw himselfe so mightie a Lord) his pride so much increased, that hee was not content with the Iland which with so great peace & quietnesse he did possesse, but covetousnesse increased so much in him, that he likewise would be lord & ruler ouer other kings & princes, whose countryes were adiacent, wherfore he determined to take into his pow-

er

er the Iland of Trapobana, & had no sooner thought thereon, when straight waies he would put his desire in practise, taking for his quarrel ỳ hẽ had denied their tribute which they were wont to pay him, & so without anye more counsell he cõmaunded to call vnto him a brother of his, a mightye gyant (although nothing so strong as he himselfe,) & when hee came before him, with a proude and terrible voice, and with a great maiestie he said: Bruno, take vnto thée two galleies, & let thẽ be meruailously well furnished, & go thou by force of wind, smiting the sailes, & likewise by good gouernment, that they may make ỳ better diligence for thy naugation, being holpen wt those knotty oares, to cut by force those deep waters, not taking any rest, till such time as thou art a lãd at Trapobana, or whersoeuer the king Delfo is, vnto whom without any humilitie thou shalt say from me: That saing his hardinesse hath bene such, to denie mée that which the Gods (if they did reigne or dwell on the earth) were boũd to giue me, if he doe not now send it me wt a new confirmation of his subiection, that by the omnipotent Iupiter I doe sweare, to giue him such correction, that when it is heard throughout the world, they shall all tremble & shake. This Pagan & youthfull giant without any more tarrieng prepared for this his departure. Of all this that had past was Galtenor aduertised by his learning, & hauing wel vnderstood the whole secret, it moued him in great hast to cause a cloud to descend out of ỳ aire, into the which he did put himselfe, wherin he was carried in very short time to the Cittie of Trapobana. and without giuing knowledge to anye person he went vp into the Kings Pallaice, whereas he found the King & the Prince walking vp and downe in the hall, talking of matters of pleasure, who with the good entering of Galtenor hadde their ioye and delight doubled. The King shewing great mirth and pleasure, did aske him, saying: What is the occasion of this your comming, my good friend, vnthought or vnlooked for, it cannot be without some new and straunge thing. In the meane time whilest the King was speaking these and such lyke words,

Galtenor had the Prince in his armes, who receiued such ioy to see his great beauty, faire bodie, and good disposition, that hee was blinded therwith, and hauing the Prince Claridiano in his armes hee forgot himselfe that hee was before the king, and the king seeing him in that traunce, procured to take him out of his armes, then he like a man awaking out of a slumber, returned vnto the king and said. Most mighty Lord, the great contentment that I do receiue at y sight of this yong man, hath caused me to forget to be in thy presence, and I did occupie my senses in such sort, that I could not doe that which I am bound by duety to do. O king thou maist account thy selfe for happy, for that thou hast obtained so much fauour, as to bring vp so gentle a youth, worthie to be had in as much reuerence as the mightie Iupiter, & turning vnto the king he said: Ther commeth a messenger from Arginaria, with a message nothing profitable, therefore good king, it doth stand you in hand for to make in a readinesse all your power, and to suffer the furious war that is ordeined against you. Heere my Lord, I doe certifie thee that it had ben the more to haue bene feared, if thou haddest found thy selfe without this young man in thy companye, who is the flowre of all men. The king when he heard these newes could not but receiue some alteration, and it was in such sort, that he was constrained to sit downe and talk with Galtenor, and layd: I sweare by God my friend, seeing it is so, let your discreation remedye that, which myne is not able to comprehend, that we fall not into the power of so cruell an enimy. Claridiano who was very attentaiue vnto that which Galtenor had told vnto the king, and likewise vnto the answere which y king made, kneeled downe on both his knees, and with great humilitye hee desired the king to graunt him two things, the which he wold aske, the which the king by the counsell of Galtenor did graunt, and did lift him vp from the ground imbracing him verie louingly. The prince Claridiano seeing that hee had graunted it him, hee sayde: My Lord, the first thing that you shall doe for mee, is, that you giue vnto me forthwith the order of Knighthoode.

And

and the second is, that you do giue me license to answere the messenger of Argmaria. It greeued the King very much, for that he had graunted him these two things, for that he did well vnderstand his intent: but seeing that he could doe no otherwise, he was content. Great pleasure receiued Galtenor, to see with what good grace, Claridiano did aske these two things of the King, & for to put away part of that discontentment which they should receiue at the messengers hand, he told vnto them some pleasant and ioyfull deuices. So straight way it was accorded, that Claridiano should that night watch in his armour, the which was giuen him by Galtenor. They were all white and bespangled with twinkling starres of gold, and his shield was also all white, and in it one onely Luzero, which did occupie all ỹ whole shield, all garnished with fine pearles, that it made them that did looke on it, almost to loose their sight, the brightnesse was so great that proceeded from them, and they were such, that no Lord in all the world had the like. When this famous youth was armed with them, the delight was so much, that the king Delfo receiued to see him so well set and so gallãt, that he could not refraine but distill some salt teares from his eyes for very ioye, and said. My brother here I do desire the souereigne Gods, that they make me so ioyfull with thy good fortune, as I am now at thy sight. The prince did watch in his armour that night, and the nert day with great solemnitie, he was armed Knight, and gaue that day many & great gifts. In the afternoone was ordained great Iustings and daunces of all sorts, of very faire Ladies and damosells, which the King had commaunded to come together for the same effect. But they who did most participate of all these pleasures and pastimes, was the heroycal yong man, and his nourse, whom hee tooke to bee his mother. So that in the Kings Pallaice, there was no other thing but feastes and pastimes, tarrying for the Embassadour that should come: and they of the Citie had care in the fortifieng of the same, as well with victualls, as repairing the wals, and putting all the people in good order, in such sort, that

within eight dayes they found within the Citie ten thousand, knights, mervailously wel appointed, at the which Claridiano did receiue great contentment. The ninth day after that he was made Knight, there was brought newes how that the messenger of Arginaria was come a land: of the which the King being aduertised, hée sate himselfe in his royall seat abiding his comming, béeing accompanied with very rich and well estéemed knights, and on his right hand was Claridiano, and on his left hand the banished King of Arginaria, and béeing all in this manner as hath béene told you, the Embassadour Bruno entered into the hall, with a furious countenaunce, and without humbling or making any kinde of reuerence, he drew nigh vnto the King, & with a wrathfull voice hée saide: King, what diuell was that which put it in thy head, to denie that tribute that thou wert wont to giue vnto my mightie brother, and thou doest not onely denie it, but I sée that thou makest thy selfe in a readinesse to make resistaunce, for the which héere I do tell thée, that ther is no punishment that can make satisfaction of thy boldnes and folly, notwithstanding if thou wilt cléere thy selfe better then thy ouermuch pride doeth deserue, giue mée straight way double tribute, of that which thou art bound to pay, but if thou doest it not, by the mightie Gods I sweare to thée that he will take of thée & thine reuengement, with such rigor, that the mightie Gods shall tremble when they sée it. All this hée spake with so great pride and wrath, that it made them all to quake to sée his furious demeanour, saue onely he to whom all the honour of Knighthood belonged, who did litle estéeme his vnreasonable and proude wordes, but with great sobrietye hée answered. They doe not denie any thing which they ought for to giue vnto this tyraunt whom thou doest name for thy Brother, and although hée did lose the Iland that hée doeth now possesse, yet should hée lose nothing that hath bene his, for that with tyrannye hée hath vsurped the same. Therefore without any more tarrying get thée hence and tell thy brother, that the king of Trapobana will not onely detaine from him

the

the tribute which hée doth not nor euer did owe him, but also with armed arme he doth pretend to recouer againe all that which without reason he hath receiued & carried away, and he doth giue him to vnderstand, that he will not rest till such time as he doth thrust him out of ỹ Iland, which with so great tyrannye he doth possesse, & from which he depriued my father Galtenor. So wt this answere thou maist returne vnto him who sent thée hether, wout any hope of other. The giant stood & did behold him very much, & with a fearfull coũtenãce his eies turned into a sanguin coulour, & laughing or smiling in manner of mocking, hæ said: I sæ without any outward prowse, but onely by thy foolish words, that thou art but a young & new made knight, & as such a one I will estæme & intreat thæ: & if my comming hether were not more for a messenger, then for a warriour, for this thy boldnesse which thou dost shew, I would vse thæ in such sort, ỹ thy answere should litle auaile thæ, & yet I shuld remaine satisfied of all ỹ anger which thou hast caused me to haue. The prince Claridiano when he heard that with so great disdaine he was reuiled, with as much anger he went towards him, & with an altered voice he said: By all the Gods that are in heauen I sweare vnto thée, if I did not consider & respect the curtesie which is due & ought to bée shewed to Embassadours, I would bereaue thée of this thy brauerie, in such sort, ỹ when thou art before such a king as now thou art, thou shouldest bridle thy tongue, & euer after haue in remembraunce ỹ punishment ỹ I would giue thæ, but not respecting thy follie, but onely my estate, I will stay my selfe from correcting of this thy ouermuch pride. The wrath of this Gyant was so much, whẽ he heard himself so reuiled, ỹ he could not by anie meanes refraine himselfe, but layd hand on his sword, and went towards the Prince Claridiano, and threatened him with a very mightie and strong blow, striking at his head. The prince when he saw the blow comming, retired with a light leape, which was ỹ occasion ỹ he failed of his blow, & by reason of ỹ great strength wherewith it was stroke, the sword fell out of his hands, and flew along the floore of the

great hall, the Prince without drawing his sword, with a trice ioyned with him, entering in at his left side, & with his fist he stroke him so strong & mightie blow vpon the mouth that if his hand had ben armed, it had ben the last which the Gyant should haue receiued, yet for all that it did so much harme that his teeth fell out, leauing his mouth all bloudy, & with the great strength of the blow it made him to fall backwards on his backe, and with the great paine which he felt, he scantly knew where he was. This Prince when he saw this, staied without doing any more harme for ỹ he would not disgrace ỹ king, but put himselfe on the one side: the king did shew himselfe verye much greeued for ỹ he was an Embassadour, for if it had not ben done by him which did it, who so euer els should haue done it, would hardly haue escaped wt̃out punishment. And for to appease ỹ messenger he arose out of his seat and did help to take vp the Gyant, and looking toward Claridiano, he said: Brother, I would ỹ this thing had not chaunced by thy hands, for that all this harme which you haue done vnto Bruno, is done vnto me & not vnto him. Thẽ this valiant prince said: Hold your peace my Lord, for those vncurteous messengers, & such as doe digresse & goe frõ that which they are cõmaunded, should not alonely be intreated in this sort, but also lose their liues, & haue their tongues cut out. Bruno did complaine him very much of the griefe, & seeing himselfe without teeth and so dishonoured, he blasphemed against his Gods, but this inuincible Greeke made litle account of any such thing, but turned himselfe toward Bruno & said: Now maist thou turne in ỹ diuels name, & tell thy brother the prince of pride, that he doth commaund to plaister and cure thy teeth, for that from hence thou goest well cured of thy great folly. Also thou shalt tell him of my part, that as I haue hurt thee with the strength of my fist, so I will vse him with the sharpe edge of my sword, gouerned with the selfe same arme that vnto thée hath done this damage. And I doe heere hope in such sort to search that proud bodie of his, that all the world may take an ensample by him and his pride. Bruno, who was at the point of death

with

with the great paine he felt, vnderstood all that was spoken, and without making anye answere, hee went out of the Kings Pallaice, and returned vnto his galleyes where hee was cured, and put his sayles into the power of the winde, and in a very short time hee arriued at Arginaria, and went a shoare, carrying all his face wrapt and bound with bonds and rowles of lynnen cloth, & his mouth all to be plaistred. In this sort he went and presented himselfe before his brother, and saide: I haue giuen thy Embassage vnto king Delfo, as thou hast commanded mee, and to giue mee answere there arose vp a new and yong Knight, whom I do beleeue and as I haue proued the same, that he hath in his body all the infernall strength, and in his fistes all the Legyons of diuells that are in hell, as it dyd appeare by the great fury wherewith hee hurt mee, ỳ hee dyd not onely strike out my teeth, but also threw mee to ỳ ground as though I had been a childe. The proud Gyant the King of Arginaria, when hee heard all that his brother had sayd, with a terrible blaring noyse (that hee made all the pallaice to shake) sayd: O vile coward, and is it possible that with fistes lyke a vile villaine hee made thee to fall, in such sort, that thou dydest kisse the ground with thy mouth. Bruno answered: Brother, I doe sweare vnto thee by the high Iupiter, that if thou hadst proued as I haue done the strength of his fistes, thou wouldest not reuile mee in this sort. And heere I doe giue thee to vnderstand, ỳ he said, & bad mee in his part to tell thee, that if from mee hee hath taken away my fore teeth, ỳ hee wil not onely take away thine, but also thy double teeth and thy lyfe. But when this Arginarian King heard this, hee arose vp & went from him with so much wrath and anger, that hee seemed rather a diuel then a man: and without taking any farther counsel, hee commanded to assemble all his people together, and that they should bee called with all ỳ speed that possible might be, and when they were come all together, he found that there were two thousand horse men and fiue thousand foot men, & made Captaine generall ouer thē two Gyants & brothers, ỳ were Lords of one Iland, ioyning

vnto his Iland, called Biſperia. And hée commanded them to imbarke themſelues with great fury, and when they were all imbarked, hée cõmanded to [illegible] anker, and to commit their ſailes vnto ỹ winde, the which they found proſperous, and brought them vnto the Iland of Trapobana, and without any impediment or diſturbance of them of the Iland, they went a land, & rayſed vp their tents, and pitched their campe. This fierce King bæing mounted vpon an Elephant, went with great care and puruſed all his people, and put them in very good order: ſo all was apparant and knowen vnto them of the Citie. The King of Trapobana feared much his fierce and cruell aduerſary, and ſo likewiſe did many of them that were in the Citie: but yet that courageous youth did feare him nothing at all, nor eſtæmed him any thing, but rather did deſire the houre to ſée himſelfe in battaile with him, for to make ſatisfaction with his dædes & worke, of ỹ which hée was in debt vnto his Lord. At ſuch time as the camp was pitched, and all in good order, the radiaunt Phœbus had made an ende of his iourney, leauing in his abſence the ſadde and darke night. So when time came that hæ bægan a new to take his accuſtomed courſe, and to ſhow his ſhining face, diſperſing his glittering beames ouer all the Iland, the King of Arginaria called vnto him a trumpetter, & with a furious voyce hée ſayd. Goe thy waies vnto the Cittie, & in ſuch ſort as thou thinkeſt beſt ſalute the King Delfo, and tell him on my bæhalfe, that without any tarrying or taking farther counſell, hée ſend mæ him, who did intreat my brother Bruno ſo euill: and if not, I ſweare vnto him by the high Iupiter, that I will dœ ſo much that his body ſhall bée made meate vnto dogs. The trumpetter when he had well vnderſtood his meſſage, taking libertie of the accuſtomed pride of his Lord, went with great arrogancie vnto the Citie. The Scowles when they ſaw him, let enter into the Citie, & they carried him bée fore the king, before whom when hée came, without ſhowing any kinde of humilitie hæ ſayde. The Gods confound the perſon & ſtate, and breake downe thy great pride & power: ỹ dredful king

of

of Arginaria, my Lord, doth send mee vnto thee, ỹ when thou hast heard my imbassage, forthwith thou send vnto him that vncurteous knight and of smal valour, who with his proud hand, stroke out the teeth of his welbeloued brother Bruno, and thou must send him prisoner & bound before his royall presence, that hee may giue him the punishment, that this great boldnesse doth deserue. When this valiant Claridiano heard the proud words that the Embassadour brought, and with what arrogancie hee deliuered them, he was altogether without patience, & hauing no power to refrayne his wrath, hee went vnto him & sayde. Here I doe promise thee gromman brabler, to giue thee answere according as ỹ doest bring the imbassage, & it is great reson that we make thy body to slye at large, as thou dost cause thy tongue to runne at libertie, and procure out of hand that thou maist the better leap, to call vnto Mercurie for to sustaine thee, & without any more saying, hee toke him by the cholar, & without any power to make resistance, hee threw him out of a window, letting him fal vpon the pauement, before the pallaice gate, that hee broke all in peeces, and this being done, without speaking any more word, hee went vnto his chamber, & armed him with his armour, with the help of Galtenor his father, for so hee alwayes estemed him: but his wrath and anger was such, that neither his father nor the King durst speake a word vnto him, all ỹ time hee was arming. And whẽ hee was armed, hee turned his face vnto the King, & sayde. Worthie King & my Lord, haue a good confidence in the Gods, and in thy iustice & right, that I shall bee hee, ỹ shall take away from before thee, this proud enemie of thine. And without any more tarrying hee demanded for a horne, so straight waye, there was one giuen him of Iuorie, very rich, the which was cast about his neck, and descended the staires out of the Pallaice, where he found a very fayre & great horse meruailous wel furnished, & lightly he lept on his back, & with a reasonable pace hee rode his way towards ỹ campe of his enimie Galtenor & the good king of Trapobana followed him, being armed wt very rich armour,

and

and commaunded that all the people ſhould bée in a readines. So they put themſelues in a place, wheras they might well ſée, all that Claridiano dyd.

¶ How that Claridiano went vnto the Campe of the King of Arginaria, and how hee demanded of him battaile, and of all that ſucceeded in the ſame. Chapter 2.

AS many times the hungry Lyon doth compaſſe and ſearch the foldes roaring with rauenish hunger, & finding the ſtrayed Goate or Hart, diſcouering them from far by their hornes, and with a ſouereigne ioye doth lift vp his neck, and neuer reſt vntill ſuch time, as hée bée muſling in their blood, with great deſire to ſatiſfie his pining hunger: euen ſo with like deſire went out of Trapobano the Prince Claridiano, till hée came in ſight of his aduerſaries, and carryed his viſour vp, and putting him ſelfe in place wheras hée might bée heard of his enimies, hée blew his horne, to giue a token that they ſhould harken vnto that which hée would ſpeake vnto them, and then with a loude voyce he ſayd. O cruell and tyrannous King, what doeſt thou thincke by threatnings to ſhow thy fury, come forth, and take to thée thy armour, for héere doth tarry and abide thy cõming, hée that ſtrok out the teeth of thy brother Bruno, and hée that not long ſince dyd teach thy Embaſſador to ſpeake, whom thou ſenteſt this day with thy proude meſſage. The dogge Cerberus when hée was made faſt with Alcides leaſh, dyd not ſhew himſelfe ſo furious, as dyd this terrible Gyant at that preſent, and riſing vp from ý place whereas hée was ſet, hée turned vnto the Image of Iupiter, vnto whom hée had done great ſacrifices, & ſtretching forth his rigorous arme, hée toke it from the place whereas it was ſet, & threw it out of the doore of the Tent, in ſuch ſort that hée made it to fly into the aire, more then ten fadome, with which it fell into the ſea, and he ſayd. Get thée thether thou

thou God of little valor that being honoured of so valiaunt a man as I am, thou wilt consent that so vile a man (after that he hath angered me so much) shuld put himselfe with so great pride before my presence. And not content with this, but with the same furie hee toke a great club, and what on the right side, and what on the left, he threw downe all the Images of his Gods that were there, and broke them all to peces. One of the ministers that alwaies did assist them in their sacrifices, layd with a bold courage. Wherefore dow you so euill intreate and misuse your Gods. The Gyaunt stroke him such a blow on the forhead with his fist, that hée brake it all to peces and threw him dead to the ground & sayde. Get thee hence, and goe & make relation vnto Iupiter, and vnto the rest of the Gods, of this great reprehension that thou hast done mee. And loking about, he saw all the rest of the ministers halfe amazed, without speaking any word, vnto whom hée went with great hast, & said vnto them. Vile villaines, what dwe you tarry heere, why doe you not goe after the figure of that God, whome you dwe worship & honour. & laying on them with his club, hee killed fiue of them, & so hee would haue done with all the rest if they had not run away. Then one of the two Gyaunts which were bretheren, came vnto the kings tent, all armed with his strong armour, & mounted vpon a great Elephant and sayde. Bee in quiet my Lord, & abate this thy vnsufferable anger, and I will bring vnto thee straight way him, who hath beene the occasion of this thy disquietnesse & anger. And without tarrying for any aunswere, hée tourned about his great and vnwieldie beast, and went that waye, whereas the Prince was: who when hee saw him so well proportioned and furnished, he had wel thought that hee had been the king of Argimaria, as one which had neuer sene any so mightie a stature, and therewith hee put downe ỹ visor of his helme, & toke vnto him, a great & knottie speare, purposing not to spend the time in words. Then Belerofonte (for so the Gyant was named) sayde. Art thou ỹ bold knight, that with thy deedes hast so euil angred, that mightie

tie King and Lord of Arginaria. The Prince, who by his reasons was certified that hee was not the King, replyed. I am hee whome with so furious eye thou doest seeke, and if it bee so that the King hath so much anger against mee, wherfore doth hee not come forth in person to take reuengemẽt. The Gyant when hee saw him speake with so bould a courage, with a dissembling laughter sayd. O fole without all wit, hast thou in so little estimation that great Geredeon, that hee for twentie such Knights as thou art, should arme himselfe, & come forth to battell, hauing them which can excuse him thereof: And seeing that thy great folly is come to this extremitie, I doe require thee (that if ỹ wilt remaine with thy life) that thou dost leaue thy armour, & yeeld thy selfe with both thy hands bound behinde thee, and goe and aske forgiuenesse of him, that if hee will kill thee with his owne hands, thou maist account thy selfe happie. To whom the Prince answered. Thy counsell doeth not please mee, neyther his honour will I receiue: but rather I hope to send thee without a tongue before that infernal King, as I sent Bruno without his teeth. And for ỹ thou shalt not haue anye more time to speake such follye and foolishnesse, eyther returne the way from whence thou camest, and repent thy selfe of this ỹ hast sayd, or else prepare thy selfe to mortall battaile. The giant when he heard that vnsauory answere which hee gaue, hee toke vp his speare & put it on his shoulder, which was made fast in the middest of the staffe Dart wise, & rayled himselfe in his stirrops, and threw it at the Prince with so great fury, that by the force therof, hee hoped to haue concluded that enterprise. But this new knight seeing the speare comming, he put his sheeld before him where on the speare poynt stroke, & pearsed it through, till it came to his fine and strong armour, whereas it lost his force: but with the strength wherwith it came, it bowed in such sort, that it brake in two peeces, without hurting the knight or once mouing him in the saddle. This valyant and stout Greeke, when he saw that in that sort he would haue slaine him, hee clasped fast his speare in his hande after the same man-

manner, and said. Tarrie and thou shalt see, whether I can better throw a dart thē thou: And therewith hee threw his great speare at the Giant, that without having any power to defend himselfe from that blow it pearced his sheeld, and bored through his armour, and not staying there, the sharp point passed through his body from the one side to the other taking from him that miserable soule, and the body gaue a terrible fall to the ground. At all that passed, was present the proud & strong Geredeon, who with an infernall wrath threw fyre from him, & in great hast called for his armor: At which time the other giant, brother vnto Belorophonte, no lesse irefull and furious, whose name was Bolito, sayde with a great voyce. Wightie Geredeon, and Lord, let mee take this reuengement, for ý of right it appertaineth more vnto mee, then vnto thee. And heere I doe promise thee (or else the Gods shall bee false in doing iustice, and my strong arme without vertue) that I wil take cruell reuengement of that diuell: and so without speaking mee words, hee went towards ý place whereas this new knight was, who without any feare with a great speare in his hand, did tarrie his comming. This Gyaunt who was blinded with his vnreasonable anger without any reasoning, hee set spurres vnto his Elephant, and likewise, the new Knight set spurs to his horse, and met together in the middest of their course, so that neyther of them lost his blow: but the incounter was with so great force, that the gyant did pearce through the sheeld of the prince, without doing any further harme, & ý speare shiuered all to peeces, but this warlike youth with his speare gaue vnto ý giant so strong an incounter, ý it pearced through his shield, & made him to fall backwards vpon the crouper of his Elephant, ý he made ý great beast to double with his legs, & falling downe hee fell vpon one of the giants legs. The Prince whē hee saw him in ý extremity, & ý he could not arise, hee leap frō his horse w̄ great lightnes: & did help him to take out his leg from vnder the Elephant: likewise hee dyd help him to arise vpon his feete, and sayde. Doe not thinke Gyant, that thou shalt haue any occasion

to

to praise thy selfe, in saying that by a disgrace I did subdue thee. Therefore now doe what thou canst do, for to defend thy selfe. The Gyant without any cõsideration of the curtesie showed him, clasped fast his broad sword, striking a terrible and feareful blow at the prince, who by leaping on the one side, caused him to lose his blow, & stepping on the other side, he gaue him such a stroke vpon the waste, that the harnesse broke, and his sword hid it selfe in the Gyaunts flesh, and hurt him very sore, whereat ran out very much bloud. When the Giant saw the great damage that hee had done vnto his body by that blow, hee threw his shield from him, taking fast hould of his great sword in both his hands (and without hauing any power to shun from it) hee stroke the Prince such a blow vppon his shield, that hee cut it in two peeces, and it descended downe vpon his helme with so great strength and waight, that against his will, it made him to stoope with his knees to the ground, and to staye himselfe with one of his hands, because he should not fall downe all together. This diuelish Gyant, when hee saw him in ỹ case, would haue stroke him another blow: but at such time as he wold haue discharged it, this inuincible Knight arose vp with so great wrath, ỹ a thick smoke came out of his visor, and without any more tarrying, hee threw the peece of the shield that remained from him, and with a light leap he ioyned with his enemie, and stroke him so horrible and furious a blow vpon his healme, that it dyd little profit him the strength of the steele, but he cut it in two peeces, head & all, and he fell downe to ỹ ground. Oh what great disturbance and feare this vnmeasurable blow caused vnto all the people, as well those of the Cittie, as to those of the contrarye part. But aboue all this, Geredeon was much amazed. And with the great anger & wrath which hee had to see the two Giants slaine before him, he thrust himselfe amongst all the people, wõ so great rumour, as when a strong rocke by force of an earthquake, when the fierce and furious winde doth take it, and teare and rent it out of the place and situation, whereas it was wont to stand: and with the terrible &

great

great noise and sound therof, not onely all the shepheardes and heard men of the field be scarred and afraid, but also ỹ great blow doth remaine in the aire with a great & rumbling ecko: euen with the like fury this Arginarian king rushed amongst and through his people. Claridiano without shewing any kinde of trouble, did abide his comming with so strong & couragious a heart, as doth the crooked & cragged rock abide to make defence against the force and vnbridled furie of ỹ restlesse Neptune. So with great hast went the Gyant against the new knight, and as he came before him, hee could not coniecture who or what vntamed young man that should be, for that he neuer at any time heard any speaking of him, & with the like confusion he said. Knight, I know not what to say vnto so hainous a matter that by thee is committed against me, for seeing thy great boldnesse which thou hast had to disquiet and anger me, it doth cause me to procure to haue reuengement of thée. And to the contrary I see thou art one alone knight, and therefore I owe take it for a dishonour & rebuke to lift vp my furious arme against thée. Therefore that which I desire thee, is this, that thou dost returne vnto the citie & cause to bee gathered together one hundreth of the best knights chosen out from amongest the rest, and see that you come straight againe, for that of you all together. I wil take this my desired reuengement. And yet for all this, I doe tell thée, I shall not be satisfied for the great anger & wrath the which I haue against thee. Whosoeuer had bene present to haue heard him speake these wordes would haue trembled with feare, but hee in whom feare could neuer take place, and one which toke no care nor did not esteeme his wordes, saide: I doe not know wherevppon thou doest staye, if thou doest meane to take reuengement of him, who hath so much offended thée, especially hauing him before thee: but thou shalt vnderstand, thou diuellish Gyant, that thy furious looke, nor thy beastlie body, neither thy monstrous members, can put me in feare, for ỹ being as thou art, furnished w̃ a cruell hart, & so great a friend vnto tiranny, & heere I tell thee, ỹ the aduauntage

which thou beddest me to take, I doe not desire it, neither I will not take it, but rather I will thee that thou make thy selfe readie for thy defence, & procure if thou canst to driue me out of the field, and when thou hast ouercome me & got the victorie, then maist thou make thy combat with ỳ other ninetie and nine. And with this he did put himselfe a part, shaking his sword with a meruailous good grace. When the Gyant saw this, in manner of mocking he said: Go get thee hence thou vile thing, and take vnto thee the fauour and aid which I doe will thee, & doe not thinke that thou shalt obtaine of me so honourable an end, to be slaine of me in equall battaile. Heere this new knight by any meanes could not suffer his outragious arrogancie, but said vnto him: Thou cruell tyrant, subiect to all pride, defend thy selfe, and leaue off these reuilinges and boastes. And in saying these wordes the Prince pressed to the Gyant, and stroke at him so strong a blow vpon one of his thighs. ỳ his strong armour did falsifie, and he made a litle wound, out of the which issued very much bloud. When this infernall monster felt himselfe thus hurt, and seeing that he made litle account of him, but rather despised his wordes, without any more tarrieng, he lift vp a verie heauie mase of yron, which was great and long, and had hanging at the end therof fiue balles of steele, each of them hanged by a steele chaine of great strength. The King Delfo was meruailously troubled, when hee saw the deformed weapon which was raised in the aire, making a great noise, & with great furie readie to bee discharged vpon the head of this warlike knight, who when he saw it comming, with his accustomed lightnesse did procure to deliuer himselfe from so horrible a blow, and in such sort it came, that all those fiue balls fell together on the ground, at which fall by reason of ỳ great waight of the mase, he was constrained to fall forwards with the blow. The Prince which at that time was not without care, but seeing him in such sort, hee stepped quickly vnto him, & stroke him so mightie and great a blow vpon his strong helme, ỳ with ỳ great strength wherwith it was giuen, did constraine the gyant by pure force to

put

put both his hands on the ground, but straight way he arose againe, and lift vp his monstrous weapon, & stroke at him another terrible blow, the knight would once againe haue clæred himselfe from that blow, but he could not do it, but ỹ one of those balls did glaunce vpon the visour of his helme, in such sort, that it made him to giue three or foure steps backwards, he was so amazed, wherewith hee was readie to fall downe, which without all doubt he had, if that he had not laboured to stale himselfe by falling forwards, with his hands to the ground, the which was not so quickly done, and he recouered, but ỹ the Gyant had his mase in the aire ready to strike him againe, but hauing time, he clæred himselfe therof, so that he stroke that blow in vaine, wherwith the prince lastned so mightie a blow at the Giant vpon his backe, that he made him to fall forwards with his hands vpon ỹ earth, he had not so sone giuen him ỹ blow, but straight way hee gaue him the second vpon his helme, that without fæling he made him to fall againe vpon his handes, wᵗ both his knees to the ground. The Princes sword was not so fine & strong to suffer so great strokes, but broke in peces with those terrible blowes, which was ỹ occasion that as then the battell was not finished. So the prince when he saw himself without his sword, thought it best to withdraw himselfe backe, and the Arginarian king when he beheld himselfe so vsed, giuing terrible rorings, he arose vp, so that he made all ỹ earth to shake, & when hee was on foote he lift vp the visor of his helme for to take aire: likewise he lift vp his great mase, & went towards the Prince for to strike him, this inuincible knight when hee saw himselfe without anye weapon for to make his defence against so terrible an aduersary, who had lifted vp his armes aboue his head with his mase in his handes aloft for to strike him, and for that hee knew verye well that the small peece of his sword which did remayne in his hand was but little auayleable, hee determined straight wayes to throw it at him, and in the throwing of it his fortune was good, that before the Gyaunt could let his armes descende with that furious blow,

hée ſtroke him on the viſour (which a litle before he had lift vp to take the aire) that it all to plaiſtred his face and noſe, wherof he receiued ſo much paine and griefe, that he had no ſtrength to execute his beaute blow. When the Gyant felt this great harme, he let loſe his holde from the maſe with his left hand, and clapped it vnto his face. The new knight, who receiued no griefe at his extremity, but waying the neceſſitie into which he was driuen, for lacke of a weapon, but ſeing the Gyant occupied in feeling of his face, and wringing his bodie at the griefe thereof, he did procure to winne from him his maſe, & giuing a contrarie leap, as the Dunce doth when ſhe is oppreſſed by the hunter, laied holde on the maſe, and pulled it, giuing ſo ſtrong and wilie a turne, being done with ſo great ſwiftneſſe, that he was conſtrained to let it loſe out of his hand. The Gyant when he ſaw that he had loſt his maſe, & that it was in the power of his enimie, preſſed vnto him for to catch him betwéne his armes, but this new knight who was nothing deſirous of ſuch imbraſing, defended himſelfe from the ſame by putting himſelfe on ẏ ons ſide, and as the Gyant paſſed by, he ſtroke him with that furious maſe ſo terrible a blow on the back, that he made him to go forwards ſpite of this teeth, which made him forget to deſire any more to come to wraſtle. So when ẏ Gyant had ſtretched himſelfe vpright, he drew out his broad and ſharp ſword, & with a gallant demeanour, his ſword all aloft, he preſſed vnto the new knight, who was with his maſe readye at his ſtanding, abiding his comming. The new knight did firſt diſcharge his blow, for that he might ſtrike him a far of, and chaunced with one of the balls to hit him vpon the left arme, with ſo ſtrong a blow, that the bone of the wriſt he brake in peces, which made the gyant to loſe his furious blow. Who were now able to declare the great furye and outragiouſneſſe of this fierce Gyant: ther was neuer fury ſo fierce, nor the ſwift wind of Aeolus in the cloſe and narrow caues of the mountaines, as the gyant was at that time, without hauing any regard vnto the dammage which a lyttle before hée had receiued, but flouriſhing aloft with

his

his great ſword,he ſayd: O vile knight, I tell thée that ther is no Gods in the heauen,nor on the earth,or ſea,that ſhall haue any power to deliuer thée frõ me. This warlike knight anſwered: Thou vncurteous and vnreaſonable Gyant,hold thy peace,and ſpeake no ſuch blaſphemies,but do what thou canſt,and then thou ſhalt ſée how little thou art worth,and of what ſmall eſtimation,and therewith he lift vp his mace and returned vnto his former and furious battaile. Hére I doe now lacke a ſharp and prompt vnderſtanding,for to ſet forth at large,and with ſwéete and delicate reaſons that it might be delightfull vnto the readers,the great courage and ſtrength which that ſtrong warriour did ſhew,& the great haſt and ſpéed he vſed againſt his furious enemie,laying on him with that great mace,which alwaies oppreſſed him with thoſe great and beanie blowes,in ſuch ſort,that it hurt and wounded him verye much. And héere I owe giue you,to vnderſtand,that the fiercenéſſe and furie of this battaile was ſuch,that ẏ author durſt not declare at large the great valiantneſſe therein vſed,for that he ſtood in doubt of his owne vnderſtanding,to declare it effectually as it paſſed,therefore he doth omit the declaring therof,but that theſe two ſtrong and ſtout warriours were two houres together ſtriking & hurting the one the other,& each of them ſhewing the great ſtoutneſſe,ſtrength,and courage of their harts,and wer both kindeled in ſo much wrath & ire,that more by ſtrength then by pollicie,they defended thẽſelues,either of them procuring to ouercome his aduerſary. So at this time the fierce Giant ſtroke his enimie ſuch a terrible blow,which chanced glancing vpon his healme, and deſcended downe with ſo great a ſound vpon his left ſhoulder(that if it had not bene by the great vertue which his armour had,béing made by ẏ wiſe inchaunter)the hardneſſe of the ſtéele would little haue profited,but that he ſhould haue cut him,with all that part of the bodie downe to the waſt, neuertheleſſe the ſtrength of ẏ blow was ſuch, and put him to ſo much paine, that the Prince felt himſelfe to bée verie euill thereof, inſomuch that it depriued him at that time of his ſtrength, that hée

could not lift vp ẏ heauie mace for to strike the king of Argunaria. His paine and griefe was such, that his aduersarye did perceiue his weakneſſe, which caused him to make more hast in striking of the Prince, with such furious blowes, ẏ it made this new knight to retire from him, drawing after him that heauy mase with his right hand. Who at this time should haue seene the countenaunce of the king of Argunaria, and the king Delfo would well haue iudged their great trouble of mindes. This warlike knight was verye much troubled with that great griefe, insomuch that many times he thought to haue imbraced with the Gyant and wrastled with him, which certainly he would haue done if the griefe had continued, but he felt that ẏ paine decreased. which was the occasion that hee went dalying with the Gyant, who w̄ hastie & terrible blowes followed striking of him, but when the Prince felt himselfe cleere of the paine, and that he was able to lift vp his arme, he toke the mase in both his hands, and setled his feet verie strong on the ground, & kept in his breath, ẏ he might with more strength discharge his blow, detaining it till such time as the Gyants blow was stroke, which was with so great strength, that falling on ẏ ground, the sword entered into the earth more then halfe of it, & it was the occasion that the Prince had better time, for to execute his mightie and determined blow, and discharging it, with two of the balls of steele which hung at ẏ mases end, he let drive such a blow on the Gyaunt, that hee made him to stoope with both his knées on the ground, & seeing him in that plight, hee stroke at him another blow, which was vpon his helme, which gaue such a sound, as though it had ben stroke vpon a bell: wherwith he fell with all his bodie to the ground, & stretched out his huge members, making no more moving, and when this new knight saw that he mooued not, he pulled of his helme, and perceiued that the blow was such, that it beate out his eyes and the brayns out of his head. Then the young Prince gaue thankes vnto the Gods, for that he had no perfect knowledge of his descent, nor any light that he was a christian, & taking vp the mase,

hee

he laid it on his shoulder, and with great quietnesse he went vnto the Citie, & straight way there came vnto him Galtenor, & the king Delfo, with a great number more of knights, that had ben beholding the furious battaile, who did imbrase him with so great ioy and loue, that I am not héere able to expresse it, and did request him, that hée would goe and lye downe, for that they iudged he should be very weary. He was so much importunated by so many knights, that he could do no otherwise but goe take his rest, & lie downe, wheras he was cured & healed of such blowes as he had receiued, which was black & blew, and there was ministred vnto him such ointments as did mitigate the paines and griefes which hée had receiued. So all those which came wt the Gyant when that they saw their Lord was dead, they receiued no sorrow nor griefe therat, for they could not suffer his great pride & euill conditions, for they did not onely abhorre him, but they did desire, ỳ hée might die a naughtie death, & make a short & euill end. And in this sort as you doe sée, the intreating of this Gyant of his subiects, so are all them that be of so great pride intreated in all the world: he was scarce dead when ỳ all those of the kingdome of Arginaria were very ioyfull to sée it so come to passe, & were nerie desirous to yéeld vp vnto Galtenor, his right & inheritance, and sent straight waies Embassadours to the Citie, whereas hée was, promising to giue him peaceable entring into the kingdome, as vnto their naturall king & Lord, and iustly discharging themselues of all wherin they were found guiltie. The messengers were meruailously well receiued of Galtenor, & with great loue, and he did accept their offer. So it fell out that in one day, was the Gyant Geredeon king and Lord of Arginaria, and in ỳ selfe same day was Galtenor with great contentment vnto all the people of the Iland. And when hée saw himselfe that hée was Lord of that which he so greatly desired, he straight waies dispatched messengers for his kingdome, in giuing them to vnderstand of all that passed, in the which they did reioyce verye much, and with exceéding great good will they receiued all the newes which was sent,

and were as glad of the death of Geredeon, as they were of restoring of the kingdome vnto Galtenor. In few dates after was Claridiano come againe to his strength, and made whole, which was so great ioy and pleasure vnto the King Delfo, that vnto his iudgement, hee needed not to desire any other thing. So when the messengers were returned ỹ they sent vnto Arginaria, they did determine, for that all the coũtry should be put in good order, that Galtenor should depart for that part out of hand, who did procure to carry with him Claridiano: but the King Delfo would not consent vnto it by any meanes for the which the king Galtenor went away greatly discontented. And when he came vnto his kingdome they receiued him with great pompe and honour, and with great delight to see their naturall Lord, and ther was none that made any resistance against the receiuing of his possession: for that one sonne which the Gyaunt left and his brother Bruno, were gone into the Iland of Vespera, of whom in the third part of this history shall be tolde vnto you. And now it is necessarie to leaue the King Delfo, and the King of Arginaria, with the great delight of their victorie, and to returne vnto the noble Emperour, whom wee lefte with his furious and well foughten battaile, in the first part of this booke, with the king of the Garamantes, who had giuen the emperour so great a blow, that he left him without feeling. But when the emperour was come againe vnto him selfe, he turned about his horse with more fury then the Lions in the waine of the mother Idea, when that with a furious rage they moued against that sorrowfull Atis in ỹ desert mountaines of Phrigia. In such sort went this fierce Emperour with his sword all aloft, and stroke him such a terrible blow vpon the shield, that parting it in two peeces, iointly with the helme and head, he fell downe dead to the ground, the which did grieue the Emperour very much, for that he could not performe that which he had promised vnto him. So when this was finished, the Emperour returned vnto his pallaice, whereas hee was receiued with great solemnitie of instruments, and vnarmed by the Empresse betweene

twéene whom there paſſed many ſwéet and amorous ſpéeches touching the communication that they had béfore the battaile bégan. And the next day openly, they returned vnto the ſame talke: but they were cut off by a ſtraunge aduenture which entered into the hall, as ſhal bée declared vnto you, in the chapter following.

¶How a Damoſell, meſſenger from the Queene of Tinacria, brought a letter vnto the Emperour of Grecia, and of all that paſſed about the ſame. Cap. 3

ALthough I alwaies purpoſe to ſeperate my ſelfe in my diſcourſes, frō the frauds, which that moſt cruell Venus doth manye tymes vſe, accompanyed with the deceiptes of hir ſonne, yet am I conſtrained to ſpeake ſome thing therof, and to leaue the ſtout & ſtrong Mars with his ſword in his hand, tourning my pen for to tell vnto you hir cruelties and diſordinate cuſtomes. You dwe wel remember of the amorous wrath that the Quéene of Tinacria had againſt the Emperour of Grecia, and what in that furious rage ſhée dyd ordaine, & how that ſhée commaunded a faythfull damſell of hirs, to carrie a letter vnto the Emperour of Grecia, who made ſo much haſt that ſhée arriued at Conſtantinople, at ſuch time as the battel betwéen the Emperour, and the king of the Garamantes began. And when ſhe ſaw the vnhappie end of the King, ſhée receiued great griefe, being informed of the occaſion of all the battell, and wherefore it was made. So with this griefe, for that night ſhée went and toke hir lodging, whereas ſhe remained till ẏ nert day in ẏ morning, at ſuch time as ẏ Emperour was with the Empreſſe, and many other Knightes in great ioy & paſtimes, & talking of the occaſion of the battaile that was ẏ day before. At that time entred the quéenes damſell with a ſeuere countenaunce, & without making any reuerence, ſhée went vnto the Emperour & ſaid, Emperour, much more valiant and mightie, than loyall and faithfull,

the vnhappie quéene of Tinacria, doth ſend me vnto thée that thou maiſt read this letter, and therby vnderſtand the great tyranny without all reaſon that thou didſt vſe againſt hir. The Emperour with an amorous ſmiling dyd receiue it, & ſayde. Thou art welcome, & for the letter of the quéene, the receipt thereof doth giue mæ great delight, to know and vnderſtand of hir highneſſe. And therewith hée opened the letter, and reading it found that that therein was contayned that which followeth.

" The vnhappie and vnfortunate Quéene of Tinacria, vnto " the diſloyall Emperour of Grecia, can ſend nor wiſh no ſa- " lutation, for hauing no health my ſelfe, I cannot ſend it vn- " to him, that ſo much without loue by cruelty hath forgotten " mæ. I cannot but lament, & complaine mé of thée vnto the " Gods, conſidering that without any refuge thou camſt vn- " to my kingdome, whereas thou hadſt no other hope but of " death, and I procured to deliuer thée from it, and ſought it " for my ſelfe, what occaſiõ hadſt thou O Emperour, that thou " wouldeſt not returne to ſée mæ? In mæ thou foundeſt ſo " much fidelitie, that I did furniſh thæ with armour & horſe, " that with them thou ſhouldeſt deliuer me from thoſe, which " did ſéeke to haue mé againſt my will: But I with my good " will dyd yéld my ſelfe, I ſay my ſelfe vnto him, which now " doth ſéeke my death. Ah Emperour, remember, that I ſaw " thée depriued of all help: an vnhappie day for mé, for that " in making much of thæ, & giuing thée ioye, I béereaued my " ſelfe of all, & loſt the poſſeſſion of my libertie and honour: " and although thou hadſt not eſtéemed, nor tooke any care of " the ſorrowfull Quéene of Tinacria, yet thou ſhouldeſt not " haue moued thy ſelfe to haue made a mocke of the perfecte " loue which I did ſhew thée, and the great deſire that I had " to ſerue thée. Thou ſhouldeſt haue had ſome care and griefe " ſéeing that I defended thée from all my Nobles & Knights " who fought thy death, thou hauing depriued ſo many of my " knights of their liues; thou ſhouldeſt haue had pitie of thẽ " that had pitie on thée. O loue, that ſo quickly diddeſt make " mæ blinde, & depriuedſt mé of ỹ knowledge which I ſhould

haue

haue had vnto my royall highneſſe. O Emperour of Grecia, I being blinde with the loue of thée, dyd deny my honeſtie, which I ought to haue kept. If thou hadſt pretended to mock mée, thou ſhouldeſt haue put mée out of all doubt, and not haue ſuffered mée, to loſe ſo much as I haue loſt for thy ſake, but haue procured that I might haue eſchewed all this harme, whereof thou haſt béene the occaſion. Tell mée, why didſt thou not ſuffer mée to execute my will, ý I might haue opened my white breaſt with that ſharp ſword: it had ben better for mée to haue dyed then, than now, for now liuing, for thée I dayly dye. Remember thy ſelfe Emperour, and behold the harme that will come hérof, & dw not vſe ſo much crueltie with them, that haue not deſerued it at thy hands. Haue thou a care vnto the pawn which thou didſt leaue behinde thée, & let it bée an occaſion ý thou doſt returne to ſée mée. Dw not giue an occaſiõ, ý my children remain motherles in the power of them, for thou doſt not know what my ſubiects will doe. O Emperour of Grecia, I doe ſtil tarry & loſe for thée, ý which hope doth cauſe me to ſuffer this cruel paine: and if thou doſt ſend my truſtie meſſenger without it, I ſhall bée driuen to doe ý, of which ý hadſt béene better, ý hadſt not diſturbed mée at the firſt. But now it ſhall bée in this manner, that if thou doſt giue eaſe vnto mée, I will procure thine in ſuch ſort as poſſible I may. So that Emperour, I do tarie thy comming, or elſe anſwere of my death. And dwe not iudge this which I dwe, to bée of great boldneſſe, for that Loue doth commaund it. By hir, which without all regard, or any foreſight, dyd yeeld vnto thee hir libertie.

When hée had made an ende of reading the letter he could not haue ſo much ſufferance with himſelfe, but with ý teares which diſtilled from his eyes, hée muſt nédes ſhew the payne which his heart indured, for the ſorrowfull complaints, which that lamentable and complayning Letter dyd vtter. The Damoſell which brought the Letter, all the time that the Emperour was reading of it, ſhée neuer withdrew hir eyes from loking on him: and when

ſhée

" ché saw that hé had made an ende of reading it, ché sayd:
" Wherefore wilt thou giue mé to vnderstand O cruel Tre-
" batio, that thou dost receiue great sorrow of that, which whē
" thou mightest haue redressed thou wouldest not, & dōe not
" make mé béleeue ý these outward shewes do proceed from
" thy hart. Dost thou think that it is sufficient to excuse thé
" frō the paine that is pretended to bé giuen thé. Dost thou
" not sée, that when thou couldest giue remedie (thou woldest
" not) vnto them, who now are without all hope, & tarryeth
" for no other satisfaction but with thy head O false Emperor,
" diddest thou not sée that ché was not a Lady to bé thus
" mocked & deceiued. Surely thou hast recouered to thy selfe a
" very good name, for the exalting of thy lygnage. Thy sonne
" whom we honour there for a God, may well praise himselfe
" for his descent, in hauing thé for his father. O false & cru-
" ell, is this the inheritance which thou diddest inherit of thy
" most famous bloud? Is this the great loyaltie which thou
" dost shew vnto thy sonnes? O vile Geerke, how dō ý Gods
" cōsent that so disloyall a knight should liue in the world. Is
" it not possible that these sorrowful & continuall complaints
" of Tinacria dōe not open your eares, and cause you to send
" downe punishment, for this great offence. O ingratefull
" Gods, receiue the sacrifice of my chastitie in payment of the
" reuengement which from your high heauens I hope shal be
" done vpon this counterfait without all fayth, & make that
" my bloud héere shed vpon this flore, may shew the single-
" nesse and cleane loue of Garofilea, and that with the lyke
" solempnitie may bé broken in peces the hart of him which
" was the causer of hir dishonour. And in vttering of these &
such like sorrows ché toke forth a naked sword which ché
brought ready for the same effect, and put the pomel to the
ground, & cast hir breast vpon the point, the which ché dyd
with so great hast, that the Emperour nor any of all ý were
there present could not succour hir, nor take hir from doing
that fact. All that were present remained very much ama-
zed to sée so sodaine mischaunce. The Emperour very full of
griefe of this succesle, withdrew himselfe into his closet, and
would

would not consent that any one should speake a word vnto him. The couragious Empresse with a royall stomacke & great discretion, dissembling his griefe in the best wise shee could, commanded hir body to bee caried out of the pallaice, and in the court of the pallaice she commanded to be made a rich tombe, in the which she was buried: there was made hir proportion, which did shew what chaunced vnto ỹ damsell: and about the tombe was written an Epitath, which did declare the occasion of hir death. All the time that this damsel was a burying, the Emperour neuer came forth out of his closet, neyther would hee haue come forth when hee did, & if it had not been by the great importance of the Empresse. Whereas now wee will leaue them, for to tell you of the chances and aduentures which hapend vnto the Prince Eleno, the time that hee trauailed in the world, ỹ which for that hee was as noble as warlike, & of great strength, it is not reason, that hee should passe so long without making any mention of him. You doe well remember how hee went out of Numidia, with one onely Page, putting himselfe to sea, in that inchaunted barke of the Knight of the Sunne. Hee was so beaute and sorrowfull for the death of his Lady and Mistresse, that hee was cleane changed, & appeered not to be him that he was wont, neither had hee so great wisdome to gouerne himselfe. In this manner hee trauayled almost a whole yeare, and neuer could meete with Brenio, vnto whom he was commanded to giue the letter from Lidia, neither could hee heare in any place whersoeuer hee came, where hee might goe to seeke him: in which his trauaile, hee did not let but to meete with some aduenture, the which, with great honor to his person, he finished. Yet for all this he could haue no ease of his sorrow & griefe, which brought him in such perplexitie, that if hee had not cõsidered ỹ great losse of his soule, many times hee would haue slain himselfe. So it happened ỹ one morning very early, the bark had put hir selfe a ground, giuing him to vnderstand, that it was requisite there for to goe a lande. The Prince who was very desirous therof, quickly went a shoare, and after him

his

his page, who as you haue heard, that by reson of the great haſt that the barke made, he could not returne a land to Numidia. His name was called Fabio, who was to his maſter ſuch compeny that many times hee would comfort the Prince, when hee was moſt troubled with very comfortable words and perſwaſions, and did ſerue him with great loue and fidelitie. The Prince and his Page began to trauaile a foote with an eaſie pace through a narow & ſtraight path, and with a meruailous & diligent eye, hee dyd behold that countrey, and it ſeemed vnto him, that he ſhould know it, and that beefore that time hee had paſſed by that way: but the firme loue that hee had to Lidia, was ỳ occaſion that it was out of his remembrance. So with this ſorrow he trauayled, till ſuch time as Phœbus had paſſed the fourth part of his iourney, whẽ that beeing wery with the long way, & the great waight of his armor, he was forced to take ſome reſt & eaſe, vnder the freſh & græn mirtle trees, whoſe leaues did bath thẽſelues in a faire & cleere fountaine, whereas hee began a new to haue in remembrance his former paine, & complayning of Fortune, hee publiſhed his great griefe, making ſhow of the great ſorrow ỳ hee felt, & although hee was wery of complaining, & ſeeing himſelfe ſo without all remedy, hee called for his lute, for ỳ Fabio dyd alwayes carry with him, & taking it in his hands, onely to giue ſome eaſe vnto his tormented hart, hee began to ſing theſe verſes following.

SInce heauens accord for to increaſe my care,
what hope haue I for to enioye delight?
Sith Fates and Fortune doe themſelues prepare,
fully to work gainſt mee their worſt deſpight.
I know no meanes that may yeeld mee reliefe,
But onely Death, which can diſſolue my griefe.

I muſe, and may, my ſorrowes beeing ſuch,
that my poore heart can longer life ſuſtaine,
For that (God wot) I finde my griefe ſo much,
as euery day, I feele a dying payne.

But

But yet (alas) I liue afflicted ſtill,
And haue no help to heale mee of my ill.

When as I minde my payne and pleaſure paſt
together mixt, it makes mee mone my ſtate:
And ſince my weale with woe is ouercaſt,
O Death giue ende to my vnhappie fate.
For onely death will laſting lyfe prouide,
Where liuing thus, I ſundry deaths abide.

His Page Fabio dyd cauſe him to leaue off his ſinging, for with the great attention that hæ gaue to heare his maſter, hæ likewiſe heard a lamentable ſound, which ſeemed to bæ of a Lady. Likewiſe the Prince, when hæ had ended his ſwæt Muſicke, did hearken to heare it: and giuing a very attentiue eare, that although ſhæ did complaine with a low voice, yet hæ might heare that the ſound of the voyce, came forth of the thickeſt from amongſt thoſe trées: and without any more tarrying, hæ left his lute with his Page, & went that way from which hæ thought the voice came, & the farther hæ went, the better hæ might heare that weak & fæble voyce. Still hæ went forwards, till ſuch time as hæ might ſæ who it was that made that lamentation. And he ſaw that it was a very fayre Lady, that was bound vnto a træ, all naked to the ſkin, ſhæ had all hir hayre ſpred abroad vpon hir naked backe. The Prince came vnto hir, and bæfore that hæ ſayde any word, hæ dyd vntie hir, and cut the cords wherewith ſhæ was bound, and toke a gowne which was there of the Ladyes, and couered hir delicate and white body. The Lady was very much aſhamed to ſæ hir ſelfe loſe and at libertie: & ſitting downe vnder a græne Oake, the Prince aſked of hir who hæ was, that without reſpect of his owne honeſtie and honour, had left hir in that ſort.

This fayre Lady ſayde: Knight, thou ſhalt vnderſtand that I am Daughter vnto a very good Knight and Gentleman, who was LORD ouer thræ Caſtles of the beſt in all this Countrey. My Fathers name was Coſdros,

hæ

» hée was one of them that was slaine by the handes of Bar-
» marandus, whom afterwards the Emperour [illegible] slew
» in battaile. So I remained all alone, very much made of, &
» well beeloued of the widdow my mother, and wee kept our
» selues in a very faire castle of ours, not far from this place,
» wheras we did passe our solitary liues. So I was required
» of loue, of a Gentleman, more richer in goodes and lands,
» then in linage or vertue, and I vnderstanding his litle esti-
» mation, dyd alwayes esteeme him as little, and neuer made
» any reckoning of his message: the which was the occasion
» that his desire was the more stronger, in such sort, that
» hee seeing himselfe by mee not esteemed, but put off, with the
» great griefe that hée receiued for my loue, hee dyed, & at the
» houre of his death, he neuer left naming of, *Felina* the cause
» of all my harme. At such time as hee dyed there was a bro-
» ther of his present: and hearing him to declare the causer
» of his death, there kindled in him so much anger and wrath,
» that hée bare vnto mée a perpetual hatred & dyd procure to
» haue amends for the death of his brother. So it hapned on
» a time, that I went out of the castle without any mistrust,
» in the cõpany of other two Damsells, at which time I was
» stolne away by him, and other foure Knights, who brought
» mee vnto this place, which is to my great sorrow & griefe,
» wheras they bound mee in that sort as thou hast found mee
» gentle knight, and not content herewith (but for my more
» paine & sorrow) they left mee naked, with greater desire to
» dye then to liue. This Lady could not let but associate hir
tale with great lamentations, wherein this Dacian dyd
beare hir company, & sayde. Of truth sorrowfull Lady, for-
tune hath vsed wᵭ mee great liberalitie, to bring mee hether
in this time, for to set you at libertie from this great cap-
tiuitie, & to make reuengement of thy honour: and here I
doe offer my selfe, & do giue vnto thee my fayth of Knight-
hood to performe it, or to lose my lyfe. This fayre Lady
was somewhat comforted with the offer of the knight, and
gaue him great thanks for the fauor which he did offer hir.
In this sort they passed the rest of the night that remained,

till

till such time as the Sun of Tona did shew his glistering face, spreading all abroad his golden beames, accompanyed with the swæt & rosalike Aurora, at which time they were all ready a foote for to goe onwards on their way, & straight waies they heard amongest thē thickest of those trées a still sound. The Prince being verie desirous to know what it was, and comming thether, he saw that it was his horse, the which was brought thether by ỳ order of the wise Lyrgandeo, from the place whereas hée left him, at such time as hée did imbarke himselfe. The Prince received great delight at the sight of him, and taking him by the bridle, hée leaped on his back, and went to séeke the Ladies Palfraie, which was let lose amongst those thicke trées, and they found him féeding in a faire and grēne medow, adorned with many fresh and swæt flowers. So his page leapt on his backe, & tooke the Lady behinde him, and trauailed through a narow and well beaten path, which brought them into a broad way that carried them into a verie great and large plaine, at the end thereof there was a verye faire Castell, and in the middest of the plaine they saw foure Knightes which came towards them, and when they were nigh together, the one of them said: Tell me knight who made thée so bold, as for to vnlose this Ladie from the place whereas she was made fast. What is this that thou askest, said Eleno, is it possible that thou art he, that forgetting all the honour that thou doest owe vnto the order of knighthood, madest fast this Ladie. The knight answered & said: I am he that did it, & hée that will take away thy life frō thée, in recompence of thy great boldnesse to vnlose hir. So without any more tarryeng the Prince Eleno turned about his horse towards him. When this sorrowfull Lady saw him ỳ was the occasion of all hir euill, shee leapt downe from hir Palfray, & began wt a new sorow, hir grieuous lamentation. Those foure knights came all against ỳ prince, some with their speares, & he ỳ had none, came wt his sword in his hand with great furie, one of the foure, who thought himselfe to be more valiant thē all ỳ rest, came formost with his sword in his hand all a high, & stroke

him a mightie blow vpon his helme with all his strength: but this Dacian Prince made little account thereof: and passing by hée stroke him a blow vpon the shield, & for that his blow could extend no farther, he remained with his life, otherwise it had cost him the price thereof, for it parted his shield in two peeces. The Knight returned, and gaue him another blow, that he made ỳ sparks of fire to flie out of his healme. Then the Dacian full of yre, let goe his shield, and clasped fast his sword in both his handes, and stroke him so terrible a blow vpon his helme, that he cut helme and head in two peeces, and he fell down dead to the earth. The other séeing their companion dead, all thrée together set vpon him: but this valiant Dacian who in such like aduentures neuer had any feare, did receiue them with his accustomed furye, striking on them both on the right and left hand with mortall blowes. In the meane time, this afflicted Lady, when she saw the Knight dead, which caused hir dishonour, like a furious Lionesse she went towardes him and saide. Oh how the gods haue giuen thée thy paiment for the dishonor, which thou hast done me: yet she said. O beauie Felina, what doth this reuengement profite thy honour, being lost, it were very great riches vnto me, that by ỳ death of him which hath robbed me of it, it might be restored me again. Oh my gods, I am in no fault, in the losing of my chastitie, for that it was violently taken from me, in the thicke forrest. There shall be none able to disturbe, but that I will execute my fury vpon my selfe, although I do not deserue the same: and in saying these words, she toke the sword of that dead Knight, and put the point to hir breast, and threw hir selfe thereon, in such sort, that Fabio could not succour hir, although with great hast he would haue done it. The Dacian Knight casting his head on the one side, & saw the harme done, he prest forwards with great furie and yrefull wrath, and lift vp his sword, and stroke such a blow at one of them vppon his right arme, that arme and sword together fell to the ground, and straight tourned vnto another, and with an ouerthwart blow, hée stroke him on the making fast of this

healme

healme, that head & all came to the ground. Then he which remained, seeing the fiercenesse of his aduersary, would haue runne away. But the Dacian perceiuing it, before that he could put in execution his desire, he stroke him such a blow vpon his helme, that being parted in peeces with the head, he made him to beare company with his dead companions. So when he had concluded this battaile he went vnto the dead Lady and hauing great sorrow to see her, he pulled the bloudie sword out of her body, and commaunded Fabio that in the best manner he could to make a graue, and to bury her. The Dacian did helpe him all that he could, and being done vnto their contentment, he put an Epitaph ouer her, which was in this wise.

Luckleſſe Felina heere interd doth lie,
whom traitor falſe within this forreſt wide,
Defloured firſt of hir virginitie.
She loathing after, long a liue to bide:
Vpon his blade hir tender breaſt did caſt,
A bloudie offring to Diana chaſt.

So when he had written this Epitaph, ioyning this great sorrow vnto that which hee had before, hee leapt vpon his horse, and put himselfe amongst a companye of troublesome trees, among the which he had not trauailed long, when hee heard one playing on a shepheards Rebucke, which made a verye sweete sound. and tourning his horse that way from whence the sound came, hee chaunced to come whereas hee found certaine shepheardes, who by their countenaunces appeared to bee verye sadde, and they sat vnder a Walnut tree, where they passed awaye the great heate of the day. These Shepheardes when the saw the Prince, arose vp, and with great ioye they did salute him: The Prince retourned vnto them their salutations, and did alighte from his horse, which hee gaue vnto Fabio his Page, that he might put him into some voyde Pasture, together with his palfray, whereas they might feede on the greene grasse,

in the shadow from the heate of the Sun. The Prince sate downe vnder the Walnut tree, & asked of them if they had any thing to eate, the which was giuen him with a verye good will, being such as they had prouided themselues, and he eate of it for that he had a verie good stomacke, so here to take some ease, I doe referre the rest till the next Chapter.

¶ How the Dacian Prince did meete with Brenio, to whom hee gaue the Letter of Lidia, and what Brenio did aunswere therevnto. Chap. 4.

IN the meane time that the Prince and his Page did eate of ỳ which ỳ shepheardes had giuen them, they neuer withdrew their eyes from the Prince, but did verye much behold him, and reioyced to see him so well proportioned and so faire, but yet they meruailed to see him sadde and pensiue, musing what should bee the occasion of his great heauinesse, and one of the shepheardes did aske him, and said: Knight, what great heauinesse is this which you seeme to haue, for according vnto the outwarde shew it seemeth to procede of loue. Ah my friend, answered Eleno, is it possible that thou doest know any part of those euills, for that me thinketh loue ought not to be remembred of them that do dwell so farre from any townes or companie, as you which in these sharpe and cragged mountaines doe make your habitation. How do we know, answered the shepheard, he is of such strength & subtiltie, that hee doth not onely shew his force vpon vs, but also he is the occasion that we do occupie our imaginations in his delights (which is so great a torment that we cannot receiue a greater) he maketh that our cattell (that doe not deserue any such harme) lacke their good feeding which wee should procure, the which our small regarde doeth appeare in their weake and leane bodies, lowing more time for hunger thē for to much feeding or good pasture.

Ab

Ah Knight, what should I tell you of that which hée hath caused all vs that be heere to suffer, and when we doe talke of it, there is not one of vs, but doth muse at the other, how he hath the force & strength to beare it. The Dacian Knight said: I know well that he doth pardon none, neither is there anye that doth escape from his power, such is his pride and ambition: therefore it is not much to be meruailed at, seeing that he doth as well walke the fieldes as the dwelling townes. But sith it hath pleased Fortune (the more for my paine and griefe) to méet with them that are woũded with loue, I do desire you that I may take some pleasure in your musicke, and in hearing some songs that you haue made to publish your true and perfect loue withall. This we will do with a verye good will aunswered the shepheard: and for that you doe seeme vnto vs, for to be of high estate, we will play on our instruments, to giue you some comfort, and we will publish our paines & griefes, with our owne mouthes: andt aking the Rebeck in his hand, which was meruailously well wrought, hée beganne to play vppon the same very sweetely, and likewise did associate the Musicke with these pastorall verses.

YOu Louers all assist my song,
and helpe me to declare
The slights of craftie Cupide strong,
the worker of my care.

Whose shafts and shifts be of such might,
they make one heart to guide
Two bodies: and by outward sight,
two soules in one doe bide.

O vnion sweete by Loue so knit,
O life adorde to bee:
If this were all the harme of it,
it could not hurtfull bee.

But Cupide vſeth ſuch delaies,
ſuch ſpites for to oppreſſe
The heart: that one may pine alwaies,
and neuer finde redreſſe.

Yet if the parties firmly loue,
his ſpite cannot preuaile,
My minde therefore ſhall neuer moue,
vntill my life doe faile.

With great paine, and with a gracious countenaunce in his muſicke, this ſhepheard did ſing his ſong: and when hée had made an end, he ſaide. Ah Knight, if you did know the cauſe of this my ſong, you would take as much griefe & ſorrow at it, as of my paine: you ſhall vnderſtande that I did loue a Paſtora very much, and do beléeue ſhe repaired me againe with the ſame loue, and no longer agoe, but yeſterday ſhe was taken out of theſe fieldes, and carraied vnto Tinacria, vnto the quéene Garrofilea. The ſhepheard vttered this with ſo great abundance of teares, that he could not ſpeak a word more: ſo one of the other ſhepheardes toke the Rebecke, and began to ſing as followeth.

THe troubled minde afflicted is,
when changed thoughts appeare,
Of paine and glory, bale and bliſſe,
which ſtill diſturbe mans cheere.

And if that griefe the goale doth win,
the hart doth then remaine,
By this debate incloſed in,
with thought of paſſed paine.

Euen ſo my hart afflicted is,
I no defence can make:
My wonted mirth I ſo doe miſſe,
I no delight can take.

My

My heauie minde is clogd with care,
my glory ouerthrowen:
And ſorrow lotted for my ſhare,
my griefe ſo great is growen.

Yeeld wounded hart in ſunder torne,
ſith thou no gaine canſt get,
Ceaſe off thy ſute thou art forlorne,
by thee ſhee naught doth ſet.

Let Death diſſolue thy bitter greiſe,
and glory in the ſame:
For therein thou ſhalt finde reliefe,
and blaze thy Faith by Fame.

This louing ſhepheard when hée had made an end of his ſong, giuing a great and ſorrowfull ſigh, let the Rubeck fall out of his hand. The third ſhepheard with a diſſembling laughter, aroſe vpon his féete and ſaid. Oh ſouereigne gods, that this Loue might be ſéene, whom all you doe account to be a God & Lord, that you might at your eaſe reioyce in his ſimplenes, & know him that hath brought you out of all vnderſtanding & remẽbrance, as it doth appeare by your variable reaſons, & ill placed words, which without any order bee vttered: ſo ỹ I promiſe you, if we ſhuld turne & make reherſall at night, of all ỹ which you do talk on in ỹ day, you ſhall not finde ỹ ther is any agréement therin, as by their songs gentle knight you may know, & with what Philoſophie they wold giue vs to vnderſtand, ỹ two bodies haue but one hart. And héere I ſweare vnto you, by the might & power of Alfebo, ỹ reſtorer of the Countries, & by the great valor of the Dacian Prince, ỹ in what ſort ſoeuer you wilk tumble and toſſe theſe variable reaſons, ther is no vnderſtanding of man can cauſe mée to bélæue, ỹ two bodies are gouerned by one hart alone, at leaſt waies I would not be he that ſhould bée without a heart. Likewiſe heare the reaſons of my other companion, who tumbleth together, and maketh a mixture

of glorie & paine, and paine and glory, as though we should mixe honnie & gall together: and if I should let them contend much, they would goe about to make mee beleeue that which neuer chanced: but remaine you with these your amorous thoughtes, or as I might better say, with your folish conceits, and let me haue continually my cattell well fed & gouerned, & in as good plight as now they are, beeing so fat as the skinne may hold, and not to be as you are, that hath lost all your owne reason and vnderstanding, and therwith forget and lose ths care that you should haue of yours, who for lacke of looking vnto, be so leane. And making an end in saying these woordes, he sate himselfe downe, and seemed to be very angry to see his cõpanions so without reason & vnderstanding, & blinded with loue. The which woordes was the occasion, that the Prince Eleno was constrained to doe that which since his departure out of Dacia he did not, which was, that he laughed to heare the simplicitie of this shepheard, & taking in hand to answere him, he said: Friend, I doe tell thee that thy resistance is great: likewise thy vnderstanding is verie much, that being conuersant dayly and hearing the great complaints and communication of so amorous sheapheards, thou art not intangled w̃ the same. And heere I doe desire thee, that thou hold thy selfe firme in the same, & keep thy selfe still as thou art, least peraduenture that which thou doest now call folly, hereafter thou wilt call discreation & wisedome, thou mayest now well account thy selfe happye, for that without all care & sorrow, thou maiest reuile them who doth complaine of so many miseries. With a great laughter this shepheard answered and said: Now gentle knight, I do tell thee, that I will as litle contend with thee as with thy companions, for that it seemeth vnto mee that thou art also a vassall vnto that foolish loue, & I doe more esteeme my libertie, thus simple as thou doest see mee, then all the wisdome which thou dost presume to haue: it is much better for the shepheard to haue care and keepe of his cattel, to guide them in good feeding, and not euerye small time to call for his crowde, and singing two thousand songes, the

which the diuell cannot vnderſtand, and although they ſing them, yet I thinke they vnderſtand thē not themſelues. So one of his companions eut of his reaſons and ſayd: Tarido, doſt thou not know, how at mine owne libertie, in times paſt I dyd gouerne my ſelfe, and mocking & ieſting at them who dyd publiſh the lyke complaynts. Heere I doe deſire the Gods to maintaine thée in this eſtate, & to kæpe thæ, ỹ loue doe not extend his fury vpon thée, for if hée doe, he will make thæ repent a thouſand times theſe woꝛds which thou haſt ſayde. And heere gentle Knight (without giuing any attenſion vnto this Ruſtical ſhepheard) heere I doe deſire you, for that I ſée you bring that which is neceſſary, that you would play and ſing, for that the manifeſting of thy ſoꝛrow in ſome hearſe, may hée an occaſion to mitigate ſomewhat of our payne. The Prince to ſhew pleaſure vnto the ſhepheards, and vſing his accuſtomed magnificence, toke his Lute in his hand he played and ſung theſe hearſes following.

CAliope from Pernaſſe hill proceede,
and ſhew thy ſacred face with teares beedewd,
Let Gods and Nymphes prepare themſelues with ſpeed,
to heare my plaints that are by loue renewd:
And with thy moanes, O mournefull Muſe aſſiſt
My wayling ſong, which doth on woe conſiſt.

And then may I at large paint out my paine,
amongſt theſe paſtors which deſire the ſame:
And after I haue ended, to complaine,
gainſt him whom iuſtly I haue cauſe to blame:
Except theſe ſhepheards too vnciuill bee,
They will with ſobs aſſiſt the ſighs of mee.

Time weares out loue, it is reported ſo,
and ſo it may, I will it not denie,
Yet I haue tride long time, and this I know,
Time giues no eaſe vnto my miſerie:

But rather Fortune, Time, and Loue agree,
With cruell paynes ceaſleſſe to puniſh mee.

O rare report, yet too too common found,
that Loue ſhould murther man with ſuch deſpight,
Thou blinded boy which doſt ſo aimeleſſe wound,
and in the griefe of louers haſt delight:
Ceaſe off to ſhoote, although thy eyes bee blinde,
Let mercie now at laſt poſſeſſe thy minde.

I neuer heard of any yet ſo praiſde,
for conſtantneſſe, that might thy force gainſay,
I cannot ſhew the miſchiefe thou haſt raiſde,
nor bring one proofe my paſſions to allay:
For by thy fury Kingdomes are ſubdude,
And trenchant blades in peoples blouds imbrude.

Wherefore all you that heare my mournfull ſong,
and taſted haue the griefe that I ſuſtaine,
Complaine with mee gainſt cruell Cupids wrong,
whoſe ſlights almoſt my louing hart hath ſlaine:
Shunne his deceipt, ſo ſubtill, falſe and flye,
His poyſoned baits for euer ſeeke to flye.

With the great paine & ſorrow that Eleno felt, hée was not able to goe forwards with his ſong, for that there came to his remembrance the ſodayne departure of Lidia, which conſtrained him to leaue it off, & one of the ſhepheards that was there ſayd: Oh gentle Knight, how ỹ quéene our Lady wold reioyce to heare you, for that ſhee is likewiſe afflicted by loue, for which cauſe & for that ſhee would at ſome time take eaſe of hir ſorrow and payne, ſhee doth commaund vs to ſing our louing and amorous ſongs, who doth ſolempniſe our ſweét and louing hearſes, with tears diſtilling from hir ſorrowfull eyes: Then Eleno aſked of thē who was the occaſion, that the quéene, without hauing any power to remedie hir ſelfe ſhould ſuffer ſuch like torment. The ſhepherd

dyd declare vnto him all that hath bẽn tolde you in the ſtory paſt of the Emperour Trebatio, and of all that paſſed with the Quœne. Tarido, who of all this had no care, but onely to the fẽding of his Cattell, did break of this conuerſation, in riſing vp to put abroad his Cattel into the grẽn medows, the other ſhepheards that were in companie with Tarido, deſired that the night wer come, for to returne & to reioyce themſelues in hearing the ſwẽt and wel conſorted Muſick of the Prince, & ſo they made agrẽment to returne to ỳ ſame place, but it fel not out as they had determined, for that vpon a ſodaine and vnawares Eleno heard a very dolorous ſigh towards his left hand, which was ſo terrible, heauy, & bitter, ỳ it made him giue attentiue eare to ſẽ if hẽ could vnderſtand what it ſhould bẽ, and with the quiet eare that hẽ gaue, hẽ might diſcerne that the occaſion of all that euill was lone, which cauſed him to ſay: Oh almighty god, I ſuppoſe that this is the place wher in olde time they reported to bẽ planted the dwelling of the Goddeſſe Venus, for that ſince my comming hether to take my reſt, I haue heard no other thing but lamentation, and ſo with making the leaſt noiſe poſſible, hẽ aroſe vp & bẽgan to goe towards ỳ place whereas hẽ might ſẽ what it was, and there hẽ bẽheld a knight very well armed, which then dyd alight from his horſe, vnder a fayre & grẽne Myrtle trẽ, his armour was all ruſſet, and full of barres of blacke ſtẽle, which ſhewed to bẽ a very ſadde, ſorrowfull, and beauie enamelling, hẽ was ſomewhat of a bigge ſtature of body and well proportioned, and there ſẽmed by his diſpoſition to bẽ in him great vertue, & with ſorrowfull ſighes hẽ layde himſelfe downe on the grẽne graſſe, and with ſad and heauy words hẽ ſayde.

Ah beauie and peruerſe fortune why doſt thou conſent that ſo naughtie and euill a man as I am do line ſo long: Oh my Lidia, with how much reaſon maiſt thou complayne of the cruell outrage that thou receiuedſt at the handes of Brenio, bẽing nothing of him conſidered: O Brenio, Brenio, wheron was thy thought & vnderſtandig, which did induce

thẽ

" thée to commit ſo great euil, in leauing all alone and with-
" out comfort, the thing, of whom thou wert moſt beloued in
" the world, giuing and leauing hir, vnto the wil of the wilde
" and furious beaſts. It is poſſible in deede that they will haue
" more compaſſion on thée my Lidia, then hée who had more
" reaſon to comfort and loue thée. Oh cruell, and without all
" faith, ỹ wert borne into this world, for thy owne torment,
" when with thy ſelfe thou didſt conſent to commit ſo great
" treaſon. Where was thy vnderſtanding that thou couldeſt
" not remember thy ſelfe, & take pittie on hir, that did forſake
" hir affinitie and Countrie, for thée and thy loue. O Lidia,
" who made mée to forget all the great paynes and trauaile
" which thou tookeſt, in wandring by land alone lamenting,
" and ſometimes by ſea ſorrowing, and all for to let at liber-
" tie him, who left thée priſoner amongeſt the wilde beaſtes.
" Oh happy beaſt is he, that chaunceth to bury thée in his bel-
" ly: and woe bée vnto mée traitor, without any knowledge of
" vertue or pittie. What doth it now profit mée to fill ỹ aire
" with my lamentations, ſéeing that the harme and euill is
" alreadie paſt, and without all remedy or hope of comfort: &
" hérwith hée gaue a terrible and grieuous ſigh, & ſo held his
" peace. Don Eleno by thoſe beaute and ſorrowfull weepings
together with his reſons which hée heard, knew him to bée
that Brenio, whom ſo long time hée had laboured to ſéeke &
find out with ſo great trauaile, & knew him to bée the cau-
ſer of the death of his Lady and Miſtreſſe, the payne and
ſorrow was ſo extreame the which hée felt, that he was cõ-
ſtrained without any fæling to fal downe to the groũd, but
yet the fury of his couragious hart would not giue place
that hée ſhould ſo remaine long, but ſtraight waies with ỹ
great anguiſh that hée had, hée aroſe vp againe on foot, with
great deſire to fight with Brenio, but calling to remẽbrance
all that which was cõmanded him, he would firſt performe
the ſame in giuing him the Letter, and then when hée had
made an ende of reading the ſame, to demaund of him bat-
taile. So with this thought & determination, hée went vn-
to the place whereas Brenio was, who, when hée heard the
noyſe,

noyſe, ſtraight wayes on his feete: then Eleno dyd ſalute him with a voice ſomewhat heauie. And Brenio dyd returne vnto him his ſalutation, with no leſſe ſhow of griefe. Then this amorous Eleno, toke forth the letter out of the place, wheras ſo long tyme hæ had kept it, and taking it into his hand hæ ſayd. Is it poſſible that thou art ý forgetfull and diſloyall Brenio, the which left Lidia, with ſo great payne & ſorrow, all alone in the power of the wilde beaſtes. Brenio when he heard him to ſay theſe words, hée bægan to behold him, although his eyes were all to bæ blubbered & wearie with wæpings, hée anſwered him and ſayd. I will not deny thæ gentle Knight, that which ý high heauens doth complayne of. Thou ſhalt vnderſtand that I am the ſame Brenio, whom thou haſt demanded for. Tell mæ what is your will, and what it is that you would haue. Eleno anſwered him. Oh ingratefull Knight without all knowledge and vnderſtanding, what diuell was ý, which put in thy thought to commit ſo great villanie, take hære vnto thæ, and reade this letter, the laſt work of the faire and white hand of Lidia. The prince was ſo troubled in his thought, and ſo much griued, that it was almoſt the occaſion, to diſſolue the ſoule from his body. This penitent and ſorrowfull Luſitanian, put forth his hand ſomewhat trembling, in ſuch ſort, that bæing conſtrained, by force to take the letter, the ſame force by wearie meanes, dyd conſtraine him to ſit downe, on the ground, without any farther power to the contrary: & whē hée opened the letter, hée knew it to bée written by his Lidia: who with great alteration of hart and minde, did read it, the which was as hæreafter followeth.

The Letter.

THe infortunate Lidia, & thy mortall enimie Brenio, doth ſend thæ health, although of hir part there is no power ſo giue it thæ neither able to moue hir ſelfe, for that in thy reſpect, ſhée hath it not, neyther hath ſhée any hope thereof. Oh Brenio, wherefore didſt thou conſent, that ſo perfect and

true

» true loue which I bare to thée should be accounted vaine, &
» wouldest not performe the fayth which without asking in
» a very short time thou diddest grant vnto me, oh cruel Bre-
» nio, oh hard hart, is this the firme loue that so friendly thou
» didst profesie to mée, what is hée ý hath bæne more vnmercy-
» full then thou hast bæne. There is no furious beast, Tyger,
» nor Lyon, vnto whome at theyr wil thou didst deliuer me,
» that with theyr vnmercifull nayles they might cruelly in-
» treat my flesh, but would haue accompanyd mæ with more
» pittie, and haue holpen mée to lament my cruell destinie. Ah
» Brenio, the great paine which I suffer wil not consent to de-
» clare the vnreasonable torments, troubles, and sorrows the
» which for thée I haue passed, so that I nède not to refer it
» vnto them who doth know it very well: but of one thing
» alone I will giue thée to vnderstand, that in the end when
» thou diddest leaue all alone, and at my waking I could not
» finde thée, my dolorous paine was so great, ý I did not thinck
» to escape with my life. But my mishap, (which hath bæn al-
» waies vnto mée cõtrarie, & the more to increase my paine)
» was such, that my lamẽtation was heard by a Knight, who
» bæing moued with compassion, did aske of mæ the occasion
» of all this my harme and griefe, & when ý I had told him
» (whether it was by motion of loue, the which I had wholy
» giuen vnto thée, or by the ouermuch cõpassion which he had
» of my paine) hæ brought mæ out of ý solitary place where-
» as thou diddest leaue mæ, & carried mæ wheras I made an
» ende of all my great paines & passions. Ah Brenio when I
» wrote these few lines, my body was almost colde & without
» all strength, redie to yælde vp my soule, which is (I know)
» to thée great cõtentment, and for that thou shouldest bæ sa-
» tisfied of thy desire, I dyd determine to aduertise thæ, in gi-
» uing thée to vnderstand of my desired death, thou bæing the
» onely occasion thereof: Oh Brenio, now are the Fates cut-
» ting of ý thrid of my lyfe asunder, & I can giue thæ know-
» ledge of no more. But yet I dœ desire thée by the true loue
» which I bare thée, that ý wilt read these few lines wõ some
» sorrow: and hære of the Gods I dœ desire, that they dœ

make

make thée to paſſe the ſame euill which ỹ haſt béne the occaſion of vnto me, til ſuch time as it bringeth thée to dy the like death ỹ for thée I now dy. And if ỹ doſt deſire to know any farther of this matter, hæ which bringeth thæ this can informe thée of the whole ſtate therof, for that now I hãue no more time, neyther my ſtrength will conſent vnto it.

The teares were in ſo great abundance which this ſad & heauy knight did ſhed in ỹ time that he was a reading this dolorous letter, that hæ all to wet ỹ ſame, ỹ meſſenger likewiſe dyd not let to beare him compante, & to ſolempne his heauineſſe with ſo many more teares diſtilling frõ his eyes. The great ſorrow & lamentatiõ was ſuch & ſo much, that in a great ſpace ỹ one could not ſpeake vnto the other, but afterwards their pain being ſomwhat appeaſed, Brenio began to ſpeake & ſay. Oh meſſenger frõ hir, with ỹ remembrance of whoſe wrong my ſoule is wounded, béeing vndeſeruedly, of mæ euill rewarded. Tell mæ for Gods loue if thou doſt know where ſhée is, ſhew vnto mæ hir abiding place, that I may go thether, & giue a diſcharge of this my great fault, in yælding my ſelfe to death: Oh cruel & without all loue, anſwered Don Eleno, what diſcharge canſt thou giue vnto hir ỹ alreadie through thy cruelty is dead & buried: thou ſhalt do much better to ariſe & take vnto thée thy armor, & defend thy ſelfe from him ỹ wil procure thy death, to make ſatisfaction of the debt, that ſhæ without any dutie dyd pay. Is it poſſible anſwered Brenio, that Lidia is dead: it is poſſible anſwered Eleno, ſhæ is dead, by the occaſion of ſuch a foꝛſworne knight as thou art. This penitent & payned knight whẽ he vnderſtood ỹ certaintie of all this euill, with a ſodaine and haſtie fury ſtroke himſelfe on the breaſt a great ſtrok with his fiſt. and lifting his eyes vnto the heauens in manner of exclamation againſt his Gods, giuing dæpe and ſorrowfull ſighes, hæ threw himſelfe to the ground, and tumbled and wallowed from the one part vnto the other, without taking any eaſe, or hauing any power or ſtrength to declare his inward payne and griefe the which at that tyme hée felt,

but

but with an inward lamentatiõ, which did tormẽt his hart, hæ called continually vpon Lidia, & with that diuelliſh fury wherin hæ was, hæ drew out his dagger, & lifting vp the ſkirt of his ſhirt of maile, hæ thruſt it into his body, and giuing himſelfe this vnhappie death, with calling vpon Lidia, hæ finiſhed his life. The Dacian knight remained in a great confuſion to ſæ this ſodayne chance, and that in this ſort, that he could put no remedy therin, but with the great heauines & ſorrow, that hæ receiued, hæ fell downe in a ſound, without any remembrance of himſelfe. The Page which Eleno brought with him, did then procure all remedies that were poſſible for to bring him againe vnto his remembrance, and laboured to do it with great loue, but yet for all ỹ he could do or procure, ther was no poſſibility of hir recouery, til ſuch time as Phœbus had made an end of his iourney, & that Diana had begun hir gouernmẽt, thẽ he begun to come a litle to himſelfe, & looking on the one ſide, and ſaw that Brenio lay dead by his ſide, with a dolorous voice he ſaid vnto his page. Ah Fabio, wherfore haſt thou procured to put remedy vnto my body, and conſented that it ſhould indure ſo terrible paine & euill, thou ſhouldeſt haue ſuffered mæ to haue died, and not to haue bæne the occaſion that now I liue dying, & hauing no more power to ſpeake, hæ held his peace. At this time he had great næde of the force & ſtrength of his Chriſtian courage, for to aſſiſt him that hæ dyd not that, which ſhould cauſe him to beare company with this dead Brenio. His Page Fabio dyd very much comfort him, and dyd procure by all meanes to giue him eaſe: but all that euer hæ could do did profit very little, or giue any cõtentment vnto his payne, till ſuch tyme as hæ heard a great noyſe of armed knights, which was the occaſion that hæ came vnto himſelfe, & for that hæ would not bæ diſcouered, hæ put himſelfe into ỹ thickeſt of the buſhes, & with the help of Fabio, he carryed Brenio, drawing him frõ the place wher he was, and couered him with boughes and leaues, till ſuch time as they might haue opportunity to bury him, as hæreafter you ſhall vnderſtand. So ther he continued all that night til the

mor-

morning, with great sorrow and paine, lamenting much his vnhappy lot, in a place whereas he could not be discouerd or heard, not for any feare that was in him, but onely to haue time to lament, weepe & bewaile his vnhappy fortune. Then at such time as the bright Apollo, did spred abroad his golden beames, ouer all the fields and cragged mountaines, he did perceiue that those which did lodge themselues nigh vnto the place wheras he was, did procure to depart, he let thē goe, without any desire to know who they were, but rather being still, did let them passe forwards on their way, procuring to put in execution his former intent. But first of all he caused to vnarme Brenio of his armour, the which was according vnto his passion, in colour and all things, and as strong as a Diamond, & made by Art Magicke, with great lamentation he armed himselfe with them, and toke also his shield, which was all of a russet field, and in the midst therof was put Cupide with two faces, the one was very faire and bound with a cloath about his eyes, and the other was made meruailous fierce and furious. He continued and was so long in arming himselfe, that he heard a great number of Knights, which passed along by the sides of the forrest, and amongst them ther was a dolorgus lamentation, which seemed to be of Ladies and Damsels, and it seemed that they were forced and constrained against their wills, which moued the courage of this Dacian, to desire to know what it was. And leaping vpon his horse, his Page toke the horse of Brenio, which was very good, & with as little noise as was possible, they went out of the forrest into the high waye, wheras they might see all that which in the chapter following shall be told you.

¶ How that Eleno went out of the forrest to see the aduenture of these Knightes which passed by the forrest, and how hee incountered with them, and of the battaile, that happened thereupon. Cap. 5.

AT such time as the clere Apollo had passed one part of his iourney, ỹ Dacian Prince issued out of the forrest, to see what it should bee, that made all that noyse vnder the forrest side. And there hee discouered thirtye Knights, which rode before a chariot, that was drawen with foure horses, and therein a company of Ladies & damsels, apparailed with meruailous rich robes, making great lamentation and sorrow: and in the midst amongst them, ther was a very faire Ladie, who had before hir two children: and before the Chariot rode a Gyant of a fierce & furious countenaunce mounted on a wonderfull beast, and after the same went another giant, not altogether so furious as the first, ỹ was mounted on a mightie horse: these made great hast to trauaile forwards. When this valiant Dacian saw this aduenture, he was in a great confusion, for that he found himselfe so leane and weake, yet for all that, the great valour of his person, & courage of his hart, would not suffer anye sluggishnesse, but determined to set them at liberty, and to punish so great outrage, or else to die in the demaund. And with this determination hee said. Let life suffer the paine, and let not the honour be blotted with cowardnesse, and perusing well his armour, he committed himselfe vnto God, & issued out of the forrest with a swift pace, at such time as the Chariot with the great hast that it made, had passed by a good space, and setting spurres, vnto his horse, hee made him to flye like the winde, and with a high voice he bad them tarrye. At which calling, the Gyant that was hindermost looked backe, and when hee saw that it was a Knight that called him, and that he came running towards him with great swiftnesse, he said vnto those that gouerned the Chariot. Goe and keepe on your way, and let me alone to see what that vnhappye creature would haue: and he turned about his horse, at such time as that warlike Dacian, was come nigh vnto him, the Gyant said vnto him: Knight what hast is this that thou makest. The Dacian answered: It is to amend if I may this outrage which I sup-

ſuppoſe thou doſt vnto thoſe Ladyes, which thou doſt carrie away with thée in the waggon. The Gyant ſmiling, and as it were, ſéeming to haue him in derision, diſdainfully ſayd. I doe tell thée of a truth Knight, that if I did not beléeue, ỹ folly doth make thée to ſpeake that which thou haſt vttered, thou mightest well take mée to bée the vileſt perſon in the world, to haue ſo ſmall courage, to put my ſelfe beſore one alone Knight in this demand. The Dacian did well perceiue that theſe words proceéded of great pride & preſumption, & without giuing him any aunſwere, he drew out his ſharpe ſword, and then without anye more tarrying, hée ſtroke him vpon his helme ſo great a blow, that it ſounded lyke a bell, and made him to decline his head downe to his breaſt. But ſtraight way he had his payment for the ſame, for that the Giant laid hold on his great and cutting ſword, & with ſtraunge ſwiftneſſe, he ſtroke him vppon the fine and hard helme, that he almoſt made him loſe his féeling. By which blow, this couragious Eleno perceiued, that it ſtood him in hand not to be idle, and hauing great feare, that in ỹ meane time while they made their battaile, the reſt would go away with their pray, and then all his labour and trauaile ſhould be in vaine, he let his ſhield hang at his backe, and claſped his ſword faſt with both his hands, & ſtroke him ſo furious a blow vpon his helme, that the ſtrength therof did litle profit him, for that it was not able to make any defence, but it was cut in péeces with the head, and the Giant fell dead to the ground, & without any more tarying, hée followed after the waggon, and did procure to diſturbe them, that they ſhould not goe forwards on their way. So all thoſe ỹ went with the waggon, were alighted from their horſes, ready to imbarke themſelues into a ſmall barke which they tarryed for, to carry them vnto a great and faire ſhippe, which was ther, a litle farther from the ſhore. This Dacian called with a loud voice, & ſaid. Tarrie, tarrye, & doe not thinke, ſo much at your eaſe to carry away your pray, for that I hope firſt to take away your liues, or els to be ſlaine in their defence.

And when they saw and knew that it was the Knight that remained with the Gyaunt, & seing him come in such order, they were all meruailously astonied. The other Giaunt which was yet still vpon his beast, & was not alighted, returned against him, more furious then a Tyger, and vttering a thousand varieties. he asked wher he remained that made battaile with him. Don Eleno sayd: Put at liberty these Ladies which thou dost carry away by force, and aske not for him: for hée wanting life, hath finished all his euill déedes and workes, and without tarrying for an aunswere, he lift vp his sword, all to bée bathed with the bloud of the dead Gyant, and stroke at him so terrible a blow, that hée gaue him to vnderstand very well, the strength of his mighty arme. The Giant who felt the blow to be very strong drew out from his side, a broad and heauie sword, & stroke at him such a blow, that almost it brought him to ẏ ground, if it had not ben for the great force, which he put in firming himselfe in his stroppes, which was the occasion that in a trice he setled himselfe againe in the saddle, & séeing himselfe so euill intreated he prested towards him, and began to laie on him so sharpe & strong blowes, that he made the sparks of fire flie out of his armour, and although he was meruailously occupied in striking of the Gyant, yet did he not forget to haue alwaies an eie vnto ẏ Chariot wheras ẏ captiue Ladies were, to sée if they did procure by any meanes to do them harme or damage, and he saw that they went about to take them out of the waggen, and to put them a land, for to imbarke them, which made him to make more hast in his battaile, and knowing the strong enimie, that he had before him, & inraged with that sodaine sight, to sée them imbarking, and that if they should carry them to sea, then by no meanes he could neither fauour nor succour them, he receiued so great wrath, that he threw his shield at his backe and toke his cutting sword in both his handes, & went vnto the Giant on his left side, & firming himselfe in his stirrops, he stroke him so terrible a blow that he made him to fall vppon his beastes necke, without anye remembraunce,

and

and to void at his mouth & nose great abundance of bloud, and without any tarrying he spurred his horse & in great hast he went towards those knights that had those Ladies in kéeping, & began to stur himselfe amongst them, in such sort, that when they remembred themselues to make resistance, ther was three of them slaine then all the rest ioyned themselues together, & put backe to backe, & made a round circle, with their swords in their hands to make their defence. At this time the prince Eleno had forgot the great vertue which his horse had, but because he wold not ý they shuld kill him, he alighted from him, the which was ý occasion that he put himselfe in great trauaile and pirill, notwithstanding with the great anger which he had, hé pressed in amongst them, & stroke & wounded them on euery side, without taking anye rest, ý it was a wonder to sée, and he so bestirred & tossed his cutting sword vpon them that máde resistaunce, ý he made them to know & féele his great strength, although that they were chosen & valiant knights, & they did not let to intreate him very euill, in such sort, that many times they made him to stope & féele the griefe of their blowes: notwithstanding the courage & strength of Eleno was such, ý in a verye short time he brought twelue of them to the ground before him. The marriners which saw the great fury that was in that one knight, in great hast put of their barke from the waters side, & with the feare which they had likewise to bé there slaine, retourned vnto their shippe, forcing the barke with the great strength of their armes, striking in the water w̄ their oares, & when they came to the ship they called alcud giuing and making a great noise vnto ý rest of the knights that were in the ship, which was to the number of twenty, that they should come and giue aide and succour to those which were a land, for that some of thē were slaine, & some very sore hurt, & other some standing still in their defence. In the meane time this furious Dacian did so behaue himselfe amongst them, & in such sort, ý quickly he had clēared himselfe of all those, if at ý present time ý Gyant which was before astonied & beside himselfe, had not come wheras they

were, for being come againe vnto himselfe, and saw ẏ great perill wherin he was brought, I cannot nor am not able to declare heere the great and vnmeasurable fury the which he had, and it did the more increase in him when he saw so many Knights slaine & dead, onely by the power and strength of that one Knight: his wrath was so great, ẏ he began to cry out against his Gods, and alighted from his beast, & toke his sword into his hand, and with a furious pace hee went towards wheras the Prince was, but when the valiant Elcno saw him, hee could not but thinke that hee should passe great trouble with him, notwithstanding for that he saw no other thing but death amongest those barbarous and rude people, he did determine to sell his life very deere, & had good regard vnto the blows which the giant should strike at him, and in the best wise he could he cleered himselfe from them. In this sort went this valiant knight maintaining his quarrell, & damnifieng his enimies when opportunitie did serue, and alwaies had a good hope to cleere himselfe of that battaile, although that there were come a land three & twentie other Knights, against whō he made his defence at his pleasure, for that they feared his terrible blowes, and had hurt & wounded them in many parts, although the wounds wer not very great, for that he could neuer fasten on them one blow to his contentment. At this time ther came another Gyant a shore out of the barke, which had remained in the ship, & with him came other twenty knights, and thirtie men with hatchets & other weapons, which made great hast to come a land. At such time as this warlike Dacian was intangled & in battaile with ẏ other, this gyant came before all ẏ rest, and stroke this Knight behinde him so terrible a blow ẏ it made him to bow both his knees to ẏ ground, but his mightie courage which in such lyke chaunces alwaies recouered strength with great hast & a valyant part, he put himselfe a foote againe, & loking about him to see who it was that so tormented him, he saw that it was a mightye and terrible Gyaunt, who with a great clubbe was readye to giue him the second blow, the Prince with good aduisement did put him-

himselfe a part frō the force thereof, and made him to spend his blow in vaine, and take his sword in his handes, and pressed vnto the Gyant before he could defend himselfe, and stroke him such a terrible blow vpon the right knée, that he cut it a sunder in the middest, and the beaute and fierce Gyant fell dead to the ground. At this time all those that came out of the ship pressed on him for to kill him, but by reason of their thick & mightie blowes, so many together, hée was constrained to fall downe to the earth, but when he saw himselfe in this great perill, he did procure to kill all ý euer he could of thē that put themselues before him, which was the occasion that he had space to arise vp againe on foote, and seeing himselfe in this great danger, he began to call vpon Iesus Christ, committing vnto him his soule, and besought him that he would take mercie on it, & therewith he pressed vnto his enimies, and with double force he laid on them on euery side, but all was in vaine for him to make resistance for that ý company was so great that did compasse him about, striking at him as though they were desperate men, so that this good knight was constrained to retire vnto the sea side, and to put himselfe vp into water vp to the waist, whereas he made his backe sure, ý they could not come behinde him, & ther he made his defence somewhat with lesse trauaile against them that did procure to offend him: the gyant which saw so great a slaughter of men committed by one Knight, with a furious voice returned vnto the people, and reuiled them, calling them cowardes, and cursing himselfe for that hée would accompanie himselfe with so naughtye and vile a generation, and said vnto them: Enter into the water and follow him, for it is but one Knight that is bèfore you. And therewith he put himselfe into the water, then all the rest for verie shame were constrayned to doe the lyke. At this time this valiant Knight saw himselfe in the greatest danger that euer before that time in all his life he had bène in, & made not anye reckoning to liue longer, yet neuertheless he thought to sell his life verie dèere, with the death of all such as hée might possibly fasten one blow vppon:

But at this inſtant came vnto his minde his beloued Lidia, and hee ſaid with a deepe and profound ſigh. Ah my Lidia, what great delight do I take in my ſelfe, heere to make my end, and to ſet me at libertie of ſo great ſorrow and care, which I do ſuffer in not ſeeing thee: but therewith remembring himſelfe, hee ſaid. O Lord what is this, what haue I ſaid? I doe now finde my ſelfe at the point to be ſlaine, & now I now call to remembrance her, that I know is in the depth of the earth. Am not I a Chriſtian? It is better for me to returne vnto thee my God, vnto whom I doe commit my ſoule: & Lord, for thy mercies ſake, owe not looke vpon this my weakneſſe, but according vnto thy great mercie take pitie vpon mee. And although he was weary, yet was not his valiant armes at this time vnoccupied, but rather with a more ſtrength hee did procure to defend himſelfe, working ſuch wonderous feates, that ſeemed euen impoſſible, but vnto them that ſaw it. And hee recouered vnto himſelfe a new courage & force, in ſuch ſort, that the water of the Sea did giue teſtimoniall of his great proweſſe, for that vnto more then ten of them which did purſue him, hee gaue the ſea for their ſepulchar: and if it had not beene for the Gyant that did trouble him verie much, hee would before he hadde bene ſlaine, made that very few of the reſt ſhould haue remained, for to brag themſelues of their victory. But I promiſe you, he was in ſuch plight, that of very feeblenеſſe he was forced to make his ſtrength. This wearied Eleno was in this ſort as you haue heard in great weakneſſe, and voide of all humane ſtrength, although he lacked no courage in his heart. At which time ther arriued in great haſt a bark at ỹ ſhore ſide, in the which came one alone Knight, armed with verie rich armor, who (if you doe remember) was the valiant Roſicleer, that after he had made an end of that perilous battaile at Lira, at the which hee loſt the company of that good Knight Brandumardo, he full of ſorrow and griefe, returned vnto the ſea, whereas by fortune he found his light and inchaũted barke, which with hir accuſtomed ſwiftnes did carry him, whereas he ſaw was made a fearefull battaile, the

which

which was this that héere béfore I haue told you that the afflicted Prince did make. So that when Roſicleer ſaw that one alone knight with ſo great courage did make reſiſtance againſt ſo many, who dyd moleſt him, without all pittie, it moued in him a deſire to help him, which ſtraight way hée put in vre, & leaping a ſhore with his accuſtomed courage, hée went towards the place wheras they were in battaile, & hauing his ſword faſt in both his hands, hée preſſed in amongſt thoſe vile people, & when hée ſaw that hée which dyd moſt trouble the knight, was that furious & diueliſh Giant, hée ſtroke him ſuch a blow vpon his left ſhoulder that harneſſe and body altogether hée cut downe to the waſt, & made him fall dead into ỹ water where hée was. Yet his fury reſted not with this, but ſtriking about him, at foure blowes hée brought foure knights to their end. And as the watered hearbs or flowers doth recreate themſelues when they are couered with the beames of the ſunne of Tona, in ſuch ſort dyd the Prince Don Eleno reioyce at the comming of this new ſuccour vnlooked for, and therewith recouering new ſtrength, with one leap hée ſprong out of the water, and put himſelfe by the ſide of Roſicleer, and layd vpon his enimies, with great & mighty blowes. The worthy Roſicleer héeing moued with the great outrage that thoſe vile people dyd, wrought ſuch valiant wonders, that it was ſo he mervailed at, and vnhappy might he account himſelfe, who chanced to receiue a blow at his hande. They made ſo great haſt in cutting, wounding and killing of thoſe vile people, that leauing ſome dead, and other ſore wounded, others running away to deliuer themſelues from the fury of theyr vnmercifull blowes, theſe knights were frée & at libertie of all their former perill. This valiant Eleno would haue gratified the Prince for his good ſuccour and ayde, and went towards him for the ſame effect: and when hée would haue ſpoken, hée knew that it was Roſicleer his Couſin, by the deuice that hée had in his ſhéeld which was Cupide painted in it, and therewith in great haſt hée pulled off his healme, and ſayde.

Worthy Lord and couſin, if the deuice of your ſhelde, and the great ſtrength of your perſon do not deceiue me, you are Roſicleer ſonne vnto the Emperour Trebatio, my good vncle. The Greeke was very attentiue vnto the words that Eleno ſpake, and when hee ſaw his face diſcouered and his healme off, it ſeemed vnto him, that hee ſaw the proportion of his owne naturall face, as though hee were looking of himſelfe in a glaſſe, & hee receiued great contentment at the ſight of him, although he did very much meruaile to ſee him in that place, and therwith hee pulled off his healme, and diſcouered that ſeuere and fayre face, with great delight vnto all them that did beehold him, and it was the more to bee reioyced at, for ỳ they were the one ſo like ỳ other (that except it were for the little beard that Roſicleer had) not without great difficultie they could know, which was the one, and which was the other. The two knights could not perſeuer in their communication, for that they were diſturbed by the lamentable noyſe of thoſe Ladies which were priſoners, for that ſome of thẽ had their hands bound, & ſome both hands and feete, and they cryed out for ſuccour and help of thoſe knights, and for that they did ſee them to prolong the time, they made ỳ more haſt in crying for their libertie, at whoſe pitiful cryes they were conſtrained to goe vnto them, & to cut aſunder ỳ cords wherwith they were bound. The great ioye which they receiued when they ſaw themſelues at libertie, I do refer it vnto ỳ iudgement and conſideration of them, which haue bẽn themſelues in captiuity, & afterward obtained lyke libertie. The Lady which had the two Children in hir lap, ſeeing hir ſelfe at libertie, with great ioye thereof, ſhee chaunged a new coulour, ſo that the blood that entred into hir face, cauſed hir to appeare to bee very faire, & with a ſeuere Maieſtie, ſhee dyd ſurrender vnto thẽ great thanks, for the goodneſſe, which by them they had recouered. This fayre Lady did not let in ỳ meane time whileſt they were talking to behold the countenance of the two knights and in hir owne imagination did conſider, that ſhee ſaw the naturall proportion and geſture of him, whom ſhee carryed

pictured in hir heart: and suspecting what it should bée, shée gaue very attentiue eare vnto the wordes which Rosicleer vttered, remaining with as great delight of his curtesie and discretion, as when shée was wholly yéelded vnto the loue of his father: and for that in the ende of all their talk Rosicleer dyd demand of hir who shée was, shée could not in any wise owe other then tell them, & with great curtesie shée answered and sayde. Worthy knights, in whom the Gods hath made so great equalitie and likenesse, you shall vnderstand, that I am Quéene and Lady of this Iland called Tinacria, who without all good fortune was mocked by ỹ false Emperour of Grecia. Rosicleer, when hée heard his Father so euil spoken off, could not take it in good part, yet remẽbring himselfe that it was a woman, & that shée spake it with anger, hée therfore accordingly dyd frame himselfe to answere hir, & sayde. High and mightie Lady, there is no reson that I doe answere you vnto those wordes, which your troubled hart hath pronounced against him, that I am sure, and doe right well know, in your seruice would lose his lyfe, & not hée alone, but also his sonnes and subiects, for the great good will that to you wée haue, as it doth appéere in this ayde & succour which now wée haue made. And if you do well consider (high & mightie Lady) the great seruice which the noble Knight of the Sunne, and sonne vnto the Emperour my father, béeing accompanied with the Prince Don Eleno our Cousin, who is hére now present bafore thée. If as I say, it were wel considered, ỹ seruice which they haue done vnto you, it were great reason and with desart, that the error of the father should bée forgiuen, if hée haue committed any. And if these be not sufficient to make satisfaction, take in cõpany with the rest, that which now at this present, was shewed vnto thée, whereof part of it was done likewise by his sonne Rosicleer. And if it bée so, ỹ stil poor heart bée hardened with the desire to take reuengement. Béehold hére Lady my head the which I do yéeld into thy power, that thou maist therewith set the father at libertie, from thy furye. The Quéene had hir eyes fixed on the Prince, and without hauing

hauing any power to make reſiſtance againſt ſo terrible a blow: ſhee dyd ſhew very plainly & clearely what ſhee felt in hir, and giuing a great ſigh which proceeded from ỹ bottome of hir hart, ſhee ſayd: Alaſſe for mee, O fortune, canne this be true, that that which I receiued for glory, is conuerted into a troubleſome paine. So ſhee ſayd no more, for that ſhe was diſturbed by a great noiſe which a damſel made, by reaſon of two men, who when they ſaw ỹ Roſicleer & Don Eleno were occupied in talking with the queene, they went running to put themſelues into the barke of the Prince, and procured to put it from ỹ ſhoar, thinking to ſaue their liues in rowing away with the Barke. And when Roſicleer ſaw them, not hauing any time to put on his helme, he carried it in his hand, and leapt out of ỹ waggen, as light as a Hart amongeſt the cragged Mountaines, and in a trice hee was with them, yet the ſtrength of thoſe two men was not ſufficient to launch the barke from the ſhoare, the which Roſicleer had forgotten, and for couetouſneſſe that he would not loſe his horſe, hee went to diſturbe them, and leapt into the Barke: he was no ſoner within it, when that with his accuſtomed ſwiftneſſe the Bark began to moue it ſelfe from the ſhoare, the which when theſe two men ſaw, they would haue leapt into the water, but Roſicleer caught faſt holde of the one, & ſtaide him, but the other hee could not, for that it was ſo quickly done. Whereas wee will leaue them for to tell you of his Couſin, who when hee ſaw that the Barke ſo ſodeinely dyd depart away, I cannot heere declare the great heauineſſe & ſorrow that he receiued, becauſe he could not delight himſelfe in his good companie. The like ſorrow made the Queene (although ſhee dyd procure to hide hir deſire) yet hir ſorrow was great, & becauſe Don Eleno was the firſt that did begin the battaile for to ſet thẽ at liberty, they dyd honour and worſhip him as a diuine thing. And herewith they determined to returne vnto the Citie, whereas I wil leaue them with the ſucceſſe of the queenes impriſonment, and the occaſion thereof, for that hereafter I wil declare it, being now conſtrained to tell you of the worthy

deedes

dedes of the Mauritanian.

¶How when the valyant Mauritanian had slaine the Tartarian Zoylo, hee put on the armour of Bramarant, for that he would not bee knowen, and of all that happened therein. Chapter. 6.

YOU doe well remember when that the furious young man Brusaldoro fled away from the battaile, not for any feare that he had, but for anger to finde himselfe in place whereas hee could get but little honour, lyke a whirle winde hee crossed ouer all those plaines, & put himselfe into the thickest of the forrest, trauailing in vayne his faultlesse horse, and neuer rested till hee came vnto the mightie great riuer the which before hee had passed, & there hee alighted of from his horse, and for to refresh himselfe he pulled off his healme, and toke water with his handes and washed his face, and dronke thereof refreshing himselfe, and as hee found himselfe all alone, there came vnto him many thoughts, amongst all hee was greatly greeued at the remembrance of that which had past, & the more, for that a woman was the cause of all that harme, and with great anger giuing terrible sighs, he began to curse, not alone ỳ houre of his birth, but also ỳ quéne of Tinacria, accounting women to be all the occasion therof: likewise he considered the great trauayle & sorrow that most knights doe passe for their respects. At that time Phœbus began to withdraw himselfe into his accustomed lodging, and hiding himself in the occidentall parts, and therewith drew on the darke and tenebrous night, which was the occasion that his paine dyd the more increase, and caused him to say: Oh cruell and vyle women, the causers & authors of all euill, what doo you see in your selues, that you doo make so much thereof, I see that you are good for no other thing, but to cause murthers and great treasons. It is possible that you doo esteeme so of your selues, and the occasion of your high loke is, for that wée

men

men bée borne of you: if you doe well consider thereof, for the very same occasion you should abase your great pride & prancking gestures, for that wee do plainely see and perfectly know, that from & out of an vnprofitable & prickling stalke doth spring & grow a fayre & pleasant Rose. Also from that venimous Basiliske, do they not take a stone of an innumerable value: & this beleeue of a certeintie, that the cuillest men doth all procede from you: Oh wretches, when you see your opportunitie, what is the Knight that can make resistance, but is straight ouercome by you so vile and base cretures, heere I doe sweare to you by all ỳ Gods, that I do not honour you, neither will I reuerence you, although that Mahomet do command mée, for that I haue him in estimation as vyle & base & of no value, and for the great hatred which I doe beare vnto you, if I dyd thinck that my hart should bée subiect vnto you, I would pull it out of my body with great crueltie, to punish my selfe & it for committing so great follyhnesse. The sighes of this Moze were so great and terrible, that all ỳ woods & mountaines did sound therof. O thou outragious and hardie Pagan, how strong and stout dost thou shew thy selfe, thou shalt quickly know and haue thy paiment for these thy reuiling wozds, in subiecting thy selfe vnto them, that now thou dost publish for false. O Ladies and Damsels aske reuengment of so cruell an enimie, that with so many resons doth reuile you all to naught. So with these lamentations the which I haue told you the Pagan passed away the night till the mozning, that Apollo began with his glistering beams to couer all the earth, the which beeing seene by the Pagan with a trice bée arose vp, & take his hozse for to prosecute his iourney begun, & lifting vp his eyes towards the heauens, bée dyd discouer hanging vpon a high & mighty Pyne apple tree which was nigh him the armoz of Bramarant, which was put there for a remembrance, as hath been tolde you in the first part of this historie. The armour had lost their coulour, yet for all that, it did shew the great value of them, and loking about, he saw the Epitaph which the two brethren had made there. And

vn-

vnderstanding the reason thereof, it gaue him a farther desire to take them downe, without respecting the harme that might therof proceed, not making any reckoning of ỹ words that were ther manifested. And for that he might the better bring to passe his pretence, hée vnarmed himselfe, & climbed vpon the trée, & toke them from the place where they were and brought them downe, & when hée was beelow, and saw the armour to bée good, hée armed himselfe with them, and when he lacked no more to put on but the helme, hée heard ỹ voyce of a Knight which sayd. Bée not so hardy ỹ Knight as to vndo this Tropheo, erected by the Greeke Princes, & loke well to thy selfe for thou shalt dye for the same. The More at the noyse which hée made, cast his head on the one side & saw that hée that spake those words was a wel set & armed Knight, but for all this he did not let to make an end of arming himselfe, & without setting his foote into the stirop he leapt into the saddle, & setteling himselfe therein hée went towards the demander with his sword in his hande. You shall vnderstand, that hée which did threaten him was ỹ Tartarian Zoylo, who if you do remẽber departed in great hast from the amorous Tigliafa, & vnawares entered into this wilderneſſe, and by reason of his wearinesse in making so great hast in his trauaile, it caused him to bée very dry, & hauing great desire to drinke, hée crossed héere & ther in the forrest, at last ther appéered beefore him a very ancient old man, who had his beard and haire all white with age, who did succour him with water, & gaue him a great cup full, & with the great thirst that Zoylo had hée dranke well therof, til such time as hée felt himselfe satisfied, & returned the cup againe vnto him, & when hée thought to haue giuen thanks for his curtesie shewed, hée was vanished cleane out of his sight, so that hée saw him no more. For you shal vnderstand that it was ỹ wise Lirgandeo, which brought the cup ful of water frõ ỹ fountaine of Merlin, who vnderstanding by his inchantmẽts ỹ thirst Zoylo had, brought him of the water, for to mitigate his drinesse, increasing in him a new desire to ỹ loue of Tigliata. Hée had scant made an end of drinking

when

when that he felt in himſelfe a new thought of loue, and repenting himſelfe of all hatred paſt, béeing ouercome by the water, & fired in that new loue, he determined to returne againe vnto Conſtantinople, & craue pardon of the Princeſſe, but that cruell Atropos who had his blow readie, would not grant vnto him any time for the ſame, neither was the wiſe Lirgandeo able to deliuer him from the death. And ſo it fell out, that when héé would haue made his retourne to Conſtantinople, héé chanced to come to that place whereas Bramarant dyd kill himſelfe, and whereas Brufaldoro did diſarme himſelfe, and armed himſelfe againe with the armour of the Tropheo. And the valyaunt Tartarian knowing the great harme that would proceéd vnto them which did procure to come vnto the Tropheo, héé would giue aduiſement vnto him that was ſo bolde to giue the attempt, ỳ héé might vnderſtand, that it would héé demanded at his hand. And ſo héé did aduiſe Brufaldoro in that ſort as you haue heard, who without any anſwering came againſt him with his ſword in his hand, inuiting him to mortall battayle. Zoylo who ſaw his determination, did procure to defend himſelfe and offend his enemie. Oh my Muſe, that now I had ſo much diſcreation and eloquence for to ſet out & declare the great harme that this day happened in this vnfortunate Forreſt. This valiaunt Tartarian when his enimie came vnto him, ſtroke him ſo terrible a blow vpon the viſour of his helme that with the fury thereof héé made ſparkles of fire to iſſue out thereof with great abundance, and to bow downe his head vpon his breaſt. The Pagan dyd returne vnto him his ſalutation, and ſtroke him ſuch a blow vpon his helme, that with ỳ great noiſe therof it made a ſound in all the mountaines. Now bégan bétwéene them a meruailous & fearefull battaile, at the great noiſe whereof, fortune willing to vſe hir extremitie, for to amplifie a farther euill, cauſed the Princeſſe Tigliata in the company of hir Ladyes & Damoſels to come vnto that place whereas theſe knights were in battaile, and ſtraight way ſhée did know hir welbeloued Tartarian, & ſéeing him in ſo dangerous a battaile, ſhée was

in great anguish with hir selfe. These Knights thought on no other thing, but either of them procured to bring his aduersary to his end, striking at each other such terrible blows, and with so great fury, that many times it made either of them to lose his seeling: and both seeing the great force of one another, were meruailously incensed with anger. This fierce Tartarian threw his shield at his backe, that with more force hee might strike and hurt his enimie, and therwith gaue him so strong a blow vpon his healme, that all astonied he forced him to fall vpon the crupper of his horse, who carried him a great space round about the fielde, without any seeling. But when hee came againe vnto himselfe, this fierce Mauritanian setling himselfe in his saddle, stroke at the Tartarian so terrible a blow, that if it had chãced on him, it would haue turned him to much griefe, but with great discreation he cleared himselfe therof, in such sort, that it was striken in vaine, and with great lightnesse, hée retourned, and stroke the Mauritanian so, that he made him once againe to fall vpon the crouper of his horse all astonyed, & there appeared by the visour of his helme, the abundance of bloud that issued out of his mouth, and his horse being greeued with that blow, stowped with his forefeete to the ground, and being amazed, with great fury he rose vp, & with his great kicking and flinging backwards, he did defend, ỹ the Tartarian could not come nigh to hurt the Mauritanian, which was the occasion that he could not haue anie time for to giue him the second blow, although hee neuer left to follow him, to see if he could make an end of ỹ enterprise, which would haue made much of his part, not to haue giuen way that this fierce Mauritanian should haue retourned to himselfe so quickly, which was in so short time, and with so great anger, that the smoake which came from his mouth, seemed like a mist about his helme, so that almost it could not be seene. Then this furious diuell set spurres to his horse, & blaspheming against his Gods, hauing his mortall sword very fast in his hand, hée ran towards his enimie, who with out any feare of his furie, went forth to re-

ceiue him, & when they met together, they discharged their blowes at once, but it fortuned that the Mauritanians blow did first fasten, with so great strength, that for all the helme which Zoylo had was so good, it was not sufficient to make defence, but that with ỹ diuelish fury wherwith it was discharged, it bended, in such sort, that it brake all to peeces the scalpe of that vnhappye Tartarian, wherwith he gaue a terrible fall to the ground. So when the Pagan saw his enimie on the earth, with a loude voice hee saide: Now shalt not thou be he that shall disturbe mee, that I carry not this armour with mée. This sadde and heauye Princesse when shee saw hir sweete and welbeloued friend on the earth, with great suspition what was happened, beganne to weepe bitterlye. And as a Lyon who seeing before hir hir young Lyon euill intreated of the hunter: euen so shee leapt from hir Palfraye and ranne vnto hir welbeloued Zoylo, and with great spéed shee pulled off the helme from that woonded head, and with a faire linnen cloth shee wiped of the bloud from his mortall face, & when she was certaine that it was he that cost hir so deere the séeking, and that hee was without life, with furious madnesse she tore hir attire from hir head, and all to rent hir golden haire, tearing it in peeces, and returned againe and wiped that infernall face, making such sorrowfull lamentation, that whosoeuer had seene hir would haue bene moued to haue had compassion. Then shée tooke the head betweene hir handes, and did procure without doing it any harme to lift it vp, and to put it vpon hir lap, and séeing for all this that there was no mouing in him, she ioyned hir face vnto the face of that vnfortunate Zoylo, and with sorrowfull wordes shee said: Oh my loue, open thine eyes and behold me, open them, I say, and looke vpon this thy Ladye most vnfortunate, and while life remaineth giue mee some contentment, if fortune bée so fauourable: Oh my Lord, strengthen thy selfe to looke vpon mée, wherein I shall receiue such delight, that willinglie I will beare thee company: Ah Zoylo and my onely loue, séeing that in former time my teares were not sufficient to reclaime

claime thée in any part, make me satisfaction for the great trauaile which I haue taken in seeking thée out, come now in death and inioy this thy vnfortunate louer, and die not without seeing me, open these eies and behold mée, giue mée I pray thée some comfort: Ah my Lord, I know not whether in seeing mée thou shalt receiue paine, or no, for ỳ at anie time thou neuer delightedst in any thing ỳ was mine, but now I will gratifie thee in dying with thée, and seeing that in thy life time I could not reioyce in thée. nor haue any company with thée, I will now in thy death seeke thée and peraduenture thou wilt now haue more pittie on mée. The Princesse sorrowfull lamentations and great weepings were such, that she almost sounded. But this discomforted Ladye comming to hir selfe and saw that hir loue made no appearaunce of life, shée beganne againe to wipe his face, for that it was againe all to be bathed with blood, and with hir white hand shée felt his eies and mouth and all his face and his head, till such time as shée chaunced to put hir hand on the mortall wound, and when shée knew that ther was all the harme, she held hir hand still, and looking on him whether he mooued or no, with the great feare which she had that he would die, without giuing hir anye comfort to speake vnto hir, shée made a meruailous and great lamentation, and cryed out with terrible shrikes, the which did augement much heauinesse and sorrow in them which were in companye with the Princesse, and shée saide. Ah my loue, how many troubles and great trauailes haue I passed in seeking thée, by mountaines and hils, by vallies, wilde fields and high waies, watering them with my amorous teares, alwaies demaunding for thée, and alwayes in vaine calling thée, yet was I neuer desolate of the true loue which I bare vnto thée: Oh how many times in calling for thée, haue I bene answered by ỳ ecko, which was vnto me great dolor and griefe, and now that fortune hath brought me into the same place wheras thou art, for to recreat and reioyce my selfe with thy beautie, the same fortune

would that it ſhould bée for the more increaſing of my dolour & griefe, in finding thée in this ſort, as now thou art. Oh cruell Fortune, I haue not deſerued to be thus ingratefully vſed at thy hands: for when I thought to be clære of all ſorrow and trouble, now I finde my ſelfe moſt afflicted therewith. Ah my Lord ſæing that in thy life time thou gaueſt me ſo bitter & cuill a life, for that thou didſt hate and abhorre me, now in thy death giue me ſome comfort. Open thy ſweéte eies and behold mée, lift vp this wounded head and giue mée ſome comfort before thou dieſt. Ah Zoylo mæ ioy, if euer thou didſt beare mée any loue, it is now time to giue me to vnderſtand thereof, before thy ſoule depart from thy body, and in ſaying theſe lamentable words, ſhæ was conſtrained to hold hir peace, for that ſhe ſaw that this woũded Tartarian recouered ſome ſtrength: who opened his eies, and when héé ſaw himſelfe in the armes of hir, who at that time he ſo much loued, & before by force of inchauntment he hated, he ſodainly aroſe vp, and recouering ſtrength héé ſate himſelfe on the ground, and caſt his armes about the white necke of the Princeſſe, and they ioyned theyr faces the one with the other, diſtilling betwixt them many ſalt & bitter teares, in ſuch ſort, that it would haue moued the wilde beaſtes vnto compaſſion, & with a fæble & weake voice this vnfortunate Prince ſaid: Ah my Ladye and miſtres, let mæ recreate and comfort my ſelfe in inioying this thy mouth, the time that I ſhall remaine aliue, and before that my ſoule doth depart the company of this my body: giue me my Lady ſome comfort, doe not make any excuſe, although without any reaſon, I haue bene pitileſſe vnto thæ, in making thæ to trauaile with ſo great ſorow ſeking him, ỹ becauſe he would not ſée thæ fled alwaies in ſhunning thæ, & now I come to deſire thæ. Hære muſt you ſhew me in what eſtimation you had me in, in giuing me ſuccour, before that I do leaue thæ in this wilderneſſe alone, with my dead body cold and wan: Oh my loue giue me a thouſand kiſſes, let me onely haue this delight, for the little time I haue to tary, & afterward I deſire thæ, to giue my body his ſepulchar.

The

This sad and discomforted Lady answered: Ah Zoylo, what dost ỹ aske of me, what wouldest ỹ I should giue thee, I alwaies was thine, I haue nothing of mine owne, I am all thine, it were now a straunge thing to begin a new to loue thee, for all that euer I could giue thee, I gaue it thee long ere this, oh my loue, why doest thou not vnderstand this: alasse what shall I say, I that am without all good fortune, for now I see that thy time draweth on, & that my contẽtment, ioy, and comfort is very short: Ah my Lord, dost thou request of me to giue thy body a Sepulchre: well, I see that it is requisite to seeke some to giue it vnto vs both. And wõut strẽgth to proceede any farther in speeches, she kissed the face of hir welbeloued & so long desired Zoylo, wᵗ great sobbing & sighs making within hir selfe a terrible conflict, tarrying for ỹ answere of hir welbeloued friend, who with no lesse paine and anguish of death said: Ah my Lady and mistres, I do know that thou wert alwaies mine, & I thine. That which I will now desire of thee, is, for ỹ I was beloued of thee in my life time, that now in my death I may bee fauoured of thee. Oh cruell loue, oh what a wish is this, a case neuer ỹ like heard of before ỹ I should desire the death of hir that so long time hath trauailed & taken paines and sorrowes with terrible weepings and sighs for my sake. Ah my mistres, how happye should I bee, that thus imbracing one in the others armes we might depart together: Oh what a happie death would it be, oh swæt Fortune, I haue no other griefe with me but to leaue thee behind me: Oh vnhappie that I am. I neuer determined to desire thy death, but now, and onely for that I would not leaue thy companye. The Princesse beeing very much troubled with griefe and sorrow, answered him and said: Oh my loue, therein take thou neither griefe nor care, for heere I doe promise thee by the great loue that I do beare vnto thee, that if death doe shew himselfe any thing contrary vnto mee, that I will procure it with mine owne hands, for that the Gods will not consent that I should liue and thou die, therefore I say, that if he doe contrary mee, I will giue thee this contentment, for ỹ without thee I shall

finde heere no ioy nor comfort at all for me, neither yet any ease of this my great griefe, so that I shall thinke it for the best to lose all my ioy, and now I doe finde in my selfe that death will be my friend. Ah my sweet loue and Lord, ioyne thy face vnto mine, let vs kisse together, and let vs make our departure both together. The Prince being troubled with the anguish of his hastie death, said: Heere I doe desire thee my Tigriana, by ỹ firme & faithfull loue which thou doest beare me, not to consent that I be the occasion, that with a cruell death thou dost finish thy life: but to sustaine & maintaine it so long as the Gods doth permit the same, & when that I am dead (which shall be very quickly) let me receiue this fauour at thy handes, that thou wouldest vouchsafe to giue a Sepulchre vnto this my bodie, for with great ease & comfort shall I depart, seeing that I die in the armes of my Lady and mistres, and a great deale more comfort shall I receiue if I knew of a certainty that thou woldest performe this, that I doe craue & desire at thy hands: Oh my loue, doe not denie this my supplication, and for that I am certified that thou wilt performe the same, heere I take my leaue of thee, farewell, the Gods preserue thee, and take me to their mercies. And when hee saide these wordes, hee inclined his necke vpon the face of the Princesse. When this sorrowfull Ladie saw that the soule had got the victory and departed from the bodie, she kissed the mouth of the dead bodie, and giuing deepe and dolorous sighes, shee began a meruailous and beaute lamentation, calling hir selfe vnhappie & vnfortunate, and laide hir selfe vppon the dead bodie, cursing hir selfe so that it was lamentable to heare. All hir Damoiells (who did beare hir companye in that great sorrow) when they saw their Ladie in a sound, they toke the healme of the dead knight, & brought water in it from the Riuer side, and in throwing of it in hir face, and all to be bathed hir therwith, they brought hir againe vnto hir remembraunce; who beganne a new to make great lamentation, and to bewaile hir ill fortune, vttering wordes of great dolor and

griefe.

griefe, which proceeded from the bottome of hir heart, and said: Ah my good friend, what small benefite haue I receyued for all my trauaile and paine, the which I haue suffered in seeking of thee, and now in finding of thee it is the more for my griefe, for that I came to see thee die: Ah most vnhappie that I am, where was I when I saw descend vpon thee that mortall sword? Whereon was my thought? Wherefore did I stand still, and did not with great lightnesse make resistaunce against that terrible blow: And if my strength would not haue serued mee, yet at the least I should haue borne thee company: Ah you furious beastes, that now are hidde in your dennes and deepe caues, where are you now: why doe you not come and take pittie of my griefe, and put remedie therin, in taking away my life, for in so doing you shall shew your selues pittifull, for that I doe abhorre this dolorous life. Yet she did not forget the promise the which she made vnto hir welbeloued Zoylo, which was the occasion that she did somewhat cease hir lamentatien. And taking vnto hir selfe more courage then hir dolorous griefe did consent vnto. With the helpe of hir Damselles, shee put the dead bodye vnder that great and mightie Pine aple tree, wher the armour did hang, commanding some of those that were with hir, that they should goe vnto those villages that wer nigh at hand, to cause some people to come thether, that they might with as great speed as was possible, make a verie sumptuous peece of worke, in the which they should burie the dead body of Zoylo, the which was the occasion that in Constantinople they did know of the death of this vnhappie Knight, and when the Emperour and all those that were in the court did know of it, they were meruayious sorrowfull for the same, for that he was welbeloued of them all. That same day came likewise newes to the Court of the restoring againe of the Kingdome of Lyra, which cost the life of the Prince Brandimardo, which was the occasion that they made no triumph nor reioycing of that great victorie, but rather a double lamentation for the death of the Prince.

The Dutcheſſe did then prouide for hir departure, as it was determined, leauing the Court in great heauines. The death of the Prince Zoylo was publiſhed all about, and the occaſion thereof, inſomuch that it came vnto the knowledge of the Emperour Alphebo of Trapiſond, which was the occaſion of great griefe in the Emperour: but he did diſſemble it in ỳ beſt wiſe he could, with intent to reuenge the ſame. Whereas wee will leaue them vntill time ſhall ſerue: and I will alſo omit at this time the great worke which ỳ princes Tigliafa cauſed to be made, for that heere I will tell you what the Pagan Brufaldoro did.

¶How the fierce Brufaldoro, hauing ſpoken euill of women, and of them that are louers, was taken in the ſnares of loue with at Lady that hee met, after that he finiſhed the battaile with Zoylo. Cha. 7.

ALl the day after that Brufaldoro had finiſhed the battaile with Zoylo, he trauailed through the thickeſt of the Forreſt, being very weary of the troubleſome iourney, till ſuch time as the darke night drew on, and what with wearines, & with the great deſire he had to eate which did trouble him very much, he was conſtrained to alight from his horſe by the riuers ſide, whereas he remayned till ſuch time as the morning came, & riſing on foote for to begin to take his iourney, being halfe amazed in beholding the great calme and quietneſſe, which was in the riuer, and ỳ litle noiſe which it made, by reaſon of the great depth therof in that part, vpon a ſodeine in the midſt of the riuer he ſaw that ỳ waues did increaſe & ariſe vp, like as though it had bene taken wᵭ a whirlwinde or tempeſt, which cauſed the water to make a great noyſe, and beeing very deſirous to ſee what was the occaſion of that great & ſodaine change in the water, he beheld that it was a Nymph, which appeared in his ſight from vnder the water, who did ſhow hir ſelfe to the breaſts, in diſcouering them vnto him, & hir face

face was ſo fayre, that in his lyfe, hée had not ſéene ỹ lyke, and the whiteneſſe of hir fleſh was ſuch, that the ſnow in compariſon to hir, was obſcure and darke. The Pagan receiued no alteration at this ſodayne ſight, but the Nymph with a meruailous ſwéet and delicate voyce, bægan to ſing theſe few verſes following.

VVHO thincks himſelfe at freedome moſt of all,
and leaſt eſteemes of Lady Venus fire:
Let him not boaſt, for hee may ſooneſt fall,
and quickly feele the fury of hir ire.
Hir blinded ſonne ſuch ſodaine ſhafts lets fly,
That freeſt hearts are firſt inthrald thereby.

There is not one which may himſelfe defend
by ſtrength nor wit, from mightie *Cupides* dart:
For that vnſeene hee doth his arrowes ſend,
and vnperceiude, with payne doth pearce the heart.
Beereauing wholly all delight and ioye,
Leauing beehinde, diſtreſſe and great annoye.

The wonted weale *Hee* into woe doth turne
of him, that once deſpiſed hath his power:
His cold affection *Hee* doth cauſe to burne,
and turnes his ſweet to moſt deteſted ſower.
Triumphing moſt with terror to torment
The man, that earſt againſt his will was bent.

When ſhée had made an ende of hir ſong, without any moze tarring, with a furious foꝛce, ſhæ thꝛew hir ſelfe into the water againe, from whence ſhe came, leauing the Pagan much amazed: but by reaſon that the foꝛce of his ſtomack was ſuch, hæ determined to let it paſſe, and to thincke no moze therof, bælæuing that it was ſome inchantment, and hauing his heart at libertie, with a light courage, without putting his fot in the ſtirrop, hæ leapt vpon his light hoꝛſe, and laying the bꝛidle vpon his neche, hée let him goe at his

owne liberty, whether hée would, without gouerning him. So his horse brought him into a great plaine, where a far off he discouered an armed tent pitched, which seemed to bee faire & rich, and by it vpon the greene grasse, ther lay foure great Gyants, who had in the midst amongst them, a very fayre Damsell, who was very beautie and sorrowfull, leaning hir cheeke vpon hir hand. The Pagan béeing nothing afraid of the Gyants, dyd keepe his way, till such time as hée came whereas the Gyants were layd, & hée came so nigh, that hée might see the face of the Damsell, which seemed not to bee any humane creature, by reason of hir excellent beautie, with hir golde yeolow haire dispersed all vpon hir back, and hir Lilly white hand whereon shée leaned hir cheeke, discouering hir faire face, with hir eyes shut, which showed hir wel set browes, from vnder which, distilled many teares which seemed to be oriental pearles, disperled vpon hir fayre and white face, and sundry times giuing déepe & sorrowful sighes, which declared the great paine & griefe that shée did suffer. The Pagan when hée saw hir great beautye & fayreneffe, vpon a sodaine his hart wounded with the cruell dart of Cupide, in such sort, and with so great fury, that nothing could giue him ease thereof, but onely death: wherewith he straight remembred, that which of late he heard the Nimph to sing, & considering within himselfe, how hir words and threatenings chanced to fall out true, which caused him to giue a terrible sigh, whereat one of the Giants did awake, & setting himselfe vpon the ground, hée sayd. How hast thou béene so hardie, that thou darest to put thy selfe béefore vs, & without any feare of our great strength, thou hast shewed signes and tokens of loue. At these words which the Giant spake, this Lady dyd open hir eyes, and when shée saw the Pagan, shée could not refraine hir selfe so much to hould hir peace, but that shée must nédes giue a sigh, whereat this fierce Moore was fully certified that she was forced by those Gyants, and with that thought hée sayde.

Gyaunts, my déedes shall beare witnesse of these thy proud words: therefore, for that the time shall not passe away,

way,and bée ſpent in realonings,one thing I dw demand of thæ, whether this ſorrowfull & weeping Lady goeth with you,of hir owne proper good will, or elle cõſtrained by your force and violence. The Gyaunt with great pride put himſelfe on foot,and in lacing & making faſt his healme, hée ſaye.My ſword ſhall wholly & fully certifie thæ, of all that which thou doſt demaund,and in ſpeaking theſe words,the one preſſed towards the other. But the Pagan for that hée would not that hæ ſhould kill his horſe, was conſtrained to put himſelfe ſomewhat on the one ſide, and lyghting from the ſaddle, hæ left his horſe alone, and layde hold vpon his ſword,wherwith his enimie ſtroke at him a mightie & terrible blow, who with a ſtrange lightneſſe cauſed it to bée ſtroken in vaine,in ſtepping on the one ſide,& therewith hée cloſed with the Gyant,and threw at his breaſt ſo terrible & ſtrong a foyne, that his armour was not ſufficient for to make reſiſtance,but that the fury thereof muſt be executed, & pearced him through vnto the backe,wherewith ỳ Gyant gaue a terrible fall to the ground,at which noyſe the other thrée Gyants did awake,& one of them put himſelfe quickly on foote,and without tarrying for to put on his helme,or to take his ſhæld,but blaſpheming againſt his Gods,hée ran againſt the Pagan, who abode his comming with ſuch lyke courage,as his preſumption dyd require. The Gyant with both his hands,ſtrok at him ſo monſtrous a blow,that if it had chanced on him,it would haue put his life in great ieopardie. But this valyant Brufaldoro with his accuſtomed pollicie,did clære himſelfe frõ the ſame. The great & broad ſword of ỳ Gyant had not ſo ſoone paſſed downe,whẽ ỳ Pagan preſſed vnto the Giant,bæfore he had any leaſure to lift it vp againe, & with an ouerthwart blow,he ſtrok him with ſo great ſtrength vpon the head,that all from the eares vpwardes, hée brought vnto the earth, wherewith the Gyant fell downe dead to the ground,whoſe fall was ſo terrible and made ſo great a noyſe, that it ſæmed a mightie Towre had tumbled downe: whoſoeuer at that time had ſæne that fayre Lady,might very well haue diſcouered the great

great ioy that her hart receiued to ſée two of thoſe of hir enimeis dead bæfore hir, & did not let to pray vnto hir Gods for the accomplishment of the whole victory againſt ý other two which remained. And therewith the other Gyant like a furious Lyon blaſpheming againſt his curſed Gods, not tarrying to arme himſelfe with more armour then at the preſent hée had, for that there they were all with their helmes vnlaſed & for their heads, hée toke hould of a great & heauy club that was there with both his hands, and preſſed forwards with a large place againſt ý Pagan, with determination to take reuengement of ý others death, but this young furious Brufaldoro dyd tarry and receiue him with his accuſtomed courage and valiantneſſe, the fearefull Gyant did ſtrik at him ſo terrible a blow with his club, that ſwinging with it in the ayre it made a fearefull ſound, but the Pagan, who without all feare did abide the comming of the blow, determined with himſelfe to let it paſſe in vaine, as he had all the reſt bæfore, and ſo it fell out, that when hæ ſaw the blow deſcended he ſtepped on the one ſide in ſuch ſort, ý the club fel to the groũd, with ſo terrible a waight & ſtrength, that the blow made all the trees that were nigh at hand to tremble. This terrible blow was no ſoner paſſed to ý earth when that this valyant Mauritanian ſtroke a blowe at his armes, which was with ſo great ſtrength, that he cut them both off by the wriſtes, and his hands bæing faſt to ý club, they fel all to ý groũd. The Gyant who felt himſelfe wounded & lame, would haue imbraced with the Pagan, thinking by his great ſtrength to haue cruſhed him to death, but this Mauritanian with great valiantneſſe did put himſelfe before him, his ſword in his hand with the poynt forwards, ſo that the Gyant (with the great payne ý hæ felt of his wounds, and ý great anger hæ had in his hart,) without any conſideration he preſſed himſelfe forwards, & the Pagan followed in his determination, in ſuch ſort, that the ſword entered into ý Gyants body vp to the hard hilts, falling downe dead to ý ground, with no leſſe noiſe then the reſt. Then ý fourth Gyant which remained, dyd put himſelfe on fote, who was

of a greater and huger ſtature and bigneſſe then the other which were dead, and taking in his hand a great & mighty ſpeare which lay on the ground by him, with a terrible and fearfull voice he ſaide: O thou infernall diuel, for that thou canſt not bee other, ſeeing ỹ haſt ſlayne my three companions, for I tel thee that the gods in the heauens did tremble for feare of them. Here I doe promiſe thee that thou ſhalt not depart without thy reward and puniſhment, neither I without taking vengeance of thee. The valiant Moore who very well heard and vnderſtode his woords, made little account of his proud ſpeech, but ſayd: Make an end thou furious diuell and come vnto the battaile, delay not I ſay, that thou maiſt beare theſe thy companions company. Then the Giant lifted vp his arme aboue his head, hauing faſt in his hand that great and mightie Speare, which was all full of knots, with the bark remaining ſtill thereon, & threw it at him with ſo great ſtrength, that it made a meruailous ſoũd in the ayre, but this valyant Mauritanian was not without great care of the cõming therof, but with a counter pace he put himſelfe on the one ſide, with ſo great pollicie, that the blow paſſed on the one ſide, and the Speare ſtuck faſt in the ground, and by reaſon of the great force wherewith it was throwen, it made it to ſhake as though it would haue flowen in a thouſand peeces, and turning round lyke a Snake when ſhee doth make haſt to goe away from him that would kill hir. Then the ſtrong and ſtout Mauritanian being very irefull, to ſee ſo great villanie, hee ran vnto the ſpeare, & with great ſtrength he pulled it out of the ground, and in throwing it againe at ỹ the giant, he ſayd: O ỹ furious beaſt, take vnto thee thy dart. It did wel appeare ỹ it was not throwen by a ſluggiſh arme, for that by reaſon of the great ſtrength ſtriking on his ſheeld it pearced it through, yet it did not ther remayne, but likewiſe pearced his armour & ſhirt of mayle and neuer ſtayed till ſuch time as it ſhewed it ſelfe at his backe all to bee bathed with blood, wherewith the Giant fel downe dead to ỹ ground, whoſe fall was ſo terrible, that it made the earth tremble, and all the trees that were there about

but to shake as though they would haue fallen downe. Whē Brusaldoro saw that the foure Gyants were dead, who were the kepers of that fayre Lady, hee went towards hir, who was already on foote abiding his comming. The valyaunt Knight did pull of his helme, and dyd discouer his face, which did present a great maiesty & securitie, such as his state dyd require, & although he was of a great stature & bignesse of body, yet his faire face did giue great delight vnto all them that dyd behold it, & when he came nigh vnto the faire Lady, hee kneeled downe on the ground & sayd: Faire Lady, I know not whether you are discontented, or haue receiued a smal benefit or seruice in this which I haue done, but of this bee you assured, that my determined thought was to do you seruice, beleeuing that so faire a Lady should not with hir good will keepe cōpany with so monstrous people: shee with great curtesie dyd answere him and sayde: Gentle knight I cannot deny but that I was constrained by force to keepe company with these proud and ill conditioned Gyants, and much lesse can I keepe in secret the great ioy which I haue to finde my selfe at libertie and cleere from them, but one thing there is which I do greatly feare, that is, that now I falling into thy hands & power, I dread to come into a new prison, therfore I beseech you to giue mee free liberty, with the security which belongeth vnto my honour. The Pagan who was very attentiue vnto the words of the Lady, would haue made hir answere, but this faire Lady did disturb him, desiring him first to sit downe by hir, for that shee was perswaded that with the great trauaile which he had taken in the battaile with ỹ gyants, it could not bee but that he was weary, & therewith taking him fast by both the hands shee made him to sit downe, to whom Brusaldoro sayd: Ah fayre Lady if I dyd know that my hart were as free & cleere of your loue, as you are sure of mee for offering you any violence, then with great reson I might account my selfe happy, as well in the doing of you seruice, as in giuing you lyberty, but I am shee Lady that must aske libertie of your beauty, desiring you not to haue any doubt of mee. So with

deeps

dæpe & sorrowful sighs this Moze did giue hir to vnderstãd how his troubled heart was tormented with excessiue loue. The Lady when shée vnderstood and knew that shæ had of him so sure a pawne, was nothing discontent with all, for that he sæmed vnto hir to be a knight of a very good disposition and of great value, more then any other, & for that hæ should receiue some contentment, shée answered & said: Sir, I am very well satisfied that a knight in whom is comprehẽded so great beauty, cannot bæ without ỳ curtesie requisite in so worthy a warriour, for the which cause I doe deliberate and put all my honour into your hands, and bælœue mæ that time shal not lack to put remedie in this your new griefe and payne, without incurring vnto my selfe any rebuke, but to maintaine and kæpe my honour, as bælongeth vnto the royall blood from whence I do descend, in ỳ meane time gentle knight, I would craue one bone at your hands, which in telling you I wold not haue it denied me: Oh how great was the ioye that this valyant Pagan received when hæ vnderstood so good hope which shée pronounced vnto him, and therewith hæ turned vnto the Lady, and whether shée would or not, hée kissed hir hands, with great thanks for the grace and fauour which shée shewed him, and therewith remembring the words which passed by the Nymph at the riuer, he sayd vnto himselfe: How is it that not long since I made a mocke and a iest of the aduice the which was giuen mæ, & now I do sæ that I made a mock & a iest of the aduice which is turned into good earnest. And in saying these words hæ returned vnto the Lady and saide: What is that faire Lady that I should binde my selfe vnto you to do, nay what is it, that lying in my power to accomplish, I would not do, being wholy yours, for ỳ my hart is your prisoner, & my liberty subiect to your wil, so ỳ ther is no occasion ỳ you should desire the grant of mæ, but command mæ to fulfill all your will & request, but yet sayze Lady, bæfoze that you dæ proceed to your request, I dæ desire you that I may know the occasion of your kæping company and trauailing with these foure furious Gyants in this country of Grecia.

This

This wil I declare vnto you with a very good will anſwered this faire Lady. You ſhal vnderſtand that I am daughter vnto the King of the Ilands of Spaine, my parents had no more daughters but I alone, the which was the occaſion that I was the more made off & eſteemed of them. And by reſon of my beuty, they put mée into a ſtrong tower, which was nigh the ſea ſide, whereout many times for my recreation I iſſued in company with many Ladyes & Damſels, which were with mée to beare mée company: ſo it chanced one day whē I was abroad in my accuſtomed recreation & ſport, I was beſet with this infernal company, who carried mée into their mighty and ſtrong ſhip in this order as you doe ſée mée, whereas I did no other thing but lament & bewayle my ſad and beaute miſfortune. So the firſt Gyant which you did kil, ſeeing me make ſo great lamētation, with louing & amorous words dyd procure to comfort mée, and did offer me, that all which was my wil to be done, he would fulfill the ſame, and I ſeeing his great curteſie, and agayne, that my remedie was ſo far from mée, vpon a ſodaine there came a thought into my minde, which I ſuppoſed to bee very good and requiſite for to redreſſe my harme & griefe, and I deſired of him to grant mée a bone, this Gyant did grant mée my requeſt, & the reſt dyd promiſe to fulfill all that I would aſke them, and my demaund was, that they ſhould carry mée vnto Grecia, vnto the court of the Emperour Trebatio, and that they ſhould for the ſpace of twenty dates defend my beauty and fairenеſſe, making a challenge againſt all other. Theſe Gyants by reaſon of their great pride, did thinck it good to accompliſh my requeſt, the which they dyd grant vnto mée in ſuch ſort ỳ no other thing could diſturbe them. And ſtraight way commaunded them of the ſhip to take the way towards Grecia, wheras fortune hath brought vs, and this morning wée dyd diſimbarke our ſelues at the poynt of a land which is heere at hand, and for that they did ſeeme very weary & ouertraualed by ſea, they did determine to carrie mée all the reſt of the way by land, till wée ſhould come vnto Conſtantinople, but now whether it was my good

fortune

fortune, or their great pride I know not, that wold not consent ỳ they should come thether, but first they should heare end their daies. And being in this discourse, they saw a great number of people comming towards them, which seemed to be household seruants or such like, who came with all their beasts laden with victuals and other necessaries, who were all seruants vnto those Gyaunts, and when they came nigh the place and saw that wonderfull spectacle of their masters: euen as you see the small birdes how they will hide themselues amongest the bushes, briers, and thicke trees, for the sight of any rauenous foule: euen so did all these seruants of those vile Gyaunts, hide themselues in the thickest of the woods and mountaines of the forrest, fearing the like intertainment. This valiant More when he saw the sodaine fliing of them, without hauing any care of them, and making little reckoning, he toke that gentle Lady in his armes and set hir vpon hir palfray, and he himself without putting foot in his stirop, leapt vpon his horse back with great lightnes, and toke their iourney towards the place wheras ỳ others had left their ship, into ỳ which he entered with great spæde verye ioyfull of his good hap, & straight way he commanded to hoise vp their sailes, & to take the way towards Mauritania, wheras we will leaue them for to tell you the great discontentment that ỳ valiant Knight Claridiano had, by reason of his long tarrying in the Iland of Trapobana. O omnipotent God, I doe desire thée to giue me wisdome & discretion to declare ỳ great worthinesse of this young Knight, for without thy help I do not finde my selfe able for to set forth so many and so mervailous feates of armes as was done by this worthie Knight, as in this chapter following & in all the rest shall be declared.

¶ How Claridiano was verye sadde and sorrowfull to see that hee was an armed Knight, onely for to doe one worthye feate of armes, and what pollicie he did vse for to absent himselfe from the King Delfo. Chap. 8.



Ong time haue wée forgotten to ſpeake of that valiant Prince Claridiano, ſonne vnto the famous Emperour Alphebo, and of the excellent Claridiana, who in the Iſlande of Trapobana we left ſomwhat troubled, which was the occaſion that his courageous hart did finde it ſelfe greatly oppreſſed, and eſpecially for that his valiant déeds ſhould bee kept cloſe and not come to light & be ſpred abroad in ỹ world, for to ſhow his mighty ſtrength and worthy courage, & the occaſion of his let was, the great perſwaſion of the King Delfo, who would not loſe his companye, putting beefore him for excuſe his young and tender age, procuring him to tarrie and not to trie himſelfe in adventures, till ſuch time as he ſhould haue the full age of eighteene yeares. This yong Knight thought the time to be very long, which was the occaſion that he was verye ſad and ſorrowfull, in ſuch ſort, that his faire and beautifull face had loſt part of his naturall and liuely colour, and dayly hee did exerciſe himſelfe in no other thing but to goe to the ſea ſide, and ther to ſet himſelfe vpon a rocke, hauing no other contemplation but to behold how the water with great furye and force did ſtrike and beate vpon the ſaid rocke. So after long time vſing this diſport, it chanced on a day at ſuch time as the Sunne had made an end of his iourney, hee ſaw at the foote of that Rocke a Dwarfe, who with an outragious and irefull voice ſaid: Don Claridiano of Grecia, what doeſt thou thinke that ỹ hardneſſe of that Rocke is ſufficient to blaze thy fame and to get vnto thee honour? No of very truth, but with thy armour, and trauailing through the world thou ſhalt obtaine valour as thy predeceſſours haue done before thée: it had beene better thou haddeſt neuer bene an armed Knight, if that onely in one valiaunt déede of armes thou doeſt employe thy time. Therefore I ſay ariſe vp O Gréeke, and procure to finde out thy royall bloud and generation from whence thou doſt procéede, and let not thy deſcent lye hidde, neither thy proweſſe vnknowen. Hée

had

had no ſoner made an end of his ſpéeches, but that vppon a ſodaine hée vaniſhed cleane away, and was not any more ſéene. The ſorrow and heauineſſe was verye much which the Prince then felt in himſelfe, in hearing the wordes and reaſons of the Dwarfe, and the more, when that hée vnderſtoode that hée was not ſonne vnto him whom hée alwaies thought he had béene, ý which cauſed his courage greatly to alter within him, and made him to ſay: Vnfortunate that I am, what doe I make héere amongſt thoſe which are not of my lignage, I had thought for certainetie that I had béene with my father and kindred, and now I doe ſée that it is to the contrarye, and that I am kept in this Iland like a weake and ſillie woman: O Galtenor, ſéeing that it was thy pleaſure that by my handes thou ſhouldeſt bée reſtored vnto thy Kingdome, and for that effect thou haſt had mée hetherto in thy kéeping: Why doſt thou now conſent that my fame periſh and decay, I remaining in this Iland. O immortall Mars, to thée I do invocate, that being by thée holpen and with thy fauour I may ſtretch forth the bright beame, which with thy partiall hand thou gaueſt mée. So vttering theſe and ſuch like complaints, hée paſſed few daies, till that vpon a certaine day, following his accuſtomed exerciſe, hée ſaw comming towards the ſhore a Foyſt, which was gouerned with foure marriners, and beholding who was therein, he ſaw come from vnder the hatches, a very faire Damoſell, who was all apparailed with mourning apparaile, & with hir two auncient Squires, who led hir by the armes, apparailed in the ſame manner and guiſe. This Ladies face was all to bedewed with teares, and hir countenance did declare and ſhow, that ſhée ſuffered great ſorrow & anguiſh. This valyant and worthy young Knight very deſirous to know the occaſion of hir great lamentation, moued himſelf towards hir, and hauing ſaluted hir, he deſired hir if it were hir pleſure, to declare vnto him ý occaſion of hir complaint. The Lady turning vnto him who had demaunded the occaſion of hir ſorrow, & béeing greatly amazed in viewing his

comely grace and gentle disposition, she said, Gentle knight, if thou doest desire to know the occasion of all my harme, bring me before that worthy young knight who slew Gerc-deon Bendambul, & there thou shalt understand the greatest wrong without all reason that euer was done to so noble a Damsell as I am. The Prince taking pittie of hir great sorrow answered: I doe not know for what effect and purpose you do aske after this knight, but be it what it will be, you shall vnderstand gentle Lady, ỹ he whom you doe aske for is before you, & seeing that it is so, you may be bolde to declare your pleasure, & heere I doe say vnto you, that if it be requisite & necessary in your seruice, I will venture my life without putting any excuse for to remedie this your great sorrow & griefe which you doe shew to haue. And you shal vnderstand that I will doe it without taking any leaue of my Lord, the king Delfo, and there is nothing that doeth so much greeue mee, as that I am not armed. This sorrowfull Lady seeing hir good fortune would not lose the occasion, but with a new lamentation and complaint she kneeled downe before him and kissed his handes for the great offers which he made vnto hir, the Prince did take hir vp from ỹ ground with great reuerence, then the Lady with amorous wordes saide. If that by the occasion of King Delfo (gentle Knight) we shall receiue any disturbance: heere I doe desire thee by ỹ honour which thou dost owe vnto all vertue, that we make no farther delay nor detainment, for heere I doe giue you to vnderstand that there remaineth but a small time for the remedying of my sorrow and griefe. Well, let it be out of hand answered this valiant Greeke, and at our comming a land, ỹ first knight that we do meet, either with his good will or ill will shall lend me his armour, and therwith taking that faire Lady by the hand, they put thẽselues into the Foist, commaunding straight way that they should returne their voyage vnto the Sea, so finding the time and winde fauourable, in a very short space they were passed on their way so farre that they cleane lost the sight of any land.

What

What shall I say of the King Delfo & the Princes nurse, when they could not heare of the Prince what was become of him, but onely that he was departed away. But if I did not put before me the great duetie which I do owe, & consider the grauitie of a prince, I might say that he did things more liker a mad man, then a Prince, & surely he had great reason, for he had lost the company of the best knight in all the world: so this warlike Greeke did saile vpon the Sea with an indifferent thought, being in company with ỹ faire Lady who likewise went very well content, for that with so great ease shée had found & obtained him that she sought for. But this I can certifie you of Claridiano, that he had not forget ỹ words which the dwarfe had told him, but alwaies remembring the same, it put him in great confusion, in such sort, ỹ he did not remember to demaund of the damsell ỹ occasion of hir griefe, who with such dilligence went to seeke him. At such time as Diana did spred abroad hir golden haire ouer all those troublesome waters, he discouered that there came towards them a barke, in such hast, that in a small time they were come vnto them, the which barke came without any gouernment, & shée saw sitting on the poope of the barke a Gyant, who had his head & beard verie white, and apparelled with roabes of estate, who was straight waies knowen by Claridiano to bee Galtenor, for the which shée receiued great ioy. When the barkes were ioyned together Galtenor went & imbraced the Prince, saying: Sonne doe not thinke to depart away in such sort, but that first I will reioyce my selfe wt thy presence, for it shall be more profitable vnto thee then thou doest thinke for, as well for the remedie and ease of thy thought, as for the adorning and sauegard of thy body. To whom the Prince answered and said: I do verye well know my Lord, that from you can proceede nothing but that which is good, as alwayes hath bene the vse & custome hetherto. Then the Gyant said vnto him: This thou maist perfectly beleeue, that so long as my soule is ioyned & knit with my bodie, that it shall not exercise it selfe in any other thing but in thy seruice. And now for that thou standest in

nede of armor, here I do bring it vnto thee, for that before many daies come to an ende, thou shalt haue nede thereof. Also I do bring thee a meruailous precious sword, forged and made by my great skill, such a one as in all the world there is not a better. And this shall continue & indure with thee, till such time as thou shalt be in battaile with the Bastard Lyon, then shall it lose his vertue and valor, for that thou shalt recouer another of no lesse price, and of a greater fame, ioyntly with thy honor in the acknowledging of thy vnknowen parents, and in that time thou shalt lose all thy seruice, that euer thou hast done in the honour of Cupide, being in company with the disguised Hinde, although altogether thou shalt not lose thy great loue, till such time as by the Goddesse Venus shall be throwen at thee the African launce, which shall pearce thy hart cleane through. Then did he declare vnto him, how he was stolen out from his mothers lap, certifieng him that he was sonne vnto the mightiest Emperour in all the world: but more light then this, hee would not giue him, neither the place wheras his sister was lost, and therwith he toke out from vnder the hatches of ỹ barke, a fardle which was bound vp, the which he did deliuer vnto the Marriners, that they should lay it vp safe, and imbrace him againe with great loue, and put vpon the finger of the hart, on his left hand a King, which had in it a precious Diamond, that was of so great clearnesse, that in a darke night it gaue as great a light wher it was, as though a torch were lighted. This did he straightly charge him to keepe, for that it was of so great vertue, that so long time as he had it about him ther was no inchauntment that should hurt him. This excellent young Knight would haue surrendered great thankes for his precious giftes, but at such time as he wold haue giuen it, Galtenor was departed vpon a sodaine a great space from them, who made so much hast, that in a verye small time hee lost the sight of him. This young Knight remained with great contentment in knowing that hee did descend from so high a generation:

and

and likewise for the succour hée receiued in the armour hée had brought him, the which he cammaunded to be very well kept till such time as occasion should serue that he had néede of them: in such sort hée passed away all the night, thinking vpon the wordes of Galtenor. So the next morning this young Knight sitting on the poope of the Foyst, with this faire Ladie, he requested hir to tell him ý whole occasion of hir comming to seeke for him. The which this Ladye with great lamentation began to tell him, saying. Gentle Knight you shall vnderstand that I am daughter vnto the King of Mesapotamia, which is a prouince scituated betwéen the two great riuers Euphrates and Tigris. Of long time was I of him welbeloued and made very much on, till such time as my fathers Court was in great heauinesse, for ý they could not heare any newes of a brother of mine, who was prince of that Kingdome, whose absence at this time is very grieuous vnto me. There came from the other side of the riuer Euphrates, a prince, whose dominion was ouer the Prouince Palestina. He was the proudest and arrogantest Knight that euer hath béene séene, in such sort, that by reason of his fiercenesse, he was not onely feared of them, who of dutie did owe it him, but also of all the Prouinces that ioyned with his Kingdome, which extended from that riuer vnto the maine sea of Phœnicia, the mount Libano, Gamogenia, and the high and mightie cragged rockes and mountaines Nabateos. To conclude, almost all Asia did trēble at his furie. This knight at the great fame which was vttered of my beautie, came vnto the famous and large Prouince of Mesapotamia, vnto the great citie of Mesos, wheras I was of him meruailously intreated and requested of loue, but yet all that euer hée did or could doe, did little profit him, for ý by any meanes I could not admit him into my seruice, and the occasion was, because of his great and vnmeasurable pride. So like wise came thether the Prince of Chaldæa, a Knight of great price, and adorned with many vertues, vnto whom I alwaies showed a better countenaunce, and made acceptation of his seruice.

Then Brandemoran) the prince of Paleſtina, who was ſo called) when he vnderſtood thereof was in a great confuſion, & receiued great griefe, in ſuch ſort, that hée determined no other thing, but with his miſchieuous hart to perſecute me: it ſo fell out that the prince of Chaldea whoſe name was Geleroſio being ouercome and forced by lone, hauing opportunities and place conuenient, with doloꝛous reaſons he did diſcouer vnto me all his whole hart, but whether it was his ill hap oꝛ my froward foꝛtune, I know not, but at ſuch time as he vttered vnto me his minde, it chaunced that Brandemoran had his eares attentiue vnto all that was ſpoken betwixt vs, & when he heard that my anſwere was ſuch that it cauſed great ioy and comfoꝛt vnto Geleroſio, & vnto him great paine and toꝛment, with a miſchieuous hart he went vnto my Father the King, and beforꝛe him he did accuſe mée of whoꝛedome. When the king my father heard it, ỹ great ire and wꝛath which he receiued was ſo far out of reaſon, that without taking any farther counſell, he cauſed me to be apprehended, and likewiſe the Prince Geleroſia, and both of vs to be put in priſon, but after a while when his cholar and anger wared colder, he commaunded to call together all the nobles of his counſell and men of honour, who did perſwade with my father, that by reaſon of the great pride and miſchieuous ſtomacke of the Prince Brandemoran, he might do it of preſumption, oꝛ elſe by the great ill will which he bare vnto his contrary Geleroſio, he had raiſed vp this ſlaunder, & that they thought it good to be put into ỹ triall of armes, with condition, that in the ſpace to thirtie dayes I ſhould bring a knight that would defend my honour, and by reaſon the valour of my cruell enemie is ſo mightie, there is not one in all the kingdome that dares take in hand to defend my cauſe, and I ſéeing that the time paſſed away, with a loude voice I began to complaine againſt foꝛtune, and reuiled Brandemoran, calling him coward & wꝛetch, that againſt a Damſell he hath raiſed ſo great treaſon and falſhood, who hearing me to reuile him he anſwered and ſaid: Princeſſe, foꝛ that thou ſhalt ſée how litle I do eſtéeme all the Knights,

of

of the world, I will giue thée one whole yéeres space, that thou thy selfe in thine owne person goe and séeke him who hath the best fame in armes that may bée found, and bring him hether to defend this accusation which I haue layde agaynst thée, and so lykewise I desire the King thy father to consent and grant vnto the same, of whom it was granted and consented, and lykewise of all the Knights that were counsellers of my cause, beleeuing that it might bee ỳ occasion of some remedye. And therewith I toke leaue & lysence and departed from Mesos, with onely these two Squires, committing my selfe into the great riuer Euphrates in this Foyst, & so long wée sayled that wée entered into the Mediterraneo sea, wheras was giuen vnto vs knowledge of your great valor and mightie force, which was the cause ỳ made vs take our way towards ỳ place of your abode, sometimes with great torments, and sometimes with faire wether, in such sort, that in the ende wee arriued whereas you were, in so good time and order, as mine owne desire could not haue wished better. Héere you may sée and vnderstand, worthie Knight, the extremity of my euill, & the cause of my séeking for you. At the which relation of this sorrowfull Lady, the Prince remained very pensiue, and had great pittie on hir, & answered, saying: Lady, I am very much bound vnto your highnesse, that you haue taken so much trauayle & paine to séeke mée, for that there are other a great number of more valour, that are bound to defend your great iustice & make your defence, notwithstanding, for that it hath béen your plesure to attribute vnto mee ỳ honour, héere I do promise you to take vpon mée your iustice & defence, with the small valour of my person, vntill I put my lyfe in daunger for the small experience done in your seruice, I loked for no other thing at your hand gentle Knight, answered the Princesse, and for that thou hast recouered so great fame & renowme onely in doing of one great déed of armes, it is not without great reson, that although I haue béen hetherto infortunate in all my aduentures, yet now I do finde my selfe happy, for that I haue found such a worthy Knight to remedy my euill.

So vpon this matter there paſſed betwixt thoſe very many reſons, but the marriners which gouerned ỹ Foiſt were greatly amazed, and meruailed very much to ſée the great ſwiftneſſe of the Foyſt, and the great way that it made, becauſe they knew not the occaſion, but the Prince dyd well vnderſtand how that Galtenor who helped him was the occaſion of the great ſwiftneſſe. In the end of ten dayes trauaile vpon the ſea, they dyd ariue in a Port or Hauen of the Nabateos, whereas they did determine to goe a ſhoare, and from thence to take their way vnto the place whether they ſhould goe, and with this determination hée commanded to take out two horſes which they brought with them in their Foyſt, and a palfray, and likewiſe the fardell which Galtenor brought him, and commanding it to bée vndone, hée ſaw that ther was in it a very faire purple armor, all to be ſpotted with ſtars of golde, much after the ſort of the armour hée was wont to weare, & the ſhéeld was of the ſame ſort, ſauing that in ỹ purple field there was no deuice made, and there the Prince proued the armour, and it was ſo iuſt and fit for his body as they had béene made by meaſure, and béeing therewith armed, hée ſéemed to bée of a faire diſpoſition vnto all them that loked on him, by reaſon that hée was of a goodly ſtature & proportion, then ſtraight way hée ſet the Lady vpon hir palfray, & hée leaped vpon one of the horſes, and the two ſquiers vpon the other, & in that ſort they bégan to trauaile, and commanded the Mariners to returne the ſame way they came, and they toke their way through a narrow path which lead them vpon a high mountaine, & by reaſon of ỹ great quantitie of huge & mightie trées & the great company of them ỹ were ther, they were conſtrained to go one after another, for ỹ otherwiſe they thought it vnpoſſible to attaine vnto the top therof, and the thickneſſe of the trées were ſuch, ỹ they withſtood the ſunne, that it could not enter in to warme & comfort ỹ cold ground: in this ſort they trauailed with great care till ſuch time as the darke night approched, although ỹ Mone dyd ſhine vpon them, yet by reſon of the great thickneſſe of trées, they thought they

trauai-

trauailed in a dark land, & were constrained to alight frō
their horses, & put themselues apart out of ẏ high way, and
chanced nigh vnto a faire fountaine which was vnto them
a delightful hospitalitie, for that it was in the spring of the
yære, & there they sat downe vpon the grēne grasse, wher-
with the ground was adorned, and called for some thing to
eate, ẏ which was straight waies giuen vnto them, although
it was not eaten with such contentment as their harts re-
quired, so their stomacks bēing satisfied, euerie one of them
withdrew himselfe into his place to take his rest, this new
knight toke vp his helme & shēld, and went to rest in that
part which lead towards the mountaine, and making of his
shēld a pillow hē laide him downe to rest, without hauing
care of any other thing, but onely to sēke out his lineal dis-
cent from whence hē came, & what hē was, and therwith
hē fell a slēpe, but his rest indured but a smal time, for that
in the bēginning of his rest or first slēpe hē heard a very
lamentable complaint, which sēmed not to bē far from the
place where hē had chosen to take his rest, the which com-
plained at sundrie times, and not hastely, so the break of the
day drew on, & bēing desirous to know what it should be ẏ
made so great complaint and heauinesse, he arose vp and la-
ced on his helme, and threw his shēld on his shoulder, and
went vnto the place where the Princesse Antemisca was at
hir rest, and sayd vnto hir: I haue heard this night a mer-
uailous great lamentation, which hath bēne the occasion ẏ
I haue not had any rest at all, & therefore I doe determine
to goe and procure to know if I can who it is that doth so
lamentably complaine, and the occasion of their great griefe,
for that my hart cannot suffer me to beare so great lamen-
tation: but nēdes I must procure to sēke remedy for the
same, if it bē possible to bē had. Therefore in the meane
time, I dow desire your highnesse, to take your rest in the
thickest of this Forrest, that you may bē sēne of no body,
for that I am sure that my returne shall bē very quickly,
for that this complaynt doth sound very nigh vnto ẏ same
place whereas I lay to take my rest all the last night.

The

The departing of the Prince was very grieuous vnto the Princes Antemiſca, and ſhée vnderſtanding that it was in vaine to ſay to the contrary by reaſon of his determination ſhée pretended to beare him company, & ſayd vnto him. Sir Knight, know this for a truth, that your departure is vnto mée very grieuous, but in that you deſire mee that I doo remaine héere, I doe not admit the ſame, for that ſurely wherſoeuer you goe, thether will I alſo with you, for I am not determined to loſe your company. The Prince Claridiano could not diſſemble, but that he muſt néeds laugh at ỳ ſpéech of Antemiſca, and with a pleaſaunt countenance hée ſayde. Lady, I will not bée againſt your determination in any thing, for that it ſhal be vnto mée great honour that you be in preſence, whatſoeuer aduenture doo happen vnto me, for ỳ in beholding of you my valour ſhall increaſe, & taking hir by the hand (leauing the two ſquires to kéepe their horſes) they went into ỳ thickeſt of the woode towards the place whereas hée had heard thoſe great ſighes & complaints, but they had not gone very farre, when they heard that heauy voice, and going ſtraight way towardes the place whereas they thought it was, the farther they went forwards, the nérer they heard the voyce, ſo that they might clérely perceiue that it was ỳ voyce of a woman béeing in ſome great griefe, and was the occaſion that they made the more haſt on their way, till they found themſelues in a great plaine where grew no trées, & on the other ſide of the playne was there a mountayne, & at the foote thereof: there ſéemed to be the mouth of a great caue, out of ỳ which iſſued that lamẽtable ſound, and when they drew nigh vnto it they ſaw that it was very dark, and for to enter into it they muſt néedes deſcend downe certaine ſteps which were of ſtone very ill wrought. At that time the Prince would haue béene very glad that the Princeſſe Antemiſca had not béene with him, for that hée found himſelfe greatly troubled with hir, & then deſired hir that ſhe would remaine and kéepe hir ſelfe ſecret amongeſt certaine buſhes that were ther, ỳ which ſhe was conſtrained to doe, more for to giue contentment vnto the

knight

Knight, thē for any desire shée had of hir selfe. This couragious Knight when he saw himselfe alone (after that hée had left the Princesse) with great hast hée put himselfe into the caue, and going about from one place to another, he chanced into a great hall, which was made in manner lyke vnto a great court, sauing the place where the light entered, was a louer hole, which was in the middest thereof, and goeing round about the same, hée chanced into a place where many bones & skuls of dead men were, which dyd amaze much the Prince, and caused in him a new desire to know what it should bée. And going further in wher ỹ light shewed most, hée saw where was a woman laide a long vpon a bed, who was the most deformedst person that could bée séene, and by hir lay a yong child which séemed to bée of a yere olde, who was of the stature of a meane man, and on the one side hée saw a dore, which was very strong and all of yron, out of the which came forth that sorrowfull voyce. The Gyantesse when shée saw the knight there within, shée with great hast layde hould on a bow which lay at hir beds side, & straight waies bent it and nocked a sharp arrow therein, and drew ỹ bow with so great strength, that almost she brought both ends together, ỹ knight who remained with great care, whē he saw the arrow comming, cléered himselfe thereof, but the arrow had not so sone passed by him, when as like vnto the winde hée went vnto hir, & with his close fist hée stroke hir such a mighty blow vpon hir mouth, that without remembrance shée fell downe vpon the ground, & without making farther reckoning of hir, he went vnto the yron dore, & looked which way hée might open it, & hauing proued ỹ same hée saw ỹ it was all in vaine by reson of the great strength thereof, so ỹ hée was constrained to returne againe vnto the place where the Gyantesse was, and in looking about him he foũd that shée had tied at hir girdle the key of that dore, the which hée toke and did open it, and went in thereat, but hée could not sée any thing therin, by reason of the great darkenesse that was there, and for to sée if any would make him answere, hée asked who was ther within, that so lamenta-

bly

bly dyd cõplaine, saying. Come forth if you can and ỹ without any delay. And prestly ther was one which answered, and sayde. Here is one of the most vnfortunatest Damosells in all the world, who without help cannot moue hir selfe. Then the knight went straight way forth, and saw that there was fire, the which hee blew, and lyghted a Rosin sticke, that dyd burne very well, and went into the place where the Damosel had answered him, and in the farthest end of that chamber hee found the damosel that did so greatly complaine, who lay a long on the ground very euill apparelled, & that which shee had was all torne in peces, in such sort that hir skin was seene in many places, & beholding hir cruel vsage it moued the knight to haue great compassion, and without speaking any worde, with his owne hands hee brak all the yrons & chaines wherwith she was bound, and toke hir by the hand and brought hir out of that darke rowme, into the great hall were it was very lyght. This Damosell when shee vnderstood that hee toke hir out to set hir at libertie, shee kneeled downe on hir knees before him, and sayde: O knight, the comfort of my greeuous paine, tel mee I pray you if ỹ foule butcherly Gyant bee dead or not, or how you had power to come hether into this place, without being disturbed by him or his cruell sonne. The Prince answered & sayd: Hetherto I haue not seene any, but onely I haue heard thy grieuous complaints. Then the Lady with great weeping sayd: Worthie knight, put strength & courage in thy hart that ỹ maist depart with great lyghtnesse before these fierce diuells do meet with you, for if they do meete with you, you may bee assured, that wee shall not haue any fauour of them but ỹ they will fil their stomackes with our flesh as they haue done with many others. The Prince replied: If it so fal out that they wil tast of my flesh, they shall finde it hard and ill in the chawing, worse then any that hetherto they haue eaten, & therefore I doe determine not to moue my selfe from hence more now then at any other times I haue beene accustomed to do. And in saying these words they went out of the caue, whereas they found

found the Princesse Antemisca, who was comming to enter in at the doore, by reson that the Knight tarried so long, and when shée saw the nakednesse of the Damosell, vsing hir royall clemencie, shée toke off the black roabe that shée had on hir, and covered hir therewith, shedding from hir christalline eies many teares, with the great compassiõ she had of that Damosell, & straight way shée tooke hir by the hand and with great hast went with hir towards the place wheras shée had left hir squires, and going on theyr way, in the middest of the plaine they heard amongst the trées a great rumour and noyse, and looking about to sée what it should bée, they saw comming forth of the wood a furious monster, of so great bignesse, that he was almost equal with the high and mighty Trées, and was of a very great and boystrous making of his body and members, and as you doe sée the hungry Lyon who is very desirous of his pray, springeth & leapeth amõgst the grœne hearbs, complaining of his great hunger and emptie belly: in such sort came this monster, all armed with Skinnes of wylde Beastes, which were very strong and hard, and brought in his hande a Pine aple trée, full of knots, & when hée saw the Knight, and knew that he carried with him his prisoner, hée gaue so terrible a shrike, that it sounded throughout all the mountaynes, and lyfting vp his great and mightie clubbe hée pressed towards this couragious Knight, who when hée saw him comming, did abide him wt such courage as his valiant hart did cõstraine him, and hauing his sword in his hand hée commanded the damsells to put thẽselues a part on the one side. This furious diuel hauing his club in ẏ aire fast with both his hãds hée did discharge ẏ same at the prince, who with great lightnesse did clœre himselfe from the fury thereof, and caused it in vayne to fall vpon the ground, which was with so great strength, that it made the Prince and all the ground there abouts to tremble lyke an Earthquake, but in this time the Prince dyd not slœpe, but seeing himselfe clœre from ẏ blow, pressed vnto ẏ monster on the one side, & strok him such an ouerthwart blow vpon his knœ in ẏ very ioynt, that he cut

it

it cleane a sunder, with so great ease as though it had bene a glasse or such like, wherewith the monstrous Gyaunt fell downe to the ground, with so great strength & waygbt, as though it had bene a mightie tower, hee was not so fallen downe, but the Knight put the poynt of his sword into his mouth, the Gyant seeing him so nigh, he toke hould vpon the skirt of his shirt of maile with so great strength, ý he made him perforce to come nere him, & as he had his sword fixed in the Gyants mouth, what with the strength that the giant vsed to pull him towardes him, and likewise ý strength which ý knight forced, it caused the sword to passe through his throat, in such sort, that straight way he remained dead, and voyded a great streame of blood. Oh that I were here able to declare vnto you the great ioy that those Damosels receiued when they saw that great Diuell dead, and with chearefull countenances they went and receiued the knight, although ý great feare which remained in that naked damsel would not let hir wholly to inioye and reioyce in hir libertie, who sayd vnto the Prince: Valyant Knight & our succour, now doth it stand vs in hand to make ý more hast before the sonne of this great diuell come vnto vs, for that he is more terrible & of more strength then his father is, to whom this couragious Knight said: Feare not faire Lady, for that the Gods will help and succour vs, in such sort, that his great fury and force shal little auaile him. These words he spak with a chearfull countenance, & lifting vp his helme, did shew his great seueritie. So hee toke them by the hand, and went their way towards ý place where they left their squires keeping of their horses, and at his cõming thether, hee straight way mounted the two damsels vpon their palfraies, and he & the rest vpon their other horses, and began to trauayle their former iourney, they had not trauayled very far, when as they heard a great rushing, which seemed to bee of manye people amongst those thicke trees, which caused them to staye to see what it should bee, as you shall vnderstand in the next chapter following.

Of

¶Of the battaile that Claridiano had with the fierce and timerous Gyant, sonne vnto the other Gyant which he had slaine, and of all that happened in the battaile. Chap. 9.

THE great noise which the valiant Knight heard, was no lesse then that which Fauonio made in the Antartike sea, nigh vnto ỹ Tartarian coast, which is all replenished with high and mightie trees of Pine apples, so the Prince and all the rest stated to see what it was that caused all that noise and rushing, and they saw that it was a furious fierce and terrible Gyaunt that came from the thickest of the wode, hee was thirteene cubites of height, all full of rough and thicke haire, and he had in his hand a great and beanie club, which seemed to bee the mast of a mightie shippe, but whosoeuer had seene the faces of the Damsells at that time, would haue iudged their alteration to be like vnto the Sun, when he is eclipsed with the Mone at none daies, but this inuincible Claridiano made no signe of any mutation, but rather did make himselfe readie vnto the battaile, seeing that ỹ Gyant did make towards him, the great blaring noise which the Giant made was so terrible, that it caused great feare in all thẽ that heard it, sauing onely in him who put himselfe in defence, and tarrying for the comming of the enimie, the great pride which this giant did vse, hauing his club in the aire comming towards the knight was much more then that which Belona vsed when she sate in hir armed chariot, being gouerned with furious dragons, ouer all the fields: the horse whereon the Prince rode seeing so straunge and seldome sene a monster before him, raged in such sort, that this couragious warriour hadde not so much strength to gouerne him, but that by pure force he cast himselfe about in ỹ aire, flying from the presence of that vglye beast, but the valyaunt Prince fearing the great peryll which might happen vnto those Damoselles, with great

lightnesse leapt from his horse leauing the saddle, and béing on foote he quickly tourned towardes the Graunt, and saw that at one blow hée had broke all to péeces one of the Ladies Squires, whereat the Prince tooke great griefe to sée so great an outrage done: without all reason, and with an irefull voice hée saide: Thou furious beast without law or reason come to me, for I am he which hath bene the occasion of thy anger, if thou hast any. This infernall monster went towards Claridiano with his club all aloft, and with great furie he did assault him: Oh almightie God, saue kéepe, and deliuer thy Knight from this infernall furie, & doe not permit that he die in the hands of so cruell an enimie, but first hée know that thou art his true and perfect God. This valiant Greeke stood still when hée saw ỳ terrible blow comming, till such time as he bégan to discharge it, at which time with a straunge lightnesse he made him to lose the fury thereof, and with his sword in both his handes he stroke at the Graunt a mightie blow, which chanced vppon his club with so great force that he cut it a sunder in the middle, this furious diuell when hée saw that hée had erred his blow, with much more furie and double strength he lift vp his mightie clubbe againe and discharged it at the Greeke, who in the same sort as before hée cleered himselfe from the force thereof, making him to strike in vaine that terrible blow vpon the ground, and with the great strength wherewith it was stroke, the rest of the clubbe which remained did breake in péeces, at which time the prince was not idle, but with great lightnesse he entered in to him, and with both his hands hée stroke him such a terrible blow vpon the waist, which made his armour to faile, but by reason of the huge and long haire which he had vpon his bodie, hée could not hurt his flesh, which made ỳ Greeke verye much to mervaile at it, but séeing that the Giant was discharging at him another blow, it made him to step aside, and although ỳ club was cut and broken, yet there remained a great tronchon thereof in his handes. Héere you might sée begin so terrible and furious battaile, that it séemed that all ỳ warriours of

Mars,

Mars, were there assembled together in fight. This valiant and courageous Knight had here great neede of all his force and lightnesse to make his defence against his enimie, here might you see the valiantnesse of Giants & their infernall force & furie: likewise the incomparable force of the Greekish blood of chiualrie, here might you see the great hast that the one made vnto the other in doubling of their blows, and procuring the one to hurt the other, trauailing ground and moouing from place to place, seeking whereas most aduantage might be found. In this sort they trauayled for the space of two houres, not knowing betweene them ante aduantage. But who should haue seene ther the great lightnesse and prowesse of this young Knight, would haue iudged him to be one of the best Knights of all the world, for that in all the time of the battaile, and all the terrible blowes which the giant did strike at him, yet he neuer brake maile, nor hurt any part of his armour, & yet he hurt his contrarie in more then tenne places, although they were not very great, yet did they trouble him, and it was by reason of the great hast he made in the striking of his blowes, but when the Giaunt saw himselfe to be so euill intreated he began to puffe, blaster and blow, much like vnto a bayted Bull, and doubled his blowes with so great hast, that the Prince could not haue anye time of aduantage to hurt him, but had inough to doe for to cleere and defend himselfe from his furie. And being in this great extremitie he heard those two Damoselles which he had brought with him crye out, making a great noise, aduertising him to take heede and loke vnto himselfe, and being very desirous to know the occasion thereof, he saw that it was that fierce and vglye woman which he hadde left before in the cane without anye remembraunce, and for dead, who came with hir Bow bent in hir hand, & shot at him with hir sharpe and vnmercifull arrowes, the which he was constrained to beare off w̄ his armour, for w̄ his shield he could little profit himselfe, and by reason y his armor was made by art of inchantment,

it did profit him much, for so sone as the arrow did strike on it, it recoyled back againe a great way, at this present time did the knight finde himselfe in great perill and daunger, for that hee must make his defence against that infernall monster, & likewise against that diuelish and furious woman, who continually assauted him with hir arrowes, and then he could not profit himselfe of his force & strength, but onely of his great lightnesse, shunning ỹ furie of his mighthie blowes, so by little & little he drew nigh vnto the place wheras the Gyauntesse was, who hauing spent all hir arrowes, she toke in hir hand a mightie clubbe and came towardes hir furious husband to helpe him. This valyaunt Greeke found himselfe in great extremitie, and with the great anger which he had, it changed his eies into sanguine coulour, and was determined to cleere himselfe of that infarnall woman, and with that purpose he tourned towards hir, and letting hir blow to passe by, he stepped in to hir on the left side, & thrust so terrible a foine at hir brest, that his sword entered in vp to the hard hiltes, and shee fell downe dead to the ground. The Gyaunt who at this instant was not idle, stroke the Greeke such a monstrous blow vppon his backe, that he ouerthrew him to the ground as dead, without any remembraunce or token of mouing, the Gyant seeing him in this case threw from him his clubbe, and toke the knight in his furious nailes, and with the great rage and wrath which he had he would haue eaten him vp at that instaunt, but it fell not out with him as he thought it would, for that hee found the armour which hee had on was verye hard, and when the Gyaunt saw that his sharpe teeth did little profite him, hee beganne to tumble and tosse him vp & downe from one place to another, and by reason that he was not expert in the lacings and buckeling of armour, he did nothing but tumble and tosse him heere and there, to see if hee could finde a place where hee might beginne to teare him in peeces. Whosoeuer should at that instaunt haue seene the great affliction of those two Damosells, might verye well haue iudged in himselfe the anguith and sorrow

which

which they receiued, iudging themselues to be wholly lost & destroyed. But the Princesse Antemisca, lifted vp hir eyes vnto heauen and said. I do see O Iupiter, that thou art very well pleased, that I do suffer this grieuous paine & sorrow. Ah Fortune, it is now great reason to leaue mée, & not to persecute me any farther, & if it be so, that as yet thou hast not accomplished thy whole desire. Oh Iupiter make sharpe thy cutting sword, and therewith take away my life. Oh Mars, behold that now thy strength doth faile, if thou doest permit that this Knight do perish. O what woman amongst all women hath bene so infortunate as I? Oh Gods, I do not know wherfore you doe thus persecute me, for ý I haue bene alwaies obedient vnto you, and now séeing that you had giuen me a Knight for to be my defence, (against ý vniust cause, which was laid against me) you should lykewise haue suffered mée to giue testimonie of my truth, and their false accusation? Oh thou chast Goddesse, be fauourable vnto me, séeing that Iupiter hath forgotten mée, turne & take my cause vpon thée, and be fauourable, for that I neuer offended thée. These and such like complaintes vttered this afflicted Princesse, & hauing concluded, the Prince was come againe to himselfe and recouered his memorie, and séeing himselfe in that perplexitie, he did procure by all meanes & pollicie to clære himselfe out of the Gyants clawes, and being clære he put himselfe on foote, and recouered againe his sword, blaspheming against the small power of his Gods, & was mervailously kindled with wrath and anger, the gyant likewise recouered his mightie club & stroke at the Prince a mightie blow, who séeing it comming did procure to clære himselfe from the furie therof, and letting it passe, he stepped in to the Gyant, and stroke at him so terrible a blow on the waist, that it litle did profit any defence that he had, but that his mightie sword must néeds cut him a sunder in the middest of his body, and he fell a sunder, each part from ý other dead to the ground. The great paine & sorrow which those timerous damsels receiued was not before so much as their ioy and contentment now was, when they saw their mor-

tall enimie dead before thē, & neuer reſted in giuing thanks vnto their Gods, for the deliuerance of their Knight from ſo huge and monſtrous a beaſt. Claridiano when hée hadde made an end of this enterpryſe, he ſate him downe amongeſt thoſe trées for to reſt himſelfe, for that hée had great néede therof, and demanded of them ſomewhat to eate, which was giuen vnto him of ſuch as they had, and when he had eaten and reſted himſelfe well, they bægan to trauaile their former iourney, and for that they ſhould goe vp a great and mightie mountaine, they determined to aſcend by little and little for the eaſing of their horſe, and when they were halfe way vp ẏ night came vpon them, that they were conſtrained to put themſelues a part out of the high way amongeſt the trées, and ther to reſt themſelues all the whole night, ſo when the morning was come they followed their former trauaile vp the hill, it was well none before they could get vnto the toppe of the mountaine, wheras they did diſcouer on the other ſide meruailous great and mightie plaines, adorned with trées of all ſortes and great hearbes, and being weary of their long iourney vp the hill, they ſate downe to take their reſt, & to eate of that which they had left the day before, and then made an end of all, ſo that there remained behinde no more victuals, which grœued them verye much, and for that the way was ſomewhat ſharpe & ragged, they made the more haſt to get to ſome towne and ther to take their eaſe, but their haſtie trauaile was all in vaine, for that ther was no towne nigh them by a great way, ſo that the war which they ſuſtained with hunger was more greater then the battaile of the Gyants, as ſhall be tolde you in the chapter following.

Of the great trauaile that the Graeke Knight had & the Ladies for lacke of victualls by reaſon of their long iourny, & how they found a Giant, with whom the Prince had battaile and ſlew him, and what order they had to help themſelues with victualls. Cap. 10.

AT such time as the Sunne of Tona bégan to spread abroade his golden haire ouer and amongest the grécne and fresh boughs of the high and mightie Pine apples, Cedrons, and other trées, which were in that fragrant mountaine, whereas all kinde of small birds flew round about, recreating themselues in the beauty of ỹ day, and with their well tuned notes, making a swéete and heauenly melodie. At that time the mightie and well estéemed Knight Claridiano of the Speare, the vnknowne Prince of the Gréckish Empire was on horse backe with his amorous companie, and taking the way which they thought to be most vsed, that they followed, the ladies were mervailously troubled for lacke of their accustomed & dayly victualls, and could not hide nor dissemble their great hunger, for the which ỹ Knight of the Speare was very much troubled & sorrowfull. So in this great extremitie they passed all that day, & trauailing in and out amongest those mightie trées, ỹ night drew on, and although by reason of the Mone it was very light, yet vnto them it séemed to be very dark, for that they were verie sore troubled for lacke of that which should sustaine them, and their faces did shew and declare ỹ perplexitie of their stomackes. So they sate them downe vpon the grécne & fresh hearbes, verye pensine of their extreame necessitie, procuring to take their rest that night, but al was in vaine, for that their corporall necessitie would not cõsent thervnto, but without slécping they walked vp and downe all that night, till the next day in the morning ỹ they turned to their accustomed trauaile and iourney, procuring by all meanes to sée if they could find any thing for the easing of their stomackes, & had their eyes alwayes attendant to sée if they might discouer any village, wheras they might satisfie their hũger & take their rest, but all did profit thẽ very little, & with this the night came on them, & these afflicted ladies fell to ỹ ground wt féeblenesse: Oh what sorrow was this vnto the prince to sée thẽ in this case, being not able to help them, & parting a little from them, he lamented saying:

O Iupiter, the mightiest amongst all the Gods, thou which diddest set at libertie those of Trapobana, by my power and strength by thée giuen, and séeing it came downe from thy emperiall seat, shew me now some fauour, and doe not consent that I and my companie doe perish héere with hunger and lacke of victualls: Oh Lord, doe not make any delay in putting remedie in this my necessitye, except it bée thy will that we be all meate to the Birdes, and if it be so that my dædes doe deserue it, and thou doest giue thy consentment, wherefore diddest thou put me in such estate, and wherfore diddest thou appoint me amongest other Knightes, to be the defender and vpholder of afflicted Ladies and Damosels, and if it be so that I must néeds die, let me die by the hands of ỹ most strongest warriour in all the world, and not to dye w̃ hunger. These and such like reasons vttered this good Grécian Knight till such time as the day drew on, & comming vnto the place whereas his companye were, hée found them that they were very weake & féeble, but incouraging them in the best wise he could he caused them to take their horses, and so did he and also Alibernio the old Squire, and trauailed on their way with so great féeblencsse, that they thought verily that the Ladies would die by the way. This worthie Grécke was in a great confusion, yet did he not let to go first to one and then to another, comforting them, & made them to ride a pace, which they might doe very well, for that their horses were not vnprouided as the masters, by reason of the goodly grasse that was there in those woodes, wherwith they filled themselues euery night. The Sunne had well passed two partes of hir iourney when they came into a great field very plaine, and in the middest of it was a little mountaine, out of the which there appeared smoake to come forth, which gaue them to vnderstand that there should bée fire in that place. Then the prince said vnto Alibernio, procure to comfort and incourage forwardes these Ladies, and come by little & little, for that I will ride before for to sée who shall be our host this night, and of this thou shalt bée assured, that whosoeuer it is, whether he be pleased or not he

shall

ſhall giue vs lodging, and therewith hée ſet ſpurres vnto his horſe, & in great haſt hée rode towards the mountaine, and at the fury and ruſhing of the horſe in his running, there aroſe vp from the ground a mighty gyant, of ſo great height, that hée ſéemed to bée a great trée, & when hée ſaw ỳ Knight hée laide hand on a mighty great club which he had by him, and with great lightneſſe hée went towards him, & ſayde in the Chaldæan tongue. O vnhappie trauayler, what diddeſt that think, ỳ héer was no body for to defend thée this way? What was it the ſmell of the roaſted Déere in thy noſe, which cauſed thée to make ſo great haſt hether. The Prince when hée ſaw him ſtayed his horſe and ſayd: Hould thy hand thou furious Gyant and ſtay, for that I haue not procured thée any euill, but rather I doe deſire thée that of thine owne frée will thou wouldeſt giue vs whatſoeuer thy pleaſure is to béeſtow vpon vs: O man of ſmal valour, anſwered the Gyant, what doſt thou thinck by craft and ſubtiltie to aduantage thy ſelfe of mée: Well, for that thou ſhalt ſée how little I doe eſtéeme thée, tarry a whyle, for with my fiſts and buffets I will beate out thy braynes, without the help of my club. And in saying theſe words hée threw his beaute club from him, and came towards the Prince with his fiſt bent for to ſtrike him, in the like ſort dyd this noble warriour, & for to ſtrike him at his eaſe he was cõſtrained to rayſe vp himſelfe in his ſtirops, otherwiſe hée could not reach his head, but yet hée lent him ſo terrible a blow vpon the forehead, that hée droue the bone to the braines, & béeing therewith amazed hée fell downe to the ground, & with the great force and ſtrength that hée put to ſtrike that blow, it lacked little that he fell not from his horſe, but incontinent hée ſtroke him againe the ſecond blow, wherewith hée made an end to beate out his braynes, and there remayned dead. The Prince was greatly amazed in beholding him, for as he lay along vpon the ground hée ſéemed to bée a great Oake blowen downe with ỳ winde, the knight could not refrayne himſelfe but that hée muſt néedes laugh, & ſayde: Of truth I am a notable gueſt, for that béefore I doe enter into my

lodging, I dw pay the ſhot. At this inſtant the Ladies came to that place, with much ioye at ẏ preſent, as bẽfore they were ſad & ſorrowfull. When the Princeſſe Antemiſca dyd ſée the greatneſſe of ẏ Gyant, and the deformitie of his body, ſhée ſayde vnto the Prince: If thou ſhouldeſt giue lyke payment (worthy Trapobanian) vnto all thẽ that ſhould receiue thée for gueſt, I dw not know, nor I cannot bẽléeue, that they would take the payne to ſerue them that ſhould come after thée. I know not what will happen anſwered Claridiano, but I am ſure that I haue giuen this his payment accoꝛding vnto ẏ intertainment hée gaue mẽ, & ſomewhat better cheape thẽ that Gyant which was in ẏ mountaine, who thought with his owne body to haue quẽſed mẽ to the death: but yet I dw certefie you, that after his death, I receiued greater battaile, then when hée was a liue. Then ſayd the Gentlewoman that was releaſed out of pꝛiſon, if I had not feared a farther perill, with the great ioye which I receiued when I ſaw him fall dowme, I pꝛomiſe you I could haue laughed hartely, to ſée how hée trauailed to catch hold of you. Tuſh, all this was nothing ſayd Antemiſca, neyther dyd I eſtéeme of it: but had it not bẽne for ẏ great ſoꝛrow which I receiued, when I ſaw him faſt in his clawes tumbling and tolling from one place to another, I pꝛomiſe you if the perill had not bẽne ſo great, I could not but haue reioyced to ſée how hée rowled him vp and dowme, and by reaſon that that the armour was very iuſt vnto his body, & lykewiſe very hard, it was a pleſure to ſée him biting at it with his téeth: and when hée ſaw that all his great labour was loſt, hée tourned vnto his firſt office, rolling and tumbling our knight, as though hée would haue rocked him a ſléep. I dw pꝛomiſe you of my fayth Ladies ſayd Libernio, with great feare that I had, to haue receiued ſome knock oꝛ blow, I neither receiued pleaſure in the one, nor griefe in the other. Then the Princeſſe ſayd vnto the Gentlewoman hir companion, it ſhall bée better for vs to goe & ſée, what victualles, our hoſt hath pꝛepared for vs to eate, for the good hope that I haue to pꝛoue of that which hée hath oꝛdayned for vs,

hath

hath taken from mée the great care & ſorrow which I had, as you may ſée, and in this ſort as they were they went towards theyr hoſtes houſe the Gyant, and they ſaw that it was a great barne cut out of ý hard ſtone and wrought of the rock. And entering therein they ſaw that hée had put to roſt a whole Deere, which was a very great one, and ſéeing that which ſhould giue them comfort, euery one of them fell to worke, hoping for their trauaile to eate part of that Deere. The old ſquyre tourned the ſpit, and the Ladyes made the fire, and the Prince pulled out coales, ſo that there was none idle, in hope of the benefit to come: and with the great hunger they had, & deſire to eate, that whē the Deere was ſcant hot on the ſpit, they thought it ouer roſted & halfe burned, lykewiſe they procured to ſée if they could finde any bread. Claridiano deſcended into a roome, hée had vnder the Caue, wheras he found two great loues, ſo great in compaſſe as the cyrbe of a well, & two great flagons full of béere, with great ioye & pleaſure the Prince came forth out of the caue, and for to giue contentment vnto the Ladies, hée brought it forth, & ſhewed them what hée had found. And whē the Ladies ſaw ſo good prouiſion, they made haſt of the Deere, and hauing nothing wherewith to cut their victuals, the Prince vſed his ſword at that time in ſtéed of a knife. So ý Prince and the Ladies béegan to cut and to eate at their will: but Libernio by reſon that hée was occupied in tourning & roſting, he could not profit himſelfe with his hands for to eate, and when hée ſaw, that the Deere was almoſt halfe eaten, he ſayd. Of truth if I make long tarrying, I ſhalbe made Lord ouer the bones, and not of any fleſh, if you goe forwards in eating as you do béegin. Tarry a while longer ſayd Antemiſca, and then you ſhal ſée how it wil fall out, for that now in this time of hunger, wée do not remember any curteſie, therefore procure to catch and eate whereas thou canſt or maiſt, for thou didſt very wel ſhift to hide thy ſelfe amongſt the buſhes when as thou didſt ſée the Gyant: to whom Libernio, ſoyd.

I would this morning you had giuen vs ſome counſell,

and

and not now, that you are so liuely and liberall in eating. Then Claridiano said, God old man, it shall be better that thou doest put thy iawes to worke and let thy tongue be in quiet: I will beléeue your highnesse said the old man, for that you doe giue me good counsell, and therewith hée toke the rest of the Déere from the fire, and began to cut and to eate with great hast, such hast they made that in a smal time they had bestowed all the Déere and the bread, and a great part of the Béere, which gaue occasion vnto Antemisca to say as followeth. Oh how kings and Princes be meruailously deceiued, beléeuing ỳ with theyr delicate meates and drinks they shall bring to themselues new & better complections, and expell all grose humours, and maintaine vnto themselues a great state of health, and to obtaine therby a better disgesture & tast, then they which doe liue in poore and miserable estat, we doe sée that the simple pastor or shepheard kéeping of his shéepe, is better content with a péece of brown bread and an Onion, then mightie kings and Princes with all their delicate fare, and I doe certifie you that the Shepheards are more fortunate then kings. It is a vale of miseries to be a king, and great ease and security to be a Shepheard, for that the king must foresée to put good gouernment in his kingdome & minister iustice, and the shepheard onely to his shéepe: Oh what great contentment shouldest thou receiue, Princesse Antemisca, if it had pleased ỳ Gods to haue made thée the poorest Pastora in all the world, and not to haue put thée in so high estate, whereas thy fortune hath brought thée to trauaile, & to sée the experience of such profes as these be, & that which thou dost pretend, for if thou wert of a base lignage, & that they had imputed vnto thée this fait, (wᵗ which wout all truth I am charged) I shuld not estéeme more of my honour then as a Pastora, but now being daughter vnto him whom I am, I must make of it according vnto my estate, therefore now I doe saye that a shepheardes estate is better then to be Quéene of Mesapotamia: Oh my euill fortune and destinie, I cannot but néedes I must complaine and cry out with a lowd voice against thée, for that

thou

thou doſt not giue mée the contentment that the ſilly Paſtora hath, in following hir ſheepe and lambes, and not to high eſtate & Lordſhip. With ſhedding of many teares dyd Antemiſca in this ſort complaine againſt fortune. Libernio who was very attentiue vnto ẏ words of the Princeſſe, ſaid with a ſmiling laughter: Miſtreſſe, at ſuch time as you were with your fingers pinching & pulling at the roaſted déere, I would you had put your ſelfe in this diſputation, & not now, for when ẏ belly is full, euery one of vs is a good preacher. Ah Libernio, anſwered Antemiſca, at that time I did not remember that which I now féele, for if I dyd I ſhould haue receiued the ſelfe ſame ſorrow which I now doe. Then the olde man ſaid: Well, let all paſſe, and let vs conſider of that which is moſt conuenient for vs, and let vs depart from hence out of this place, and procure to come to ſome towne or dwelling place, for that it cannot bée without danger to remaine héere with this dead Gyant, & that there is more of his fraternitie nigh this his habitation, & againe, I would bée very loth that wée ſhould fal into ſo great danger as that which is paſt, for lack of victuals, for peraduenture we ſhall not méete wᵗ another hoſt as good as this for to ſatisfie our hunger, the Prince was very quiet and held his peace at all that hée heard betwixt the Princeſſe & Libernio, and did very much reioyce to heare the diſcréte reſons of Antemiſca, and ſéeing that Libernio his counſell was the beſt, hée made haſt that the Ladies ſhould take their palfray, & leaped on his horſe, and toke the way and trauailed through a narow path which ſéemed to be vſed by the Giant, & ſo with great diligence they trauailed all the reſt of that day till it was night, at which time they had wonne the top of that mountaine, from whence they did diſcouer meruailous great and faire plaines, the which were inhabited with very fayre cities & townes, at which ſight theſe trauailers receiued great contentmtnt and ioye, and without any ſtaying they made haſt onwards on their iourney, till ſuch time as they came vnto a caſtle which was in ẏ middeſt of the way, halfe the hill downewards, it was one a clock at midde night before

they

they came thether, and their horses wared very weary, and by reason that it was night, all the gates and doores of the Castle were shut. Then Libernio take holde of the ring of the gate and began to knock with great fury, as though he would haue beaten the gate downe, at which knocking, a man of the Castle loked out of a windowe, & sayde, Who is that, which calleth and knocketh at the gate with so great rigor, at this time of the night? To whom Claridiano answered. A Knight, and two faire damosells, whom fortune hath brought hether, and would if it were so your pleasure, enter in, & take some rest, for that wee bee come very wery & troubled with this our long & solitary iourney. Tarry a little, answered the man, for that I will giue the Lord of this Castle to vnderstand thereof, & therewith hee withdrew himselfe fom the window, and went in: but hee tarried not long, when that the same man opened another window somwhat lower, and put out thereat a light torch, and straight way there loked out an olde Knight, whose head was all gray, which sayde. Who bee you that bee say, that you haue passed the Mountaynes Nabateos, without any perill to your persons. To whom Claridiano sayd. Wee are straungers, whose fortune hath brough vs hether, & wee do desire thee to do vs so much pleasure as to receiue vs into your castel this night, that we may take some rest: Friends, answered the Knight of the Castel. wee are here so feared with a great diuell, whose habitation is in the height of the mountaine, that not onely in the night, wee dare not open our gates, but also wee kepe thē shut all day. Who is this y so much trouble & vexe you, sayde Libernio. The Knight sayd. A mightie great Gyant, and of a meruelous height, & formed like vnto a diuell. I do sweare vnto thee by Iupiter sayd Libernio, that from this day forwards thou needst not to feare him, for that this day very much against his will wee were his guests, & dyd eate of that which hee ordayned for himselfe, paying first for our victuals with two buffets, wherwith hee lost his lyfe. When the Lord of the Castell heard this hee commanded the gates to bee opened, although with

some

ſome feare, for that hée was not certaine of ý hée had heard ſpoken. But whē the Knight and his company were within the Caſtle, hée commanded that the gate ſhould hée ſhut agayne: ſo they altogether entered into a fayre and large Court, and were by the Lord of the Caſtle receiued with great loue, & when hée ſaw that Claridiano was of ſo goodly proportion, hée greatly meruailed. To whom Libernio ſayd: Lord & friend, from this day forwards thou ſhalt not neede to haue any feare of this thy enimie, for that hée will no more returne to trouble you, for this Knight whom ý ſeeſt beefore thée hath ſlaine him & made an ende of his daies, and not this giant alone, but alſo thoſe furious giants Tartaros. Oh ſouereigne Gods ſayd the olde Knight of the Caſtle, is this poſſible to bée true which I doo heare, and that my fortune is ſo good to receiue into my houſe ý Knight that hath done ſo valyant actes. Wée ſhall quickly ſée whether it bée true or not, for that euery night this diuel commeth, giuing terrible ſtrikes, and for that hée ſhould quickly depart, I doe commaund to throw him prouiſion, out at the higheſt window of this Caſtle, and yet hée is not content therwith by reaſon of his great pride, but hée is ſo euill inclined, that if hée méete any of our people he pardoneth none, but killeth them. You may from hence forth ceaſe your feare, ſayde Claridiano, for I promiſe you that hée wil neuer more trouble nor grieue you. So with ſuch reaſonings they went vp into the Caſtle where they were meruailouſly well receiued by a Gentlewoman wife vnto the knight of the Caſtle, whoſe name was Marmariton, and likewiſe of two ſonnes, which hée had, proper yong men. So ſtraight way the table was commaunded to bée couered, and that they ſhould ſit downe to ſupper, whereas they were ſerued very abundantly, for the knight of the Caſtle was a very rich man, none richer in all the kingdome of Nabatea, who could not ſatiſfie himſelfe in beholding the great grauitie and ſeuere countenance of the Prince, and his faire and well proportioned body. So whē they had made an ende of theyr ſupper, for to paſſe away the time, till they ſhould goe to take theyr reſt,

the

The Prince said vnto the Lady which he released out of prison: It shall be good faire Lady now that you are at liberty and out of all daunger, that you doe tell vs the occasion of your imprisonment, & how it hath beene, if so bee that ỹ declaring doth not trouble you. The Damsell answered: Of truth my Lord, this will I doe with a very good will, and if it were but onely for to giue you contentment, & it is great reason and iustice, for that you did put your person in great danger for my deliueraunce: You shal vnderstand, gentle Knight, that along the huge & mightie Riuer of Euphrates, towards the Orientall parts, there is a mightie Citie called Ieroſolima, the which is not far from the head of the said riuer, on the other side of the riuer towards the sunne setting is there another Citie called Sabiosa, of these and of other cities and townes there about, my father is King and Lord ouer. The Gods who were so pleased for to inrich mée, not onely of goods, but also of beauty & fayrenesse, more thē any other in all ỹ kingdome, or in a great part there abouts, the fame of my great beauty was published in all places, which was the occasion that there repaired vnto my fathers court many Lords & Knights of great estimation, amongst whom there came one yong Knight and a stranger, who was naturall of the kingdome of Tigliasa, and Lord of the Citie of Zina, and hee beeing in loue with mée & I likewyse of him, and before that either of vs could manifest our loue the one vnto the other, ther passed a long time, but onely by our outwards shows, we did declare ech to other the abundance of our harts and signes of loue, the which indured many daies. So it happened vpon a day going to recreate my selfe in a Forrest there by, amongest the swéet hearbes and odoriferous flowers, hard by the riuer side of Euphrates, which caused in my minde all kinde of amorous thoughts, & I carrying my yeolow gold haire, all dispearsed behinde my eares couering my back, vpon a sodaine amongest the thick trées I saw a verye fayre Pastora, which was combing of hir hayre, sitting vnder a faire & grēne Myrtle trée. And héere my Lord I doe certifie you of a truth, that in all the world

hath

hath not bene ſene the like,ſhe hadde ſeding by hir a few ſheepe,& by hir lay hir ſhepheards hooke,and hir bagge hung vpon the Myrtle tree,I know not what to ſay,but that the trees and hearbs did reioyce to ſee hir beautye, I could not but ſtay and reioyce my ſelfe in beholding ſo goodly a creature,with hir yealow golden haire diſpearſed all abroade, which did reach vnto hir feet,& for that ſhe was ſet down,hir golden haire did couer all the ſweet hearbs ther about hir, & by reaſon of ỹ great heat of the Sun,ſhe had hir necken ger turned downe vpon hir ſhoulders,wherout did appeare hir verye white and chriſtalline necke,my Ladies & Damſells were no leſſe amazed to ſee hir great beautie,beleuing that ſhe ſhould be daughter vnto the gods,& no earthly creature,but fortune who is ſo mutable would not ſuffer me to inioy long ſo beautifull & ioyfull a ſight,but being without feare in this ſort as I haue told you,vppon a ſodaine there came behinde me ỹ Prince of Nicea,& before ỹ I couldmake any meanes to diſturbe him, in great haſt he toke me faſt by the arme,& with a trice he lift me vp and ſet mee before him on the ſaddle bow of his horſe,and in great haſt he put himſelfe into the thickeſt of the Forreſt,my Gentlewomen & maidens remained giuing great chriks,but it little profited,for that the Prince of Nicia,made ſuch diligent haſt ỹ in a very ſhort time he entered with me into a barke in the riuer of Euphrates,who carried vs ſo far,as we came wheras he ioyned vnto ỹ riuer Tygris,wheras we went a land, & croſſed ouer the mountaines of Libanos,wheras we wer taken of ỹ furious Gyant which was firſt ſlaine, & at one terrible blow he ſlew the prince, and me he carried vnto ỹ priſon,whereas you(gentle Knight)did find me,& herewith ſhee held hir peace, giuing a great ſigh, in remembring hir euill fortune,and all the reſt remained with great ſorrow & griefe to heare this lamentable diſcourſe,but Claridiano was more attentiue vnto the report of the fairenelle & beauty of the Paſtora,then vnto all the reſt.At this time was ỹ houre of ỹ gyants comming paſt, which made the Lord of the caſtle beleeue the death of his cruell enimie to be true,& receiuing

uing great contentment thereat, hée declared vnto them of meruailous and great feasts & triumphs ẏ were preparing to be made in ẏ citie of Nabatea, at the marriage of ẏ prince of Nabatea, with the Princesse of the mount Libano, to the which ther were come many Lords & knights of all ẏ Kingdome, & from most parts of all the Kingdomes hérabouts, but in especiall from Phœnicia, Camogenia, Palestina, and Siria, therefore gentle Knight, let your comming be to sée these feasts, for that you shall vnderstand that ther is put for the price to him who doth best, a meruailous faire & great horse, such a one as is supposed in all ẏ world not to be ẏ like. Claridiano had a great desire to goe thether, & he told it vnto the Ladies, who were not discontẽt therwith. So with that determination they went to bed into very faire and well dressed chambers, wheras they toke their rest and ease for that they had great nède therof, so they soiourned & rested themselues in this castle eight daies, wheras ẏ old Knight Marmariton did make much of them, and gaue vnto the Ladies all things that was necessary for to apparell themselues, & likewise very faire Palfrayes, also he did desire the Prince to take one of his sonnes to serue him, that he might learne of him his good manners and accustomed conditions, which were passing aboue all other, the Prince did accept the offer, with a very good will, his sonnes name was Fidelio, whose doings were conformable & agréable therevnto in all fidelitie and truth, hée had a very good countenance and modest disposition, & very gentle of spéech, and when they saw that it was time to depart for Nabatea, very much against ẏ wil of Marmariton, they toke their leaue and went the way towards Nabatea, and what happened to them in the said iourney, shall bée declared vnto you in the next Chapter following.

¶ How Claridiano and his companie went vnto the Triumph of Nabatea, and of all that happened vnto them in the way. Chapter 11.



THE valiant and heroycall Prince after that he had taken leaue of the Knight of ỹ castle, wᵗ all his company they departed their way toward the citie of Nabatea, for to sæ ỹ great feasts & triumphs, for that Claridiano had a great desire to finde himselfe therein. So they trauailed through a narrow and straight way, which brought thē into a broad & common beaten way which led them straight vnto one of the gates of the citie, wherin much people & many Knightes trauailed, and they thus trauailing, saw come forth of a narow way which entered into that broad way, a company of Knightes to the number of twentie, who were all armed with very faire and rich armour, and in their companye came a Ladye somewhat in yeares, and with hir a very faire Damsell, and verye well apparailed, who brought with them sixe Gentlewomen to beare them companye, who were all apparailed in purple veluet, all to bæ spotted with these two letters, F.F. all of golde, which did shew and shine meruailous faire: & it did appeare that this ancient Ladye was Lady & mistres ouer all ỹ company, & it was true, for that she was the Dutches of the valley, and the Damsell was hir daughter, who went to the feasts and triumphs in companye of those Knights, & amongst them there was one a verie young man, who was Earle of the Lake, who was very desirous to shew his valiantnesse, this young Knight was very much in loue with ỹ young damsell that came in their company, his desire was to enter into ỹ citie of Nabatea, with onely foure Knights, who pretended & beleæued to do such feats of armes, ỹ the young Lady should haue great reason to requite him his loue. Don Claridiano, when he saw thē so well apparelled & proportioned he put himselfe apart to giue them way ỹ they might passe by: but yet he could not do it so secretly but ỹ he must nædes be sæne of the other, & for ỹ Claridiano was well proportioned, & armed with purple armor, hauing also in his company two faire ladies, all ỹ other cōpany did much behold him, meruailing much who it should be, the like did the Dutchesse

and hir daughter. And when they were all past by, ỳ prince Claridiano turned vnto his former iourney, it was not long after that ther came a damsell towards him with as great hast as euer she could make hir palfray to goe, & when shée came nigh vnto him, she did salute him very curteously, saying: Knight of the Ladies, Don Petildo Earle of the dæpe Lake doth send me vnto thæ, to aske thée what was ỳ occasion that thou didst apart thy selfe out of the way, considering they were men which did passe by, whether thou didest it for that thou wouldest not iust with them, he saith ỳ thou maiest goe whether thy pleasure is, neuertheless if ỳ ther be in thæ so much valour as doth appeare by thy disposition, he would be very glad to breake a speare with thæ in the seruice of his Lady. To whom the Prince said: Faire Damsell and friend, I would be very gladde to satisfie this his request, if that I doe finde my selfe subiect to loue, as it doth appeare that he is, therfore tell vnto the Knight that I haue no will to iust neither to be in loue. Then the Damosell said: I doe well beléeue, that it is more thy will to take thy ease & rest then to take any paines, and this is ỳ cause that thou wilt be cléere from amorous delights, & so she returned with this aunswere, and when shée had tolde them, ther was a great laughter amongst them, in mocking of Claridiano, & determined amongst thẽselues to send the damosell backe againe, to tell him for that he was not determined to iust in the seruice of his Ladies, ỳ he would iust with one of those Knights, for ỳ it doth touch much ỳ order of Knighthode, & is also his duetie, with condition that if he be ouerthrowen, onely to lose his armour, for that it séemeth vnto vs to be very good, & if ỳ other be ouercome, likewise to lose his armour, & whẽ the damsell had declared hir message, Claridiano answered: Faire damsel, tel those knights ỳ I am not determined to iust, neither with condition nor without, for if I should lose my armor, I should not so quickly get other, & if they haue such desire to iust, in Nabatea they shall find them ỳ will accomplish their desire by iustice: Cursed be these thy excuses, said the damsell, which are so much to thy dishonor,

how

how ill is ỹ rich armour bestowed on thée, it is not without cause I perceiue, that they are so whole vppon thy bodie for thou doest shew that thy warre is more with wordes then with armes and feates of knighthood. Let it be what it wil be, said Claridiano, for I will not meddle in this iust. Well, adew knight of small reputation, said the damsell, happie be those Ladies that doth trauaile with such a kæper & defender, and therewith shée returned backe to hir company, but the Ladies that were with Claridiano made great laughter, for ỹ they were certified of the valour of their knight, what he was, but Fidelio whẽ he heard the excuses of his master, thought verily that he did it for feare, and for this cause hæ was very heauie and sadde, and the Ladies perceiuing, had thereat great pleasure and sport. So trauailing forwards, they came vnto a bridge which was ouer ỹ riuer Tygris, & on the other side ther was a Tent armed which was verie rich, wherein was a knight armed which did defend ỹ passage, and ther were set vp against a trée a great number of Speares, & when the dutchesse with all hir knights & company entered the bridge, ther appeared vnto them a knight of a gentle disposition, who with great lightnesse leapt vpon his horse, & sent a Squire vnto them to tell them that they could not passe that way, but first they should confesse themselues to be ouercome by the best knight of all ỹ world, but if they will stand vnto the iust, he that receiueth the foile to lose both his horse and armour, so in a trice they put themselues in order, at which time the Prince Claridiano came vnto that place, and when he saw that they did make ready and addresse themselues vnto the iust, he staied on the one side whereas hæ might verye well at his pleasure see them. It so fell out, that in twentie iusts al these twenty knights were ouerthrowen and foyled, at which the Dutchesse receiued great sorrow & griefe, and sent the same damsell (which the other had sent before) vnto the Prince, & when she came vnto him, she said: Knight, enimie vnto iusts and trauaile, my Ladie, the dutchesse of the vally doth desire thée, for that it was not thy pleasure for hir knights to shew thy bounty,

that now at hir request thou wouldest make frée this passage, & do that which hir Knights could not. Friend said Claridiano, goe and tell vnto thy Lady the Dutchesse, that I will procure to make the way sure for mée & my company, and will hir highnesse likewise to bring Knights that can defend hir, as well as they can with their scoffes know how to make a test at one they know not. The damsell said: Cursed be the reasons & excuses of so cuill a Knight, that neither for Ladie of estimation, nor Knight of prowesse, will be moued to vertue, and hærewith shæ returned to giue hir Lady the answere. So straight way came forth many men, for to pull off the armour of those ouercome Knights, ỳ which when Claridiano saw, hæ spurred forwardes his horse with his speare in his hand, ready at all assaies to the iust, and went towards the dutchesse saying. Lady, now will I shew vnto you, whether I can better kæpe my whole armor, thẽ your Knights their broken, & therewith he called vnto that Knight which kept the passage, that he should make himselfe ready & come to him, and being both set in their places, they moued their horses the one against the other with great fury, and in the middest of their course they met together, and neither of them did misse his blow, but met with so great force, that the speare of the Knight of the Passage was shiuered all to pæces, & made the Prince to encline his bodye vpon the saddle, but ỳ knight of ỳ Passage receiued ỳ blow in such sort, ỳ neither his shield, nor his armour could make any resistance, but ỳ the head of ỳ speare shewed it selfe at his back, wherwith he fell from his horse dead to ỳ ground. The dutchesse when she saw it, receiued great ioy, although the folly of hir knightes was a griefe vnto hir, in such sort ỳ she said. Oh what do they deserue, ỳ without knowing the valour of a person will haue him in derision, for we may well consider that the Gods can bestow their giftes on persons of small valour, at the least on thẽ ỳ haue small capacitie for to vse it, for hære you may sæ this knight, ỳ those knights which did beare me company, dæmed ỳ he did refuse ỳ iust with thẽ of very cowardnesse, & yet he is ỳ partie ỳ deliuereth them,

that

that they might not altogether be shamed: Oh disordinate pride, enimie to all vertue, such is it that doth remaine in our estates, that altogether it doth make vs to forget all goodnes, yet in our subiects meaner person wee may learne ỳ which is requisite for our commoditie and honour, and yet we doe thinke that all which the Gods doth giue vs, we do deserue, and yet we finde not our selues satisfied. At which reasons of the dutchesse, Claridiano was very attentiue, & thought well of hir repentance, for that which hir knightes had done against him, & was very well content, & had hir in reputation to be very honorable, & drawing nigh vnto hir he said: Faire Ladie, here you doe see ỳ with great reason ỳ horse & armour of these your knights is mine, & doth pertaine vnto me, for ỳ their erperience was such to be lanched out of their saddles, as also to mock & iest at trauailing and venterous knights, therfore your pleasure may be to commaund them to be deliuered vnto me, for ỳ they knew not how to defend them. The Dutchesse was cut off from hir ani were by reason of the comming of a knight w̄ great pride that sayde: The horse & armour is none of thine, first I do giue thee to vnderstand ỳ we will defend them with the losse of thy life. And in saying these words he drew out his sword, & before that the prince could make any resistance, he cut off one of his horse legs, and the Prince perceiuing it, before his horse did fall, with great lightnesse he cleered himselfe from ỳ saddle, and like vnto the winde he went against that vncourteous knight, with his sword in his hand, he stroke him such a blow vpon the head, that he cut it in two parts, & hee fell dead to the earth. The rest of the knights which saw this, came vnto him with their swords in their hands, and for all the crying out of the Dutchesse & hir daughter to withdraw them, they did compasse him about altogether, striking him with terrible blowes on euery side: but yet they found him not so weake and without courage as they thought, but rather with a valiant hart he made his defence, & did intreate thē in such sort, that afterward it grieued thē to haue begun

that enterprise, for the prince so behaued himself, that at three blowes he brought three of them dead to the ground, & for that they were all chosen Knights, for the losse of those that were slaine, they would not leaue to persecuer against ỳ mighty warriour. The Prince when he perceiued that they did still procure to intreat him euill, with great ire and wrath he began a new to plague them with his strong and furyous arme, in such sort, that in a small time he made that the halfe of thẽ had lost their strength for to strike at him, the rest which remained when they saw that ther they should looke for no other but death, except they made their defence better, or else procure to kill him, ỳ which straight way they did put in vre. Then the prince when he perceiued that still with great fury they did persecute him, he let slip his sheelde and threw it on his backe and toke fast holde of his sword in both his handes, and stroke so terrible a blow at him which came first to hand, that hitting him on ỳ shoulder, hee cut him downe vnto the waste & he fell dead to the ground, then casting his sword about, with an ouerthwart blow hee stroke another on the throat, that he made his head to flye from his shoulders, & in ỳ furie he brought other two dead to the ground, ỳ other fiue which remained seeing his diuelish fury began to withdraw themselues. Then the daughter of the dutchesse seeing the other Knights to retire came vnto the Prince, & with great grace and curtesie shee said: Valiant Knight of the Ladies, I doe desire thee for curtesies sake to cease thy fury, & let not the force of thy strong arme procéede farther, but let this my desire & request moue thee to that which twentie Knights of valour could not obtaine. This noble warriour although he was blinde & ouercome with anger and wrath yet could he not but pacifie himselfe, seeing wᵭ what humilitie this faire Gentlewoman did desire him, and without any more replying he did withdraw himselfe, and leapt vpon the horse of the Knight of the passage, for that Fidelio did take and brought after that ỳ horse of his master was slaine, and therewith hee passed ouer the bridge, and began to take his iourney forwards, leauing all

them

them which saw ỳ battaile, very much amazed at his great prowesse. So they trauailed with great hast, bécause they would come vnto their lodging before night, & making hast, they came vnto a mans house, who dyd lodge them being in great feare, the occasion shall bee tould you in the next Chapter following.

¶How that Claridiano was assaulted with two furious Gyants, and with fifteene Knights that came with them, and of the battayle that hee had with them all. Chapter. 12.

AT such time as the bright Apollo, would spread abroad his beames vpon the could and moyst earth, was that valyant Knight Claridiano on horseback, with all his company, for to prosecute his iourney, and vpon a sodaine, hee heard with a great noise and rushing, that they shut the gates of ỳ house. Then the Prince asked what was the occasion of that great noyse, and it was tould him by his Host, how that it was to kéepe out two great Gyants, which of late dates dyd vse all those waies and fields, doeing all the harme possible, in taking and killing all that euer they might, and they doe carrye with them fifténe knights, for to help them to do all this euill, for which cause all this countrey standeth in great feare, and dare not trauaile by the waies, and vnderstanding that many doe come this way, to goe sée the Triumphs & Feasts a Nabatea, they do vse héere great pride & arrogancie, carrying away with thē many prisoners, as well men as women. So when the Prince heard this, as one that dyd procure no other thing, but to augment his honour, and increase his fame, hée sayd. Commaund that the gates may bée open, for that I wil neuer accompt my selfe in the number of Knights, but that I will cause them to leaue off doing such harme, and also let them at libertie, whom they do carry captiues, and ease thée of this great feare in ỳ which thou art. O for the luue thou

doſt beare vnto the Gods, gentle Knight, ſayde the Hoſt of the houſe, do not put thele thy tender yeares in perill to bee ſlaine, or carried away priſoner by thole furious beaſts. To whome Claridiano anſwered. It will bee rather a ſhameful reproch vnto my fame, if there ſhould lack in me, that which I am bound by the order of knighthood to performe. Therefore my good Hoſt, let this ſuffice, that neither your requeſt nor any others petitions, ſhall perſwade mee to the contrary, but that I will goe forth and procure to abate ſo great pride and harme, for that in making an ende of my dayes, in defence againſt theſe cruell people, thē haue I perfourmed that I am boūd to, & haue promiſed to do, therefore I pray thee commaund that the gates may bee opened. When the Hoſt ſaw his determined purpoſe and will, hee commanded the gates to bee opened. The two Ladies receiued great ſorrow and griefe, for that which the knight dyd: but much more was the griefe of Fidelio, although hee was throughlie certified of ẏ valor of his Lord, yet he letted not but greatly to feare his returne, for ẏ the enterpriſe was very daungerous and doubtfull, and would very faine haue gone with his Lord, but he wold in no caſe cōſent therevnto, but wold alone goe forth vpon this enterpriſe. So this noble warrior rode forth with the viſor of his healme vp, and his ſheld on his arme, and a mightie cutting ſword in his hand, and put himſelfe in the middeſt of the high way, and in a ſmall time after he ſaw a chariot which was drawen with fire horſes, in the which they brought the Dutches of the Valley, and all the company ẏ remained with hir, who by reaſon ẏ they wer euil intreted in ẏ battaile before, they had not ſtrength to make reſiſtance, but ẏ they were taken priſoners by the Gyants, and bound very faſt, and put into that Chariot. The Prince at that time did greatly reioyce, for ẏ hee had ſo good opportunitie for to make ſatisfaction vnto the Dutches and hir knights of the great harme the which by him they had receiued, and beeing ready to the battaile, hee put himſelf in the high way, tarrying their comming.

When the Giants ſaw his great hardineſſe, one of them which

which by reason of his deformed members, trauailed on a mightie great horse, came forth before all the rest, whereas this Græke was: and when he came nigh him, hee sayd in the Caldean tongue. Thou knight, what diuell hath caused thee to commit so great folly, for to abide my fury, art thou so certefied of thy great valor, ỳ thou wilt see the proofe thereof. Then the valiant Son of the great Alphebo answered. Neither my folly, nor yet the trust which thou saist I haue, hath moued mee, but onely this thy cruelty & euill customes which thou dost vse, for that the immortall Gods are verie angry, that they haue indued you with so mightie members and strength, and you thus imploy them, exercising nothing but vilenesse and cruelty. and therefore they dow send mee, as their messenger, to make manifest vnto you their great anger and wrath, promising great punishment, if you dow not leaue to follow these peruerse customes which you do vse, & if it bee so that you are determined not to leaue this euill custome & amend your life, heere in their names I dow defie you in mortall battaile. The Gyant with the great pride he had, & with the anger that hee receiued, when hee heard the speech of the Prince, the words doubled so in his mouth that hee could not make any answere, but threw out from his mouth and nose great abundance of smoake, which almost toke away their sights lyke a mist, and spurring forwards his great beast, who was very light, that with a trice he was with the Prince, and before hee could make any resistaunce, hee strok him so terrible a blow with both his hands with his heauie club vpon his fine and hard steeled helme that it made him to stagger, and to fal downe vpon his horse neck, and his Speare fell out of his hand, and his armes hanged downe, as though hee had been dead and out of his nose and mouth proceeded great quantitie of bloud.

His horse who was very swift and strong, gaue a spring in the aire, and tourned about, carrying his master a long time about the fielde, sprinkelyng with bloud all the way whereas hee went.

The

The Gyant did not remaine cõtent after that he had giuen him this blow, but dyd follow him for to double it, with the which hée thought to make an ende of that worke: but this thought lasted not long, for that this Greeke Knight was come againe to himselfe, and as hée was setling himselfe in his saddle, hée perceiued very well the great danger, wherein hée was lodged that hée thought verely that hée had béene slayne with that terrible blow, which hée receiued: there was neuer Serpent went out of the Lidian sea, to seeke their pray, with more yre and fury, then this Greek warriour did at this time against his enimies to see himselfe so ill intreated, and that with one onely blow, and therewith drew out his sword, and went towards ẏ Gyant saying. Tarry, tarry thou furious beast, for here I sweare vnto thée by the immortall gods, that very quickly I meane to giue thee thy paiment, which thy terrible blow doth deserue. The Prince at that time was so full of wrath, that hée might well haue béen counted hardy, that durst at that time come to him face to face. And whẽ hée came whereas the Giant was, he stretched himselfe vpon his stirrops, and strok so terrible a blow vpon ẏ Gyants shoulder, which was with so great strength, that all that quarter hée cut cleane away, and threw him dead to the ground: which caused great contentment vnto all those, that were in the house beholding them. The other Gyant whẽ hée saw his companion dead, with great wrath hée commanded the fiftéene Knights, that altogether they should assault that mortall enimie, who were not slack in accomplishing his commandement. Oh vnhappy people, if you had considered, how that this young knight had lost the reynes of his pacience, you would not haue béen so hardy to assault him, for ẏ strong mountaines were not sufficient to make resistance against him, neither would ye haue béen so bold, to giue him any occasion of offence. This worthie warriour when he saw this his shamful assault, without losing any part of his courage, he went & encountred them, laying about him, striking on the right hand, and on the left hand, with so much fury, as a Lyon, when hée is compassed about

with

with expert hunters, euen so he vsed himself. These knights were all stout and chosen Knights, and of the lineal descent of Gyants, and did not let to strike him many and furious blowes, and which made him many times almost to lose his wittes, which was caused by his great ire & wrath, for it was such, that hée felt in himselfe no increasing of force: yet for all that, hée dyd so imploy his blowes, that ten of them, some with theyr heads clouen in péeces, & other some with their armes cut off, hée ouerthrew dead to the ground. The other Gyant was meruailously amazed to sée so incredible a thing, but puffing and blowing lyke a Bull, hée set hand to his mightie and great cutting sword, and with great fury hée likewise assaulted the valiant knight on the one side, and stroke at him such a blow, that hée made him to stoope & incline his body to his horse neck, but quickly hée raised himselfe vp agayne, & with great lightnesse hée cléered himselfe from the second blow, which hée saw descending vpon him, and therewith hée stroke two blowes at two of those fiue knights which remained, so that he brought them both dead to the ground. The Gyant when hée saw so much strength in one knight, béeing very much kindeled in wrath, hée commaunded the thrée knights which remayned, to withdraw themselues a part, so that the Gyant and the knight made their assault together with such terrible blowes, that it was wonderfull to sée. The Knight with both his hands stroake at the Gyant, so that both their blowes descended together, with so great strength and noise, that it made a meruailous sound throughout all the mountaynes. The Gyant was he which receiued the most harme, by reason that his armour made but smal resistance against the terrible blowes of the Knight, which was the occasion that hée was hurt & wounded in many places. The Gyant séeing his great resistance roared like a baight Bull, procuring with all the power hée had to hurt the Prince. In this sort they indured more then an houre without taking any rest, at which time ý Gyant dyd féele in himselfe some wearinesse, and would with one blow make an ende of this battaile, or put his lyfe in ieopardie,

pardy,and therwith hée ſtroke with all his force ſo terrible a blow at ẏ Prince,that he made him to fall vpon his horſe crupper,but ſtraight way hée was ſetled againe in his ſaddle,and ſtriking his horſe with the ſpurs,hée came vnto the Gyant,at ſuch time as hée had his ſword aloft,to diſcharge it vpon the Prince,but hée thruſt at him a foyne at the ſight of his helme,which was very large,in ſuch ſort, ẏ hée ſtrok him betwirt both his eies,and the ſword paſſed through to his neck,ſo that the Gyant fell downe dead to the ground, which was no ſmall ioye vnto all the Priſoners that were in the Chariot.The other three knights when they ſaw all things to goe ſo ill on theyr parts,they let loſe theyr horſe bridles,and with great haſt they procured to hide thẽſelues in the thickeſt of the Forreſt. The Prince made no reckoning of then,but let them goe, and went ſtraight way vnto the Chariot, and lighted from his horſe,and went vp into it for to vnloſe thoſe Priſoners which were bound,and ſayde vnto thoſe Ladies Receiue this ſeruice of mée,not for any courteſie that I foũd in your knights,but for the great bounty and vertue, which is in the Dutches and hir daughter. The Earle of the Deepe likewiſe anſwered & ſaide.Of truth,gentle knight,it had bẽne better that you had accepted our demaund,which wæ aſked in the ſeruice of the Ladies:for that bẽing ſubdued by your great valour,wæ had not come into ſo great miſerie and trouble in the which wæ haue ſẽne our ſelues. Sir Earle anſwered the Prince Claridiano, my hart is ſo cleane voyde of the ſubiection of loue, (putting apart my bounden duty towards them) that by ẏ oath that I haue ſworne to the order of knighthood,that it is not to bæ meruailed if I did deny your demand,putting for interceſſour that,which my hart was neuer ſubiect vnto. Then the Dutches with a goodly grace ſayd: Yet I doe certeſie you gentle knight, that at this time you ſhall not remaine ſo much at your owne liberty,but that by me you ſhal bæ cõſtrained to bæ my guide to the Citie of Nubatea. With cõdition ſayd ẏ Prince,that at the day of the iuſting, you do not manifeſt my perſon,vnto any creature.I do ac-

cept

cept to bée your kéeper and defender. The condition answered the Dutches Daughter, is granted and accepted, but yet I must néedes charge you with another request, which I wil aske of you, and it is, that in my name, and as my knight, you will carry with you a Jewell of myne, and enter into the iusting at Nabrtea, with the Earle in your company. I cannot deny any thing ý you dó aske of me said Claridiano, for that you haue power to commaund mée, and therefore I do accept, and grant vnto all things that your highnesse shall demaund. And béeing in this communication, the Princesses that remayned at their Hostes, came wheras they were, and in their company the knight of the house, who was almost in an extasie with the great ioy and pleasure hée had, to sée the two Gyants & his company dead, and requested them instantly, that they would goe vnto his Castle to take their rest: to the which they dyd grant, for the necessitie which dyd móue them. Galtenor dyd declare vnto vs what should bée done vnto these Gyants, & said that they were Lords of the fayre Ilands, enemies vnto the King of the Nabateos, and as they had vnderstanding of the great Triumphs & feasts which was proclaimed in Nabatea, three of those Gyaunts, which were all brethren, went forth to do all the harme they might, in company with their mother who was a great inchaunter. The one of the Gyants who was more furious and of a mightier strength then ý other two, would goe alone, and these two came together of whom wée haue tolde you. The knights of the Dutches were mervailously ill intreated in the battaile which they had with Claridiano, and it was requisite that they should remayne a few daies in the castle, for to ease & comfort themselues: but the Prince his hart could not in any wise suffer to tarry so long to ease himselfe, but toke his leaue of the Dutchesse for to depart, who did grant it vnto him with a very good will, for that shée would remaine in ý Castle, till such time as hir knights were better cõforted & amended. So the Prince & his company toke ý way which they thought best, wheras they trauailed eight daies, in which time he did wõders in armes,

punishing

puniſhing rapes and extremeties offered, in ſuch ſort, and ſo many, that his fame was exalted vnto the clouds, ſome called him the knight of the Ladies, and other ſome the knight with the Purple armour. And when they vnderſtode that the time of the Triumphes drew nére, they toke the way which led them ſtraight vnto the Citie of Nabatea: and for to goe thether, they muſt nédes paſſe through a wode of eight miles long, in ẏ which they trauailed till it was none time, and therein they diſcouered a very fayre caſtle, & féeling themſelues ſomewhat wearie, they went thether for to refreſh themſelues, the which chanced vnto them otherwiſe, as in the chapter following you ſhall vnderſtand.

¶ How the Knight of the Ladies went vnto the Caſtle, and of the great treaſon which was there ordayned by Arte *Magicke*, and of the ſucceſſe thereof. Chapter. 13.

THE Gréeke Prince for to take ſome refreſhing, toke his way towards the Caſtle, that hee ſaw in the wood with all his company, but yet it fell not out with them as they hoped, for that when they came thether they found the gates faſt ſhut, and for al that they gaue mightie blowes thereat, and called, yet there was no body that made them anſwere, and ſeeing this, they determined to goe round about the Caſtle, to ſée if there were any other part whereas they might call that they might be heard, but in all parts they found it a like, for the which the Prince was very forrowfull, and pretended to depart some other way: and turning about with his horſe, hée ſaw a pillar, which was made of ſtone, on the which was written in the Caldean tongue, theſe words. Let no man bee ſo hardie as to enter into this Caſtle, except hee will for his bouldneſſe die the death. The Prince when hée had heard this title, laughed thereat and ſayde. I know none that is ſo hardy to enter into the Caſtle, ſeeing beefore his eyes the incon-

uenience

ueniences and harme that will therof proceede, and againe, hauing the gates shut, in such sort, that vnto no bodye they will open thē, neuertheleſſe although the perill be great, yet if they would open the gates, I know not whether I should feare the entrie or not, & if it were but onely to know what he is ẏ is of so great power: & nigh vnto the said piller was ther another of the same making, at the which ther hung a Bugle horne, and thereby was written these words, which said: He which is of so great hardines, and hath confidence in his power and strength, and will enter into the height of this castell, let him blow this horne, and the entrie therein shall bee in safetie, but the comming forth shall be doubtfull. If I were once within said ẏ Knight, I would procure ẏ my comming forth should be without trouble, and therewith he toke the horne in his hand, and before that hée began to sound it hée said vnto the damsells: Faire Ladies I am determined to procure the entrie of this forteresse, to sée what ther is within, and likewise him that doth proclaime so great feare, in ẏ meane time I desire you to tarrie for mée amongest these grœne trées, for that the castell is small & will quickly bée loked ouer, so that in short time we shall know who & what there is within, and making an end of desiring them to tarrie, he blew the horne, & made it to sound very strongly, in such sort, that it might be heard very far. Ther was no long tarrying after when ẏ out of a window from ẏ highest part of ẏ castell, ther was let downe a basket which was made very fast aboue with a strong rope. The prince did well vnderstant that if he would goe in, he must enter in by ẏ basket, & so without any tarrieng he put himselfe therein, hée was not as yet sarcely setled when that wᵗ great swiftnes he was drawen vp, and when he was at the highest, with a trice hée left the basket & put himselfe in at the windowe, and could sée no bodye, neither those which did helpe to pull him vp in the Basket, at the which hée neither mer-uailed nor hadde anye feare, but loking about hée saw a paire of winding staires, whereat hée descended, and he had not descend many steppes, when as there was so great

darkneſſe, that ſcarce he could diſcerne any light: & ſo groping by the walls, hée did kéepe his going downe that narrow and turning ſtaires, which were very long, and of ſuch length, that he thought he deſcended into the middeſt of the earth. He ſpent a great time in deſcending thoſe ſtaires: but in the end hée came into a verye faire and large Court, all cõpaſſed about with yron grates, very faire & well wrought, and at the one of them there was a Paſtora leaning on hir breaſt, who ſéemed to be of a meruailous and faire beautie: who leaned hir faire face vpon hir white hand, béeing verye penſiue, and diſtilled from hir Chriſtaline eies great abundance of teares. When this gréeke Knight ſaw this beautifull creature, he remained in great admiration, conſidering with him ſelfe, if that by aduenture ſhe ſhould bée the ſame Paſtora, which the Princes of Ieroſolima had told him of. When this Paſtora did open hir faire and chriſtaline eyes, loking earneſtly vpon the Knight, and giuing a gréeuous & ſorrowfull ſigh, ſhe withdrew hir ſelfe from the grate, which cauſed the gréeke Knight to haue great deſire to know who it ſhould bée, ſuſpecting that by force of ſome inchantment, ſhe ſhould bée put therin, where-with there kindled in his hart a new fier of loue: And caſting vp his eyes agayne to ſée if he might ſée hir, hée could not, but ſaw in the verie ſame place, a woman, of a very great ſtature, who was all armed, with a ſword girt at hir waſt, & had hanging at hir necke a bow, and a gilt Quiuer, this Lady was of a great beautie, that ſhe ſéemed almoſt to excell the Paſtora, ſo that the Prince, with ỹ ſight which he had before him, forgot that which was paſt, and fixed his eies on hir. But in the ſame ſort vpon a ſodaine, ſhe went away as the firſt did, leauing the Knight with no leſſe trouble in his thought, then before hée was. This Knight had not much time to bewayle the abſence of that Lady, for that without ſéeing any body, hée was ſtroken ſuch a blow with ſo great fury vpon his back, that he was conſtrained to ſtoop with one knée to ỹ groũd. Yet with a triſe he aroſe vp againe: and loking about him to ſée who it was that ſtroke him, he perceiued that it was

a Knight, which with great haſt ran in at a doꝛe which was at one of the coꝛners of the court. And with the great anger which the Pꝛince receiued, to ſée himſelfe in ſuch ſoꝛt ſo ill intreated, he followed him with his accuſtomed lightneſſe, following after that Knight in at the doꝛe. Hée was not two ſteppes in at the doꝛe, when that he fell downe into a déepe caue, which was couered ouer in ſuch ſubtil ſoꝛt, that whoſoeuer did treade on it, he ſtraight-way fell downe into the caue, except hée were aduertiſed thereof. And within the caue it was very darke, and no light appeared. The Knight ſéeing himſelfe ſo betraied in that trappe, he feared to receiue ſome harme in the fall. But yet very lightly hée put himſelfe on foote, with his Swoꝛd dꝛawen in his hand, foꝛ to make his defence, againſt whatſoeuer ſhould happen. But by reaſon of the great darkneſſe, hée could not ſée any thing, neither diſcouer wherein he was fallen, but determined to ſettle himſelfe againſt ſomewhat, if hée might finde where, groping to ſée if he might finde any other doꝛe of entrie into that darke Denne.

And as the Knight went groping and féeling, he found that he trode on no other thing but dead mennes bones, which cauſed him to ſtand ſtill. And not long after ther was open a leuer hole, at the which entred much clærenelle, and gaue great light into the place wheras he was: wherat appeared a very old woman, who was ſo leane & ſo ful of wꝛinkels, that it ſæmed ſhe had nothing but ſkin & bones on hir, who ſaid vnto the pꝛince, in an euill houre thou cameſt hether, & ſo ſhall thy lodging be, and thine entertainment, foꝛ that thou art now in place, that thou maiſt looke foꝛ no other thing, but to be meat vnto a furious beaſt. And thy ſurmoũted ſtrength ſhal not be able to make any defence. The pꝛince who was very wꝛath, anſwered. Oh falſe & curſed Witch, whom ỹ gods confound, who hath taught thée to vſe ſo great diſceit, ỹ wỏ thy falſe & diueliſh vnderſtanding, thou doſt woꝛk ſo much euil againſt all traueling & vẽtrous knights. I hope to come foꝛth out of this caue, in ſpight of all thy miſchiefe, & with my ſtrong arme to bꝛeake all thy bones a ſunder.

All that thou doest and will doe said the old woman, I will suffer at thy handes, onely for the reuengement I will take of thee, and that very quickly, and therwith she went from that windowe and shut it fast againe. So not long after at his back he heard a noise, as though they were opening of a doore little and little, wheras ther appeared a little light, the prince procuring to goe thether, saw that ẏ bones wheron he trode were of two humane bodies, which appered not to bee very long since their flesh was torne of with hard & cruel teeth, but this cõsideration could not indure long with him, for ẏ he heard a great rumor, & loking what it should be, he saw that ther was comming forth of another den a mightye Serpent with wings, as great in body as an Elephant, which had onely two feet which appeared out of that monstrous body but a span in length, & each foote had three clawes of three spans in length, shee came with hir mouth open of so monstrous and huge bignesse, and deformed, that a whole armed Knight might enter in therat, & shee had on hir iawes two tuskes, which seemed to be of two palmes as sharpe as any needles, and all hir bodye was couered with hard shels of diuers colours, and with great fury shee came forth with hir wings all abroad. the Prince could not but receiue some feare in seeing so furious a beast, but seeing it was then time & great need to haue courage and to bee expert and valiant for to make his defence, hee toke his good cutting sword in his hand, and shrouded himselfe with his hard and strong sheeld, and tarried the comming of that vgly monster, and when the furious beast saw that ther was wheron she might imploy hir sharpe teeth, shee stroke with hir wings, & with hir clawes shee griped and laid fast hold vpon his hard sheeld, pretending to haue swallowed whole this couragious warriour, & fastning hir sharpe tuskes vpon his helme, which when she found so hard, she let go hir hold, & pulled at his sheeld with so great strength ẏ she pulled it frõ his arme. but the knight stroke at hir a mightie blow vpon the head with his sword, but could not hurt hir by reason of the hard shels wher with it was armed, & though he gaue hir

no

no wound, yet for all that she felt the blow in such sort, that it made hir to recoile to the ground, & to fall vpon hir long taile. This oppressed Knight made great hast to strike hir another blow, but he could not, for ỳ she stretched hir selfe of so great height before him. But fortune was so fauourable vnto him, that he might strike hir on the belly, whereas she had no defence with shells nor any other thing but feathers, whereas he gaue hir a great wound: but if the blow had ben ouerthwart as it was right downe, he had surelye slaine hir at that time, but yet it was not so little, but that it was mortall, wherout issued much bloud. This great Serpent when shée felt hir selfe wounded, stroke at the Knight with hir taile so terrible a blow, that if he had not séene it comming, it had béene sufficient to haue parted him in péces, and by reason of the narrownes of that place, they could not apart themselues the one from the other, but she leaped in the aire with so great lightnesse, that it séemed to be ten paces from the ground, which was the occasion that hir furious blow did not hurt him. Shée was scant descended to the ground, when that with both his hands he stroke hir so terrible a blow, vpon those hard shels, that it made hir to fal with hir breast to the ground: but straight way she raised hir selfe vp againe, and would haue stroken the Knight againe with hir vnmercifull taile. The Knight for to cléere himselfe thereof, fell downe flat on the ground, for that hée had no time to make any other defence. But that terrible blow was not so sone passed ouer him, but straight waies he was on his feet, at such time as the furious beast came towards him. Heere the Prince hauing great confidence in his owne strength, did so high & valiant prowesse, that you may put in obliuion, all the valiantnes that euer was done by his predecessors, and put this in perpetuall memorie. For that he threw his sword out of his hand, & went vnto this monster, and imbraced himselfe with hir, & did so quease hir betwixt his mightie armes, with so much strength ỳ the furious beast could not profit hir selfe of hir sharp clawes, but only with hir wings, she beat him on euery side, this valiant

warriour would neuer let hir loſe, but ſtil remained holding hir faſt betwæn his armes, continuing this perillous wraſtling, being all imbrued with hir beaſtiall bloud ẏ iſſued out of the wound, which was a great help vnto him againſt that furious fiend, which was the occaſion ẏ ſhe loſt a great part of hir ſtrength. Long time indured this great & daungerous wraſtling, & that infernall beaſt faſt vnto the noble and valiant breaſt of the græke Prince, till ſuch time as he plainly perceiued ẏ this monſter began to ware faint & to loſe hir ſtrength: likewiſe it could not be otherwiſe but ẏ the prince ware ſomewhat weary, notwithſtanding he did animate himſelfe ſeeing ẏ great weakeneſſe of ẏ Serpent, which was by reaſon of the great quantitie of bloud which came frõ hir wound. & hauing opportunitie he toke his ſword therewith he thruſt hir into the hart with ſo great ſtrength ẏ he cloue it in two peeces, and ſo this infernall monſter fell downe dead to the ground, & carried the Prince with hir, for that they were ſtill faſt together, & by reaſon that ſhe lacked hir ſtrength to make hir defence he quickly cleered himſelfe out of hir clawes, and recouered his ſword, and when he ſaw certainly that he was cleere from ẏ cruell monſter, he kneeled downe and gaue great thankes vnto his Gods, the poiſon was great which this monſter threw out for to infect ẏ knight, but by reaſon of the great vertue which was in the armour that Galtenor gaue him, ther was nothing ẏ could hurt him, although he remained very weary & vnquiet, and was conſtrained to ſit & coole and refreſh himſelfe by a well which was full of water ther hard by, wheras that furious beaſt came forth, & when he found himſelfe ſomwhat refreſhed he loked about him and ſaw a paire of ſtaires, wherat he determined to go vp: he had not aſcended many ſteps, but at the clift of a doore which he found, hee ſaw ſitting at a great table many people eating and drinking, & at the vpper end ther ſate the gyantelle, & next vnto hir by hir ſide a mightie great & furious Gyant, ſuch a one as he had neuer ſeene the like, & hearkning what they did ſay, he hard ẏ the giantelle ſaid: Now hath our reuenger his dinner betwæne his

clawes,

clawes, for that he is so quiet, although he hath bene a great while in making of it ready, then ỹ giant talked & said: Was ther any of you which saw what rumor this knight brought & what recognices he had, then one which was there eating said: I did see what recognices he had, then the old magicall witch said vnto hir sonne, now that you certainly know he is dead, I will tell you who it was: You shall vnderstand ỹ it was the knight that slew my two sonnes & thy brothers. The giant when he heard this, stroke with his hand a great blow vpon the table saying: Oh Gods wherefore did you not tell me therof before, that I with my own hands might haue taken the reuengement, curled be thine inchantments, for ỹ they are the occasion ỹ the mightie force of my armes do lose the glory ỹ they do deserue. All this which was spoken the knight heard, & by their reasons he knew that they were all of the lineall descent of those gyants which he slew for to set at liberty ỹ Princesse of the valley, & hearing himselfe so vilely spoken of hee could not indure to stand there long, for his cholar did so ouercome him, ỹ he could not longer refraine, but set his shoulder vnto the doore with so terrible strength, ỹ he threw it downe to the ground, at which fal it made a terrible noise, which caused al thē that were ther to be greatly amazed, but yet their wonder was much more to see that ỹ knight was at libertie & clere from that vgly beast, who they thought had ben dead and deuoured by hir, but when they saw him, they all procured to hide themselues and to run away, so that the Gyant remained all alone in that place, & rising vp from ỹ bord, stretching himselfe on his feet, he said: O my Gods I do giue thanks for ỹ you haue deliuered this vile knight frō ỹ power of ỹ furious beast, that I with my hands may take reuengement of him. And in saying these wordes hee drew out a mightie sword which he had hanging at his side, & went towards ỹ prince striking at him a terrible blow, frō ỹ which this Greek did clere himselfe with his accustomed lightnesse, & being past ỹ blow he said: Gyant, goe & arme thy selfe, and heere I will tarry for thee, by which meanes thou maist defend thy selfe,

and make thy reuengement as thy hart desireth, and do not thou thinke that I will glory in ỹ abating of thy courage, but with the great valour ỹ which my high minde doth demaund. The Gyant when he saw himselfe derided and that the Knight made little account of him, was with the great anger which he receiued almost beside himselfe, and said: Oh vile and miserable creature, is it possible that the Gods will do me so great outrage, as to consent that I shall take armour against thee, and that thou hast so much force, as to driue me vnto that necessitie. And in saying these words hee lift vp againe his broad & mighty sword against the prince, who likewise cleered himselfe of that blow as he did of the first. Then the Prince said vnto him: Thou deformed beast without any humane reason, doe not procure by thy great pride to spot or staine the nobility of my person, to cause me to strike thee, without hauing any armour, to make thy defence. The Giant made little accompt of ỹ counsell he gaue him, but rather assalted him with more terrible blowes. But all that euer he did was in vaine, for that the Prince with great experience and lightnesse cleered himselfe from them, and tarried ỹ time, that he might haue opportunitie to close with him, for to shew him the fruits of his fists, for at that time he had not drawen his sword. A good while they were in this contention, till such time as those knights which ran away (which was to the number of ten) had time to arme themselues, and to returne againe into that place whereas they were eating, who came all in a readinesse with theyr swords in their hands. When the prince saw the great perill which was towardes him, he was constrained to draw out his sword for to make his defence against that wicked company. The old Witch called with a mightie voice vnto hir sonne, that he should enter in and arme himselfe, for that she suspected as a Deuine, what should happen. (O cursed hart, that is so great a friend vnto cruell reuengement: how dost thou procure to heape vpon thy selfe such shame & reproch, seeking without all Iustice to do that, which it wer better for thee to haue left vndone.) Full little did it profit

this

this ould Witch hir great crying out, and inchauntments, for that ý Gyant would not harken vnto hir, bnt followed his pretẽce vnarmed as hée was, against him, who although hæ had bẽn armed, his fury would little haue profited him, so by reson that ý other armed knights did so much trouble him with their blowes, it was the occasion that the Gyant did the more molest him, causing him many times with the fury of their blowes to bow his knées to the ground, the which did constraine him to vse all his power against them, striking about him on the one side and on the other, that in a small time hée ouerthrew fiue of them dead to the ground, yet for all that, the other fiue which remained did not let to vse all the extremity they could against the Græke, & lykewise that furious Giant whom the knight would neuer offer to strike with his cutting sword, but alwayes waiting opportunitie that hée might close with him, for to giue him one blow with the pomell therof, and when time did serue, he would not lose it, but being very nigh him, hée strok him so mightie a blow with the pomell of his sword vnder his eare, that hæ droue it into his braines, wherewith the Gyant fell dead to ý ground. The other fiue knights whẽ they saw that terrible blow, they threw their swords vnto the ground, & yéelded themselues vnto the curtesie of the Græk knight. The old Gyantesse when shée saw hir sonne dead, and those knights yéelded, with great fury and terrible shrieking shæ put hir selfe bæfore the knight and sayd: O cruel Butcher, the destroyer of my welbéeloued sonnes, make now an end of hir who doth more deserue the death thẽ they, and do not think that thou shalt obtaine so much victorie as to carry mée away with thæ aliue, and if that with thy cruell hand thou wilt not make an end of hir that is without all good fortune, I promise thée that I wil procure to giue it my selfe with mine owne hands. And in saying these words shée went vnto the place whereas hir sonne lay dead, and laide hold on his sharp sword, and with a trice shée thrust it into hir body, that none that were ther present had any time to withdraw hir from doing it, which bæing done, hir miserable

rable soule was scant out of that vnhappy body when that all the Castell bégan to shake, and with the noyse of a terrible Thunder clap it vanished away, in such sort that all those that were there présent remayned in a playne field without any signe or token of Castell to bée there or any other kinde of buildinges, for that you shall vnderstande, that this Castell was made by Arte of Inchauntment by that olde Witch. Surely it caused great admiration to all them that remained a liue: but much more was the griefe of the Ladies which tarried for the comming of the Prince, when they saw that hée tarried so long, and also afterward when they heard that great noyse of thunder, at ẏ breaking vp of that inchanted castle. It was no lesse to bée wondred at, to sée the huge and mighty Serpent, and the great Gyant with his mother, and the fiue knights that were slayne, vnderstanding that the Prince had made all that destruction. So the fiue knights which yéelded thémselues, gaue ẏ Prince to vnderstand who the Gyants were, and how the old Gyantesse had ordayned that Castell for to take reuengement on him, for the death of hir two sonnes. The Greeke Prince gaue thancks vnto his Gods, for that they had deliuerd him out of that terrible snare, and gaue the knights frée libertie to depart, and goe whether they would.

Then the Prince and his company retourned onwards to theyr iourney, making great hast in theyr trauayling, that they might get out of that great Wode, before that the night should come vpon them, whereby they might get to some Towne nigh at hand. And at such time as the glistiring Apollo bégan to hide his face, and to couer himselfe, according to his accustomed order, they came vnto a fayre Castell, which was a little without the Wode, whereas of the Lord thereof, they were very well receiued: yet much more royal was their entertainment, and far greater was his affection towards them, when hée knew of the destruction of that inchanted Castle, for that hée had felt and knowen the inconuenience of that ill neighbour.

¶How

¶ How that the King of Nabatea had vnderſtanding of the great deſtruction that the Greeke Prince made in the caſtle, and how hee commanded that the Serpent and the heades of the Gyants ſhould bee ſet at the entry of the gate of the Pallaice for a perpetuall memory and how that the triumph began that was ordained, and of all that paſſed in the time of the Feaſts. Chapter 14.



THE fame of the valiant knight Clardiano, with his accuſtomed gentillity was noiſed throughout all thoſe prouinces of Nabatea, publiſhing his heroicall actes and feats of armes, naming him to be the knight of the damſells, and when he drew nigh vnto Nabatea, there dyd not lack them which gaue the King to vnderſtand of all that paſſed. When the king heard of ſo mightie and valyaunt déedes, and in ſpeciall of that which was done in the inchanted Caſtle, and of the furiouſneſſe of the Serpent, hée cõmanded ſtraight ẏ men ſhould bée ſent thether, for to bring them vnto his preſence which ſtraight way was accompliſhed, and when the king ſaw, ſo great worthineſſe, hée cõmanded that forthwith for a perpetuall memorie of ẏ knight, they ſhould bée hanged at ẏ pallaice gate, deſirous to know that knight, & to haue him in his court for to doe him honor: but they which had more deſire to ſée him, were the Dutches of the valley and hir daughter. Who were at that time come to the Court, and declared the great proweſſe of the Prince, and thought long for the day of the Triumphs, for as then hée promiſed without fayle to bée at Nabatea, ſo the day of the Feaſtes were come, at the ſame whereof, reſorted thether a great number of great valour & ſtrength. Amongſt whome was the Prince of Phoenicia with a goodly company of noble perſons, & the Prince of Camogenia with many and very well proportioned knights.

Lykewiſe came thether the King of Arabia, with great

maieſtie.

maieſtie, and with no leſſe maieſtie came the king of Silicia, and a brother of his, who were both Gyants. So lykewiſe came thether the King of Cappadocia, all theſe bée Prouinces that doth border the one with the other, & the moſt part of theſe Princes are vaſſalls vnto the Prince of Paleſtino, all theſe Princes came thether for to honour the good King of Nabatea, for that hée was very well eſtæmed of them all: and as they came to honour the King, ſo likewiſe they came to proue themſelues, and to get fame and name, & the praiſe that belonged therevnto. It was ſuppoſed of all the compa-ny the King of Silicia would haue the proweſſe & prayſe of all the reſt, for that he was a Giant of very big members, although his Brother was taken to bée more furious, who determined not to Iuſt, for ỳ his brother ſhould get the ho-nor & praiſe, but it fell out otherwiſe, as héerafter you ſhall vnderſtand. So whẽ the day was come all the Ladies and Damſells put themſelues in places for to béeholde ỳ feaſts, and euery one procured to ſet out hir ſelfe with the greateſt brauery ỳ might bée, & the great court full of people which came thether for to ſée the feaſts and triumphs. What ſhall I ſay héere of the Daughter of the Dutches of the Valley, who was of ſo great beauty ỳ ſhée was noted amongſt thẽ all. So the knights began to enter into the place of Iuſt, and hée which was the firſt that entered was the Prince of Ca-mogenia, who was mounted vpon a very faire and well a-dorned courſer, hée was armed with black armour all to bée ſpotted full of Martins, and brought with him fifty Knights all apparelled with the ſame liuerey, and with great maie-ſtie hée went round about the place, making obedience vnto all the Ladyes and Damſells: after him entered a Pagan knight, who was Lord of Siria, and armed with armour of a Lyons coulour, accompanied with an hundreth knightes, all apparelled in veluet of the ſame coulour, and paſſed roũd a-bout the place, ſhewing great curteſie as ỳ other dyd, which béeing done, hée ſaw that the Prince of Camogenia was ta-rying to receiue him at the Iuſt, & ſtraight way they bégan to ſound the inſtruments, giuing to vnderſtand, that they

muſt make themſelues ready. Theſe knights were nothing vnwilling, but ſpurred their courſers with great fury. The Prince of Camogenia made his encounter whole, and ſtroke the Pagan without milling any poynt: but the Pagan ſtroke the other in ſuch ſort that he beaued him out of the ſaddle, & hæ fell to the ground, wherewith the Pagan knight remayned with great pride and gladneſſe. In the meane time that theſe two were in the luſt, there entred the knight of Phenicia, who entred in with great pomp and pride, who when hæ ſaw that the Prince of Camogenia was ouerthrowen, he put himſelfe vnto the luſt. Little dyd profit him his great pride & arrogancie, & outward ſhow to hæ a ſtrong knight againſt him of Siria, for that at the firſt encounter hæ ouerthrew him to the ground: in like ſort dyd hæ vſe other fiftæne knights of diuers Prouinces. So ſtraight way entred the Prince of Phœnicia, who was a meruailous well proportioned knight, armed all in white armor, wrought with excellent knots of gold, and hæ brought in his company an hundred knights, all apparailed in white ſatten, and riding about the place, he ſhewed his obedience vnto the King and all the Ladies. Then hæ put himſelfe at his ſtanding, for at that time ther was not a knight to luſt withall. So ſtraight way they ſounded the trumpets, at which noiſe the knights moued themſelues to the luſt with their horſes, and made their incounter ſo ſtrong, & with ſo great fury, ꝑ the ſtrong Pagan was caſt to the ground, and the like hæ did to other ſire ventrous knights, which entered into ꝑ place. Straight way entred the braue king of Silicia, who was armed with gliſtering armour of very fine ſtæle, and was mounted vpon a very mightie & rich courſer, and brought in his company two hundred knights all apparailed with rich cloth of goulde, accompanyed with great Muſicke of Minſtrelles which was a pleaſant noyſe to hæ heard, and after that hæ had made the accuſtomed compaſſe and curteſie in the place, he put himſelfe at the luſt. So when ſignes wer made, they ſpurred their horſes, & made their incounter ſo ſtrõg, that it was great griefe vnto him, to put himſelfe vpright againe,

but

but the Prince was caried ouer his horſe buttocks, & caried the ſaddle with him betwirt his legges, which was a great griefe vnto all them that dyd ſee him, for that hee was welbeloued of them all. This arrogant Gyant was ſo encouraged, & ſo furious, that in a ſmall time hee left not a knight remaining in their ſaddles on horſeback. And being in this great pryde, there was hard a great noyſe and rushing, in maner of a tumult in the place. And loking what it ſhould bee, they ſaw that it was the knight of the Damſels which entred, who was armed with his rich and ſtrong Armour, all of Purple, full of golden Starres. And before him came the two Damſells, which alwayes were in his companye, The Princes of Ieroſolima, carryed his ſheeld, & the Princes of Meſopotamia, his Speare. Showing by his perſon the highneſſe of his diſcent. Who paſſed by the royal ſeat wheras the good king was, in whoſe company was his ſonne the Prince, armed with very rich armour, alſo ỹ Lord of mount Libano, a very auncient knight and of great authority. So one ỹ other ſide was ỹ Princes, the daughter of the king of Nabatea, who was the bryde, a very fayre and comely gentlewoman, and with hir the Dutches of the valley and hir Daughter. And behinde them, was the Earle of the deepe Lake, who was ſtill very weake of the paſſed battaile, and was richly apparelled with blew cloth of gold. And as this knight paſſed by, the knight aroſe vp and ſhowed him courteſie. The Dutches of the valley could not refraine hir ſelfe but that with a high voyce ſhee ſayd vnto the King. Mighty king, this is the knight in whom the gods hath put all their power & ſtrength, that his valour may bee more then theirs. This warlike knight, although he heard very wel what the Dutches had ſayde, paſſed on, and deſcembled as though hee had hard nothing. And when hee came to the Iuſt, hee toke his ſheeld and his ſpeare, and prepared himſelfe redy to the Iuſt. So ſtraight waies being in a readineſſe, they ſounded the Trumpets, whereat with great fury, they moued their Courſers, & neyther of them miſſed theyr blow at theyr incounter, but by reſon that the Greeke had great good wil to ex-

erfoll his fame,hée ſtrok the Gyant ſo mighty a blow, ỳ hée ouerthrew him to ỳ ground.So the Prince paſſed alongeſt, wᵭ great mageſty,without any ſhow of diſdaine.The people with a great ſhout ſayd.The great mighty & royall Agilao is ouerthrowne to the ground, ſo that his mightie ſtrength hath little auailed him. Then the Prince of Fenicia,would proue his aduenture with the Greek,but with great eaſe he was turned to the ground.So all the reſt of ỳ knigȟts that were of any eſtimation,made their Iuſt,but they wer all wᵭ great eaſe ouerthrowen to the ground,in leſſe then ỳ ſpace of two houres. So at ſuch time as the bright Febus would make an ende of his long iourney,there appeared to enter into the place the braue & mighty Gyant, brother vnto the king of Silicia,wᵭ a mighty great ſpeare in his hand, whoſe glyſtring poynt of Steele ſhowed through all the field. Hée brought with him but one only ſquyer,which brought with him another ſpeare, and without any care of courteſie due, hée put himſelfe into the place. And ỳ ſquire which brought his other ſpeare,went vnto Claridiano,& ſayd: Knight,yonder valiant gyant doth ſend vnto thée this ſpeare,and willeth thée that thou doſt procure to dw the vttermoſt of thy power béefore that the Sunne doth ſet,for that hæ will do the like: & likewiſe hée ſaith,that hée doth not only defie thée in the Iuſt,but alſo to mortall battaile. To whom Claridiano,ſaid: Friend,go thy waies & tel the giant ỳ ſent thæ,that I dw accept his demand, although it doth græue mée very much,for that without any occaſion hée maketh his defiance in time of ſo great ioye & pleaſure,which is done in the honor of ſo mightie a King,but ſæing his will is moued with ſo great pride,tel him ỳ I am ready to make my defence,& alſo ỳ ſhortly he ſhal repent him of this enterprize,& in ſaying theſe words hée toke ỳ ſpeare of ỳ ſquire,& put himſelfe in ỳ ſtanding:at ỳ time hæ was very nigh ỳ place wher the king was,who heard ỳ anſ were which ỳ Græke made,for ỳ which hæ receiued great anger,for ỳ the Gyant in ſuch ſort ſhould defie ỳ knight wout any occaſion: but it was no time as then to ſpeake,but to hold his peace,and prayed vnto his

Gods

Gods for to take away his great pride and arrogancie. At this time the two warriours tarryed the ſigne to be made by the Trumpets: which being giuen, theſe knights moued their courſers, wᵗ their ſpeares in their reſts, with ſo great yre and deſire the one to hurt the other, that they both fayled in their incounter. The Gyant who was very proude, whē he ſaw that he had erred his blow, he returned againſt Claridiano, carrieng his ſpeare vpon his ſhoulder, and comming nigh him, vpon a ſodaine and with great fury hee toke it from his ſhoulder, and beefore the Greeke could cleer him ſelfe, hee ſtrake him a mighty blow vpon the armour, ſo that his ſtaffe broke by reaſon of the fineneſſe of the armor, and made the good warriour to double his body backwards vppon the Horſe crupper. But when he ſaw the great villany which the Gyaunt vſed with him, his anger increaſed very much, & taking his ſpeare in ẏ ſame ſort, hee went towards the Gyant and ſayde. Thou furious and proud beaſt, what didſt thou thinck to goare mée lyke as thou wouldeſt do a wilde Boare, tarry, and I will make thée to vnderſtand, if I can make my knottie ſpeare to flye in the ayre, and therwith he threw his ſpeare at him with ſo great fury, that he ſtroake him on the breaſt in ſuch ſort, that the ſpeare paſſed through his body, and ſhowed it ſelfe at his backe, ſo that this Gyant fell downe dead to ẏ ground, and all that were there preſent, were very much amazed at the great ſtrength and force of this knight. At this time the Sunne had finiſhed his courſe, hauing nothing aboue the Horiſon but his gliſtering beames, then the Iudges of the feaſtes commanded with ſound of trumpets that the Iuſts ſhould ceaſe, & make an ende of the day. So the King deſcended from the place where hée was into the Court with all his Knights for to receiue that good warriour, & deſired him that hee would go with then vnto his pallaice, to ẏ which hée could not make deniall. And whē he ſhould enter into the great gate of the Pallaice, hée ſaw the Serpent, and the heads of the Gyants, and when the King perceiued that hée dyd beehold them, he ſayd.

This

This remembraunce (good Knight) I commaunded to be put here in thy name for to be a perpetuall memorie of thy high and mightie chiualrie. The Prince ther at would not aunswere making as though he did not esteeme it much, for that he had with himselfe no pride. And therewith they assended vp into the great hall, wher as they were meruailously well receiued of the Ladies and damsells. And leauing Antemisca, and Bella, with the Bride, and with the Quæne hir mother in law, he returned and went with the King, wheras they did intreate him with great maiestie. So he remained eight daies in company with the King in his court, for to take his ease, in which time the most part of ỳ Kings, princes and Knights were departed, and the King of Silicia, with the dead bodye of his brother. These eight daies past this Græke prince did take his leaue of ỳ King, for that ỳ time to make defence in the quarrell of the Princesse drew on, the which he had great care therof. It græued the king very much for his departure, but seeing ỳ he was constrained therevnto, he would not hinder him, but offered him verye great and rich gifts, but the Prince would not receiue any. Likewise he toke his leaue of the Quæne, and of the Duthes and hir daughter who with great sorrow did solemnise his departure. The King brought him vnto the foote of the staire, wheras Fidelio was tarieng for him, with a mightie and rich horse, one of the furious that was to bee found in all ỳ country. He was a Rone coulored, without any kinde of marke, and trapped with very rich trapping of Gold and precious stones of great price. Ther came forth of the horse mouth two tuskes like vnto an Elephant, his nosethrills were very large & great, his head very little, his breast very broad, well pitched and so hard, that no sword were it neuer so sharp, was able to enter in therat. So when he came vnto the foote of the staires, without setting foote in his stirrup, he leaped vpon the best horse that euer was. The horse was called Zefiro, for his great lightnesse. When he had taken his leaue of all, they departed, determining not to stay in any place, till they came vnto Ierosolima, & straight waye

to Meſopotamia, for ẏ it was all one way. Then they followed on their iourney, till they had paſſed all the kingdome of Nabatea, without any aduenture worth the telling. Likewiſe they paſſed all the mount Libano, whereas they found many great and fayre Cities. Alſo they paſſed ouer the riuer Iordan, leauing behind them part of Siria, trauailing alongſt by part of the edge of Paleſtina, which boardereth vpon Arabia. And paſſed through Fenicia, without any queſtion or demaund aſked of thē. So they came vnto ẏ populus riuer of Eufrates, & trauailed alongſt ẏ riuers ſide, till ſuch time as they were conſtrained to go vpon a high & mighty moũtaine, frō whence they might diſcouer Ieroſolima. All theſe coũtries aforeſaid, they paſſed & trauailed, in little more the two months, and at that time ther lacked little more then two months vnto ẏ time appointed, for Antemiſca to make hir defence. In all this iourney ther chaunced ſome aduentures, but for that they were not of any great importãce, I let them paſſe, & make no mencion of them. Although ẏ fame of his heroycall dædes, was hard into Grecia. And for ẏ my author will not ſeme to be tedious, he doth let paſſe many, although they are worthy to be hard, & to giue good example vnto all thoſe that do weare armour, to make them hardie and couragious in their dædes.

¶ How the heroycall Greeke was taken priſoner, by the dart of Cupide, in beholding the beautie of a very faire Paſtora and of the great anguiſh and griefe that hee ſuſtained. Cap. 15.

THat aduiſed Venus, the key of all liberty, not hauing forgotten hir old miſchiefe and ill will, which ſhe toke vpon the mountaine Citareo, came to take counſaile of hir ſonne Cupide, to determine what order ſhe might vſe for to ſubiect & bring vnder hir amorous yoke, the ſtiffe neck of that ſtout & vntamed Græke. And better for to forge & to bring to paſſe to hir content, ẏ worke which ſhe had ordained, ſhe ſhewed hir ſelf very friendly & ſo ſingu

uingly vnto ẏ glittering Apollo, foꝛ ẏ at hir requeſt he ſhould with moꝛe clereneſſe ſpꝛed abꝛoad his bꝛight beams ouer ẏ græne fieldes, nigh vnto ẏ riuer Eufrates. Who being moued by the deceitfull woꝛds of Venus, did diſperſe abꝛoad his burning beames: ſhewing foꝛth maruelous enamelled colours, vpon ẏ flowꝛed barbes, being filled with ẏ clere dew, ſuch as ſeldome hath bene ſene in ẏ field. And the mightye riuer wᵗ milde & quiet running, did paſſe his accuſtomed iourney, making a fine noiſe, wᵗ ẏ delicate bꝛeaking of his ſtremes. Thē this falſe & carfty Cupide, ſeing opoꝛtunity, by ẏ gꝏd diſpoſition of ẏ place: & being aduertiſed by his deceitfull mother, toke his way with his accuſtomed lightneſſe, vnto the riuer wher as ẏ mighty Claridiano was refreſhing himſelf vnder a company of a very faire & grene Pertil trees, with ẏ reſt of his company, tarrying ẏ comming of ẏ night, wher as wᵗ out all feare, they reioyſed & ſpoꝛted themſelues, ẏ faire, peaſable & quiet day. And foꝛ to be moꝛe at his eaſe, he pulled of his ſtrong helme, & ſlacked ẏ buckles of his armour. And foꝛ that the damſels might the better recreat thēſelues, he put himſelfe out of the way, ſomwhat apart from them, foꝛ ẏ he was very curteous & honeſt. And aparting himſelfe, he came into a place wheras he heard the noiſe of a Flute, which did ſound very ſwetly: & foꝛ that it was very pleaſant, & gaue him great cōtenment in the hearing, ẏ better to delight himſelfe, he dꝛew nære where as it was, in ſuch ſoꝛt, ẏ he might delight himſelf of the ſong & muſicke, without being ſpiᵗe of any. He appꝛoched ſo nigh, ẏ he might wel diſcern who it was that made that Flute ſo ſwætely to ſound. And he ſaw ẏ it was a ſheperd which lay a longſt vnder a grene willow træ, who being wery in playing on the Flute, laide it downe by him, & toke a Rebeck & began to play on it with very ſwæt harmonie, accōpanying it with delicate & amoꝛous songs. At the which the pꝛince reſeued great contētment, being attentiue, he heard him ſing as followeth.

SInce by thy ſight, O Paſtora ſo ſweet,
My former freedome and my life doth fayle:

Repay me loue, for that it is moſt meete,
And let not rigor in thy hart preuaile.
Behold myne eyes, with flouds of teares that flow,
Forſt by the griefe that from my hart doth grow.

Make ſoft thy hart, and doe not him diſdaine,
That doth adore thy beautie ſo diuine:
Pittie my plaints, abate my grieuous paine,
With ſcoffes and ſcornes conſtraine me not to pine.
Either graunt grace, els flatly nay reply,
That I may know if I ſhall liue or dye.

When he had made an end of this ſong, he let the Rebeck fall out of his hand, & ſtretching himſelf on the græne graſſe, croſſing his hands, he put thē to his mouth as a man full of paſſions & griefes, & began to ſay wō a wæping voice, O my Paſtora, let thy cruelltie now ſuffice thæ, it is now time that thou helpeſt thy Paſtor out of ſo long & great ſorrow. Conſider miſtreſſe, that thou doſt intreat me very euil, for ỳ thou doſt wel vnderſtand ỳ I am wholly thine, & not mine owne, & as thine owne thou maiſt ordaine & diſpoſe me. I am wholly ſubiect vnto thy will, whether it be good or ill, what ſo euer thy pleaſure is, vnto either of thē I am agreable, for ỳ I am wholy thine. The prince ſaw ỳ with this ſhepard was another in his company, who when he ſaw ỳ the other held his peace, he toke another Rebeck which he had, & wō no leſſe muſicke then ỳ other, he began to play & ſing, as followeth, by ỳ which he did ſhew to be clere & at liberty of ỳ paines of loue.

That tyrant Loue ſhall neuer wound my breſt,
I will not loue, nor yet beeloued bee:
The louers life I doe in hart deteſt,
which now in mirth, are ſtraight in miſery.
¶ I beeing free doe Cupids cuſtomes ſcorne,
Reiect his lawes, diſdaine his wounding dart:
And let who will, bee with his paſsions torne,
Hee neither can nor ſhall poſſeſſe my hart.

This

This shepheard left off this song & playing all at one time as one ỳ made no reckoning nor estæmed loue, but the amorous shepheard gaue so terrible a sigh ỳ it sounded throughout all the field. Then making a heauie sound, hæ said: O happie shepheard, that loue hath giuen so much liberty vnto, great is thy good fortune, that thou maist frælỳ publish thy liberty and blame my captiuitie. Let the Gods vnderstand, & let it be published, that I am brought vnto that estate, ỳ in my songs & sonets I doe delight to vtter the swæt conuersation that I haue with my loue. But how much more ioy should I receiue, if I could sing as thou dost, in sæing my selfe at lyberty. Oh mighty Iupiter, doe not take away this excellent ioy, which I doe fæle in louing, likewise I doe desire thæ, ỳ thou wouldest giue me strength for to passe ouer my paine and griefe, & therwith he toke againe the Rebeck, and soung this song as followeth.

EXcept I loue I cannot haue delight,
It is a care that doth to life beelong:
For why, I hold that life in great despight,
That hath not sower mixt with sweet among.
And though the torments which I feele bee strong:
Yet had I rather thus for to remaine,
Then laugh, and liue, not feeling louers paine.

This Shepard was troubled in his song, & could not prætæde any farther, for that he hard a great rushing & noise amongst the bushes & træs, And loking who it should bæ hæ saw that it was a Pastora, who was apparaled with a white peticoate of very course cloth. She had hir golden haire dispersed abroad on hir backe, behind hir eares, and had in hir hand a shepheards hooke, very well wrought, with the which she gouerned a few shæpe, that shæ had the charge of. Hir face semed so faire as Diana, at such time as his beames hath most force. And when the Shepard saw hir, he began a new to make vnto hir pitifull lamentations. But for all that the Pastora made no reckoning to giue any care vnto him, nor to

his complaints, but rather with a smiling laughter, made of it as a test, which caused vnto the shepheard more torment. Thē Cupide who was tarrying his time & opportunity, at ỳ time discharged his golden arrow, with great fury, in such sort, that the hart of the prince, who afore time was boyd & at liberty, was now brought in subiection & made subiect vnto his lawes & customes. For so sone as he had sene this Pastora, he straight way remembred the Pastora which ỳ princes of Ierosolima had told him of, & also of ỳ which he saw in the inchāted castle, leaning on hir breast at the yron grate. And remēbring himselfe, he cast his head a side to behold hir that was ỳ occasion of his new harme, but for ỳ she was passed alongst with hir shéep, he could not sée hir. Thē he began to complaine against his vnhappy fortune, saying. Ah heavy hart, that in the time ỳ thou wert a knight & at liberty, thou didst subdue and hadst power to ouercome so many strong warriors: wher is now thy strength become, wher with thou didst ouercome thē. Art not thou he who did ouercome those two mighty giants in Trapobana? Art not thou he which w̄ thy fury didst abate ỳ strength & courage of ỳ mighty Geredion: what is become of thy potensie, wher with thou diddest bring down ỳ pride of ỳ two Tartaros? what is become of the fury wher with thy fistes thou slewest ỳ great giant of the mountaines Nabatea? wher is thy strength wher with ỳ didst win thy mighty horse Zefiro, I do sée ỳ it is all yelded vnto a poore & simple Pastora. Oh hart, it doth not greue me, for ỳ thou art brought in subiectiō, but only for ỳ thou art at ỳ̄ will & power of a Pastora. It is a signe ỳ my lignage is not of such valour & estimatiō, as I was perswaded by my friend Galtenor. But what do I say, do I finde fault in ỳ̄ desert of my Pastora. And although I wer of ỳ̄ most highest linage in the world, yet ỳ faire face is more then any humaine creature doth deserue. And in saying these words, he fell in a sound to the groūd. And forsomuch as he was absent & taried a long time, & ỳ̄ ladies saw he came not, they went out to seke him, & foūd him in ỳ sort as I haue told you, which caused great disturbance vnto them. Notwithstanding in the best maner

they

they could, with bowing of his finger, & other diligences, they brought him againe to his remembrance, but not in so perfect sort, that he knew who was with him in presence. And therwith he gaue a greuous sigh, & said. Oh merciful Iupiter, shew vpon me thy power, & do not permit that Cupide, may haue so much might against this sorowful knight. And therwith a new he fell down in a sound, as at the first. Both the princes wer greatly amased, not knowing what it should be, which hath caused so much alteration. And therwith Fidelio ran vnto ỳ riuer for water, wherwith they all to be bathed his face, ỳ he came againe to himselfe. The Ladies musing betwen thẽselues, frõ whence should procede that his griefe. Straight way they suspected ỳ he had sene ỳ faire Pastora, which a litle before they saw passe amõgst those grene trees. Antemisa who had more care of the princes griefe thẽ the other, when she saw him somwhat come to himself, she said: What is this worthy knight, is it now time to leaue me afflicted, the time being so nigh at hand to make my defence, & almost at ỳ gates of ỳ citie, pul vp your hart, & let not your valiãt courage at this time faint. The knight whẽ he perceiued ỳ the ladies wer ther, he procured to raise vp his body, & to sit down, for ỳ before he was laid all a long. And dissembling in the best wise he could, he said. I doe not know what shuld be ỳ occasiõ of a meruailous great griefe which strok me to the hart, ỳ without any power to make resistance, it ouerthrew me to ỳ groũd, in such sort as you found me, I do wel beleue, said Antemisca, ỳ the occasion of this grief is in ỳ hart, & the eies are in most fault. For if ỳ hadst not sene the faire Pastora, thy hart shuld not haue felt ỳ passed paine. To this Claridiano anſwered nothing at all, seing ỳ they vnderstode ỳ occasion of his griefe. But he made hast to make all things in a readines to go onwards on their iourny, & being all on horſ back they hasted towards Ieroſolima, wher they wer receiued wt great triumph, mæt for such worthy princes. The old king & Quẽne gaue great thanks vnto their gods for ỳ retorne of their lost daughter. Claridiano remained ther in ỳ city of Ieroſolima, fiue daies, greatly against his wil.

For that the new wound would not suffer him to take any rest, which caused him to take his leaue of the King and his daughter, and departed, & toke the way towardes Mesopotamia, with great desire to be ther. So trauailing, they left behinde them the Citie of Damasco, & passed by the one syde of Armenia the great, and so entred into the great plaine of Mesopotamia, and from thence without taking any rest, they came within ten myles of the citie of Mesos. From which place they sent the old Squire, which was with them, to giue the King to vnderstand of the comming of ỳ Princes, who with great care trauailed in such sort, that he entred into the pallas, at such time as the King was accompanied wt all his Knights, not with little sorow for the absence of his daughter, for that the time appointed for hir defence, drew on. On his one side was the Prince of Palestina, who was as merry and glad, as the King heauy and sorrowfull. But when Libernio entred into the great hall, the king knew him to be a man of great estimation in his Kingdome. And hauing no power to dissemble his great ioy, in seeing him, hee forgot his royall authoritie, and rose vp against him, & said: Ah my friend where hast thou left my daughter Antemisca, tell me quickly, as thou wouldest that the Goddes should fauour thee. Then Libernio with a cheerefull countenaunce saide, mightie King and Lord, thy daughter the Princes is very well, although very wery of the long and troublesome iourney and misfortunes which hath happened, but yet now with great delight, for that she doth bring with hir a Knight for to defend hir honour. And if it be so that your highnesse doth accept therof, and giue them liscence, hee will come hether, and defend hir right. The Prince of Palestina when hee hard that which was spoken, with great laughter, although not very well content, saide. And who is hee that is so simple & fole-hardy, to come, and gaine-saye my fury, the truth beeing on my side. Libernio sayde, it is hee that will make thee to acknowledge thy falsehod, and will make thee forget thy fury & mightie strength, by vsing of his valiant prowes. Whereat Brandemoran was so full of wrath, and his eyes

sparke

ſparkling lyke fier, hée ſayd: If it were not for that I am bèfore the royall preſence of the king, I would giue thée to vnderſtand, ỳ thy gray hayres had not ſpake wᵭ the diſcretion, which ỳ oughteſt to haue. Then the King ſayde, Prince pacifie your courage, & bée quyet, & thou Libernio returne, & tell them that they may come when theyr pleaſure is. And for ỳ right of my daughter, (if ſhée haue any) hée ſhall haue ſafe conduct to come & make hir defence. And if it bée ſo that they haue nède of any thing, ſpeake that they may haue all furniſhed that is requiſit. Goe thy waies and tarry not, for that I haue great deſire to ſée either my ſhame or honour. For I am in ſuch a ſtay, to ſée my ſelfe ſo diſhonored, that I think it better that I were dead. Ah what a goodly thing is it for a man to die when hée is in ſo great troubles. So Libernio put in order his departure out of hand, leuing ỳ king ſomwhat content, & almoſt without ſuſpection of any cuill, ſeeing that his daughter was returned to defend hir right. Libernio whē hée had got mourning apparel for the Princes, departed to the place whereas hée left them, declaring vnto hir all that hir father had ſayd, and what paſſed in his preſence. So therewith they procured and made haſt, to finiſh theyr iourney. And they made ſo much haſt, ỳ before it was night they came within two miles of the citie wheras they reſted al that night, with great deſire that ỳ morning were come. So very earely in the morning at the breake of the day, they put themſelues on horſeback, and went forwards on theyr iourney. So that one houre after the Sunne had ſtretched forth his golden beames vpon the moiſt earth and fragrant flowers, this Grécke Knight & the Princes entred into ỳ citie of Meſos, not reſting in any place, til they came vnto the Kings pallaice, wheras they alighted and went vp into the great Hall. Claridian led Antemiſca by the hand, his healme faſt vpon his head, and his purple ſhélde on his ſhoulder, but the viſor of his Helme was vp, ſo that all people might ſée his fayre & great viſage, and all that ſaw him, dyd iudge him to bée of a high lynage. Then the King was aduertiſed of theyr comming, and dyd abyde theyr comming

in the chamber of presence, accõpanied w̃ all his nobles & knights of prowes. And when he saw his daughter to enter all couered with mourning apparel, his royal highnes could not show the great loue he had vnto his daughter, but made showes of great sorrow, shedding many teares frõ his eies, which ran down vpon his cheks, & al to be washed his gray haires. This faultlesse lady dyd prostrate hir self at hir fathers fæt, but Claridiano remained a fot, with so great maiestie, as though hee had knowen whose son hee was. This painfull & weried lady, dyd aske hir fathers hands to kisse them, but neither the king nor his daughter could speake any word more. They remayned so a great whyle, till such time as the King constraining his princely courage, sayd. I know not what will fall out, for that I see before me, that which of long time I haue desired, & yet I dw not know it to bee mine. The lady vnderstod ý words of hir father, gathered stomack vnto hir selfe & sayd: I am Antemisca, your welbeloued daughter, although at this time I am abhorred, I am shee who vniustly hath gone wandring, paying such debts as I neuer made, for that I dyd neuer let but to bee the lady I ought to bee. I am shee that by the valour of this mighty & worthy warriour, dw liue, & not by the compassion that thou hast had of thine owne proper daughter. And I dw thank my gods, that they haue so much fauored mee, in giuing mee his mighty & strong arme, for to defend my truth, & for to punish that euil, the which that traytor Brandemoran hath layd & raysed vpon mee. The braue Palestina, who was present at the words which the Princes sayd, was so full of pride & yre, that without any respect vnto the kings highnes, hee sayd: Oh false adultéresse, wherfore wilt thou deny that the Prince of Chaldea, had thy verginity, and that with thy consent. And what knight is hee that is so hardy and hath so much courage, to say vnto the cõtrary. The Græk dyd very much beehold the Palestinian, perceiuing by his words, that to bee hee ý had procured all this harme against Antemisca. And although his yroud words dyd moue his pacience, yet would hee not make any outward show, neyther ani were

vnto

vnto him, but rather with great ſeueritie, hée tourned vnto the King & ſayd: High and mighty Lord, in this controuerſie ther is no néed of diſputation, neither farther rehearſall. But may it pleaſe your highneſſe to command, ỳ the Prince of Caldea may come in preſence, and to know of him, if hæ bæ content, to refer all his right into my hands. The King who (conſidering and bæholding his mighty prowesſe, in the demonſtration of his perſon) ſtraight waies commanded to bæ brought thether ỳ Caldean, with ſufficient kæpers with him, which was ſtraygbt wayes done.

And when hæ came in preſence, the King ſayd vnto him: Prince Geleroſio, my Daughter hath brought hether this knight, for to defend hir & thy right, (if thou haue any.) Hære would I know of thée, if that thou art content to refer all thy right and iuſtice into his hands. The prince Geleroſio ſomewhat beauy, anſwered the King and ſayd. Vnto the ſoueraigne Gods, and vnto him, I dœ commit all my right although I had rather wỏ the ſtrength of myne owne arms make my defence: and turning vnto the Greeke, hæ ſayde. And for that gentle knight, thou ſhalt bæ certified that thou defend the truth: Hære I dœ ſweare vnto thæ by the high & mighty Iupiter, that the Prince of Caldea, dyd neuer commit that which with great falſehœde hæ is accuſed. Then Brandemoran did reply, & ſayde. All that euer thou doſt ſay, I will ſuffer, for that I dœ thinck bæfore the Sunne hath made an ende of his accuſtomed courſe, to haue ſatisfaction. And lykewyſe to puniſh the pryde of this fœle, who by ignorannce or rather fœlish hardynelle, commeth to ſæke his owne death.

This valyant and couragious Greeke could not longer ſuffer his proud and ſlaunderous ſpeaches, but ſayde vnto him: Iupiter hath power to giue the death vnto whom hæ pleaſeth, and I dœ thincke that which thou dœſt pretend vnto mæ, will fall vpon thy ſelfe, for to puniſh thæ for this thy falſe and ſurmiſed treaſon which thou moſt diſpightfully haſt rayſed, againſt this noble Princes, who is guiltleſſe of this cryme.

And

And for that this muſt bée concluded by armes, and not by words, ſée ẏ thou doſt make no tarrying, but arme thy ſelfe and come forth vnto the battaile, & then thou ſhalt ſée how I will make thée to vnderſtand in the field, that I am none of them of whom thou haſt hetherto gotten honour. I will not make thée any anſwere ſayde Brandemoran, for that I thinck very quickly to reuenge my ſelfe of thée, and to pluck out ẏ tongue which hath bœn ſo bold to ſpeake theſe words vnto mée. And therwith he went ſtraight out of the pallace, & went vnto his lodging for to arme himſelfe vnto the battaile. The Greek at his anſwere was ſomewhat greeſul, but retourning vnto the King hée ſayd, mighty King and Lord, I doe deſire your highneſſe that you would commaund, that your daughter may bée ſet in a place, whereas ſhée may well ſée the reſtoring of hir honour. The King ſayd this ſhall bée done wᵭ a very good will, without any tarrying. The Greeke dyd take his leaue of the King and of the Ladyes that were in the great hall. And went downe the ſtayres whereas he left his page and his horſe, and without the help of his ſtyrrup, hée leapt into the ſaddle, & hauing his helme on, and his ſpeare in his hand, hée commanded his page to tary, and not to goe with him. So hée went ſtraight vnto ẏ place appointed for the battayle, with ſo gentle a grace & good diſpoſition, that all who did bœhold him, receiued great cõtentment. There was appointed a ſcaffold for two Iudges, for to Iudge the ryght of this controuerſie, & dyd appoynt the place conuenient for theyr battaile. They tarryed not long, whẽ that Brandemoran entered ẏ place, accompanied wᵭ many knights, at which tyme the Iudges put them-ſelues on theyr Scaffold. And bœing all ready and the people in quiet, ther was commanded a trompet to bée ſownded, to giue them to vnderſtand, that they muſt prepare themſelues to the battaile. At which ſound they moued their courſers, the one againſt the other, with ſo great ſwiftneſſe, that it ſœmed ẏ they flew in the Ayre, whereas I will leaue them till time doe ſerue, for that at the ſame preſent, the wynde Borias dyd blow in my eare, conſtraining mée to ſpeake of the mightie deeds of

that

that valiant Roſicleer. You do well remember, that for to ſuccour his horſe, he leapt into his barck, & was not ſo ſone therein, but that it ſayled and made ſuch way as the arrow which is forced out of ỳ bowe. And one of the two Knights which entered the Bark, leapt into the Sea for feare, and the other remained, and yelded himſelfe vnto the mercie of the Knight, which afterward did ſerue him for ſquyre, and very faithfully vſed his office, who was called Argolio. Roſicleer went trauayling to ſea-wards, in his Bark, very heauy and ſorrowful, for that he was departed from his cosin ſo quickly. In this ſort they trauayled fiue daies, & the ſeuenth they diſcouered lande very far of, but the ſwiftneſſe of the Bark was ſuch, that in a ſhort time it brought them to ỳ waters ſide. And being a land, hee ſaw that it was an Iland, and very fragrant, for that towards the Occident, ther appeared but little plaine ground, and towards the Orient, a very high & sharp Mountayne. So when the Barke had fired it ſelfe a ſhore, hee vnderſtood, that there hee muſt goe a land, & taking his horſe, with great lightneſſe, hee leapt into ỳ ſaddle, & Argolio followed him. And they trauailed into a narrow way which led them vp vnto that croked mountaine, & followed that way till they came to the height thereof, whereas they alighted for to refreſh thẽſelues, with that which the ſquire brought. And for that I haue great neede of fauour & help, to goe forwards with this Hiſtorie, heere I doe deſire the Muſes to grant it vnto mee that I may with more courage, declare that which followeth in the next Chapter.

¶How that Roſicleer found in that Iland, the ſonne of Alicandro, leading a troubleſome lyfe, with his fayre and welbeeloued wife, who was ſet at liberty by Roſicleer. Chapter 16.

After the noble Roſicleer had ſomwhat refreſhed himſelfe, hee toke his horſe, and by little & little, hee began to goe vp ỳ fragrant hill, til ſuch time as night came vpon them, and for the great darkneſſe

neſſe therof, they were conſtrained to ſtay, & not to trauaile any farther. But in a little plaine place ẏ they founde, they alighted, wheras they found a caue, & in it the manner of a bedde, declaring that ſome body had bene there, ſo ther they remained al ẏ night, til ẏ morning. The day being come, they retourned to proſecute their new begun iourney, & neuer reſted til ſuch time as they came to the top of the moũtaine: from whẽce they did diſcouer a very great & delectable plaine & in ẏ midſt therof: ther was two great an high Pine trées, towards which place they went. But they had not gon far, where they ſaw a pillar, in ẏ which was grauen certain letters, which ſaid. The glory of Fangamadan, vpon the ſubiection of the Prince, ſonne vnto ẏ mighty Emperor of the Scitas, & of the couragious Troyan: Let none be ſo hardy as to loke vpon it, for that for ſo doing, hee ſhall looſe his lyfe. *Roſicleer* was in a great confuſion, not vnderſtanding what ſhould bée ment therby, but trauailing in ẏ path forwards, hée had ſcant paſſed ẏ place, whẽ ẏ he heard a terrible & fearful ſhrik of a beaſt, ſuch, that his horſe was ſcared, & began to ſtruggle in ſuch ſort, ẏ hée was conſtrayned to returne againe & to light on fot, & gaue him vnto Argolio, & the knight did proſecute his way on fot. Within a ſmall while after, he heard ẏ they tourned & gaue ſuch an other ſhrik, ẏ it made him for to ſtay. And as you do ſée ẏ fearefol Hart, whẽ he doth heare the noyſe of the hunters, doth hold vp his head, deuiſing on euery ſide to heare from which part the noyſe ſhould come: euen ſo did this knight, but hée could not deuiſe nor ſée any creature, but went forwards on his way in the ſame path, till hée came vnto a little mountaine, whereas hée found an other piller, ſuch a one as the ſame béefore, in ẏ which was written a title w̃ theſe words. Hee who doth finde himſelfe of ſo great courage & ſtrength, & doth procure to paſſe forwards, for to deliuer the worthy *Meredian*, & the mighty *Troyan*: vnderſtand, that in payment of his folly & hardineſſe, hee ſhall looſe his lyfe. Let there chance what will happen, ſayd Roſicleer, for this feare ſhall not cauſe mee to ſtay the vſing of all my power & ſtrength, for ſo high a prince. And ſo without

out any staying, he went forwards. He had not gon far, whē he came to ẏ sight of a thing of great cōpassiō & grief, wher as was done the greatest cruelty ẏ euer was hard don to any person: which was, ẏ in the midst of ẏ plaine, there was two high & mightie trées, a litle distāce the one frō thother, & in the midst betwen them, ther was hanged a man, having each arme tied vnto one of the trées by the wrists, and the cords wherwith he was boūd, was two long & smal serpēts the which did not onely serue for to tye his wrists, but also wᵗ their heads they reached vnto his neck & breasts wheras they did bite him in such sort ẏ they made him full of holes. His fæt likewise was tied vnto those trées, wᵗ other two serpents, who entreated him as ẏ others did. Likewise ther was vpō one of those trées, a Vulter, who at sundry times descēded down, & wᵗ hir sharp & hard bill, she picked his belly, & opened it vnto ẏ guts, wheron she fed, which was ẏ occasion ẏ this vnhappy man gaue such terrible shrikes, wout resting. At ẏ foote of those trées ther was a fierce serpent wᵗ wings, who was the kæper of ẏ tormented man. The which serpent was of more thē .xv. foot of length, & had but two fæt, which was in ẏ midst of hir body, & each foot had fiue clawes, which wer great & sharp. She had on hir head two great hornes & sharp, & gored with them as a Bull doth, & out of hir mouth she had two great tusks, hir wings shewed hir to be of great lightnesse. And about .xxx. paces frō hir was an armed knight of a large & high stature, he lacked no armour frō the head vnto ẏ foote. He had hanging at his neck by a string of gold, a very rich & well garnished sword, who when he saw Rosicleer, with great hasty & large pase, he came towards him, & when he came nigh him he saide: Tell mée gentle knight, what doest thou seeke héere in this place of great harme & daunger: therfore returne backe againe, for that thou canst not finde héere any other thing but death. Rosicleer in the meane time that he was saying these words, hée was beholding his face, for by reason that he brought the visor of his Helme vp, hée might well perceiue, and did plainelye sée and perfectly know him, to be the couragious Prince,

Oristedes,

Oristedes, and Rosicleer answered him & sayd: Thy words are not agreeable vnto thy person & estate, worthy Troyan, neither is it for such a knight as thou art, to perswade mee to take this counsel, and to leaue to show my selfe of what lynage and blood I doe desend, & lykewise what I am bound by order of Knighthood to doe. The feare of death shal not cause mee to moue backe one foote. This Troyan dyd laugh at that which Rosicleer dyd say, & sayd, well seeing that thou dost esteeme thy selfe of so great valour, procure to ouercome mee. And in sayeng these words, with great lyghtnesse this Troyan leapt in with Rosicleer, and with his strong armes, hee clasped him about the middle, & procured by casting him about to ouerthrow him, in such sort, ỹ hee had almost ouerthrowne himselfe, but the Prince layde such hould with his hands, embracing the Troyan, that betwixt them ther begán a terrible wrastling, each one procuring by polisie to ouerthrow the other. The Troyan dyd force himselfe by little & little to carry Rosicleer towards the place whereas the Serpent was, but Rosicleer perceiuing it, did procure to make resistance, vsing polisies for to cleere himselfe from that perill. But alwaies he found that the Troyans strength did not increase. And by reason that the mighty strength of Rosicleer was such, the Troyan could not by his force make any resistance, but that hee must needs bee carried out of a compasse that was marked, of iust thirty paces from the place whereas the Serpent was. And when that hee had brought him out of that compasse, not being able to make resistance, ỹ Troyan fell to the ground without any feeling, leauing Rosicleer somewhat discomforted. But yet hee saw that for to goe forwards in his enterprise, it was requisite to ioyne battayle with the flying Serpent. And without resting himselfe, hee straight waies toke a great and mighty speare, and with a valiant courage hee went towards the place wheras ỹ Serpent was, who seeing him cõming, and that hee was within the compasse, shee put hir selfe on foote, and beating with hir wyngs, shee gaue two wonderfull shrikes, and with great lightnesse lyke a byrd, shee came towards Rosicleer, puffing

out

out of that terrible mouth a mighty thick smoake like vnto a mist. This valiant and courageous Knight when hée saw hir cõming he put the great end of his speare vnto ẏ groũd, & firming it fast with both his hands, the point forwards, he tarried hir comming. This furious serpent without making any account of the speare, wᵗ the great desire she had to lay hold on ẏ knight, put hir selfe forwards with great furye, so that the speare chanced into one of hir great & wide nosethrills, that almost it ranne vp to the braines, but if he had held the point of the Speare a litle lower, he had giuen the most worthiest blow in all ẏ world, but yet for all that it did not let to make a mortall woũd. This furious serpent with the great fiercenesse she had she brake the speare so that there remained in hir head more then two spans, therof and therwith she stroke at the knight with hir nailes so terrible a blow, that she ouerthrew him, in such sort, that he tumbled on the ground. The beast who was troubled and astonyed with ẏ cruell woũd, & againe by reason of the great swiftnesse and furye she could not take any holde of his armour, but passed forwards on, insomuch that ẏ knight had time to arise and put himselfe on foot, and finding by him the tronchon that remained of the speare, hée turned & firmed himselfe therwith, procuring as he did at the first to receiue ẏ blow, which he saw comming with great swiftnesse, & fortune was so fauourable vnto him, that he chaunced with the tronchon of his Speare vpon one of hir strong hornes, and by reason that his speare was strong & full of knots, it was fast vpon one of them, and by hir great swiftnesse broke it cleane frõ hir head, wherwith she remained with that great blow astonied and amazed with ẏ terrible paine. The tronchon of the Speare was driuen out of his hand, so that hée was constrained to lay hand on his sword, and to shrowde himselfe vnder his hard & stéele shéeld, to make his defence against the blowes that might come. This cruell Serpent béeing verye much troubled with the great paine of the woundes, with double furye giuing wonderfull shrikes and grones hée assaulted this Knight. The courageous Knight

who was not without great care of his defence, did abide his comming, & stood still, and the wounded Serpent seing hir selfe nigh vnto the knight, with great beating of hir wings arose vp in the aire, thinking therby to gripe fast hold with hir sharpe nayles, and to carry him into the aire, and from thence to let him fall downe to the ground to destroy him. The courage of this Knight was very much, and likewise his iudgement, for that this Serpent had not so sone begun to beate with his wings when that he suspected in what order she would assault him, but he lifted vp the point of his sword on high, & likewise his strong shield, that she might thereof make hir pray. This furious serpent assaulted him to take hir holde in such sort, that the sharp sword ran into hir belly and guts, and to the hart: but if that wound had not chanced in the same place, at that time the Knight had bene meruailous ill intreated, for that the serpent toke hir hold with hir long clawes in the midst of his body in such sort, that by hir great strength she made his bones to crack: but by reason of the sharpnesse of the sword which opened the wound wide, and cloue hir hart asunder, the Serpent fell downe dead to the ground, leauing the gréeke very sore troubled and amazed. When the Knight saw that she was dead he gaue great thanks vnto God, for his aide and succour hærein. So straight way he went to sée who was the Knight that was bound at the trée with ỹ Snakes, & comming nigh him, hée knew him to bée the Prince Meridian, for the which he receiued great sorrow. There he remained a while, thinking how he might vnlose him and set him at liberty, and comming vnto the serpents, with his Herculine hand, hée laide hold on the necke of them that were at his féete, in such sort ỹ he made him to lose his strength, & to forget the vse of his cruell office, leauing ỹ others féete & winding about his arme, that he was constrained to procure to clære himselfe: but all was in vaine, for that it was so firmly fastened about him, that of necessitie he must vnlose it as he would vndoe a companye of knots, & the more he vndid,

the

the more it wound about with such wreathings from one place vnto another, that it was very straunge, that if it had not bene by the great strength he vsed in quæsing of the serpent, he could neuer haue clæred himselfe therof, but in the end it fell downe dead to the ground. Then he laid holde of the other, hauing no lesse trouble with it, then he had with the first, & slew it likewise, so that the fæt of this tormented Barbarian were at liberty of his great paine, who gaue meruailous and grieuous shrikes. Then that cruell Vulture which was vppon one of those træs, seeing what the Knight was a doing, with great hast she discended downe for to strike and wound the Knight vnbeewares, which was executed with such fury, striking him with hir sharpe bill so terrible a blow, at such time as he went to lay holde on the Serpents that were at the wrists of the tormented Prince, that almost it made him to fall backwardes: then the græke incensed with fury toke hold on his sword and would haue stroke the Vulture, but hee could not for that shee was ascended into the ayre. Then the Knight let goe his shælde, and with his left hand hee laide holde on one of those Serpents (hauing alwaies his eye to the Vulture) and by reason that he did quease the Serpent so hard, hee was constrayned by the great paine which hee receiued to let lose his holde, and in the end hee slew it, wherewith the Barbarian Prince did hang but by his right arme, giuing great and sorrowfull shrikes and grones, the Vulture would haue descended to haue stroke the Knight, but for that shee saw the sword put with the point vpwardes for a defence, shee durst not giue the enterprise, but flying round about from one place vnto another, to see if shee could finde anye place whereas shee might enter for to strike him, without beeing hurt hir selfe. In this space hee had time for to laye hold with his leite hand vppon the other Serpent, and in the same sort as with the other hee did kill hir, wherwith the Pagan fell downe to the ground without anye remembraunce.

and the Walter giuing great & terrible ſtrikes went away and was neuer ſæne after. This græke did procure to couer his naked body with certaine leaues which he cut from the træs, lamentablye beholding his leane face which did well ſhew the great ſorrow & paine that he had receiued. At this time the græke Princes Squire came wheras they were, forasmuch as the inchauntment was ended by the death of the laſt ſerpent, & pulling from his backe the cloake which he ware, he put it on the pagan, therwith the better to couer himſelfe. Alſo the valiaunt Troyan was come againe vnto himſelfe, and caſt his eies towardes the place whereas the prince was hanged, to ſæ if he were ſtil in the ſame torment, who when hæ ſaw him not, hæ loked whether hæ was fallen down to the ground, ſuppoſing that he had ended his life with ỳ torment, but when he ſaw the furious mõſter dead, and how the græke was contemplating himſelfe vpon the pagan, then with great ioy he went towards thẽ, but much more pleaſure he receiued when he knew him to be the ſon of Trebatio, neuertheles all his mirth was mittigated when he ſaw the deadly force of this Prince Meridian, and ſæing him in that plight, he could not but lament his heauy & cruell fortune. The Græke did comfort, him praying him to leaue off his ſorrowfull lamentation, giuing him to vnderſtãd that he was not dead: Orgalio toke his maſters helme and ran vnto the water ſide which was ther at hand, and brought it ful of water, & when he came vnto them, he threw thereof vpon the Pagans face, & being therewith refreſhed he came somwhat vnto himſelfe, & opening his eies he ſaw ther his friend Oriſtedes, & loking about he beheld another knight, who he likewiſe knew to be Roſicleer, & ſtraight way he vnderſtood ỳ he was the occaſion of his liberty, & with a græuous grone he ſaid: O renowmed ſon of ỳ worthy Trebatio, how God doth in all things exalt thy fame, & now ſæing that thou haſt ſuccoured me in this torment, likewiſe I beſæch thæ aide & ſuccour mæ in one other thing, ỳ I may receiue my full delight, which is, that my louing ſpouſe may likewiſe bæ ſet at libertye, who is captiue in this Iland.

The Greek answered, worthy prince, my power & strength is ready at your commaundement, & I will imploy all my force & poleste in your service, or lose my life in it. Therfore let vs procure to depart frō hence, & giue me to vnderstand the occasion of all this your sorrow and torment: and when that my strong arme cannot satisfie your will, my life shall remaine in recōpence of my large promis. So straight way they put the pagan vpon the Squires Horse, & couered him with the same cloake, that he first had, and toke the Squire behind him, for to hold him vp, for that he was so leane, that he could not kéepe himselfe vp right in the saddle. And therwith they returned, & toke the way wherin Rosicleer came, & following another path vnder the hill side which brought them vnto a faire Castell. And in trauailing by ỳ way, Rosicleer did demaund of Orisle.les the cause and increasing of all his sorrow, to whom he began to tell as followeth.

You shall vnderstand, worthy Prince, that this Iland belonged vnto a very great and monstrous Gyant, whom the Prince slew, for to set at liberty certaine Ladies, the which he carried captiue. So a son of this Gyant many daies after, did procure to be reuenged of the death of his father, & followed it so hard, that in the end he found such occasion, ỳ he met wt the prince, hauing no other defence but his sword, without any armour, for that he was sporting himselfe at ỳ sea side, and in his company was I, & a few other Knights, the Gyant with them that were with him, assalted vs with so great power & strength, that in spight of all that euer we could doe to make our defence, they brought vs vnto this Iland, wherin we were a great time prisoners. So one morning, not knowing how & which way, we found our selues in such order as you did finde vs, inchanted. He did not only make this inchantment to be of great strength, but also he laboured for no other thing, but to make defence, ỳ the prince might not be set at liberty. The ordeiner of this inchauntment was a sister vnto Fangomadan, and for to punish him with more tormēt, she put him in this sort as you haue seene, leauing the princes in the Castell in fast prison, being kept

by two ſonnes of the Gyant,& other Knights,beléeuing that the prince ſhuld neuer be deliuered out of that terrible torment, & herewith they drew nigh vnto the foote of the Caſtell,wheras they vnhorſed the Prince Meridian,and determined ther to take their eaſe and reſt. Orgalio went vnto their bark for to bring prouiſion,for that they had ther great ſtore,at whoſe returne they did eate & refreſhed theſelues,& Meridian recouered ſomewhat more ſtrength, as one ỳ had his ſtomacke cleane voide of victualls,the like did his companion Oriſtedes.So all that night they remained ther,reſting themſelues,& communed of all things what was beſt to be done in their enterpriſe.So they determined ỳ the nert day the Græke ſhould go alone to ỳ caſtle,for if the Troyan ſhould goe with him,it would poſſible be the occaſion ỳ they would not open the gates,bécauſe they knew the Troyan. So with this determination when the morning was come, the Grécke aroſe vp & trimmed his armour, & laced on his helme,& put his ſhéld on his ſhoulder,and toke his leaue of the Knights,& toke a narow way which lead him vp ỳ hill vnto the caſtle,he would not ỳ his Squire ſhould beare him company,but commanded him to remaine in ỳ ſeruice of the Pagan Prince. Not long after the Troyan béing moued of compaſſion,his hart could not ſuffer but néds he muſt follow the prince.And being in this determination he laced on his helme and toke his ſhéld,and with great trauaile for ỳ he was a foote,he began to follow,and toke the way which the Græke went.

¶ How that Roſicleer entered into the caſtle, and of the battaile he had therin,for to bring out of priſon the princeſſe, ſpouſe vnto the Prince Meridian who was in great tormẽt. Cap. 17.

ROſicleer was a great while going vp ỳ little hil,yet at lẽgth,although with great trauails,one houre before that the Sunne did ſhew forth hir ſhining beames he got to the toppe of that hill,from whence he diſcerned

a great and mightie broad plaine, and in it ther was a faire castell, wrought with very many towres, whose battlements were of so great fairenesse, that wt the Sun they shewed a very faire sight, on the one side the maine sea did beate on it, whose waters striking vpon ẏ rockes did make a mervailous noise, which was caused by that hasty & furious winde Borias, and on that side wheras the prince was, it was all compassed about with a very broad and deepe ditch or moat, and had in it but one entring, and that was very narrow. The sight of that Castell did giue great contentment vnto them which beheld it, by reason it was so faire, and being so early in the morning, the windowes were not open. The Greeke being all alone musing to himselfe, vpon a sodeine he heard ouer the gate of the castle a window to be open, wherat looked out a Gyant of so great height as he had not seene the like, he was in his shirt, and couered with a night gowne of black velure, & seeing Rosicleer, hee knew by his deuice that he was none of them of the castle, and when he saw & was certified that he was none of his Knights, he said: Knight, what doest thou seeke in this country, for as it doth appeare by thy strange demeanour, thou shouldest be a stranger. To whom the Greeke answered and said: Thou saiest truth Gyant I am a straunger, for I neuer dwelt in it, but my fortune hath brought me hether, being driuen by the great fury and tempests of the sea, and being a shoare I found in it a very straunge aduenture, which hath giuen me occasion to come and speake with thee, if it be thy pleasure to heare me, either within the Castle or without it. At such time as this valiaunt Rosicleer was saying these wordes, hee had a sight of his face, his helme being vp, wherat might be seene his faire face, on whom the Gyant did very much behold, & answered.

If thou doest seeke mee I will heare thee in what sort thou wilt, but if thou doest aske for the King my father, thou shalt vnderstand that he is not in the Iland but is abroad about businesse, forced of necessitie touching his Kingdome,

I would haue bene very glad, said Rosicleer, to haue found the king thy father, for that I doe vnderstand, that it should be he, who did assait and take the Prince of the Scitas, & the worthy Troyan. And I am come to giue him to vnderstand, how he should intertaine and intreat, such knights as they are, & not with so great pryde to put them vnto such sorrow and paine, & kepe the princes in prison, vsing them as though they wer his vassailes, who had done some cruell & harmous offence against his owne person, or as rebells against their naturall Lord and Prince, but hee hath bene the bolder, for that he doth know they are a great way from their owne countries. And I doe much meruaile, that such a person as thou art, will consent to ỹ doing of such crueltie, for that it doth apeare, thou art sufficiently furnished with stature and strength. And thou seemest vnto me, to be a very good knight which doth binde thee to acknowledge great modestie, & not to minister or consent vnto such crueltie. But I do see that thou art voide of all, & that thou hast no knowledge of the goodnesse wherunto thou art bound. Therefore if thou dost maintaine that which thy Father doth vphold and sustaine in this Castell and Iland, is not euill: I will make thee to say the contrary, both of vs being to gether, therefore chuse whether thou wilt graunt me free entry into the Castell, or whether thou wilt come forth where as I am. The Gyant did not shew anie kinde of alteration in his countenaunce, neither did he answere with any proude words, but rather mittigating his yre, hee saide. Doe not beleue knight, that I am so blinde and so void of knowledge, that I doe not know what is good and what is euill. Neither will I consent that thou shalt speake euill of that which my father hath done but rather I tell thee, ỹ I will venter my person in his defence: therfore I bid thee to abide, and thou shalt see how I am not afraide of the pirill, for it shalbe more death vnto me to remaine aliue, with my honour blemished, then to dye in his quarell and defence. And I will commaund that the gates of the Castell shalbe open, & I do warrant that so long as our battaile shall indure, thou shalt not receue any harme. And if

it

it bée so that fortune doth runne on thy side, then can I not assure thée any farther, for ỳ I haue a brother, who is not so great a friend vnto courtesie as I am. Cause the gates to bee open, sayd Rosicleer, and with ỳ help of god I will make my part good vñ all. But yet certes giant bélæue mé, it doth greatly grœue mé to sée thée maintaine such euil, as it doth apœre in these thy words. And therwith hée withdrew himselfe from the window, & called for his apparaile, & likewyse for his armor. His brother when hée heard him speake with so great alteration, hée looked out at the same window, for to sée who hée was that gaue the occasion. This Gyant looked out with a diuelish semblaunce, & seeing the knight he sayd, Art thou he that hast defyed my brother, wherfore hast thou accused my Father for a traytour, and an euill & naughtie knight. I am he, said *Rosicleer*, who doe pretend to reuenge the wrong and force done vnto the Prince Meridian. O vile coward, said the Giant, what diuel hath made thée so hardy to make an enterprise, that Mars himself durst not giue the like attempt. Oh ye Gods, how doe you cõsent ỳ one poore knight should haue so much boldnesse, to put himselfe before mé, with such a demaund. It grieued Rosicleer very much, to sée himselfe so intreated, of a proude Giant, & answering him he said In truth I haue defied thy brother, who semeth to haue more discretion thẽ thou hast. And in ỳ same demãd I do defie thée to mortall battaile. In the which I think to make thée know, the vilenesse of thy reasons, & the basenesse vsed in thy words. And take from that huge membred body, thy head, with the force of this my strong arme. At which words the Gyant who first appœred, and was putting on his armour, sayde vnto his Brother: This knight of his owne vertue and bountie doth come to bee slayne, or else procure lyberty to the Princes, & hée semeth to haue souerayne hardinesse and strength, and there is no reason, to shew thy valor in speaking so proudly & vaséemely words, but with the fury of thy vntamed arme. And if the Gods do grant vnto him to haue the victory ouer mé, there shall remayne time for thée to show thy valour. And therwith hée made him to

withdrew himselfe from the windowe, leauing Rosicleer very well satisfied with his courtesie. So within a lyttle while after he heard them opening the gates of the castle, & letting downe the draw bridge. Then ỳ couragious Greek toke the bridge & put himselfe within the castle into a very fayre & large court, all adorned round about with rich windowes, & on the one side a very fayre Orchard, accompanied with very swēt & odoriferous flowers, and all manner of swēt hearbs, in the which were many that were dressing those trees and hearbs, & putting them in order, some were occupyed in making of fine hedges and arbours, & others in husbanding the trēs and cutting of them, others in digging of the ground, & others in setting of hearbs, who when they saw Rosicleer, they all stayed from theyr worke, & imputed that knight to bē very vnwise to giue that enterprise, and amongst thē was the Gyant who last of all spake vnto Rosicleer at ỳ windowe, with a mighty great club in his hand, and for the defence of his body a simple harnelle, who sayd vnto Rosicleer: Come in, come in, thou hardy fole, for that thou shalt receiue ỳ payment of thy vndiscreet & foulish boldnesse. The Prince without making any answere went on forwards, & entering in at ỳ other gate, he came into a very fayre & paued Court, the which was compassed about with thrēe fayre galleries one aboue another. The Prince receiued great delight to sēe the excellent worke of them. To not long after ther descended downe a payre of staires ỳ first Gyant, armed with strong armour, his sheeld on his arme, and a great broad cutting sword in his hand, who without speaking any word assaulted him with mortal battaile. The worthy Greek was in a readinesse for to make his defence with his sword in his hand. The Gyant stroke at him a terrible blow right downe, but ỳ Greek with a light leap made him to misse his blow, and his sword fell downe vpon the pauement, in such sort, that it made a great number of sparks of fire to flye out, as soone as the blow was pased, the Greeke stroke him vpon the arme, which blow was not very great, for that hee could not very wel reach him vnto his content-

ment,

ment, yet for all that it dyd not let to cut his armour, flesh and all vnto the hard bone, & although the Giant did fele the wound somewhat greuous, yet did he procure to dissemble the feling of the paine and griefe, & with the great anger he had to fele himselfe hurt, he threw his sheelde from him to the ground, and toke his great sword fast in both his handes, & returned thinking to haue stroke the Greke w̄ double force more then before, but he did procure to clere himselfe as he did at the first, striking a blow at the Gyant, thinking to haue stroke him againe on his armes, but hee could not reach him, but it lighted vpon the Giants sword, & the blow was such, that the force of the stele blade was not sufficient to make resistance, but that the sworde of the Greke dyd enter in and made a great gappe, but the Gyaunts third blowe was such, that without resistaunce it chaunced vppon the Grekes sheelde, and all that euer it hit it carryed to the ground, and part of it lyghted on his helme, in such sort that Rosicleer was constrayned to stope with his knees to the ground, but with great lightnesse hee arose vp agayne, and beeing very wrathful that hee had receyued suth a blow, hee let lose his sheeld, and stepped to the Gyant with his sword in both his handes, and stroak him vpon his left shoulder, and the blow glaunced, but if it had chaunced to haue stroke him full, at that blow hee had made an ende of the battaile, but for all that hee remayned very sore hurt, and his sword fell to the ground, and raysed many sparkes of fyer. The Gyaunt was very much amazed at the power and strength of his enimie, but not in such sort, that it should cause in him anye weaknesse, but rather with a new courage hee returned vnto his begunne battaile, with so great courage as though hee had receiued no hurt at all, at that tyme both of them stroke the one at the other with great strength & power, although the Gyant was very much disturbed by reason of his wounds, but yet for all that hee shewed great prowesse. This battayle and contencion betweene them continued more then two long houres, in which time there went from his

wounds

wounds great abundance of blood, so in the ende, whether with wearinesse of the long contempt, or with the losse of so much blood, the Gyant could not keepe himselfe on foote, but fell downe vpon the ground as one y were dead. The prince who had thought hee had beene dead, dyd not receyue much delight, for that hee was a reonable Gyant, & of much vertue & courtesie. But it in great hast hee went to pull of his healme, & then hee heard that out of the Castle they began to cry out and sayd, holde thy hand cruell Knight, and do not make an end to kill our naturall Lord, for in doing it thou shalt dye the death. And loking about him to see who it was that spake vnto him those threatning words, hee saw descending downe at a broade payre of stayres to the number of fifteene knights, who with a great rushing & noise, being all very well armed, & seemed to bee very good knights, for that they were of a good disposition. And as hee saw the cõming with a furious courage, hee encountred them and said. The name which you haue giuen mee, I will make y hereafter you shall vse it no more, or else I will lose my lyfe. And therwith he put himself amongst them, with so great fury, as the cruell & hungrey Wolfe doth amongst a company of simple sheepe, and strok the first with so great strength, that with the fury of his arme, hee clouе his head a sunder in the midst, but yet hee could not let but receiue great hurt of his person, for that he was assalted by them, who desired to reuenge the death of they Lord. The other Gyant cryed out against them, reuiling them with marualous foule words, for that one alone knight should so long endure alive in their hands. But this miserable people did not know with whom they made this contention, for if they had knowne & vnderstood who was before them, they would not haue bilde this battayle, for they dyd not know how they had to do wt the sonne of the Emperour Trebatio, against whom the Diamant Rockes do seeme weak, as it appeered by the great strength hee had in wounding of them. For some hee slew out right, & some wer very sore hurt, but notwithstãding o those which did remaine, he was assalted very desperately, but this Gyant

seeing

ſæing ſtill theyr cõtention, his courage the moze increaſed, and toke his ſwoꝛd in both his hands, & ſtroke one of them ſo terrible a blow vpon the ſhoulder, that his ſwoꝛd paſſed downe vnto his waſt: ſo there remained but fiue of them, who altogether dyd ſtrike at him ſuch fiue blowes, ý it made him to ſtoope with both his knées to the ground, the which the Pꝛince dyd fæle very much, neuertheleſſe with great ſtrength hée aroſe vp againe, in ſpite of all them that ſtrok him, and it was vnto theyr hearme, foꝛ that hée was not ſo ſoone vp, whẽ hée ſtrok him that was next hand ſo terrible a blow vppon his healme, that hée cut him downe vnto the ſtomack in two péeces, & caſting about his ſwoꝛd ouer his head, hée ſtroke another on the neck, that hée made his head flye from his ſhoulders, to the ground, the other thꝛée which remained, ſæing the gret ſlaughter that was made on their companions, and likewiſe themſelues to be hurt and weary, they pꝛocured to run away vp the ſtayꝛes, and they thinking to flye from theyr death, fell into the lyke daunger, and rather woꝛſe, foꝛ that at ý head of the ſtaires, they met with the other giant who was deſcending downe, giuing terrible ſhꝛikes, and mæting them with his mighty cutting ſwoꝛd, hæ cut them all to pæces ſaying. Take the payment ý ſuch towards dwe deſerue. So leauing them dead, hée deſcended downe the ſtaires, and found this ſtrong Roſicleer, leaning with his bꝛeaſt vpon the pomell of his ſwoꝛd, eaſing himſelfe ſomwhat of ý great trauaile paſſed, but it indured with him but a ſmall time, foꝛ that the Gyant lift vp his bꝛoad and mighty ſwoꝛd, and went toward him to ſtrike him, but the Prince ſtode ſtill tarrying his comming, and was determinded to make ý battaile moꝛe by pollicy then by ſtrength, fearing that ý wearineſſe which hée had receiued ſhould bée the occaſion that his foꝛce ſhould fayle him and his courage abate, if that peraduenture hæ ſhould haue to dw with moꝛe then hæ had at that pꝛeſent bæfoꝛe him. So when ý Gyant came whereas the Prince was, hée diſcharged his mightie ſtroke foꝛ to wound the Gꝛæke, but hée with a lyght leap clæred himſelfe from the fury of that blow, and cloſing with

him

him in great haſt, hée ſtrok him vpon one of his legs, that his harneſſe deceiued him, and hæ wounded him vnto the bone, but for all that ý Giant did not leaue to lay vpon him very thick blowes, as one that was very expert in that exerciſe. It was great delight to ſæ how the Greeke dyd clære himſelfe with great lightneſſe from his blowes without fæling any werineſſe. The gyant with the great fury that hæ had, made great haſt in ſtriking at the Prince, which was the occaſion that hæ wared weary, and was very ſore vered and troubled, & when the Greeke perceiued his faynt and troubled ſtomack, hæ entred in and out wt̃ him with great lightneſſe, procuring for to hurt the Giant, and dyd it with great eaſe, although the Gyaunt dyd not let lykewiſe with great haſt to ſtrik mighty & terrible blowes at him. This Prince procured ſtill to ſæ if hée could finde time, that alonely with one blow hæ might make an end of ý battaile without any perill to himſelfe, notwithſtanding hæ did not let to wound him where hée might, in many places the Gyaunt was all imbrued with blod which iſſued out of the wounds hée had, and although they were not great, yet they were troubleſome. This battayle indured a long tyme, for which cauſe, and the great loſſe of blod, this Gyaunt bæganne to ware fæble and weake. When the Græke perceiued this, and ſæing ý he did not make his aſſault with ſo great haſt as before, and although hée was wearie with ſtriking ſo manie blowes, which brought him almoſt to an ende, yet now againe with great haſt he ſtroke the Giant many and terrible blowes, then the Giant ſæing himſelfe ſo ill intreated, & knowing his end to be at hand, he cried out making a great noiſe, which range through ý aire, blaſpheming againſt his Gods, and called all his Pagans and houſehold ſeruants, and ſayd: O you loſt creatures why do you not come and help mée? At whoſe noiſe and calling there came together aboue thirtie ſeruaunts, ſome with clubbes and ſtaues, and ſome with ſtones, and compaſſed him round about, throwing ſtones at him ſo thicke, that hée could not approch vnto them, for they durſt not come nigh vnto him, the ſtones ray-

ned

ned moze thicker vpon the Greek, thē the frosen hailestones doth in the moneth of March, throwne downe by force out of obscure and tempestuous clouds, and although his armoz were very strong, yet foz all that hée dyd not let to receiue great trouble by reason of those thick blowes. The Greeke went towards them foz to hurt them, but they ran in at the dooꝛes to saue themselues, as cōmonly they who doth bayt a Bull with dartes in a trenched place, after they haue gored him, they hide themselues in cozners to saue them from the fury of his hoznes, and tourning himselfe they straight way tezment him behind: in this sozt dyd his seruaunts intreat this Greeke, till such time that hée was constrained by his yze to goe against them, shaking off his swozd, then as béfoze they ran away. So the Greeke returned whereas the Gyant was, who was so weary, that hée could not remoue out of the place where hée had left him, who clé-ring himselfe from one terryble blowe which the furyous Gyant stroke at him, pzesently retourned the lyke blowe, which lighted vpon his left shoulder, that hée opened ẏ hard harnesse and the flesh vnto the bone. This blowe was not so sone giuen him, when that with great hast hée stroke him with both his handes on his bzeast, and by reason that hée was weake and weary, hée néeded not much strength to ouerthzow him to the ground, who receiued on his backe a terrible fall. The Greek lykewise with the great strength that hée put to ouerthzow him, fell to the ground, but it fell out better with him then hée thought, foz that falling, hée rowled a good way from the place whereas the Gyant fell, and straight way with a trice hée arose vp againe, and found himselfe all to bée compassed againe with ẏ seruants, who battered at him with staues & stones, as many times a wall is battered with Artillerie. Some of them woulde haue run and embzased themselues with him, thinking that hée had not béene so nimble as hée was, but when they saw him on foote, they retyzed backe agayne with great feare. At this tyme the Gyant bégan to arise, although it was

with

with great trouble, but the Greek who was very angry to ſee himſelfe ſo intreated with boies & ſeruants, with a trice hee was with the Gyant, and ere hee that he could put himſelfe on foote, hee ſtroke him ſo terrible a blow with both his hands vpon the head, that hee cut it in two peeces, & hee fell dead to the ground. Theſe ſeruents when they ſaw that theyr Lord was ſlayne, they all ran away making a geeat noyſe. This worthie Greeke when hee ſaw that the fierce Gyant was dead, & that hee was cleere from that cõflict, hee went towards that place whereas hee left the firſt gyant, & when hee came vnto him hee pulled off his healme, at which tyme hee heard one which from the windowes made a great noyſe and ſayd: O cruel knight, let this ſuffice thee, ceaſe thy fury, with the great harme which thou haſt done, and do not ſhew thy wrath vpon that Giant, who hath no power for to make his defence, and if that his valor is not ſufficient for to abate thy ire, let this ſorrowfull infant moue thee to cõpaſſion whom thou haſt cauſed to ſuffer great pain & griefe: The Prince loked vp and procured to ſee who it was that ſpake vnto him, and hee perceiued that it was a maide of a meruailous great diſpoſition of body and very faire of face, and weeping, vnto whom hee ſaid: Fayre Gentlewoman, the cauſe of my cruelty hath been for to diſturb the great cruelty which you haue vſed with the ſonnes of the Emperour Alicandro within this Caſtel, and touching this knight, you may beleeue mee, ỳ his death will bee as much griefe vnto mee as vnto you, for ỳ great curteſie which I haue ſeene in him. At that time the Gyant was ſomewhat come to himſelfe, for by reſon that the ayre had catched him, he had ſome remembrance, of the which the Prince was very gladde, and turning vnto the Lady hee ſayd. Fayre Gentlewoman, if there bee any ſeruants in this Caſtell, command them to put this Knight into ſome place that hee maye bee cured of his wounds, & therwith hee heard great knocking at ỳ gate, and for to ſee who it was, hee left the Gyant and went thether, & aſking who was there that with ſuch haſt dyd call, hee dyd vnderſtand by his wordes that it was Oriſtides the

Troyan

Troyan, who could not come thether any ſoner, for that hée went a foote. To whom the Grœke did open the gate with great reioycing, & ſhutting the gate againe they returned into the Court. When the Troyan ſaw ſo great ſlaughter which was done there, he ſtraight way vnderſtood that the Knight was not come thether for nothing. This Gentlewoman was with hir brother, & did greatly wœpe & bœwaile his vnhappie miſfortune, who although hée was somewhat come to his remembraunce, yet had he not ſo much ſtrength to ariſe vpon his fœte. The Prince commaunded that with great diſcretion, he ſhould be taken vp by force of armes, & ſo carried vnto his chamber, whereas without cauſing him for to receiue griefe, he ſhuld be vnarmed, ý which was done with great diligence, & hée was cured by the hands of his ſiſter, who made great lamentation for him, whom Brandifidel (for ſo was the Gyaunt called) did comfort with verye ſwœt and amorous words, the which cauſed the Prince to haue a great affection towards him, and it was with great reaſon, for that ý gyant was adorned with very much vertue. Oriſtedes ſœing all things in ſo good order, left ý prince who was ſéeking of the Princeſſe, and toke a horſe of the Giants, and a palfray, and returned to fetch Meridian. So after that Brandafidel was cured, thy Prince demaunded in great haſt for the princeſſe, and the Giants ſiſter was conſtrained to go with him to bring him whereas ſhe was. So they entred into a faire large hall, which led thē into a parler, whereas was an old giantelle of a meruailous good proporcion, who made great lamentation, for that it was tolde hir of all that had paſſed in the Caſtle, who had in hir company more then thirtie Ladies and Gentlewomen, which did comfort hir: to whom the ſiſter of the Giant ſayd. Lady, this Knight, to whom the Gods hath giuen ſo much power, doth demaund the Princeſſe of the Scitas our priſoner, for whoſe cauſe, all this harme and euill happened vnto vs. This Lady with a grieuous ſigh beholding the Prince ſaid. O cruell murtherer of my welbeloued ſonnes, and faithfull ſeruaunts: make an end to execute thy crueltye, ſhewing

the same and like vpon this vnfortunate Quéene, whose power hath profited hir very little. This good Gréeke béeing tender harted, when he heard so great lamentation he said: Quéene, do not meruaile, for those which do offend God, doe hope of no other thing, but punishment for their sinnes, & so those that liue with pride, cannot let but to bée paied with the like. I doe desire thée to commaund the Princesse to bée giuen vnto mée, whom thou hast in prison, for that thée doth not deserue to be intreated amongest you as a prisoner, but as a Lady. The Quéene without giuing him any answere, threw vnto him two keies which she had tied at hir girdle, and afterward said vnto him: Vnder these thou shalt finde that which thou séekest, and inioy the glorie which thou hast got by this occasion, till such time as he doth come, who with his mighty arme, will reuenge the great wrong, which thy good fortune hath brought to passe. The gréek toke ỳ keyes, and being led by ỳ Gentlewoman (who would neuer leaue him) they went out of that parler, and went vp a payre of staires, which brought them vnto another hall of no lesse bignesse then the first, and with the kéye she opened a doore, an said: Enter O knight, which hast as much cruelty as prowesse and strength, and there thou shalt finde hir whom thou séekest. Faire Gentlewoman said Rosicleer, I doe not determine to enter, but that your highnesse shall goe before. This Princesse giuing a grieuous sigh entered in first, and brought him into a faire chamber, and then opened another doore, wherin they entred into another hall, very well garnished with many and faire windowes, which was towardes the Sea: at one of the which, there sate the Princesse, who was combing of hir faire haire, and with hir there was a Damsell, the which helde the glasse in hir hands before hir. When Rosicleer saw hir, he receiued great pleasure and delyght, and for that the Princesse should know him, hée pulled off his healme, and straight waye shée knew him, and with great alteration she arose vp against him, and saide. O thou Gréeke Prince, the flower of all knighthode in the

worlde, hath Fortune so much fauoured mée, that all my griefes and sorrowes bée finished, and likewise those of the prince my spouse, to whom the prince aunswered with great reioycing and said, Most mightie Princesse, God of his bountifull mercie, hath deliuered thée from so great care & trouble: wherefore know that you are clére of all thraldome for this present. The sister of the Gyaunt, when shée heard that the Knight was one of the Grécke Princes, whose valour was blazed throughout all ỹ worlde, hir paine & griefe was so much the more, hauing before hir so worthy an aduersary, greatly fearing the comming of hir father, lest ther should happen vnto him some inconuenience. So Rosicleer and the Princesses went out of that chamber, & the faire Giantelle followed thē, the Princesse had great desire to sée Meridian, but it was not long after, that in the case as before was told you he came. I cannot hére declare the great delight which the two receiued whē they saw themselues together. Wherfore doe I leaue the consideration thereof vnto them, that firmly & truly doe loue, and hath bene absent with like succession of troubles and sorrow. The Grécke was not forgetfull, to command that the Prince Meridian, should be put into a faire bed, and when he had ordained that which was necessarie for all things, he asked for somewhat to eate, the which straight way was done, and the Tables layde in the chamber, where Meridian lay, and all them of the Castle, were very much amazed, at the libertie of Meridian, farre much more then of all that which happened béefore in the Castle.

The Grécke Prince with amorous wordes and swéet perswasions, caused the Quéene and hir Daughter to sit downe at the Table to eate, béeing somewhat comforted, for that they knew how that Brandafidel was without daunger of death, for that of them and of all the rest that were in the Castle, hée was verye well béeloued for his great vertue.

¶How the King Fangomadan came without knowing of any thing that had happened in the Caſtle, and how hee found the entry cloſed,& of the battaile that was betweene him & Roſicleer. Cap. 18.

EXceeding was the ſorrow & care the Quéne and hir daughter paſſed that night, alwayes loking for the comming of the King Fangomadan, the Princeſſe likewiſe was not without ſome feare, miſtruſting ſome other inconuenience. The Græke alone was he, that toke no care of thoſe matters. The next day following, whē they were at dinner, ther came vnto them, one of ỳ ſeruants that were in the Caſtle, and ſaid vnto the Prince. Famous Knight, the King Fangomadan is at the Caſtle gate, ſhew vnto vs thy pleaſure what we doe. Ther was not one that were ther preſent, but loſt their colours at theſe words, ſauing onely the Græke and the Troyan, who riſing vp from the table, they commaunded that the draw bridge ſhould be let downe, and Argolio to bring them their armour, which with a trice was brought vnto them, and they armed themſelues. The Græke Prince loked out at one of the windowes which was ouer the gate of the Caſtle, to ſée how much people he brought with him, and hée ſaw that hée had with him but twentye Knights, and certaine foote men. And the King was mounted vpon a mighty Elephant, who ſeeing that the bridge was not let downe, neither the gates open, he bégan to call aloud, making a meruailous noiſe, and commaunded his people to knocke verye hard at the ring of the gate.

The Græke Prince, although his monſtrous greatneſſe did ſeeme to him terrible, yet he eſtéemed no more his fury, then as though he had béene very humble and milde, neither forced hée any thing of his great pride, but with a high voice hée ſaide. What a knocking makeſt thou there, thou monſtrous Gyaunt? What haſt, haſt thou to reuenge

reuenge thy anger vpon the ring of the gate, thou must vnderstand that thou canst not enter in heere, but thou must make thy conquest of the entry with the force of thy strong arme. The giant being greatly amazed of that he heard, cast vp his eies to see who he was that was so bolde, & without curtesie spake vnto him those wordes, & he saw that it was a well set Knight, of him vnknowen, and sayde vnto him: What is this that thou saiest, am not I king of this Iland and ouer all this land? Thou wert (said Rosicleer) but now for thy great pride and folish hardinesse thou hast lost it, & it is now in my power: Where be my sonnes that kept it, said the Gyant, what is become of them? The Greeke said, one of thē is slaine by the strength of my arme, & the other yelded, fulfilling that which he doth owe vnto the order of Knighthode, as it becommeth a good Knight. Oh immortall Gods, said ý King, is it possible to be true that I doe heere, that so vile a wretch as thou art should be ý occasion of so much harme? O thou traitor and falle Knight, commaund ý gates to be opened, for that thy great strength shall little auaile thee, if they be opened vnto me. And if thou doest not command thē to be open, I will so vse the matter, that neither the deapth of the moat, nor towers of the castell shal be able to make any resistance against me for my defence. And with ý great madnesse which he had, he drew out his great and broad cutting sword, & with both his hands he stroke at the gate, as though he would cut it in peeces, but all his labour was in vaine, for that the gates were very strong, and therwith the Prince Rosicleer determined to descende downe into the Court and commaunded the Troyan that in the meane time that ý battaile endured, that he should haue great care of the keeping of the gate, and toke his healme of Argolio and laced it on, and also a strong and well steeled sheeld, and when he came vnto the gate, he saw that the King was a foot, & beating at the gate with all his strength, to whom the Prince said.

Tarry a while and I will open the gate vnto thee, make not so much hast. And in saying these wordes he opened a wic-

ket, the Gyaunt when he saw it, with an earnest furye hée thrust himselfe in thereat. The worthy prince seeing him so hastye, with both his hands he thrust at him, and made him to recoile backe a good way, and said. Keepe thee backe thou furious beast, for heere thou hast no entring without my license. To whom the Gyaunt said: What dost thou thinke or pretend to do? To make battaile with thee said ỳ prince, therfore if thou wilt enter into the battaile, thou must come in alone. I am verye well content said the King the which he spake with a great deale more meekenesse, than his great pride did giue him license, or could suffer, and all to see him within the castle: for that he was perswaded with himselfe, that if he were once within, ther were not in all the world one Knight that could overcome him, neither take any resistaunce against his power. So Rosicleer commaunded that the gate might be open, wherat the Gyaunt entred, and also his great Elephant. When the King was entred, the Troyan had great care & diligence to shut the gate again, whom when the King knew, the more was his griefe: but with the great anger that he had, he made no stay, till such time as he came into the great Court, and ther he mounted vppon his furious and great beast, and Argolio brought vnto his Lord his horse, and without profiting himselfe of the stirrop, he leled into the saddle. So when he was on horse back, he laide hand on his sword, & the Gyaunt on his great cutting fauchon, & either of them assaulted the other, w̃ mortal blowes. Heere it is requisit & necessary to leaue these two warriors in their battell till time shall serue, & I will tell you of the Emperour of Trapisond, the great and mighty Alfebo, who as you haue heard, when he vnderstood how ỳ proud Brusaldoro without all feare of the Epitath, had armed himself w̃ the armor of Bramarant, he was straight taken in two extremities, ỳ one for to accomplish ỳ which he had promised, and the other for that he would not leaue his emperiall empire, but calling to remẽbrance, how ỳ the Empres had a great delight in hunting, one morning betimes before that they did arise, he said. My Lady & Empres, it is not vnknowen vnto

you,

you, the dutye wée owe vnto our noble courages, and how much we are bound by our high estates, to maintaine our foregotten honour, the which with great losse of our blood, & sweatings of our bodies we haue obtained. And this is of a certaintie, that he is more to be commended, ý doth sustaine that which he hath gotten, then he which now doth win it, although ý fortune doth fauor him: for many times when a man is in ý top of his highnes, he grãteth things, ý although he be in the best of his quietnes & rest, taking his ease, yet he is bound to accomplish & performe his promise. It is well knowen that ý armor of Bramarant was put for a Tropheo of memorye, vpon a high and mightie Pine trée, with an Epitath written, in the which my brother did promise & giue his word, to make defence, against whosoeuer would take them away, & I likewise did make the same promise. It is come now vnto my knowledge, that a More with his bold courage, hath not only made litle accompt of that which we haue promised, but also with the force of his arme, he hath slaine my verye great friend Zoylo, the Prince of Tartaria, for the which I am bound to séeke out this More, for that I cannot say against the will of my brother: this is my pretence, (my good Lady and empres) and I would be very glad that it might be with your good will. The Empresse who was very attentiue vnto ý words which ý Emperour Alfebo had spoken, shée said. My Lord and Emperour, from the first time that I heard these newes which you now speake off, I did imagine that which now I haue heard, and I cannot deny that in séeing my selfe without you, it will be welnére my death, for that the part with the which I doe sustaine my life will be absent: but for all that, considering that it is a thing that doth concerne your honour, I will rather suffer the death in your absence, then disturbe you in that, which you are so much bound to fulfill. Therefore you may ordeine your departure when your pleasure is, and I doe desire you, that your returne may be with as much brevitie as may bée, and carry with you in your company the King Bramidoro.

The Emperour finding the answere of the Empresse so much to his contentment, he imbraced and kissed hir with great loue, and straight he arose & procured to put in order his departure. And arming himselfe with the armour of Meridia, & mounted vpon his great horse, he commaunded to call the King, for to make himselfe ready to beare him cõpany, at the which he receiued great delight: and being in a readinesse, there was brought vnto him an Elephant, vpon the which he mounted. And so taking his leaue of his vassailes & subiects, the Emperour gaue them great charge to haue respect of obedience vnto their naturall Lady. Then ỳ Emperour and Bramidoro departed from the citie, and toke with them in their company but one yong gentleman, who was sonne vnto the Duke of Alafonte, whose name was called Victorando, and he was of a very good disposition: so they trauailed fiue daies, without finding anye aduenture worth the telling, but the seauenth day they chanced into a great forrest, full of meruailous mighty and thicke Trees, and by reason that the way was very narrow & not much vsed, they straied and lost their right way, & vnawares they were so inclosed amongst the trees & bushes that they could not by any meanes finde, wher they had lost their way. So all the rest of the day, they did no other thing but ride here and ther in the Forrest amongst the trees, but it was great ease vnto thẽ, for that the wildernes was very plain groũd although full of trees. The night came so vpon thẽ, that they were constrained to alight from their horses, and amongest those trees, did eat of such victuals as Victorãdo had brought with him: and the Emperour & the King did passe the time in such communication as they thought best to their cõtentment. In this order they passed the time till slẽpe came vpon them, whereas they rested till next morning, the which being come, the Emperour mounted vpon his horse, and the King vpon his Elephant, & they returned to seeke the way, and going this way and that way, to see if they could happen on the way which should carry thẽ out of that Forrest they chanced to come vnto a little mountaine all of hard stone,

in

in the which was a great caue, and thether they went, and alighting frō theyr horses, they entered into the caue, & foūd that on the one part it was full of hay, & vpon ẏ walls was hanged many quarters of venesō, & of other wilde beasts, & found no other thing at all, & therwith they returned out againe, & went vnto ẏ top of that Rock ouer the caue, & looked about them on euery sidé to sée if there were any person therabouts, but they could sée no body. Then the King Bramidoro sayd, it shall bée good séeing ẏ wée haue flesh to sée if ther be any fire, that we may roste therof for to eate, for that I promise you I am so hungry, that if they tarry long, they shall sée that there hath béene in theyr lodging those, that haue had good will to eate. Then the Emperour laughed, and sayd, I do promise you of truth that I do finde my selfe with no lesse desire to eate thē you, & your counsell doth lyke mée well, & mée thinck that our fortune should bée the better if wée could finde bread. The King sayd, I care not, for that I haue séene flesh, & therewith I do thinck to fill my stomack, & for any other thing, wée shall sée what is to bée foūd therin. Well let vs go in sayd ẏ Emperour, for I feare mée, that wée shall bée made to pay the shot. Therfore let vs bée well aduised and loke vnto your selues. Let mée haue my body and stomacke satisfied, sayd the King, which now with hunger is somwhat troubled, & afterward at ẏ paying of ẏ reckoning they shall sée what money I haue, & alighting agayne frō theyr horse, they entered into the caue, & séeking if there wer any fire, they found some raked vp in ẏ ashes, at ẏ which ẏ King receiued great ioy, so straight way they made a fire with wood, ẏ they found there, & put to roast halfe a déere, which they thought to be ẏ fayrest amongst all ẏ rest ẏ were ther, & looking about they foūd in another hole which was in ẏ wal of the caue good store of bread, although it was somewhat browne, & toke therof ẏ which they thought sufficient. And when the venison was roasted, they toke it out of the caue, & sat down vnder certaine trées, which wer hard by a litle riuer therby, & did eat so sauerly & with so good a talk, as though they had béene furnished wō theyr accustomed dain-

ties in their Pallaices, but they alwaies had a care vnto the maine chance, to ſée if their hoſt did come. *Victorando* who alſo was eating of the veniſon with a very good grace he ſaid: I do beléeue ẏ our hoſt will not lyke of our ouermuch dyligence heerin, whē hée ſhall find lacking ſome of his fleſh, I beléeue they will demand ẏ more of vs for our ſhot: One for one ſaid ẏ King, my ſtomack béeing ſatiſfied, then will I heare them all, & let them demand for their reckoning what they pleaſe: I am afraid ſayd the Emperor ẏ it muſt be paid with fiſts, for ẏ wée haue béen ſo bold to eate their victuals wõut liſence. Yet in one thing I do comfort my ſelfe ſaid ẏ King, for I haue nothing to loſe, & againe I am in company wᵗ the power of ẏ beſt Knight in the world, & in ſaying this they held their peace, for ẏ they heard a ruſhing amongſt ẏ buſhes, which made thē to leaue of their talke, & to put themſelues in a readineſſe, whatſoeuer ſhould happen, ſo they aroſe vp & laced on their helmes, & beholding what it ſhould be ẏ cauſed ẏ great noiſe, they ſaw ẏ it was two great giants as big as two mighty Pine trées, who wõut ſéeing their gueſts went into their caue, ẏ one of thē brought vpon his back a mighty great hart, & the other a great briſtled boze, & when they found fire in ẏ caue & the lack of their fleſh, they gaue great ſhriks & returned out of their caue. Thē the King wᵗ laughing ſaid: In good faith I do beléeue ẏ they come to demand of vs ẏ reckoning & to pay ẏ ſhot. And béeing in this ſpéech ẏ giants came forth of ẏ caue & put thēſelues in place wheras they might ſée thē, & lyke beaſts, wõut ſaying any word ech of them aſſaulted his contrary. The valiant king drew out his broad cutting ſword, & went forth to receiue him in the way ẏ was comming towards him, the Emperor dyd ẏ lyke with his precious ſword in his hand, the Gyants both together diſcharged their heauy & mightie blows, the Emperour with his accuſtomed diſcreation cauſed the gyant to loſe his blow, & therwith entred into him with great lightneſſe, & ſtrok him vnder ẏ ſide with the point of his ſword, & by reſon of his ill armor, it appeared on the other part of his body, cauſing him to fal dead to ẏ ground, & looking aſide

for

for his companion the king, he saw that at one blow hée cut of the Gyants leg, who with no lesse noise then ý other fel to the ground, but when they saw this resistance to bée so quickly finished, the King laughing sayd: In good faith, séeing it hath pleased god to help vs so quickly to pay our reckoning, I do not meane to depart but to carry w̄ vs some prouision, and therewith commaunded Victorando to take that venison which they brought, & the bread which remayned, & to carry it with him, so they returned their way, not knowing whether they went, for that the more they trauailed the more they put themselues into the forrest, till night drew on, at which time they found themselues among st a company of thick trées, ther they were cōstrained to alight and lodge themselues vnder those thick trées, & commanded to take out of ý which they brought for their supper, which being done they toke their rest till the nert morning, which appared vnto them very faire & cléere, & at such time as the sun had spread abroad his beames vpon those high & mighty trées they returned vnto their vnknowen way, till at ý last they chanced into a narrow path, not much vsed, the which they followed, the Emperour rod before, and the King nert, and Victorando came after them, & in this order they trauailed a good whyle without mistrusting of any thing that should happen, & trauailing in this sort, vpon a sodaine (w̄out knowing the occasion) Cornerino started and rose vp w̄ his fore fete, & gaue a turne in the aire backward, likewise the beauy Elephant stretched out his long & broad snout, and began to make a hoarse noyse, the horse of Victorando, béeing afraid, had almost throwen his master vnder feet, wherwith the Emperour and the King loked round about them on euery side, to see who or what it was that caused so much feare, but they saw nothing, and it was the occasion that they were somewhat troubled. Then the King sayd, what a diuell should this bee that hath caused so great alteration in our horses, hath héere passed by any fiend, or doth ther any diuell remayne lodged amongest these bushes, wel let it bee what it shall bee, for with the fauour of God, if I owe mete him I will giue him his paiment, for scarring of our horses,

for

for that I doe not feare him, & I thank God I never feared neyther diuell nor man. These words hee spake with great courage and maiestie. The Emperour in hearing him speake these words, he could not refraine himselfe but he must needs laugh. So straight way they came out of ỳ thickest of that wood, and came vnto a riuer side which was very deepe, and was knowne by the Emperour to bee that which ranne thorough all the forrests & wildernesses of Grecia, and trauailing alongst by the riuer, within a little while their horses began againe to stagger & to bee afraide, and loking about them to see if they could perceiue what it should bee ỳ made their beasts so afraid, straight way they might see a terrible monster which dyd crosse ouer the forrest, of a very great & strange making, who was as great as a Gyant, and was so broad that hee was almost foure square, his face was three spans long, and had but one eye, and that was in his forehead, & all his body was couered with very long hayre, and in his breast there was as though it had beene a glasse, out of the which there was a great shining lyght, this monster directed his way towards certaine houses which were in the forrest, but by reson of the straggling & the great noise which the horses made, hee cast his head aside, and when hee saw them, with a diuellish fury hee came towards them, and had in his hand in steede of a club a mighty great and knotted Pine tree. This valiant Greeke who was never dismaied at the sight of any such monster, when hee saw so deformed a beast comming towards him, hee cheered vp his horse, & pricked him with his spurs, and giuing a great shout hee drew out a mighty cutting sword and dyd abide the fury of the monster, who came roaring lyke a Bull, and discharged his great club vpon the Greeke, who with a light leap caused by pricking of his horse, he cleered himself of that blow, that his club fel downe to the ground, & as wel as hee could hee cleered his horse againe, and entered in with the monster on the one side, & gaue him so terrible an encounter, that hee made him to fall flat to the ground, & by reason that the strength of ỳ monster was terrible, it could not be but that the horse must

muſt receiue ſome harme, and in paſſing by hée tumbled vpon the monſter, that hée was forced to fall with his maſter to the ground, but when the Emperour perceiued that his horſe muſt nédes fall, with great lightneſſe hée left the ſadle, leaping on the one ſide, and ſaued himſelfe from the danger that might happen, the horſe when hée ſaw himſelfe imbraced wᵗ the monſter, was ſo ſcarred and amazed, that with great lightneſſe hée roſe vp and ran from him as an arrow out of a bowe. The Emperour looked to ſée where the King was, & hæ ſaw him béeholding the terrible battaile, and alſo how Victorando was on foote throwne downe by his horſe with the great feare hée had, but this looking about of the Emperor was quickly forgotten, for that the mõſter aroſe & came againſt him againe with his great trée aloft, ready to diſcharge it vpon him, but he determined to let it ſlip by, as béefore, and therewith to enter in with him & to ſtrik him, and ſo hée did, for the blow was not ſo ſone paſt as hée ſtepped in, and ſtroke a full blow at his thigh, but hée made but a ſmall wound, by reſon of the hardneſſe of haire that made great defence, which cauſed the Emperour to meruaile much thereat. This diueliſh monſter when hée ſaw his owne blood, in a mad rage hée layd about him with his great club, procuring with his terrible and thicke blowes to deſtroye the Emperour. The great haſt which the Monſter made to ſtrike the Emperour was ſuch, that hæ was conſtrayned to vſe all his pollicie and lyghtneſſe for to cléere himſelfe from thoſe terrible blowes, hée ſtroke them ſo faſt, and neuer loſt any time of vantage when that he might hurt him, but ſtill continually ſtrok and cut him on thoſe hayrie legs, that hée made more then fiue wounds, in ſuch ſort, that the ground whereas they were was couered with the blod of the monſter, the monſter ſéeing himſelfe ſo troubled, and onely with one knight, hée bégan to double his blowes in ſo great haſt, that the Emperour was not able to cléere himſelfe from thē, but that nædes hæ muſt receiue one of them, & if it had not béene but that the Emperor did ward it with the edge of his ſword and with his ſtéely ſhéld, it had fallen out worſe

with

with him then it did, but it was not so litle but that it ouerthrew him to the ground, as one that hadde bene dead, but so much of the club as touched the edge of his sword was cut a sunder, the King Bramidoro when he saw the Greeke so fallen downe to the groũd, he prested with his Elephant toward the monster, for to reuenge that terrible blow, who when hee saw him come towardes him, like vnto a whirle winde he made towards the houses that were therby, and in great hast he threw himself into a caue, throwing downe after him a great rocke which did shut vp ỹ entry, the which was done with so great lightnesse, that the king had no power to strike him, & blessing himselfe to see so sodaine and so straunge a thing, he returned vnto the place wheras ỹ emperour was, whom hee found come vnto himselfe again and on foote, and was mounting on horse back, and when he saw the king comming, he said: Haue you seene so vgly a thing as that is so quickly ouerthrowne, with that little blow which I gaue him, and ouerthrowne as one would ouerthrow a bird to the groũd. Do you account that a little blow said ỹ king, then doe I not know what is a great and a mightye blow. Then the Emperour said: where is that diuellish monster become, tell me if you can, or if you haue seene him goe away: he hath throwen himselfe into hell said the king, for hard by yonder houses he put himself into a caue wheras I could not follow him, and of truth I doe tell you, if I could enter in wher he entered, I would not, for ỹ I thinke he is amongst & in company with ỹ diuells, and therewith the Emperour was mouted a horse back, and was so furious and full of choller, that rockes & mountaines were not sufficient to make resistaunce against his strength, and so with a trice he rode vnto the place wheras the monster entered in, & without any foresight he alighted from his horse, and procured to take awaye that great stone that was at the mouth of the caue, the which hee did without any difficultnesse, but yet for all that hee could not finde which waie he might enter in thereat, but like vnto a Lyon with great anger, fretting and chasing, he went round about that rock,

to

to ſée if hée could find any entry, at the laſt hée found a great clift in the rock, and loking in thereat, hée ſaw that great monſter, whereas hée lay all along on the flo3e, & ſeing him hée ſaid: Oh traito3 & a deſtroyer by the high waies, oh thou infernall diuell, the ſtrong & faſt ſhutting in this rock ſhall little auaile thée, and think that thou ſhalt not ly long there at thine eaſe. So hée bégan wt his hands to p3oue if he could teare that rock to make way where hée might enter, & put ſo much ſtrength vnto it, and againe with his rage, that hée to3e a great part of it away, in ſuch ſo3t that the king was very much amazed at the great fo3ce & ſtrength ỹ he ſhewed, & when hée had done this, hée loked agayne at the Monſter and ſayd: Oh euill and diuelliſh creature, what doſt thou think (although thou art in hell) to eſcape my hands, & going from thence hée went round about the rock againe, to ſée if hée could find wherwith leſſe difficultneſſe hée might enter, but hée could not find any, in the meane time by reaſon that ther was no noyſe, the monſter had thought that the Emperour had bin gone, and came vnto the clift of the rock to ſée if hée could heare o3 ſée him. The Emperour who returned vnto that ſame place againe, & ſaw the monſter in ſuch ſo3t at the clift that hée might ſtrike him with his ſwo3d, with great haſt & good diligence he caſt at him ſo terrible a thruſt in at the clift, which chanced vpon his vnarmed head, that it paſſed thro3gh downe to his thro3at, in ſuch ſo3t ỹ the great monſter fell downe dead to the ground. The Emperor dyd wel know that hée had wounded the monſter, but he béléeued it was not with ſo great ſtrength as to ouerthro3w him, fo3 that the clift was very narrow whereas hée thruſt the foyne, and fo3 to ſée what ſucceded of that blow, hée knéeled downe and loked in, and ſaw the monſter lye all along on the flo3e ſtarke dead, the Emperour ſeing him in that ſo3t, ſayd: What did this diuell thinck that hée ſhould not pay mée ỹ villanous blow which hée gaue mée. When the king heard him ſay theſe wo3ds hée alyghted from his Elephant to ſée what hadde happened, and hée ſaw him lye all along dead vpon the ground, & of his ſtrange and great ſtature hée

very

very much meruayled, then with a great and lowd voice hée ſayd: Oh God how much hath it pleaſed thy diuine maieſty to furniſh this good Knight with all ſtrength and prowesſe, more then any in all the world. It could not chuſe but that this good Emperour was very wearie of this his great trauayle, the which was the occaſion that hée did wdraw himſelfe and ſat downe in the ſhadow vnder a gréene Pine trée, and bad Victorando to giue him that which hée brought to eate, ỳ which was done with a trice. Lykewiſe hée brought him freſh Water from the Riuer, wherwith hée did refreſh himſelfe very much. So when the Emperour had ſatiſfyed himſelfe of that which was néedfull, hée aroſe vp, and went towards thoſe houſes to béehold them, & hée ſaw that they were all wrought with blacke ſtone. Likewiſe hée ſaw vpon the ſayd Pine trée, vnder which hée ſat, an Epitaph written, and when hée had read it, hée knew it to bée the place whereas Bramarant did kill himſelf, and how that was the Epitaph which his brother had put there, for a remembraunce of the Moores armour, at all the which when hée ſaw, hée found in himſelfe a great confuſion.

¶ Of the battayle which Claridiano had with the Prince of Paleſtina, and how hee had the victorie, giuing liberty vnto Antimiſca, and vnto all the reſt. Chap. 19.

When this mightye Emperour vnderſtood that to bée the place and the houſe which ỳ Princeſſe Tigliafa had made, without anye more tarrying, finding the dore open hée entered in thereat, till hée came into a very fayre court, in the midſt whereof ſtode .. ſtage, wrought and layde vpon foure pillers, which were likewiſe of blacke ſtone, which frō ỳ foote to the toppe went in proportion leſſe and leſſe, and vpon it there was a Tombe, the which was couered all with black cloth, and vpon the Tombe was there an armed Knight all ſaue the head, the which ſéemed to bée broken and torne in many places. The Emperour procuring

to

to know who it should bée, hée saw that it was Zoylo the Tartarian, at which sight he could not let to receiue great sorrow to sée his friend dead, and béeing in this wise hée saw a doore opened on the one side of the Court, out of the which came forth ỹ vnfortunate Princesse of Tigliasa all in mourning apparell, and hir face couered with a black Lawne, and after hir came fiue Gentlewomen in the same manner, who neuer staied till they came vnto the scaffold. The Princesse staied not but went vp the staires (without séeing who was within the court,) but with great sighs and teares, with hir countenaunce very beaute, sadde, and sorrowfull, in such lamentable wise that it would haue moued any hart to haue had compassion, who began to speake certaine words which in their places shall be rehearsed, for ỹ I am now constrained to declare of the battaile that was begun betwéene the light of all knighthoode & the furious Palestinian. You haue heard how that these two knights were in a readinesse vnto the battaile, & how that with their Speares in their rests the one ranne against the other, and in the middest of their course they met the one with the other, neither of thẽ missing his blow, but it was with so great fury and strength, that their knotted Speares flew all to shiuers in the ayre, and they passed the one by ỹ other without mouing, or anye hurt done, and retourning their horses, the Palestinian bégan first to strike at this noble warriour, giuing him terrible blowes vpon his strong and stélye helme, with so great fury, that he made aboundance of sparkles to flye out thereat. Héere the Prince vnderstood and felt the great and mighty strength of the Moore, but quickly hée gaue him his paiment, with a more furious blow then hée receiued, in such sort that hée made all the members of the Palestinian to tremble and shake, & his téeth to chatter in his head, this blow made this barbarous Prince verye much amazed, but by reason that hée was of great valour hée retourned and lifted vp his sword, and bégan with the lyke fury to lay vppon his enimye, in such sort that the battaile beganne to bée very terrible, and with great strength

and hast, they stroke the one ỹ other, in such sort, that those which were loking on many times lost their sight with the great brightnesse and flame of fire that flew out of their armour and stælye helmes. The battaile betwixt them continued a great while without knowing any aduauntage, or who was the better of them, the which caused eyther of them to haue the more fury and anger. The Palestinian seeing the great resistance of his enemie, roaring like a baited Bull, threw his shælde at his backe, and toke his sword in both his handes, and stroke so terrible a blow vppon the fine Magicall armour of the Prince, that hee made him to fall forwards, and leane his forehead vpon the horse eares, causing his eies to dasell in his head, and straight way vpon the same he strake him another blow vppon the backe, which did make a sound through all ỹ Tassell. The Prince recouered himselfe againe, and seeing him with his Sword aloft for to discharge the third blow, hee procured to cleere himselfe from the same and from the furye wherewith it did descend, the which he did with great lightnesse in spurring his horse, hee had not so soone passed the blow when that he returned his horse verye swiftlye and ioyned with the Pagan, hauing his sword aloft, discharging it vppon his healme with so great fury, that hee made him to fall backwards vpon his horse crouper cleane without any remembraunce, theyr horses at that terrible blow were merueilously scarred, in such sort, that they were seperated the one from the other a great space, which was the occasion that the Pagan had time to remember, himselfe, and to settle himselfe againe in his saddle, and to recouer his sword againe, which was fallen out of his hand and hung by the chaine at his wrist. The Prince with double fury and force pricked his horse and ioyned with the Pagan, and stroke him a mightye blow vppon his healme, which glanced and fell vpon his left shoulder, putting him to so great paine, that it made him to shrinke and double his body forwardes downe to his horse necke, the Pagan straight way was vp-

right

ryght agayne, & stroke at his aduersary so terrible a blow, that he nothing aduaunced himselfe of that which was past, wherwith the prince firming himselfe in his styrops, stroke at the Pagan a mightye blow, at such time as his horse somewhat started, which was the occasion that he could not haue his full thereof, but with the poynt of his sword hee hyt him on the Beauer of his healme, that many sparkles flew out and so descended vnto his breast, till it came and lyghted vpon his horse head, cutting it in two peeces that he fell dead to the ground, so that the Pagan remayned on foot without a horse, & by reason that he was a valyant Knight, hee cleered himselfe from his dead horse with a trice and said. Villayne, do not thou think that the killing of my horse shall auaile thee any thing, but that with the strength of my arme I will teare thee in peeces. I doe sweare vnto thee by the warlike Mars, said Claridiano, that it doth greeue me of that which is done, & that I should receiue more contentment to see thy head in the sort that thy horses head is, and vnderstand, that I am not accustomed to shew my valyantnesse against a beast, and because thou shalt not account me for a villaine but change my name, tarry a while & I will alight from my horse. And saying these words with great lightnesse he left the saddle & put himselfe on foote, and therewith the one prested to the other with great fury, that the battaile began a new, & with more rigour then before, for that ỳ one stroke ỳ other in such great hast that it was a wonder to see. And being both inflamed and ouercome wᵭ anger, they could not vse any policie, but all was by force & strength, being so terrible, that each one feared the worthynesse of his enimie. This they continued a great time, till in the end it was perceiued the aduantage that the prince had in striking his aduersary, & the great lightnesse which he vsed in entring into the Pagan, & cleering himself againe still continuing his terrible assaults & mighty thicke blowes, notwithstanding the Palestinian in this time was not idle nor void of care, but valiantly did make his defence against his enemie, and did such deedes as it was straunge and worthye of great honour.

So in this contention they endured more then two houres, in which time these Knights had no patience to lose, for that they were cleane voide thereof. But oh miserable Pagan, what doth profit thée thy fury, strength, and lightnesse, for that thou doest deale with the worthye Claridiano, when as no strength nor force is to bée compared vnto his. The Grécke séeing that with one alone knight the battaile indured so long, being more kindeled in yre and wrath, hée toke fast holde of his sword in his hand, and stroke the Pagan with such surmounted fury and strength vpon the healme, that he cloue it and the head in two péeces that he fell dead to the ground, when the king saw that terrible blow, he receiued great contentment thereat. Likewise the Prince of Chaldæa and the faire Antemisca, who with great hast went to imbrace him, and almost béeside themselues with ioye to be cléere from their captiuitie. Then Claridiano asked of thē if there were any more to bee done to giue them frée libertie, the King newlye imbraced him with the great delight which he had and said. Oh the susteiner of all the glorye and honour of Mesopotamia, what service may I doe vnto the Gods to gratifie this goodnesse which they haue vsed with me, that in the end of so many trauailes and troubles I dos recouer my liberty by the hands of him which is take hére on earth for one of the Gods. The Prince Claridiano answered & said: Souereigne King, the Gods did consent vnto thy iustice and right, for that they could helpe thée, Iupiter béeing so vpright would doe iustice, and in especiall in a thing so apparant as this was, and therfore thou maist attribute the same vnto him, and gratifie him, and likewise the great vertue of Antemisca. And with these and such like reasons they went towards the Pallaice, and lead the faire Antemisca by the hand, who was very ioyfull, & straight way they vnarmed Claridiano, and gaue him Suckets and conserues, for to comfort him of the great trauaile and trouble which hée hadde passed, and serued him with so great maiestie as though they had knowen him to be the son of high and mightie parents.

Antemisca

Antemisca thanking him for all that he had done for them, said: O flower of Knighthod, & defender of my royall fame and honestye, what power is sufficient to make satisfaction of so great a benefit, and in especiall where all power doeth lacke. Faire Ladie, said Claridiano, your great vertue & honesty caused me to haue the more power and force, for to frustrate this false accusation laid against you, and now being at liberty (noble Lady) let not these angers & wrongs past be any occasion of disturbance, but rather permit that ỳ body of this vnhappy king may be buried according vnto his estate, & in so doing thou shalt shew the great vertue which doth remaine in thee, to frustrate al iniuries past. This I do desire you to consent vnto, in that you are bound vnto it by your high estate, and not for any desert, dew vnto such a poore Knight as I am. Poore, saide Antemisca, here I doe sweare vnto you by that which I owe vnto all vertue due vnto mine owne person, that I doe determine in seruing of you to doe as much as in the seruice of Iupiter, for ỳ I take thee to be one of the Gods, as it hath appeared by the great valour which I haue sene shewed by thee. And whatsoeuer your pleasure is to commaund to be done vnto this dead bodie (although he doth not deserue it) it shall be wholly accomplished, and straight way it was put in vre. This valiaunt Knight remained ther certaine daies wheras he was serued with great maiesty, in which time the two loners were married, wheras was made meruailous great feasts & tryumphs, the which for auoiding tediousnesse I doe omit, and will make no mention therof, & for that this valiant knight was prisoner to the Pastora, he neither receiued contentmẽt nor ioy in his hart in so long tarrying, which was the occasion ỳ Claridiano toke his leaue for to depart of ỳ Princesse of Chaldea, which was cleane contrary vnto the good will of Antemisca, for that shee loued him meruailously for his great vertue, & with many teares she toke hir leaue of him, giuing him certaine presents & gifts necessary for his trauaile, so he departed taking his iourny, onely with Fidelio, his squire, towards the plaines of Ierosolima, and passed

by Armenia the great, wheras happened vnto him many & straunge aduentures.

¶ How that Claridiano trauailed by Armenia, and of the straunge aduentures which hapned him in that countrie. Cap. 20.



THE valiaunt Greke Claridiano trauailed through Armenia the great, with no company but his Squire, although his thought was not solitary, but alwaies representeth in his heart the cause of all his griefe and sorrow. So in this sort he trauailed a while till it chanced one morning at such time as the Sun began his accustomed iourney, that he must passe a great & mighty riuer ouer a bridge, and at the end thereof ther was a fortresse wrought after the fashion of a Bulwark, for that below at the beginning it was very big, hauing in the midst of it a great tower, with a louer hole, & vpon the same was put a standard, which with the winde was moued from the one side to the other. The Prince following his iourney ouer ỹ bridge, without any impediment would haue passed forwardes on his way, but by any meanes hée could not, by reason of a great, broad, and dèepe ditch, which was made on the other side, beginning from the Riuer, and making a compasse like a hoope, which inuironed all the whole fortresse, and came againe and ioyned vnto the saide Riuer, on the one side, so that the fortresse remained in the middest, and there was no other waye to take, but that they must nèedes passe through the fortresse. So when the prince came vnto a very strong gate of yron, he toke the Ring in his hand and gaue thrée great blowes, at the noise wherof there was a windowe opened, whereat ther appeared a Gentlewoman of a middle age, who sèemed to haue hir eies swollen with wèepings, who said.

Knight, what is it that thou doest sèeke hère in this infernall Castell, if thou wilt haue passage sèeke it by some

other

other way, and it shall bee better for thée, for in procuring to passe this way thou shalt get no other thing but death, but and if thou wilt not returne back by reason of the good opinion which thou hast in thy great valour and strength, take a round that horne which hangeth there vpon that piller on the right hand which being heard, the entry shall bee freely giuen vnto thée, but the going out is vnpossible. And in saying these words she shut the window in great hast, and went in. The prince cast about his horse towards the right hand wheras he saw a piller of the height of a man, & therat hanged a rich horne, & by it a peece of parchment rouled vp, and laying hand vpon the horne he could not moue it, although he did striue mightely to doe it, and vnderstanding ỳ first he must vndoe the parchment and read that which was written in it, he toke it and vnrouled it, and saw that it contained that which followeth.

At this present raigneth a King in Arabia, and although he be a Pagan, yet he is adorned with noble and vertuous customes, and had onely one daughter that was very fayre, humble, and chast, and was beloued of the Duke of Fedra, vassall vnto the same King, the Dukes name was Velegrato, a young man, with a seuere and graue countenance, who deserued better the gouernment then any other Pagan, hee was very well estéemed in all the Kingdome, almost equally with the king, for the which ther ingendered in the kings heart a secreat rancour and hatred. This Duke did loue the Princesse who was called Damelis, and it was the Gods will that she should repaye him with the same loue, so that both their heartes being wounded with loue, the one to the other, ỳ fire kindled dayly more and more, in such sort that neither the one nor the other had any imagination but onely to loue, and not knowing how to manifest their griefes, they indured sundrye great passions. Then loue which continually séeketh occasions, did on a time set before this duke a Gentlewoman, which thing séemed to be wrought by the order of ỳ Goddesse Venus. Oh what great feare this knight

" had for to discouer vnto hir all his heart: but in the end, by
" the great industry of this Gentlewoman, there was order
" giuen that these two louers should meete together. Heere I
" will not detaine them that shall read this, in telling of the
" great delight which both of them receiued to see themselues
" together, but such it was that she was made a Ladye. This
" faire Damelis, for that shee could not at hir ease inioye hir
" Velegrato, she did determine to leaue hir own natural coun-
" trey and father, & with this intention, one night being with
" hir louer, shee cast hir armes about his necke and saide. Oh
" my sweet and welbeloued friend, seeing that the soueraigne
" Gods haue bene to me so grateful, that I do deserue to haue
" a louer, let me not finde in thee ingratitude, for that I cannot
" passe my time, except continually I enioy thy sight, and doe
" not muse my Lord at this that I doe say, for that the ouer-
" much loue that I haue to you, doth constraine me to make
" it manifest, and this beleeue of a certauntie, that if thy sight
" be absent frõ me, it will be the occasion, that my hart shall
" lacke his vitall recreation. And you doe well know how ỹ
" the King my father doth beare you no good will, which will
" be the occasion, that we cannot enioy the one the other, as
" my hart desireth: for the which, I haue determined (if you
" doe thinke well thereof) to leaue both my father and Coun-
" trey, & to goe and liue with you alone in a straunge Coun-
" trey. And if you doe denie mee this, verye quickly you shall
" see your welbeloued Lady without life: but I doe beleeue
" you will not deny mee this thing, ỹ which I doe so much de-
" sire, and in whom doth consist so much vertue: and therwith
" shedding a few teares from hir eyes, shee helde hir peace.
" The Duke beeing halfe amazed, aunswered and sayde: Oh
" my loue and sweet Mistresse, wherfore haue you any doubt
" that I wil not fulfil & accomplish your desire in all things,
" therfore out of hand put all things in order, that your will
" is to haue done: for what more benefite and contentment
" can I receiue, then to enioy you continuallye, in such sort,
" that neither of vs may depart the one from the other: and if
" it so fall out, that Fortune will be so contrary against vs,

that

that wée bée ſpyed, & wée bée taken, & ſuffer death together, what moze glozy can ther bée vnto mée, thẽ to dy with thée. Therefoze do not trouble your ſelfe my ſweet Lady & Miſtreſſe, but giue mée time that I may go into my Country, and to giue ozder in ſuch ſozt that your whole will may bée accompliſhed, & in the meane tyme make your ſelfe in a redyneſſe foz your departure: & ſo with this concluſion they toke theyz leaue the one of the other, and the Duke went into his Country, giuing ozder foz to accompliſh his determined thought. So when that all things was put in good ozder, the Duke with as much ſecrecie as might bée, returned vnto the place whereas Damelis was, very well armed, advertiſing hir, how hée was come foz to carry hir away, who was in a readineſſe foz to accompliſh hir deſire, and had in hir company the Gentlewoman hir ſecretary that was called Floria, and ſo in great ſecret and without making any noyſe, they departed out of the Kings Pallaice hir father, & went vnto the place whereas the Duke was tarrying their cõming, who when hée ſaw them without any moze tarrying, hée mounted hir vpon an ambling Palfray, and hir Gentlewoman vpon another, and toke the way towards Meſapotamia with all haſt poſſible. They vſed ſuch diligence, that without béeing perceiued, they went out of the kingdome, & came to a place whereas the Duke had left certayne damſels and ſquires, foz to beare Damelis company, whom they found all in a readineſſe foz to take theyz iourney, and foz that they were miſtruſtfull they would not tarry ther, but paſſed thzough Meſepotamia till they came vnto Armenia, whereas without any miſfoztune they came vnto the riuer Derraus vnto a place whereas the déepe and cléere Waters dwe ſtrike continually vppon a mightie Rocke, vppon the which was an old and auncient building, and in ſome parts it was very ſtrong, and in other parts by reaſon of the antiquitie it was fallen downe.

And foz to enter into it, they muſt of fozce goe vp certayne ſtayzes, and béeing aloft, they thought it a conuenient place foz theyz dwelling, whereas they might without all feare of

béeign

" bæing found, liue peceable, enioying the one the others loue,
" and not far from that place there was a small village, frõ
" whence they might make theyr prouisiõ of all ỳ was neces-
" sarie, for the mayntayning of theyr bodies. Great ioye and
" pleasure these two louers receiued, when they found them-
" selues in such a plãce whereas they might take their ease, &
" enioye their loues. The Duke delighted in no other thing,
" but to goe a hunting with his Squires and pages, leauing
" his swæt Damelis, accompanyed with hir damosels in that
" strong house, aduising them alwaies not to open the gates,
" except they should answere vnto a watch word, and many
" tymes for hir contentment, Damelis would goe and mæte
" with the Duke at the gates. So in this order they lyued to-
" gether foure yæres: but in the ende. Time who neuer rest-
" eth in one degræ, did take from them their rest, giuing them
" double trauaile and sorrow. For that when the king hir fa-
" ther found hir missing, the sorrow and griefe was so much
" that he receiued, that he kept his chamber a long tyme, and
" would not come forth of it, & if it had not bæne for speciall
" businesse, necessarie for his Kingdome, hæ would (as I say)
" neuer haue come forth: & although hæ was occupyed very
" much therin, yet could he not forget his great griefe, calling
" many times vpon his welbæloued daughter. All this foure
" yæres hæ passed the time in great heauinesse, which euery
" day increased more his sorrow and griefe. Of all which sor-
" row, a great Magitian whose name was Demofronte, by his
" learning came to the knowledge off, and strayght way by
" his science hæ made a chariot to bæ brought, that was go-
" uerned by two flying Dragons, and put himself therein, who
" in a very short space, was carryed whereas this sorrowfull
" King dwelt, & hæ chanced to come at such tyme as hæ was
" alone in his chamber with his accustomed sorrow, and la-
" menting the losse of his Daughter: & without bæing sæne
" of any person, hæ entred whereas this afflicted King was,
" and sayde.

" King, leaue off this sorrow and great lamentation, and

" pre-

prepare thy selfe to seeke some other remedy: and if thou wilt doo that which I wil tel thee, I wil not delay but bring thee into the place whereas thy daughter is, with this condition, that ỹ shalt not giue hir nor hirs any punishment for that she hath not offended in any other thing, but in lack of acknowledging hir duety.

The King beeing greatly troubled when hee saw him, arose from the chayre wherin hee was set, & sayd. If I might see my Daughter, I could not but vse the clemency of a father. This word onely doth suffice mee sayde Demofronte, & without speaking any more words, vsing of his learning & Arte, hee put the King into his Charyot gouerned by those flying Dragons, & in a small time hee was carryed, & put in to the place whereas his daughter was, at such time as the Duke was about his accustomed hunting. This Magitian called at the gate, and gaue the watch word that the Duke was accustomed to giue, & when Damelis heard it, shee hir selfe went vnto the gate & dyd open it: and when shee went to imbrace him, thincking it to bee hir loue, hee saw that it was hir father, and wt a sodaine alteration she gaue a great shrike and retourned and put hir selfe within the house. The king hir father somwhat angry dyd follow hir saying. It doth little auaile thee Damelis to run away, for that thou shalt dy in my power, paying mee with thy death, the great dishonour which my royall Crowne hath receiued. So hee followed hir till hee came vnto the Chamber whereas hir damosells were, amongst whom this fearefull Lady did hide hir selfe, who seeing hir to enter in that sort, they arose to see what was the occasion of so great chaunge and trouble. Florio, straygbt way dyd know the King, who had a wrath full countenance, & shee fearing the harme which shuld happen vnto hir Lady put hir selfe ouer hir & gaue terryble & loud shrikes. The King as one kindeled in great wrath forgetting that which hee had promised vnto the Magitian, layd hand on his sword, saying: It doth not profit thee Damelis to flye from the death, for thy desert is such, that thou canst

" canſt not eſcape it, for héere my owne arme ſhall bée ỳ killer
" of mine owne fleſh. Then Damelis anſwered and ſayd: Ah
" my Lord & father, will you bée now as cruell vnto mée, as
" you were wont to bée pitiful, appeaſe your wrath, and with-
" draw your vnmercifull ſword, and harken vnto this which
" I will ſay, in diſcharging my ſelfe in that you charge mée
" with all: You ſhall vnderſtand my Lord and father, that I
" was ouercome & conſtrayned by loue for to loue, forgetting
" thy fatherly loue, and my duety, yet for all that hauing pow-
" er to accompliſh the ſame, it was not vnto your diſhonour,
" for that therwith I do liue honourably with my huſband.
" Then the king ſayd, oh falſe traytor and without faith, hold
" thy peace, what reſon haſt thou to make this excuſe, hauing
" committed ſo great an errour. And in ſaying this héé lift vp
" his ſword for to ſtrik hir, the foure damſels ỳ were there,
" with terrible ſhrikes they threw themſelues vpon that vn-
" happy Damelis, offering their bodies vnto ỳ fury of that cut-
" ting ſword, for to ſet at liberty their Lady & miſtreſſe. The
" King who ſaw them in this ſort make hir defence, with his
" left hand héé pulled them off from hir, ſome by the hayre of
" the head, & ſome by the ſhoulders, for to make way that héé
" might execute his determined purpoſe, and none to make a-
" ny reſiſtance agaynſt him, Florio when ſhée ſaw the King
" determined to kil his daughter, like vnto a Lyoneſſe ſhe hung
" about his neck and ſayd: Oh mad dog, what determynati-
" on is this that thou doſt bring for to do euil vnto the moſt
" chaſt and loyall Lady in all the world, is it a new thing for
" loue to vſe ſuch like déeds: vnto thy ſelfe may bée attributed
" the occaſion of all this euill, and thou art in the fault therof,
" for that thou wert ſo malitious and ſo full of miſchiefe, that
" ſhée durſt not giue thée to vnderſtand of hir ſodain loue. The
" words & teares of Floria dyd little profit with the King, but
" rather like a wilde Boare in the wilderneſſe, béeing compaſ-
" ſed with a company of dogs doeth ſhake himſelfe: euen ſo
" the King dyd ſhake his members, & threw Floria from him,
" and with double wrath héé dyd procure to execute his fury,
" but the damſells with terrible ſhrikes, ſometimes one and

ſometimes another dyd diſturb him, tyll ſuch tyme as with his cruell hand betweene the Damoſells, hée thruſt in his poynt of his ſharp ſwoord, and with the force of his wretched arme hée thruſt it, tyll it paſſed through hir breaſt, & came forth at hir back. (The wiſe Democrites when that hée receiued the greateſt contentment in his hart, would weep to think vpon the great vnquietneſſe and diſcontentment that ſhould follow: euen ſo this vnhappie Damelis, when ſhée was moſt at quiet and delight with hir proſperous life, then fortune did turne it vnto hir ſodaine death.) At this time the Magitian came into the chamber, and when hée ſaw ỳ King contrary vnto that which hée promiſed him, had done ỳ wilful act, hée begæan to blaſpheme agaynſt himſelfe, for that hée had bæne the occaſion of all that euill, and with an yrefull voice hée ſaid. O cruell murderer that in this ſort haſt deceiued mée, I will giue thée thy payment according vnto thy deſerts, in placing thy cruel body, whereas thou ſhalt continually lament this thy daughters death, leauing a liue the fame of hir with thy lamẽtation. And in ſaying theſe words hée drew a booke out of his boſome, and reading on it, hée made a great cloud to appéere in the ſkies very black, which was brought by terrible and haſty windes, the which came with a very great tempeſt and ſtorme: and when the ſkies wared cléere, then was there ſéene héere this fortreſſe, wher in this cruell King of Arabia is inchanted, and this ſorrowfull Velegrate and his Damſels: and hée that is deſirous to ſée how and in what ſort, let him blow this Horne, and ſtraight way the gates ſhall bée open, but héere I do aduertiſe him, that the goeing out will bée doubtfull.

And hérewith hée made an ende of this lamentable Hiſtory: the reſt you ſhall vnderſtand in the chapter that followeth.

¶How that Claridiano after hee had read the Hiſtorie in the parchment, blew the Horne, wherewith the gates were opened: and how reſiſtance was made at the entrie, and of all that paſſed about the ſame. Cap. 21.

The

THe Greek with great ſtrength dyd blow the inchaunted Horne, in ſuch ſort, that all along the Riuer the ſound was heard. At the very ſame inſtant they begaanne to open the gate with ſo great noyſe as when they opened the hundred gates of the Temple of Appollo, at the ſight of the couragious Troyan. So when this valyant Claridiano ſaw the gate open, hee looked in thereat to ſee if hee could ſee any thing, and hee ſaw that it was very darke, and for to enter in thereat, hee ſaw that it was requiſite to leaue his horſe, and with great lightneſſe hee left the ſaddle, and deliuered him vnto Fidelio for to keepe him, and without any care whatſoeuer ſhould happen, hee ſhrowded himſelfe with his ſheeld, & his ſword in his hand, hee thruſt himſelfe into that darkneſſe, and when hee was tenne paces within, without ſeeing of any, hee receiued a blow, the thing ỳ ſtrok him howling lyke vnto a vvolfe which is all night alone in the wilderneſſe, & with the blow which hee receiued, it was ſo furious, that it made him almoſt recoyle ſo far backe, as he had entered, which cauſed in ỳ Prince a great deale more courage, & as a man beſide himſelfe, hee began to lay about him, ſtryking on the one ſide, and on the other, not knowyng where hee dyd ſtryk, and in this ſort hee went forwards his way through that great darkeneſſe till ſuch time as hee ſaw lyght, & going farther in, hee came into a great court, in the which hee could ſee but one little doore, towards the which hee went, but hee could not come nigh it, for that hee was diſturbed by a furious beaſt which aroſe out of the court, & went towards the doore, whether ỳ Prince went with great ſwiftneſſe. The couragious Greek dyd not let to feele ſome alteration, to ſee a beaſt ſo deformed. It was of body bigger then an Elephant, and was all couered with hard party coloured ſhells and ſcales: the tayle was very long, and ſomewhat big, and it had foure feete, and each of them had two long clawes with verye ſharp nayles: the necke was a yearde long, and it had the face of a woman, and out of hir head,

procéded two mightye great and huge hornes very sharp Hir spæch was very perfect and clære, and made answere in any language that was spoken vnto hir. Shee would make battayle with none, but it should proæde of questions and answeres, and as Galtenor doth affyrme and say, that the inchanted Merlin was shut vp in that beast. This furyous beast when shee saw that the Prince went towards that little dore shee put hir selie béefore him, & disturbed his going: this couragious knight shrowded vnder his shæld, dyd abide hir comming. Then the beast sayd. Stay thy selfe and stand still Claridiano, and dwe not trouble thy selfe to much, for a thing, that for all the dominions and Empyres of thy father thou woldest not haue begun, neyther haue giuen the enterprise. Let mée first know what dyd moue thee to enter into this infernal house, whether thou wert moued by thy great courage & strength, or pretence to set at lyberty those that are héere detained, or for to know somewhat of thy lynage. The Greek meruayled very much when hée heard himselfe named, and of the great reasons which the beast spake vnto him. To whom hée sayde: All that thou hast sayde and spoken of I would bée very glad to atchiue and goe forwards with, for that thereof I should gette vnto my selfe great honour, notwithstanding if thou dost know any thing of my lygnage, I dwe desire thée to tell mée. This furyous beast sayd: Desires & prayings can dw very little with mee, neyther moue mée, except it come of myne owne good will for to tell thée: but for ý I dw know after that I haue told thée, it shal profit thee very little by the knowledge thereof, for that if thou dwst moue battaile with mee, thou shalt remayne broken all to péeces, therefore for this cause I will tell thée.

Giue mee heerin my desire sayd this couragious knight, and for the rest, let each one as it behoueth him procure to defend himselfe. Then the beast with a smyling laughter, and as one that dyd make a iest of all that which was spoken, sayde: Although it will profit thee verie little

in

in giuing to vnderſtand thereof,yet will I tell thée thy generation.

Thou art ſonne and nephew to the two mightieſt Emperours in all the worlo,and the moſt adorned with all vertues.Thy mother is the moſt worthieſt Matrone that euer hath bæne,and none lyke,but ſhe which was kept for thæ, if thou hadſt not entred into this Fortreſſe. Thus in few words,I haue told thæ of thy deſcent, & from whence thou doſt procæde if thou wilt vnderſtand it: and more I dw ſay vnto thée,that thou art not worthy to accompt thy ſelfe of ſuch a lynage, for that they bée Chriſtians,and thou art a Pagan,therefore aſke mæ no more,for I haue tolde thée inough. And now ſéeing I haue accompliſhed thy will and deſire,haue a reſpect what thou wilt dwe with thine owne perſon,for thou wilt returne without making any battaile with mée,thou muſt of tw things chooſe to dwe one of them, which is to returne back agayne that way which thou camеſt, or elſe to declare vnto mée ỹ reſolution of a queſtion, which I will demand of thée. The couragious Greek ſayd, For the one,which is to returne backe againe ỹ way which I came, thou ſhalt vnderſtand that I will not grant vnto, & touching the ſecond,ſay on whatſoeuer it bée thy pleaſure that I ſhall declare,and I will make thée anſwere thereof if I can,and when I cannot with my tongue, héere is my ſword that doth know how to make relation of queſtions, bæ they neuer ſo obſcure and hard.

Thy ſword Claridiano,ſaid the beaſt,will dw as all other haue done hértofore,that haue taken vpon them ỹ ſame enterpriſe,their maſters remaining dead,in recompẽce of their bolde hardyneſſe. Leaue off theſe reaſons ſayde Claridiano, & demand what thy pleaſure is,or elſe ſuffer mæ to goe forwards on my iourney, & if of neceſſitie for to make an end hereof,I muſt haue battaile with thæ,come on let vs bégin wout any more tarrying. Haſt thou ſo much haſt ſayd the beaſt, I dwe promiſe thæ that quickly thou ſhalt ſæ thy ſelfe in that perplexitie,that thou ſhalt repent thy ſpéde. Tell mæ Claridiano,what beaſt is that when it is firſt borne

that

that goeth on foure fete, & afterward on two, and in ỳ end on three: If thou declare vnto me my question, I am content to let thee passe and to follow thy iourney. This question dyd put this valyant warriour in great thought in himself, his eyes fixed on the ground, searching all his memorye & vnderstanding, but yet he could not happē to know what thing it should be that was demaunded, & lifting vp his eyes hee sayd: I doe not know with my small vnderstanding what to answere thee, therfore my sword shall accomplish that which in my wit doth lacke. And in saying these words hee imbraced his sheld, and firming his sword in his hand, hee began his terrible & fymerous battayle. The furious beast hissing like vnto a Snake, did withdraw himselfe somewhat backwards, & with great violence did stretch out his long necke, and bearing his head somewhat low, shee pretended with his hornes to make hys encounter, the Prince stood still till that the beast drew somewhat nigher him, & would not at that abyde the furyousnesse of that blow, but rather cléering himselfe from it by stepping on the one side, with a light leape towards the left hand, and passing this furyous beast by missing her blow, he stroke an ouerthwart blow at his with so great fury and force, which lighted vpon ỳ middest of his taile (that although she carried it very low, for his most aduauntage, for that wherwith she did most offend & defend) yet for all that the Princes fortune was such, that the blow chanced betwéene two scales, & with a trice it was cut a sunder in the middest: Oh how furyous and outragyous was this deformed beast when shee felt his selfe so sore wounded, & turning his selfe as the winde against ỳ Prince before he could make his defence, that néeds he must receiue vpon his strong armour a blow with those long and sharp hornes, the blow was gyuen him with so great force, that it ouerthrew him to the ground, and séeing him in this sort, with a diuellysh rage and yre she ran towards him, procuring to claspe him betwyxt hys sharpe clawes, and by reason of hys great fury & rage, she had not so much time, but passed by & could not fasten any hold on him. The Gréke

was meruaylouſly troubled at that mighty blow, which he receiued, ẏ beaſt with double fury returned vnto ẏ Knight to ſtrike him as ſhe did before, the Greeke did abide his comming, with his ſword verye firme in his hand, and at ſuch time as the beaſt would ſtrike hir blow, bearing hir head very low. The Prince at that preſent was not idle, but diſcharged his myghty blow with great ſtrength, & ſtroke the beaſt betwirt both the hornes, but by reaſō of the great hardneſſe his ſword could not enter, yet he made hyr to declyne hir head to ẏ ground ſpyte of hyr teeth. This furyous beaſt ſeeing that ſhee had miſſed hyr blow, tourned that which remayned of hir tayle & ſtroke him in the middeſt of his body a terrible blow, in ſuch ſort that if ſhee had had the reſt, ſhe had parted him a ſunder with ẏ furyouſneſſe therof, but for all that it made him fall to the ground, hee was not ſo ſoone fallen downe, when that the monſter ſtroke him with hir ſharp hornes very ſtronglye, yet for all that there was no ſigne made on his armour by reaſon of the great hardneſſe, but all the harme was by the ſtrength of the blow, his body was ſomewhat bruſed. Oh holye God, & with what ire was this Greek brought in ſubiection, at ẏ tyme if a myghtye & hard mountayne had beene before him, he would haue torne it in peeces. Now was ther no reſiſtaunce to be made againſt his mighty cutting ſword, he threw his ſheeld from him to the ground, and toke his ſword faſt in both his hands, and abode the comming of this beaſt, who retourned to ſtryke him agayne, very much meruayling to ſee how lyttle hyr blowes did profit hyr. The Knight ſtode ſtyll very firmely in his place, & when the beaſt put downe hyr head, hee diſcharged his blow on hir, and chaunced vpon the one ſide of hir head, that hir hard ſkull and ſtrong ſkinne was inſuffycient to withſtand the ſharpneſſe of his ſword, but that it cut the fleſh and carried away one of hir hornes, wherewith this beaſt remayned very ſore hurt and wounded, who feeling hir ſelfe in that perplexity, ſhe withdrew hir ſelfe backe and ſayde.

O Claridiano and Pagan dogge, doe not truſt ſo much

in

in thy great ſtrength, neither in that thou haſt done mée ſo much harme, for I will doe ſo much that thou ſhalt not returne vnto Grecia, thy naturall Countrye, and leſſe ſhalt thou inioye the Paſtora, for that as yet thou haſt not proued of my ſharpe clawes and nayles, nor of theyr fury. The Prince anſwered and ſayd: Diuell, make thy defence by all the meanes thou canſt, for all ſhall bée lyttle inough. And in ſaying theſe wordes he firmed his ſword in his hand, then this furious monſter began to make a new noiſe in hiſſing, and approched towards the Prince, making as though ſhée would ſtrike him with hir horne that remained, and when ſhée came nigh him, vpon a ſodaine ſhée tourned hir tayle with ſo great lightneſſe, that the Prince could not make his defence, and ſtroke him vpon the helme in ſuch ſort that ſhe ouerthrew him to the ground almoſt without any remembrance, the Prince was not ſo ſone fallen but this monſter leapt vnto him with hir hard and ſharpe nailes, and griped his hard harnes, thinking with them to teare him all to pe-ces, but ſhe did him no more harme but only wearied him, in tumbling him vp and downe, yet this inuincible knight was not without great care to prouide for himſelfe and did not loſe one iot of his ſtrength and courage, but rather with a double ſtomack & furious courage procured to clére himſelfe out of the beaſts nailes, and with the great ſtrength & polliçie that he vſed, in ſpite of the monſter he clérer himſelf, and being at liberty, with great lyghtneſſe bée aroſe on his féete, he was not ſo ſone vp when the beaſt ſtroke him with his one horne which remained, in ſuch ſort that he was conſtrained to fall downe againe to the ground, the beaſt procured to catch him agayne in hyr clawes, but ſhe could not for that the Prince with great lightneſſe roſe vp agayne, & hauing his ſword in his hand he tarried hir comming, the beaſt made a ſhew as though he would ſtrike at the Prince with his horne, but when ſhée ſaw him with his ſword aloft, ſhe raiſed hir ſelfe vp on hir hinder féete, and fell vpon the Prince, imbracing him with hir nailes about his backe ſcratching and pinching his armour, but it didde lyttle

profit him by reason of the great hardnesse. The Prince séeing himselfe so bewrapt with this monster, with great strength and pollicie brought his sword downe vnder the beast, and thrust the poynt into hyr bellye vp to the hard hiltes. This furious monster when shee felt hir selfe so sore wounded, greased the Prince so hard betwéene hir clawes, that he thought verily she would haue broken all his bones in his body, & if he should haue endured long in this order, it had not bene possible to haue escaped the death, but that mortall wound did so trouble the beast, & was so grieuous vnto hyr, that shee was constrained to let him loose, and to withdraw hyr selfe backe, for to put some remedye therein, and sayde vnto the Prince: Thy thou Infidell without all faith thou hast slaine mee, but tarry yet there doth remayne in me courage for to make thée that thou shalt not goe auaunting of thy selfe, and bearing hir head very low shee prested vnto the prince, thinking to take him with hir horne and to ouerthrow him, with pretence to get him againe betwixt hir clawes and nayles, & although she was dying yet not to leaue him till she had torne him all to peeces. This courageous knight did abide hir comming, and perceyuing hyr deceit, when hee thought that shee would strike him he stepped on the one side, and in the passing the Prince stroke hyr so mightye a blow vpon the necke, that it cut the same a sunder, so that that horrible and wonderfull monster fell downe dead to the ground. The knight with the long trauaile and wrastling remained verye wearye, in such sort, that hee was constrained to sit downe to ease himselfe vpon a banke that was there made against a wall, giuing great thankes vnto his Gods for the victorye which they had giuen him. A good while after when that hee had somewhat eased himselfe of his former trauaile, his courageous heart would not suffer him to remaine long there, but straight waies hee arose vp and went towardes the lyttle doore which was in the wall, and when he came to it he saw that it was made all of verye strong yron, and in the key hole thereof was a keye, with the which hee did open it.

The

The Knight entered in thereat, and saw that it was very darke, & it seemed vnto him that it should be a very great hall, and therin he heard very fearefull howlings, yet for all this the valiant Greeke did not lose any of his accustomed courage, but entered in farther, and toke off his gantlet frō his left hand, wheron he wore a meruailous great and fine Diamond, ỹ which he had in a ring, that gaue so much light that he might plainely see all that was in the hall, the which was very great & wide, and vpon the walls were paynted the figures of many fiends & diuells, and on the one side of the hall he saw a tombe all couered with blacke, and vppon it ther lay a man with a pale colour, who at certaine times gaue a meruaylous & grieuous sigh, caused by the burning flames that proceeded from vnder the tombe, being such, that it seemed his body should be conuerted therewith into burning coales, the flame was so stinking that it made ỹ prince somewhat to retire himselfe from the place where hee saw that horrible spectacle. He which lay vpon the tombe, casting his eies a side, saw the Prince, and knowing him to bee an humane creature, with an afflicted voice he said: Who art thou sir Knight, that art come vnto so sorrowfull a dwelling, for that thou canst see nothing in it but great torments. Then the Knight saide, but tell me who art thou that with so much griefe doest demaund of me that which I stand in doubt to tel thee. I am a King of Arabia (answered he which without all consideration, with my cruell hand did pearce through the white breast of my welbeloued daughter, wo be to me, for that she at once did pay hir offence by death, but I a miserable wretch wō many torments doe lyue dying. Whē this worthy knight was about to answere him, he saw come forth from vnder the tombe a damsell, who had a very yealow and wanne colour, and by hir face it seemed ỹ she should be very sore afflicted, & with a sorrowfull voice she saide. O Claridiano vnfortunate, what dost thou seeke in this infernall lodging, wheras cannot be giuen thee any other pleasure but mortall torments, for ỹ thou wert so bold as to kil my keeper of ỹ dore, & ther is but one thing that can cleere thee frō it, &

this cannot be told thee by any other but by mée, and yet I will not tell thée except thou doest graunt me one thing that I will aske of thée. The Prince who was greatly amazed of all that he had seene, and very much beholding the countenaunce of the Damsell that was very leane & feeble, aunswered & said: The Gods who are gouernours of my liberty will doe their pleasures, but in that touching the graunt of thy request, I neuer to Lady or Gentlewoman denyed any thing that they would demaund of me, being a thing that I could put remedye in, but with all my power & strength I was readye to fulfill the same, therefore demaund what thy pleasure is, for that I am ready in all things that toucheth thy remedye. Then shée sayd, Claridiano looke well and haue a respect vnto ý which thou dost promise, & sée ý thou dost performe thy promise, for thou shalt vnderstand ý thou fulfilling the same doest giue libertye vnto thy selfe & vnto mée. Gentlewoman aske what thy pleasure is sayd ý knight: that which I demaund sayd the damsell is, ý thou giuest me the ring which thou hast vpon thy finger, for thou shalt vnderstand that in it is my remedye. In demaunding of that sayd the prince, thou dost rather procure my harme, & therfore it doth not behoue me to giue it thée. To whō she sayd: O euill & false knight that doest not performe that which thou hast promised, sée ý thou doest accomplish the same, or else to the contrary thou shalt lyue dying. Oh false Magitian & cursed witch sayd Claridiano, doest thou thinke by thy deceitfull threatnings to deceiue me? It is not thy inchantments neither thy fained words ý shall get the ring frō my finger. Then she sayd, ý shalt sée how lytle thy great strēgth shal profit & anaile thée against me, if ý wilt tarry a while, and therwith vpon a sodayne she layd holde vpon his hand with so great strength, that it lacked but lytle of pulling ý ring frō his finger, but this politike Grécke helped his left hand with his right, with so great strength, ý he put away that Magitian ý she could not pull it off. This false inchanter did still stand in this cōtention to get the ring frō him, and contended in such sort that he forgot the respect that he

should

shoulde haue vnto Ladies and Gentlewomen, and stroke hir with his right hand that was armed such a buffet vpon ỹ cheeke, that hir fantasticall body gaue a great fall vnto the ground, shée was not so sone fallen, when that with a timerous noise she threw hir selfe into that dolefull Sepulcher, making a terrible and wonderfull howling within, & this vnhappye King bare hir companye wᵭ his grieuous lamentations, of ỹ which the Prince had great compassion, and it seemed vnto him that he heard a voice which came forth of the tombe, which did offer to talk vnto him, & that he myght vnderstand his reason he drew nigh vnto ỹ tombe, & heard that he said these words: Oh knight borne in Grecia, & nursed & brought vp in Trapobana, if thou wilt goe out of this place & make an end of my continuall torments, procure to giue three blowes vpon this my Sepulchar, with the which thou shalt deliuer thy selfe and me likewise, & all those that are héere put in this infernall lodging. This inuincible yong man sayd: There is so litle truth in this house, that I stand in doubt whether I may beléeue thy words or not, notwithstanding tell me who thou art, then shal I know whether I may giue credit vnto thy wordes. Then hée sayd: I am that vnhappye Merlin, borne in Gallia, and deceiued by hir who would haue deceiued thée, therfore thou maist beléeue me, for that I doe tell thée the truth, and if thou dost as I doe tell thée ther will come vnto both vs great profit. Tell me Merlin, said ỹ Prince, how doest thou know that I was borne in Grecia, and brought vp in Trapobana, if thou doest know I pray thée tell me who was my father, & of what Empire or kingdome he is Lord. To whom Merlin said: Trebatio is thy grandfather, & thy father is the great Alfebo, & the excellent Claridiana is thy mother, from whom Galtenor did steale thée in company with thy sister, the most fairest creature in all the world. And in saying these words he held his peace, and with dolorous grones he began to curse himselfe and it was so grieuous that the Prince withdrew himselfe because he would not heare it, & without any more tarrying he embraced his sheeld and layd hand vpon his good sword,

and with great violence he went vnto the Sepulcher, and as he would haue stroke therat, ther appeared before him a giant, the which the prince toke to be ỳ giant that he slew in the mountains Nabateos, who stroke the prince vpon ỳ brest with both his hands ỳ he made him to recoile backe a great way, whether he would or not: notwithstanding with great discreation he kept himself vpright, & with wonderful lightnesse, accompanied with no lesse anger, he threw his sheild at his back, & toke his sword in both his hãds, & went to strike the giant a mortall blow, at which time ther appered before him a whole legion of diuels, w̃ flesh hooks in their hands, with the which they did torment him. The valiant Greeke with greath wrath and double force put himselfe amongst thẽ, striking on euery side such terrible blowes, that in spite of them he came vnto the tombe, & with great lightnesse hee stroke on it two blowes, but hee had no time to strike the third, for that this diuellish company did put him from it w̃ their terrible assaults & striking of him. Oh in what great trauaile and perplexitie this knight found himself amongst this wicked and diuellish generation, for to defend himselfe, that they might not driue him from the Tombe, and toke great courage, and stretching forth his mighty and strong arme, hee so flourished about him and kept such a sturre amongest them, that hee might strike the third blow vppon the Tombe, which was with so great noise and rumbling, that he was constrained to fall to the ground without any remembrance, hee lay not long in this traunce, but comming agayne to his remembrance, hee found himselfe by the ryuers side, and nigh vnto him was his horse and his Squyre with him, without seeing any fortresse or dytch nor any signe thereof, but the most they saw was two great lumpes very darke which flew in the ayre, gyuing verye grieuous shrikes, and beholding well what it should bee, they saw that one was the vnhappy Merlin, and with him a legion of Diuells, that went tormenting him, and the other was a chariot, carryed by two Dragons, and before it was that furious beast which hee slew, and hee saw

that

that there was in that Chariot certayne knights, Ladies & Gentlewomen depriued of theyr vnderstanding. Lykewise he saw a man with a whip in his hand, who dyd gouern the Dragons and that furyous monster, who with a loude voyce sayd. Nephew vnto Trebatio, dwe not thou thincke that thy strength is sufficient, for to set at liberty, and to cléer out of payne this vnnaaurall and cruell King, and in saying these wordes, hée whipped forwards those terryble Dragons, and with a trice they vanished out of the Princes sight, leauing him somewhat troubled, and not without great reason.

¶How Claridiano beeing ouercome with the loue of the Pastora, dyd put himselfe in shepheards apparaile, the better to comfort himselfe with hir delycate presence, and of all that happened therein. Chap. 22.

THe Prince remayned meruaylously amazed of all that had past, and with some griefe, for that hée saw that all his labour and trauayle was to little effect. His squyre dyd not loke for his retourne so quickly, but layde him downe vppon the grasse and fell a sléepe. The Prince with his foote awaked him, who so soone as hée had opened his eyes, hée loked as one that had bene scarred. The warlike Greeke demanded his horse, and mounting on him, hée toke his way towards Ierosolima, and continually had in his imagination ỳ names of his Grandfather, father & mother, with intent to goe towards Greece, with all hast possible. So hée trauayled in a great confusion whether it should be true or not, which they told him that the two Emperours should hée his grandfather and father. Lykewise hée had griefe to sée himselfe subiect vnto Cupide. So with these & such like thoughts, hée came vnto Ierosolima, whereas hée was meruaylously well receiued of the King and Quéene, likewyse of the Princesse the Kings Daughter, who dyd him great honour. The Princesse straight way vnderstood wher-

fore hée came thether, & who was the occasion thereof: and when shée knew that hée was in his Chamber in quyet, in the company of two of hir Gentlewomen shée went to visit him. The Grèek receiued great contentment at hir cõming, and the Princesse with amorous and swèet words procured to know of him, if that were true which shée had in hir thought, in such sort that Claridiano dyd discouer vnto hir, all his whole hart and pretence, saying: that hée was determined in shepheards apparayle, to goe and sée that Pastora, the causer of all his griefe. The Princesse whẽ shée saw that all was true shée had conceiued, shée had not so much discretion as to declare vnto him the griefe of hir hart, but with a dissembling sigh shée sayd. Oh loue, what great falshood is in thée: and without saying any more shée remayned very pensiue, with hir eyes loking downwards to the ground, & dissembling hir griefe, shée did offer vnto him, all fauour and diligence, such as hir royall estate was able to giue, which was not a little, for that shée was Lady of all that Riuer and lands therabouts, the Grèek dyd giue hir great thanks for hir gentle offer, and with this determynation, the Princesse returned vnto hir chamber, whereas with many troublesome and grieuous thoughts, shée passed away the night. So when the morning was come, shée was not vnmindfull of that which shée had promised, but cõmanded to bée made Shepheards apparaile very rich, and commanded to cal vnto hir the head gouernour of all the cattle of hir father the King, whom shée commaunded that the Shepheard which shée would giue vnto him, should bée well loked vnto, and serued in such sort, as though it were hir fathers owne royall person.

The Shepheards apparayle was quickly made, and the Princesse one nyght turning into the chamber of the Grèek, asked of him, if hée had determyned any other thing then that which hée had told hir, to whom hée sayd, that hée was still in that determynation. Then the Princesse sayd, that all which hée had commaunded was in a readynesse, and in

that

that order as his pleasure was. The Greeke gaue hir great thanks, with such amorous words as hir loue dyd deserue, and the Greek dyd strayght way apparaile himselfe in that Shepheards apparayle.

The Princesse when hée saw him in that order, with a sorrowfull countenance shée sayd: Knight, I cannot iudge what will come of this: but yet I am sure, that thou goest captiue onely to one, and thou dost leaue captiue more than a thousand, who are in no fault of all this thy griefe. Oh happie Pastora, whose beauty hath so much force, to subiect and bring downe him, whom the Tartarian Gyaunts could not conquere. Oh Gods, why do not I leaue to bée a Princesse, for to bée a Pastora by the Riuer of Euphrates, séeing that my highnesse hath not so much power to atchieue that, which the baseneſſe of this Pastora hath brought into subiection. The great desire which this new Sheapheard had to sée his Pastora, was the occasion that hée would not make any answere vnto the Princesse, but rather dissembled and made as though hée had heard nothing. And strayght way hée put in vre his departure, and taking a man with him to bée his guyde, hée tooke his leaue of the Princesse, and dyd commend Fidelio vnto hir keeping.

So hée departed out of the Citie without any tarryeng, till hée came vnto the principall house of the Kings cattell, whereas hée was receiued of all the Shepheards that were there present, who showed him great courtesie, and the baseneſſe of the apparayle wherwith hée was clad, was not sufficyent to take away the iealousie that they had in him to bée of some noble blood, as appéered by his person, stature and graue countenance: and although they had not béene commanded by ỹ princesse to respect him, yet they could not but doe all reuerence and curtesie vnto him. This new Shepheard, after that hée had giuen them thancks for the entertaynment which they gaue him, hée went forth all alone ranging the fields, and in his hand a Shepheards Crooke. Also hée carryed with him a little Lute, which hée vsed at tymes for to ease and recreate himselfe.

This

This new ſhepheard neuer toke any reſt till ſuch tyme as he came vnto the cléere running riuer. Wher vnder a great and mighty Myrtle træ, hée layd himſelfe downe, & remembring his welbeloued Paſtora, he lifted vp his eyes towards the heauens, & giuing a great ſigh, hée ſayd. Oh Venus ſéeing that it is thy pleaſure, that this thy new vaſſaile ſhould take his firſt ſitting place vnder a Myrtle trée, ſo much of thée eſtæmed and made of, let thy ſ wæt voyce ſo occupy the eares of thy ſon Cupide, that hée may vnderſtand how that in his blindneſſe hée had little reſpect vnto the highneſſe of my perſon in cauſing me to place my affection ſo baſely. Oh Gods, is it poſſible that any baſe attempt ſhould come vnto lyght, but with ỹ authority that belongeth vnto your highneſſe: vpon you I do call, and vnto you I do offer this my wounded breaſt, that you make ſacrifice thereof, for this my boldneſſe, if therein I haue offended, & therewith hée leaned his backe vnto the Myrtle træ, and toke his Lute, and béegan to play as ſ wætly as euer dyd Orpheus, when with his Lute hée made the infernal furyes to ſlæpe. Claridiano with his Lute did not onely bring the furies, but alſo the Quéene Proſerpina, and the auncient Pluto, hée brought into a great perplexity. So likewiſe at times he vttered his ſ wæt voyces that they which dyd heare it, dyd iudge it to bée ſome celeſtiall thing, and not terrenall, and by reaſon that his ſongs dyd procéede from his heart, it dyd in double wyſe ſæme the better. This new ſhepheard thought no body had heard him: but there were other two ſhepheards, who were very atentiue and heard, that hée ſung this ſong which hereafter followeth.

O Yeelded heart, how free and voyde of care
wert thou of late from this oppreſsing payne:
What luckleſſe fate allotted thee this ſhare?
that hopeleſſe thou doſt voyde of help remayne:
Yea, ſo paſt hope, that might may naught auayle,
The burning flames of Cupides coales to quayle.

But fie (fond foole) thou doſt complaine of eaſe,
and faultleſſe Fortune thou beeginſt to blame:
Venus hir ſelfe doth ſeeke thy heart to pleaſe,
in that ſhee mooues thee loue ſo rare a Dame,
Oh Paſtora if I enioye thy ſight,
My very death will bring to mee delight.

Diſdayne not then beeloued for to bee
of him, that needes thy beauty muſt adore
So long as Fates affoord my lyfe to mee,
which ended once, I can lament no more:
And then will chaunce a ioyfull death to mee,
If ſo I hap to dye by hande of thee.

And when hée had made an ende of his ſong, hée helde his peace, for that his wery voyce could not giue him any more tyme, but hee let his Lute fall out of his hands, and croſſing his fingers the one to the other, hée was very penſiue, tyll ſuch tyme as hée heard a ſhepheards voyce accompanined wᵗ a Rebecke, ſweetly ſounding, whom hée heard ſing this ſong as followeth.

WIthin this vale there doth a Paſtor dwell,
that bringeth vp a paſtora full braue,
Which from hir breaſt doth loue all time expell,
ſhee no regard of louers paines will haue.

Nature hir lyke, as yet dyd neuer forme,
Venus hir ſelfe is daſhed at hir view:
Hir breaſt lyke ſnow throwne downe by Hiems ſtorme,
hir hart ſtone hard for all hir gallant hiew.

Great is his griefe that vnto hir is thrall,
and hard his hap that ſues to win hir grace,
Gainſt him ſhee vſeth greateſt hate of all,
for as I ſayd, loue hath in hir no place.

Cupid:

Cupide himſelfe within his ſnare is caught,
yet voyde of help for all hir ſubtill ſhifts:
His words, his wyles, his wrath, auaile him naught,
ſhee ſcornes his darts, and all his double drifts.

And thus ſhee ſhuns the thing that ſundry ſeeke,
And ſcapes vnſcorcht, where others burned bee:
Hir beautie ſhowes hir humble, milde and meeke,
but yet hir hart is ſtaynde with crueltie.

This new ſhepheard was very attentiue vnto that gracious ſong of the other ſhepheard, and when hée heard that hée held his peace, hée would haue returned and ſung again, but hée was diſturbed by hearing a noyſe of people. This gentle ſhepheard when hée heard it, aroſe vp vpon his féete, and went out from vnder the ſhadow of the Trée farther into the Sunne, and ſaw that it was a Shepheard and a Paſtora, which were comming into the place whereas hée was, and when they came vnto him, they did ſalute him very courteouſly. So they ſat downe altogether, and put the new ſhepheard in the myddſt, very much meruayling at his gracious countenance: and with a very good grace & gentle diſpoſition, the Paſtora béeganne firſt to ſpeake, and ſayde: Your ſwéet Muſicke (brother ſhepheard) dyd awake mée, & my brother Coridon out of our ſléep, & wée dw rather chooſe to loſe our natural reſt, then thy conuerſation, accompanied with thy delicate ſong. Wée dw not know, whether that the fayre beauty of Cayſerlinga a Paſtora, brought vp by this delightful riuer, hath bén the occaſion thereof, or any other griefe, which doth raigne in thy hart: but if it bée ſo gentle ſhepheard, that your eyes haue not béeheld nor ſéene ỹ beauty of our Paſtora, dwe you procure not to ſée hir, that your hart bée not taken captiue wᵗ the ſight of hir: for you ſhal vnderſtand, ỹ there is nothing to bée hoped for at hir hands but death, hir diſdaine is ſuch. This ſorrowfull brother of mine, one day dyd ſing béefore hir with his Rebecke, and remained ſo impriſoned with hir, as euer was ſhepheard with

Paſtora.

Paſtora. And if it bée thy Fortune to abide long tyme in theſe parts, thou ſhalt know the great power that hir face and countenance hath, and the great cruelty that ſhée vſeth. Thou ſhalt ſée no other thing alongeſt all this Riuer, but ſhepheards who haue forgot to gouerne & féede theyr ſhéepe, ſitting vnder Trées wounded with hir great beautie and fayreneſſe, & hauing more care to make theyr Rebekes fayre and trim, then to call together theyr cattell, and to delyuer them from the rauening Wolues.

And by reaſon that ſhée doth know that hir beautie is ſo great, ſhée is ſo proude, that ſhée doth make them all equall in hir eſtimation, although not all equall in ſuffering. I do promiſe thée of a truth (gallant ſhepheard) that this Riuer doth ſéeme to bée no other thing, but the habitation of Venus and Cupide. Coridon dyd cut off the words of Galiſmena, and ſayde.

Ah ſiſter Galiſmena, the little accompt that thou doſt make of Loue, doth cauſe thée to ſpeake of that, which thy ſorrowfull brother doth féele. What doeſt thou thinck Galiſmena, that of this my contentious paſſion, I ſhall reape any other benefit, but that I haue put my loue vpon the moſt excellenteſt Paſtora, that euer Nature dyd forme.

Tell mée I pray thée Paſtora, what ſhepheard haue you béelonging vnto this Riuer of Euphrates, vnto whom ſhée doth extend hir thought more then vnto mée. Hold thy peace Coridon ſayd Galiſmena, do not exalt Cayserlinga ſo much: for in hir reſpect thou doeſt not onely put from thée all other Paſtoras, but thou doſt likewiſe diſable all ſhepheardes alongſt this Riuer. Truth it is although that Cayſerlinga doth deſerue much: yet for that ſhée is a woman, ſhée doth not deſerue ſo much, as the worſt Shepheardé in all this our habytation, for that this onely is ſufficient, that bée is a man.

Then ſaid Coridon with great anger: I would it were not thy ſelfe, but ſome other that ſhould ſpeake ſuch words, for that I promiſe thée with the force of my arme, I wold make

him

him to know, that his woꝛds were not true, but very falſe. Then Claridiano dyd interrupt theyꝛ communication, and ſayd. Gentle ſhepheards, let theſe your contentious ceaſe, foꝛ that there commeth nothing of them but anger and falling out: but I dw deſire you that you would ſhew vnto mee this Paſtora, foꝛ that hir fame doth giue mée a deſire to ſée hir. Héere by the riuer of Euphrates ſayd Coridon, in an arbour which is made of very fayꝛe and gréene ſallowes, gallantly wꝛought, there euery moꝛning ſhée doeth combe hir yeolow golden hayꝛe, thether mayſt thou goe very earely in the moꝛning, whereas thou mayſt recreate thy ſelfe of that new ſight. And in the meane time béefoꝛe that thou doſt depart, wée dw deſire thée to tell vs thy name, and what countryman thou art. This new ſhepheard anſwered and ſayd. My name is Filipenſio, I am naturally of Siria, and of the playnes of Caniphia, a kingdome of Chaldea, and the great deſire of theſe gréene fields and freſh féeding which is héere growing about this cléere Riuer, hath bꝛought mée hether, foꝛ to féede a little cattle, the which the gods hath made mée Loꝛd and gouernour of. Ah ſhepheard ſayd Coridon, (with a doloꝛous ſigh) doeſt thou come to féede thy ſhéepe in freſh and gréene medowes, and doſt not know that in ſéeing that Paſtora, thou ſhalt féede loue within thy delicate and tender bꝛeaſt.

So with this, and other ſuch lyke pleaſant communycatyon, they paſſed all that nyght tyll the next moꝛning, and when it was tyme foꝛ to depart, they toke theyꝛ way to the accuſtomed abiding of the beautifull Paſtora, and they met in the way many ſhepheardes, who complayned very much againſt the fury of loue. So vnder a great Hallow Tréé, they ſaw two ſhepheardes, the one dyd complayne of loue very gréeuouſly, and lay all alongſt vppon the ground, and the other was playing vpon a Rebecke, and ſung very ſweetly, wherewith Filipenſio dyd ſtay, and heard that hée ſung as followeth.

Straunge

STraunge is my griefe, yet count I it a gayne:
and great my smart, but small I it esteeme:
In that for hir I suffer all this paine,
whose beautye rare celestiall I doe deeme,

The pangs I feele oppresse my fainting hart,
the hope I haue reuiues the same againe,
Tormenting loue afflicts mee still with smart,
Yet for hir sake I force not to be slaine.

My cause is good, whereby my care is great,
both cause and care I vnto thee replye:
And though with rigor still thou mee intreat,
yet will I ioye that I for thee must dye.

And giuing a dolorous sigh, hee ended his song. The shepheard Filipenso and his company went forwards on theyr way, and passed the time in amorous and swæt communications, not staying in any place, till they came wheras this Pastora had hir abiding, and there they put themselues amongst a companye of thicke træs, vnder one of the which, they saw wher was a shepheard of a meruailous disposition, so that Filipenso did very much behold him, and thought in his imagination by the demeanour of that shepheard, y hee should not same to be of the lignage of shepheards, and turning vnto Coridon, he asked him what he was. They all sate themselues downe vnder a high & mightye sallow træ, nigh vnto the place wheras the other shepheard was at his rest, and Coridon aunswering vnto that which was asked him, said. This is a shepheard of Babylonia, who for to fede his cattell, in the company of other well proportioned shepheards came hether, & with the sight of that Pastora hee felt himselfe full of passions and griefes, by the sight of hir beautye. The companion of this, who is called Tarsides, was he which did most follow and importunate the Pastora: but shee, who is the honestest in all the world, not onelye with sharpe and bitter words did put him from it, but also with

publike diſdaine and hatred: for the which as one hated and not ſet by, he did determine to leaue this valley, reporting that his departure would ſhorten his daies. Alpheſueo, for ſo is this ſhepheard called, as one ý was more ſtronglyer wounded with loue, determined to remaine and to perſeuer in his ſute. At this time, Alpheſueo did awake, and take an inſtrument in his hand which he had, and began to play on it verye ſweetly, ſinging theſe verſes following.

THe drops of raine in time the Marble pierce,
Submiſsion makes the Lyons hart relent:
But Loue thy cruell torments are ſo fierce,
That miſchiefes new thou daily doſt inuent.
For ſhe, whoſe ſight my hart in ſunder rent,
Regardeth neyther of my faith, nor griefe,
Nor yet yeelds death, which is my ſole reliefe.

This ſong he ſung ſo dolefully, that it gaue plainely to vnderſtand his grieuous paine: and by his wordes that hee was not of the lignage of ſhepheards. At this time the ſon of Tona did begin to appeare out of his golden Horizon, & to ſhew himſelfe vpon the face of the earth, gliſtering with his beames vppon the cleere waters of Euphrates, likewiſe Fauonius and Zephyrus did verye ſweetely and ſoftlye blow vpon the greene leaues, & made a delicate harmonye, at ſuch time as the moſt faireſt Cayſerlinga, accompanied with high thoughts, & with hir ſheepe that ſhee had in charge. for hir recreation came forth. and a great company of ſhepheards following hir, who were as full of ſorrowes and thoughtes for hir loue. as ſhee cleane voyd & without regard of them, and when ſhe had left hir ſhepe in a greene place feeding ſhee went and ſate downe in a place not very far from thence, where Filipenſo and his company were, and when ſhee was ſet downe, ſhe pulled off a knit caule from hir head, where in was wrapped hir haire. letting it fall & diſpearſe it ſelfe all abroad hir backe, and taking out from hir white & chriſtalline breaſt a combe, ſhee began to kembe hir haire, hir

hands and fingers seeming to bee of white yuorye. All this did this vnknowen Filipenso beholde, and was in that perplexity, that he did occupye his vnderstanding on no other thing, but in beholding of hir. The discreet Pastora Galismena did well perceiue it, for that he was in a dumpe s said neuer a word. Then shee with hir hands stroke him vppon the breast to call him to remembraunce, and sayd: Gentle shepheard, hearken and giue attendant eare vnto the swæt verses, which the amorous shepheards will sing, and let not this new sight so trouble thee. And therewith Coridon toke his Rebecke, and began to play very swætly, and song these verses as followeth.

Fayre Pastora, cease off delay,
with speed declare the certaintye,
Whether thou wilt my loue repay:
if not, then know that I must dye.

I Wish for life that I might thee adore,
And largely shew the lone to thee I beare:
And if that thou offended seeme therefore,
with speede by speech let it to me appeare,
Which done, then know that for a certaintye,
thy sentence giuen I am prepard to dye.

Thou well doest see, or plainely maist perceiue,
that long time since I had thee in regard:
Frame not thy lips thy louer to deceiue,
with scoffes and scornes returne not thy reward
Which if thou doe, I neuer will replye,
But meekelie yeeld, as ready prest to dye.

And hærewith hee made an end of his sorrowfull and grævous song: and then another shepheard began to sing with a merualyous and swæt voyce, these verses following.

Reward not him that loues thee, with diſdayne:
Leaſt Loue at length, repay the like againe.

EXtend not force againſt the yelded wight,
ſhun not his ſight that ſeeketh thee to ſerue,
Thy willer well reward not with deſpight,
forget him not that fauour doth deſerue,
Neither triumph in his tormenting payne:
Leaſt as thou meat'ſt, Loue meaſure thee agayne.

Redreſſe my paynes O Paſtora full faire!
the heauens, my hart, thy ſight may them perceiue,
Let not my hope bee daſhed with deſpaire:
for then thou wilt my corps of life beereaue.
Offend not Loue by laughing at my payne,
Leaſt like for like, hee render thee againe.

With great griefe this ſorrowfull Menalcas made an end of his ſong, and after him there were other ſhepheards that ſung many ſongs full of ſweet & amorous verſes, the which for ỹ I wil not ſeeme tedious, I do let paſſe: but the laſt ſhepheard of all, called Alpheſiueo, ſung theſe verſes following.

WHat needeth threats gainſt him that is a thrall
O rurall Nymph? (whoſe rigor doth excell)
Ponder my fault, and thou ſhalt finde it ſmall,
Yea nought but this, that I doe loue thee well.

Hard breaſts they ſay doe tender harts encloſe,
I know it true, and finde it to my ſmart,
Ah paſtora, thy ſelfe are none of thoſe,
thy breaſts are ſoft, but ſtonye is thy hart.

The ſhepheardes did well vnderſtand, for that alwayes Alpheſiueo was laſt of all the companye that did ſing, that the Muſicke was wholly ended.

But

But yet the flower of all shepheardes had not vsed his amorous exercise but so soone as Alphesuco had made an end of his song, Filipenso toke his Lute and plaide so swætlye on it, that all the shephearde of the riuer were amazed, not knowing who it should be that newly was come to wrastle with Cupide, and when they heard him play, they all resorted vnto that place wher he was, and put themselues round about him for to heare the better, Caiserlinga had strayght way in hir eares that new & vnaccustomed musicke, who turning hir selfe vnto Galismena sayd: Me thinks that to be a new shepheard that doth begin to play. It is truth said the Pastora, for that yester night somewhat a part wheras he wes we heard him play, and the better for to reioyce our selues of his swæt melodye, my brother and I went vnto ỹ place wher he was taking his rest, but if at his musicke you haue admiration, you wil much more mernaile at his gentle disprsition and graue countenaunce, I nether know nor can declare it vnto you faire Pastora, but the Gods haue vsed in his bodye and proportion all their knowledge and power. Wherat the faire Pastora arose vp, and taking Galismena by the hand, she said: Come sister and let vs goe and recreat our selues at his musicke and faire countenaunce, and so they both together went wheras this new shepheard was, the other shepheards when they saw hir come, they all arose and put themselues a part, and gaue hir place, with so great reuerence as vnto a deuine creature. This new shepheard at that time had nede of all his force to vphold him, and not to leaue his begun musicke, the which when he saw the Pastora was much increased in delicate swætnesse, and they being in this conuersation, there chanced so high matters as well in Tinacria as in Grecia, that I am constrained to leaue the pleasures of Venus, and turne vnto the furious force of Mars.

¶ How that Polifebo because his mother the Queene of Tinacria would not giue him the order of Knighthoode,

hoode went ſecretly from the court, and of all that happened in his iourney. Cap. 23.

THE valyaunt Eleno wæ left in Tinacria with great ioy to haue ſet at libertye ſo excellent a Mnæne, and with no leſſe ſorrow for the ſodaine departure of his coſin, who did no more but put Bremo in his Sepulcher, in ſuch ſort as in the third part of this hiſtorye ſhall bæ tolde you. So ſtraight way hæ entered into a Barke, the which in ſhort time was put into the maine and wide ſea, wheras they were ſodainly taken with a ſtorme, and by the force thereof they were driuen vppon the coaſt of France, where he was conſtrained to take land, and taking a narow and ſtraight path which he ſaw, he followed the ſame, which brought him into the wilderneſſe of Ardenia, nigh vnto the fountaine Diſamore, who ſeing the clæreneſſe of the water, alighted from his inchaunted horſe, and waſhed his hands and refreſhed his face with that water, and dronke thereof till ſuch time as he had ſatisfied his deſire, and when he had dronke and well refreſhed himſelfe, he ſate downe vpon an old rote of a træ that had bæne cut downe, and felt within his breaſt an alteration of new deſires, as ſhall be told you hæreafter, and for that I am conſtrained to returne vnto Tinacria, I do leaue him in this order. Poliphebo ſæing himſelfe a man of fiftæne yæres of age with ſo ſtout an heart and manly a courage, requeſted his mother that ſhe would commaund the order of Knighthood to be giuen him, the which the Mnæne dyd refuſe verye much to doe, as one which thought that if he were once made Knight, that he would abſent himſelfe, ſæking wheras he might exerciſe his ſtrength for to get him fame. This young Prince did continually importunate the Mnæne, and euery day his deſire dyd increaſe more and more, the occaſion was, for that he did ſæ ſo great Knighthoode at that time vſed in Tinacria, and all for the loue and fight of the

faire Princesse his sister, so that the Knights did not occupye themselues in any other exercise but in iustes and turneyes. The Quæne did continually perswade hir sonne with gentle and louing words to tarry and not to take the order vppon him till such time as he came to more yeares, laying before him the great inconuenience which myght happen for lacke of his full growth & strength, but this delaying of the Quæne did cause the Prince to be very sadde and pensiue, and also caused that all the feastes and sporters that the Knights did daily vse, waxed altogether cold, in seeing the Prince to be in that beauy case, and vpon a day as hee was imagining with himselfe, seeing the small comfort and good will which hee receiued in his mother for the fulfilling of his desire, he determined in great secret as soone as was possible to depart the court, the which he straight waies put in vre, and toke out of the armourye very secretly an exceeding good armour, the which was all russet, & enameled with blacke, and inbroudered round about with grauen worke all guilt: also he toke out a shield of the same making, sauing that it was not graued as his armour was, and commaunded a yong Gentleman that was sonne vnto Rubio, of a good disposition and hardye, that he should keepe themselues, I gaue him to vnderstand of all his determined pretence, and although it did grieue this young man verye much, yet for all that, seeing the great friendshyp which hee vsed with him in vttering his secret vnto him before anye other, without replying to the contrary, hee very diligently toke the armour and hid it, till hee found conuenient time to put it into a shippe verye secretly. So likewise hee put into the said ship two of the best horses which the Prince had, and forthwith hee gaue his Lord vnderstanding how that all things were then in a readynesse and in good order. The Prince dissembling with the accustomed beauinesse he vsed, withdrew himselfe into his chamber till such time as the night came, which when it was come, hee made himselfe ready with his apparaile, and when that all the people

of the Court were at their rest & a sleepe, he alone with his page, who was named Macedonio, went out of the pallaice, and went vnto the sea side. His page did call the marriners of the ship, who straight way brought vnto thē their boat, in the which they entered, & went straight a bord the ship, and being therin for that the winde was very faire, he commaunded to waye their ankers, and to spred their sayles, and to take their way towards Grecia, & as he commaunded all was done, and in a short time they found themselues ingulfed into the sea, farre from the land. This excellent Prince went very much to his contentment: but when the Quæne vnderstood of his departure, the lamentation which she made was very much, and commaunded to goe vnto the sea side, to know if there were any ship that departed that night, and it was told them that there was a ship of Grecia, which that night haled vp their ankers, & hoysed sayle, and went to sea: so straight way they vnderstood that the Prince was gone in bry. I cannot here declare the great griefe and sorrow which the Quæne felt in hir sorrowfull heart, for the absence of the Prince, which shee alwayes suspected & feared. But whē y absence of Poliphebo was knowen in Tinacria, all feasts and sports ceased, for that you shall vnderstand, of all his vassailes hee was very well beloued. The Quæne did procure to dissemble all hir griefe, for the great sorrow which hir vassailes had, shewing hir selfe more ioyfull in hir face, more then any contentment she had in hir hart, giuing them to vnderstand, that he had done it, for that which he did owe vnto his high linage, and the great allygation he had to procure his honour and fame: and that he had done that, which she and all them should haue desired, & that they should not be sorrowfull for that, which hereafter would be the occasion of great ioy and pleasure. With these and such like reasons, she did quiet all hir vassailes, & kingdome, & caused them to returne vnto their accustomed pastimes and sportes. So Poliphebo sayled forwardes on his iourney, through the deepe sea, with great delight to see how he had fulfilled his desire. And he sayled three dayes with a very

very faire and prosperous winde, & the fourth day in ỹ euenning it was very calme, & no winde at all, so that the Marriners went to take their rest, some on the poope, & some in the foreships, for to ease theyr wearied bodyes. The prince who sat vpon the poope of the ship, asked for his Lute of his page, the which straight way was giuen him, and when hée had it in his hands, hée played & sung so swétly, that it séemed to hée a heauenly melody. And béeing in this swét Musick, hée heard a very lamentable cry as it were of a woman, and leauing his Musick, hée gaue attentiue eare to harken what shée sayd, and hée heard the voyce say: It will little profit thée thou cruell tyrant, this thy bolde hardynesse, for thou dost well know, that I am of a lignage, that will reuenge it of thée to thy cost. Then hée heard another voyce which said: Now I haue thée in my power, there is no humane power able to delyuer thée frõ mée. Poliphebo could heare no more by reson that the barke wherein they were, passed by in so great hast. This heroycall Prince by the wordes hée heard, vnderstood that shée was carried by force away, and putting the Lute away, hée bégan to fal into a great thought, & was very heauy and sorrowfull, for that hée had not receiued the order of Knighthode, for to giue the enterprise of this aduenture: but yet his stout stomack could not suffer, that such compulsion and violence should passe without béeing punished. And returning vnto his Page Masedonio, which was a sléepe, hée strok him with his foote and awaked him, saying: What, didst not thou heare the great lamentation, and sorrowfull complaynt, which a Lady made (as it séemed) in a small bark that is passed by, & is gone forwards along the sea, (to the which Masedonio answered nothing, for that he was still a sléepe,) what counsayle dost thou giue mée, that I may do in so great outrage which is done béefore mine eyes, that I may receiue no shame thereof. Thou art bound vnto nothing, sayde Masedonio, for that thou hast not receiued the order of Knighthood, and thou doest well vnderstand that without it ỹ canst not put forth thy hand to make defence against any Knight. Then Poliphebo sayd.

Hée is not a Knight which doth set his force against a woman, and doth breake the law & oath made vnto Knighthood. Therefore bring mee forth my armour, and call the Marriners, that they may launch their boat into the sea: for by the omnipotent Iupiter I do sweare, that I will not bee called the son of my father, if I do suffer such force to bee done before mee, & not procure with all my strength to amend and correct the same. Masedonio would haue replyed vnto him, but the furious countenance of the Prince would not giue him leaue, no not once to looke vpon him. So hee brought forth his armour, and armed himselfe therewith. In the meane time the Marriners had lanched the boat into the sea, wherein hee leaped with a hasty fury, and carried with him foure Marriners for to row the barke, and hee commanded for to take the way towards the other that passed by. All that remayned in the ship greatly meruayled at his hardynesse. This Prince of Tinacria caused the Marriners to make great hast with their oares, for that they wold not lose the way which they had. So they trauayled all that night, till such tyme as the cleere Phœbus with his glittering beames gaue vnto them such lyght, that they myght discouer and see the other barke, although somwhat a far off. The Tinacrian had great contentment thereat, hoping that very quickly they should ouertake them, but it did little profit them: for if that hee did make hast to ouer take them they were not idle, but did make as much hast to goe frõ them So in this contention they trauayled till two partes of the daye was spent, at which tyme they saw come after them a Galley which was gouerned with eyghteene oares on a side, and it made so great way, that with a trice they were with them, and hee saw that there was in hir a knight all armed with black armour, and was of a gentle disposition and wel proportioned body, who made great hast vnto the Marriners to row forwards. And as they passed by, the Tinacrian said vnto them with a loud voice: Knight I do request thee, that you will take mee into your Galley, that being in hir, I may the better accomplish my desire. The Knight of the

Galley

Galley passed by, without making any answere, but rather shewed ꝑ hæ made little accompt of him, but made hast vnto them ꝑ oyd row. The Tinacrian seeing the little accompt hæ made of him, with the great anger & fury hæ receiued, he toke an oare in one hand and another in the other, & with so great fury & strength hæ stroke the water, that hæ made the slothful bark to fly, and labored so much with his oares, that with a tryce they were equall with the Galley, and leauing the oares, with a lyght leape hæ put himselfe into the Galley, and had his helme on, and his shæld at his shoulder, and bæing within hæ sayd. Now thou shalt dœ by force that, which bæfore I dũg great courtesie, thou wouldst not dœ. Those that were at the oares, meruayling at the great boldnesse of the Knight, dyd cease theyr exercise and work of rowing. The black Knight bæing full of anger, as hæ which was one of the best in all the world, drew out his sword, & went towards ꝑ bold knight. This furious Tinacrian seeing himselfe without the order of knighthood, would not lay hands on his sword, but layde holde of one of those long and heauy oares, and went & strok at the black knight, who dyd defend it and sayd: What dost thou pretend to dœ, thou fole and without wit, what dost thou think with staues as a countrey clowne or villain to make battaile with mæ? I can do no otherwise sayd the Tinacrian, and it is thy small curtesie which doth make mæ to dœ this: for thou shalt vnderstand that I am a Donzel, and as yet haue no licence to stryke a Knight, but if thou wouldest dœ so much, as giue mæ the order of Knighthoode, I will afterward make thæ to know, that thou didst great villany in not answering mée.

Oh Gods sayd the black knight, is it possible that you consent that a boye should haue such boldnesse: now I dœ well perceyue that you dœ bægin to mæ as you wer wont neglecting my oblations, and paying with so great ingratitude one good thing which you haue done for mæ, in giuing mæ such a Lady for my wyfe, it doth appære that you haue repented your selues, for that you dœ not alonely procure

to

to take hir from mée,but also to rob mée of my honor.I wil deny your faith and lawes,or else recouer my Lady and mistresse,& punish this fole in spite of your power: Come on thou vnfortunate youth & receiue the order of Knighthood, that thou dost aske of mée,come and receiue it by the hands of him which will quickly take it away from thée againe & also thy life.Giue it mée once sayd the Tinacrian,and afterward come what shal,& therwith hée came vnto him without any feare,and this braue knight dyd giue him the order of knighthood,of him so much desired,and when that hée had giuen it vnto him,without saying euer a word hée layd hand on his sword,at such time as the Tinacrian was well aduised of the harme comming, & béeing both with theyr swords aloft,they made theyr encounter with a diuelish fury, the black knight dyd strik the russet knight first,and strok him so furious a blow that hée made him to declyne his head to his breast, & forced him to recoyle backward two or thrée steps,so that hée lost the blow he had ready to discharge vpon him,but hée came quickly againe to himselfe,and lifting vp his sword hée stroke the Pagan so mighty a blow vppon his healme,that he made all the téeth in his head to chatter, the Knight with the black armor dyd very much meruaile at that mighty blow,but yet it caused not in him any trouble,but rather with great lightnesse he setteled himselfe vpright againe,so then betwixt thē bégan a meruailous terrible & well foughten battayle, that whosoeuer did béeholde it,it caused thē to haue great feare,the blowes were so terrible that were betwéene them,& the great noise which they made,procuring either of them to hurt his enimie with as much policie and strength as might bee,but yet for all that, it did profit little to any of thē both,for that either of them had to doe with a strong aduersary. The ire of the black knight was such,ỹ out of his beauer procéeded great quantitie of thick smoak,to sée that one alone young Knight did so strongly defend himselfe,and with so great fury offend his enimie, this new Knight had no lesse wrath to sée that the first with whom hée made his tryall should intreate him so euill.

euill, iudging himselfe to bée weak and of little valour, not knowing that hee dealt with the flower of all Knighthode amongst the Pagans, and with lyke fury hée thickened his blows, in such sort, that many times he was amazed. In this sort they indured all that day, and when they saw that the dark and tenebrous night came vpon them, they did procure with more courage & strength for to finish their battayle. This strong and stout knight with the black armour, puffing and blowing lyke a bull, lifting vp his sword with both his hands, dyd discharge it vpon the new knight, who dyd receiue that blow vpon his shæld, and cutting it in two parts, the sword descended vpon his healme with so great furye, that he made him to bow his knées to the ground, and was fayne to help himselfe with his left hand bécause hée should not fall, when the blacke Knight saw him in that order hee would haue layd hold on his helme for to haue pulled it off from his head, but this new warryour was not so far from himself, but that he put for his defence ŷ point of his sword vnto his breast, with so great strength, that he made him to recoyle back, and for lack of sight he put his foote vnder the end of an Dare, that without any remedy to saue himselfe he fell vpon his back, but with great lyghtnesse he arose agayne, in which space ŷ new knight had tyme to settle himselfe, and to take his sword in both his hands and strok him such a blow, that being constrayned by the great force therof to retyre back two steps, hée had fallen downe if hée had not layde holde vpon one of the bankes of the Bally, by the which he did sustaine himselfe, & therewith this new knight entered in with him, & with his hands hée strok him on the breast, that perforce hée made him to fall downe, and in the fall of the More hée reached forth his arme and layd holde vpon his shirt of mayle, & caused him by force to fall downe with him, and when hée saw himselfe in that sort, hée threw his shæld from him, and very strongly hée threw his armes ouer his necke and held him fast, heere the new knight was constrayned to do the lyke, so that betweéne them bégan a mighty & terrible wrastling, tumbling and wallowing vp

and

and done in the gallie, breaking their banks & oares, that it was straunge to see. They indured long in this contention without knowing any aduantage eyther of the one part or of the other, in such sort, that for very wearinesse they wer constrayned to leaue the wrastling, and arose vp againe, and betoke themselues againe vnto their swords, at that tyme the night was very dark, but the black knight with a loude voice called for lights, which presently were brought them by the Marriners, in the meane time these knights did somewhat breath thẽselues, although it was not much. So when the lights were brought, they returned vnto theyr late contention with new force and strength: Oh Gods of little valour, sayd the Pagan, I cannot beleaue to the contrarie but that this is Mars that doth contend in battaile with me, & for the great enuie that hee hath at mee, hee goeth about to dishonor mee. Let it be who it may bee of all you, for that I will heare giue you to vnderstand that you haue brought vp one that will make you know that he is of more force and strength then all you together. and with these thoughts hee thickned his blows with great desperatnesse. & although in this last assault they were more then two houres in theyr battaile, yet neither of thẽ dyd faynt, but w̃ new force both together they lift vp their swords, & discharged them together the one vpon the others helme with so great strength, that both of them together fell downe vpon the hatches of the gallie without any remembrance, & those which did loke vpon them dyd beleaue verily that they were both dead, by reason of the great abundance of blood which came forth of the veines of their helmes, but quickly it was perceiued that there was life in them, then was there an agreement made betwixt the Marriners of the gallie and the bark, that they should take Polipheb̃o into his Bark, & either of thẽ to prosecute his iourney, & not to tarry till such time as they came to thẽselues, suspecting that the cõtention would not be ended without the death of one of them, which would be great pitty. So straight way they put their deuice in vre, Macedonio w̃ the help of the Marriners got his lord into their bark,

and

and they of the galle straught way began to follow their voyage, striking ỹ water with their long oares with great violence, & so eyther of them departed & followed his voiage.

How the worthie Tinacrian did prosecute his voiage, & chanced wheras hee found the Queene of *Mauritania* evil intreated of a Gyant, and of the battaile hee had with him Cap. 24.

IN the order as you haue heard they carried the new knight without any remembraunce, and when he came vnto himselfe and found himselfe in that order, with a loude voyce hee sayde: Oh Gods, is it possible to bee true that I am ouercome in the first encounter and assault of my knighthood, and that you haue consented therevnto, heere I curse the day in which I began to honour you, seeing that my sacrifices doth so little profit mee. Then Masedonio dyd cut of his sayings and sayd: My Lord, thou wert not ouercome, neyther had thy contrary so much power, for that he was rather more worse intreated thē you in such sort, that I know not whether hee bee alive or dead. This new knight turned his head, and looked on him with so much wrath and anger, that Macedonio durst not looke him in the face, and with great ire hee sayd: Oh traytor, was it so, & why didst thou consent to bring mee from thence, till such time as fortune had beene fauourable vnto mee: Oh vile creature thou dost not shew thy selfe to be the son of noble parents, in doing so base a deede, I know not how I haue patience, that I throw thee not into the sea, for this great dishonour which thou hast done vnto mee: Ah beaute Knight of Tinacria and of little valour, I know not how thou canst name thy selfe to bee the sonne of the most myghtiest knight in the world, for that thou hast made so ill a proofe of thy selfe in thy first assault: Ah Gods how haue you suffered so vilanous an act, it is not possible but the knight with whom I hadde combat is of more power then all you. descend into this barke and I will make you to know in the same heere I do deny all your prayers, and I determine to honour the God my father doth, who will not

reward mée ſo ill as you dwe, and I dw acknowledge & confeſſe him to bée the true God, and you all full of mockings, liberall in promiſing, and ſlow in giuing, from this day forwards be aſſured ý I will not aſke you of any thing, neyther wil I accept any thing from your vile hands. Theſe & ſuch like words ſayd this new knight, & was in ſuch anger, that neyther Page nor Marriners durſt ſpeake vnto him, but to giue him contentment they rowed a pace towards ý bark whereas that dolorous woman went. So in this ſort they trauayled all the reſt of ý night ý remayned, tyll ſuch tyme as the day began to be clære, and ſtraight way they diſcried land, to which place with great haſt they rowed, til ſuch time as the bark was a ground, ſo this angry yong knight preſently leapt a ſhoare, & Maſedonio carryed his helme, but hée toke neyther ſpeare nor ſhæld with him, the Marriners followed him & carried ſuch victualls as they had, & they found no vſed way, but one narrow path, the which they kept, & it brought them vnto a mighty great & déepe riuer, wheras he ſat downe & dyd refreſh himſelfe, & waſhed his hands & face, & called for to eate of that which they had brought, & whē he had eaten, without any more tarrying he began to trauaile alongſt ý riuer ſide: he had not trauailed long when ý they met with a poore country man, with a great hatchet in his hand, he was going to cut fire wood frō thoſe high & mighty træs: of whom they aſked what country & land it was, and he told thē ý it was the land of Almanie, but yet ſir knight thou muſt pardon mée, for ý I dw requeſt thée to returne againe & proceed no farther this way if thou doſt eſteeme thy lyfe, for in going on this way there is nothing to be had but death, for ý the lord of this riuer is a furious giant & is called Marmoriton & the riuers name is Oſpriz, this gyant is ý moſt furious in all the world, & is of ſuch might ý our Emperor doth feare him, he hath alſo two ſons who are no leſſe furious then hæ is, although they are now very ſad for certaine newes which were brought thē how ý a brother of his who was Lord of an Iland in Spaine called Corſa, was deſtroyed, & all his people ſlaine by ſword, & none left aliue by

force of cruell war: and in part of reuengement of all this harme done, no longer then yesterday, hée brought hether a Lady prisoner, & they say that shée was the occasion of the death of them all as I haue told you, and straight way whē he came a shore, with a diuellish cruelty, he did all to bewhip and beat hir, that it was very pittifull to beholde, swearing that euery day he would so torment hir, till such time as hir life and body did make their seperation, and he hath all his Castle compassed round about, with mighty strong and armed Knights, & with them his two sonnes, who doth kéepe watch and ward for to defend the Castle: for that they say, that the King of Mauritania doth follow and pursue them in a galley, for to cléere and set at liberty this Lady. This new Knight was very attentiue vnto the words which the countriman told him, and although he spake in the Tuscan tongue, yet he did vnderstand him, for that hée was brought vp to vnderstand and speake all languages, and thought verely, that he with whom he had battaile in the galley, was the King of Mauritania, and thinking thereon, it caused him to bé more furious in his hart, for that as you haue heard, hé had the experience of his force and strength, and thought by him he was ouercome, and without saying anye word, he followed on his way, & did determine, that if fortune did so fauour him to rescue & set at libertye this Ladye, not for to let hir passe, till such time, as the King did come in hir demaund, (and if it were he with whom he had the battaile) he would not deliuer hir but with mortall battaile. So trauailing with this thought, the night came on, & it was so dark, that he was constrained to séeke some place to take his rest, and laying himselfe downe vnder a mightie Pine tré, he passed that night, speaking a thousand blasphemies against the Gods.

Artemidoro declaring the acts and déeds of this Knight, saith, that he was the most furious in all the world, and a very friend to aide and succour all those, that could do little for themselues: and if he chaunced at any time to begin an enterprise that he could not wel compasse, with double force

he would prosecute it. In such sort, that many times he made resistaunce against inchantments, for ỳ he had more strength and force, then euer knight or giant had, at any time before, and did surmount very much his brethren & Cousins. He made no reckoning of loue in his youth, by which he was iudged to be the Emperours sonne, as in the third part of this booke shall be told you. So when ỳ morning was come, this young Mars was not slothfull, but arose vp and followed his iourney, and his Page followed him with his helme: he had not trauailed scarce halfe a mile, when that he heard a pittifull lamentation of a woman, who by reason of hir great weeping, hir voice was very hoarce. So he staied to heare from whence that lamentable noise should come, and went towards that place whereas it was, and saw a far off a high piller of stone, out of the which, there came forth a spout of very faire and cleere water, and therat was bound a woman all naked, hir backe fastened to the piller, and hir armes backward imbracing the piller, and there hir hands fast bound. Hir skin was so faire and white, that if it had not bene that he heard hir lamentation, he would haue iudged hir to haue bene an image made artificially of Alabaster ioyned vnto the piller. This warlike young Knight laced on his helme, and came vnto the place whereas she was: and when he saw hir, he thought verely ỳ it was the Quæne of Mauritania of whom the countrey man told him, and by reason of the coldnesse of the dark night, and with hir great lamentation & weepings, she was so full of sorrow and affliction, that she could scarce speake. Lykewise the Knightes heart so yerned at the sight of that vnhappye Lady, that almost he could not loke on hir for weeping: but with a sorrowfull sigh he said. O cruell hands, is it possible, that there should remaine in you so much mischiefe, that whereas ther is so great beauty & faireneſſe, you should vse such basenes and villany, she doth more deserue to be beloued and serued, then to be in this sort so euill intreated.

This Knight did very much, and with great sorrow behold hir white skin & backe, all to be spotted with hir red

bloud,

bloud. And taking a cloke frō one of the mariners, he threw it vpon hir, for to couer hir body, and toke hir in his armes and commaunded Macedonio for to vnlose hir. This vnhappy Lady neuer felt nor knew what was done vnto hir, till such time as she was vnbound out of those bands, and in the knights armes: and giuing a terrible sigh, she thought that she had bene in the armes of that furious Gyaunt, saying. Oh Brusaldoro my Lord and husband. The Knight hearing those wordes, was fully certified, that it was he with whom he had had battaile: and so it was true as hath bene told you. This new Knight would haue aunswered hir, but hee was disturbed by hearing of a great noyse of a horse, which seemed to be in the wood amongst the trees, & for to see what it should be, he left the Lady lying along vpon the ground, in the keeping of his Page & the marriners, and went towards that place, wheras he heard that rushing noyse, and saw ỹ it was a mighty great & monstrous Giant, mounted vpon a great beast, the which was Marmoraton, who returned to see if the Lady were aliue, for to torment hir a new. And when he came vnto the piller, and saw not the Ladye, with an irefull looke he cast his eies, looking about on euery side, and at last he saw the Knight, who was comming towards him with a reasonable and quiet pace, and how that the Lady was vntied, making hir sorrowfull complaint. And seeing them in this order, with great fury vpon his terrible beast he came towardes them, and when he was nigh them, he staid and did behold the great proportion & gentle disposition of the Knight, and asked him saying. Art thou by fortune ỹ King of Mauritania that trayterously hath slayne in the field my brother and his children. I am not hee that thou dost aske for said the Tinacrian, but rather doe I giue thee to vnderstand, that he is the Knight that I doe most hate, and I am a Knight that at the sorrowfull complaynt of this Ladye am come hether, and seeing hir to bee a verye fayre woman, and without anye desert to bee thus so cruell intreated, it mouueth mee to put my person in

aduenture againſt them, that will ſéeme farther to miſuſe hir. In the meane time whiles the Knight was saying theſe wordes, the Gyant was beholding him verye preciſely, and knit his browes with the great anger he receiued to heare theſe wordes, & with great furye he ſpurred his mouſtrous beaſt, that he made him giue ſo mighty a leape, that he reached vnto the place whereas the Knight was, and it lacked little, that he had not fallen vpon this new Knight, who with great lightneſſe did apart himſelfe from him, and drew out his ſword, and would haue ſtroke him: but the beaſt paſſed by with ſo great furye that he could not reach him. The Giant ſtraight way returned his great beaſt, & with his broad fauchon in his hand hée came againſt the Prince, & would haue ſtroke at him. This inuincible Tinacrian did abide his comming, and at the diſcharging of the Gyaunts blow, hée ſtepped on the one ſide towards his left hand, and ſtroke an ouerthwart blow with ſo great ſtrength vpon his knée, that by reaſon his armour was not very good, he cut it a ſunder, ſo that leg and all fell downe to the ground, and the monſtrous Gyant fell on the other ſide likewyſe to the earth, & with great roaring began to blaſpheme againſt the heauens for this his ſodaine miſhap. There was a man that came with the Gyant, who when he ſaw all that had paſſed, with great feare returned the way from whence he came. The Prince when he ſaw that with ſo great eaſe he was cleare of the Giant, with a loud voice he ſaid. Oh God whom the Chriſtians doe worſhip, I doe giue thée thankes, & I doe acknowledge that all this my good ſucceſſe doth proceéde from thée, and héere I doe promiſe and vow, that once comming vnto my father, to accompliſh and performe all that I am bound to doe, for to bée a true Chriſtian. The great beaſt whereon the Gyaunt lately rode, did verye well pleaſe and gaue great contentment vnto the Knight, for that hée was of a big ſtature, and of a very good haire, becauſe the halfe part forwardes was of the colour of a Wolfe, and the other halfe was all blacke, ſauing that héere and there it was ſpotted with litle white ſpots. His féete were clouen, ſo

that

that he næded not at any time to be shoed, his necke was somewhat long, and a little head, with great eares hanging downe like a hound, his pace was with great maiestie, & bæ doubled his necke that his mouth touched his breast, there came forth of his mouth two great tusks, and he did exceed all beasts in the world in lightnesse, and did runne with a very good grace. The yong knight received so great delight in him, ý he did determine to take and to kæpe him for himselfe, & not to vse any other horse so long as this beast would indure, and without the helpe of stirrop or any other thing he leapt into the saddle, and commaunded his Page and the Marriners, that in the thickest of the forrest they should abide his comming, and to haue great care of that Lady, and not to remoue from thence till such time as they did heare the sound of his horne, & when he had aduertised them what they should doe, he take the narrow path by which the Gyant came, in the which he had not trauailed long, when that vpon a sodaine (not knowing what it should be) there came a damsell and put hir selfe before him, who brought vnto him a sheeld very rich, in the which was painted a træ, the one halfe was a siluer and had a braunch broken which hung downe, out of the which ran streames of red blood, and the other halfe was of gold, and by it a knight who did contend to breake one of the braunches, and on the sheeld were certaine letters which sayd: Contention oft times doth ouercome fortune. Then the damsell said: Poliphebo, they which doe wish and desire all good vnto thæ, doeth send thæ this sheeld with ý deuice which thou doest sæ, & vnderstand, that thou hast therof great næd, & I desire thæ to note well the deuice which it hath, for that in the time as ý braue bastard Lyon w̃ his surmounted contention shall ouer come all inchantments, in tearing ý golden braunch: although it is not ordained for him. The sonne of Garrofilea shall lose all his libertie. And in saying these words she put the sheeld about his necke, and without any more tarrying shæ vanished away, without being anye more sæne, at the which this new knight was very much amazed and troubled, & considering

the deuise which the shield had, he did imagine to what end it should apply, & likewyse of the words which the damosell had said. And beeing troubled with these thoughts and such lyke, hee prosecuted his way: and when hee came forth of that narrow & straight way, he came into a great playne, in the which he saw a Castle, scituated vpon a rocke, and a mile from that place ther was another Castle, which seemed to be very strong. And in the Castle that was in the plaine, ther was a great noyse, and strayght way ther issued out a company of Knights, and amongest them a valiant Gyant, who with great pride came towards the Knight, and when they came nigh, & saw that hee was mounted vpon the Giants beast, with great anger and fury they assaulted him, & they were to the number of twenty Knights. This courageous young Knight was nothing troubled to see them, but rather did abide their comming with his sword in his hand, and with as much courage, as though he had had as many more in his company to help him. And when they had made their encounter vpon him, yet he remained as firme in the saddle, as a strong and hard Rocke: but yet at their passing by, he stroke one of them such a blow vpon the shoulder, that cutting it in two peeces, he ouerthrew him to the ground. At that time approched the Gyant, who by reason of his deformity in bignesse, his horse could not trauaile so fast as the others did. Hee brought in his hand a strong speare, wherwith he made his encounter against the young Knight, that he made him to leane on the one side in the saddle: but with a trice he setled himselfe agayne, and throwing his sheeld at his backe, he toke his sword strongly in both his handes, & stroke his beast with the spurres, who with a light leap was with his enimie, and discharged his blow vpon the Gyants shield with so great fury, that he cut it in two peeces. and it descended from thence vpon his harde & steelie helme with so great strength, that he made him to fall vppon his horse necke without any remembrance, and retourned with his sword, thinking to giue him the second blow, which by no meanes hee could, for that the Knights did so assault him on

euery side: but it did little profit them all that euer they did or could do, for returning against them with his light beast, he intreated them in such sort, that when the astonished Giant came vnto himselfe, there were fiftene of his Knightes ouerthrowen to the ground. Oh how angrye and wrathfull was this Giant when he saw so great slaughter, who with a furious rage drew out his sawchon, & with both his hands he stroke him such a blow vpon his fine & hard helme, that he did deprive him of his vnderstanding. His furious beast being scarred with that terrible blow, began to run about the field, in such sort, that if the knight had not quickly come to himselfe, he had carried him into the Castle: but remembring himselfe, he rayned the bridle of the beast, and came against his enimye with such fury, and with his sword all aloft, he stroke him such a blow vpon his helme, that cleauing it in peces with the head downe to the shoulders, he fell downe dead to the ground. The rest of the Knightes which remained, when they saw that terrible blow would haue run away: but sodainely they saw come forth out of the other Castle as many moe Knights, as came at the first, and with the like pride and fury as the others did, they assaulted Polyphebo who seing that new assault, and that there came another Giant in their company, he made himselfe readye for his defence, and procured to doe his best to deliuer himselfe from them, and taking a speare which was one of the dead Knights, & being shrowded vnder his shield, he went forth to mete the Gyant, who when he saw him come, addressed himselfe. They made their incoũter very strongly vpon their shields, and the Giaunt did no more but breake his speare in small peces, but he neuer moued the Tinacrian in his saddle, who made his encounter so strongly, and stroke him with so great furye vppon his shelde, that by reason of the great sharpnesse of his speare it rested not ther, but pearcing it thorough and also his armour, it appeared behinde him at his backe, in such sort, that he ouerthrew him dead to the ground.

Oh merualious and valiant dædes done by one Knight, that in one day, by thræ blowes, hæ ouerthrew and slew thræ great and strong Giants. The Knights that came forth of the Castle, when they saw that mightye dæde, with great showtes and shrikes they compassed him roune about, striking vpon him manye a furious blow, and although they thought that of the last battayle he remayned very weary, they were greatly deceiued, for that he began with greater wrath to strike and wound them then at the first. In such sort he behaued himselfe amongst them, ouerthrowing and wounding on euery side, that in short time they left him at his liberty, & the lyke he would haue done, if ther had bene as many more before him, his anger and fury was such, the rest which remained, being about the number of sir knights, put themselues vnto flight. The Tinacrian would not follow them, neither made he any reckoning of them, but entered into the Castle and did alight from his great beast, and went into a broad Court, whereas were all the Gyaunts household seruants, and when they saw him, they bægan to runne away, and to hide themselues, as from their sodayne death. The Knight did call them againe, and bad them be in quiet, and not to feare, for that he would not hurt them, if they would shew him where the prisoners were in the castle. Then one of them sayd: Prisoners there are, but what shall it profit to shew thæ the place, when thou canst not deliuer them, for that ther be such kæpers to kæpe them. Let it be what it will bæ said the Knight, for once thou shalt shew me wher they are. As for their kæpers they haue but smal defence, neither haue you any occasion to feare, for that this day they haue made accompt and paid all the euills & harmes y they haue done. The man when hæ heard this, without any replying toke a bundle of keyes, and came out of the kitchen into the Court, whereas he opened a doze, and entred therin, they descended downe a paire of stayres into a dæpe dungeon, whereas they heard a very sorrowfull and lamentable noise. The Knight spake with a loud voice and said. Who is it that lyeth so lamenting within this darke

dungeon.

dungeon. To whom was answered with a very dolorous voyce: Here lyeth the most grieuous and afflicted Knight that may bee found in all the world, & in his company other Knights, brought vnto this place by forcible violence, who I do not know, for that we haue not seene one another, by reson of the great and terrible darkenesse that is here. Wel sayd the Prince, come forth, if hereafter you can defend and keepe your selues frõ other prisons, so it is, for of this, from this day forwards you are cleere: and in saying these words, he ascended vp the stayres, & after him the man which opened the doore. Then the prisoners in great hast came vp the stayres, and comming forth whereas the Knight was, they all fell downe on their knees, giuing thancks vnto God for that he had giuen them liberty: and afterward they kissed the knights hands, desiring god to increase his powers, and honor, who with a very good grace gaue them such answer, that they were all very well content. Amongst them there was one prisoner of a very goodly disposition and fayre face, and of a double stature, more then the others, who with a seuere countenance and well placed words, did surrender vnto the knight great thankes for that good tourne which he receiued at his hands: he spake to him in the Tuscane tongue. It seemed vnto the Prince that he should be a person of estimation, and asked of him his name, and what countriman he was? To whom the prisoner sayd: My name (sir knight) is Florisarte, sonne vnto the Duke of Bauiera, brother vnto the good Emperour Ladislao of Almania, who was taken prisoner villainously by these cruell Grants. The Tinacrian receiued great contentment, for y he had done so great seruice vnto so mightie a knight and Lord, and with a merry countenance he toke him by the hand, & went vp a payre of staires, & after him went all those that wer deliuered out of prison, which were to the number of forty knights, & of squires, pages & other seruants, to y number of an hundred. So when they were aboue in a great hall, the knight commanded that there should be brought them somwhat to eate, for that they had great neede therof. This new knight was

walking vp and downe the Floriſarte of Bauiera in the hall, and went vnto a window which opened towards that place whereas hée left his company, and blew his horne with so great ſtrength that they heard it, and knew the ſound: and béeing thereof very glad and ioyfull, they aroſe vp, & went vnto the caſtle. In the way whereas they went, they ſaw the Knights that were ſlaine and the Gyaunts, and were very much amazed at ſo great ſlaughter, and went forwards, till they came vnto the Caſtell, whereas they found the Prince, who was very glad, and reioyced much of that which was done, and commanded ſtraight way that the Lady ſhould bée very well looked vnto, and healed of hir harme receiued.

¶How Poliphebo dyd proſecute his iourney for to goe into Grecia, and how in the way hee met by aduenture with certaine Clownes forcing of a Lady, and would haue ſlaine hir, and of all that happened of that Lady. Chap. 25.

THE ſpace of thrée dayes was Poliphebo in the Caſtle of the Gyants, in which time hée dyd procure all kinde of remedies that was poſſible, to bring the Quéene againe vnto hir health, and to bée healed of hir euill. So with the great care he had & the good diligence which was vſed, ſhée recouered hir health, and receiuing the caſtle for his owne, hée put good order therein for their gouernment. The fourth day he determined to depart, & to proſecute his iourney, and to carry in his company the Quéene Eſpinela, & the gentle knight Floriſarte. His pretence was, to paſſe through all Almania & Hungaria, till hée came into Grecia, for to ſée his father, & make himſelf known vnto him, and dyd procure to doo ſuch déeds, that with great honour hée might name himſelfe to bée ſonne vnto ſo noble a Father. The occaſion why he did carry the Quéene Eſpinela with him, was, that hée vnderſtood, that the King of Mauritania would come to ſéeke hir: & to performe his promiſe, not to deliuer hir without mortall battaile, hée would not loſe hir company. And ſo leauing the caſtle in the kéeping of

a knight of Almaine, & in the name of the Emperour Ladislao, hæ toke his iourney towards Espira, whereas at that tyme the Emperour kept his parliment, & commanded the Marriners to returne vnto their barck, & hæ in company with the Quéene and Florasarte, and his page Macedonia toke theyr iourney as aforesayd. When the Quéene saw the knights determynation, & vnderstood his pretence, with sorrowfull teares shée called for hir king: but all hir sorrowes and griefe dyd little auayle, for that the knight would not by any meanes change his pretence: & by reson of the great sorrow, griefe & heauy chære of the Quæne, it was the occasiõ that all trauayling & venterous knights, which saw hir, did procure battell with the new knight, for to set hir at liberty. So they trauailed viii. daies, wherin they passed the Alpes, and went through all the dukedome of Bauiera, by Minique & Aspruch, & hæing ouertaken by the night, they wer constained to take their rest, by a very faire & clær fountain, whereas they dyd alight and refresh themselues, likewise they did eate of such meate as they had. And when they had satisfied themselues, euery one prepared himselfe to take his rest, and hæing weary of their iourney, they fel all a slap, sauing only Poliphebo, who was awake, hauing in remembrance such things, as ministred him most care: & hæing in this thought, hæ heard a certaine lamentation, which sæmed to hæ a far off, and the better to heare what it was hæ arose vp on his fæte, & hæing very attentiue, hæ playnly heard and perceiued that it was a woman, and as a knight that alwayes dyd procure to help and succour those which could do little, hæ laced on his helme, and threw his shæld at his neck, and with a resonable pace hæ went towards the place whereas hæ heard the lamentation, & the more hæ went, the playner hæ heard the lamentation, hæ had not gone far when that hæ saw two clownes had bound a Lady all naked vnto a trée, & one of them had a sharp knife in his hand ready to murder hir. The Prince sæing them, with a loude voyce sayd. Oh vyle villaines, holde your handes, for if you do not, it shall cost you your liues. And with these words, hæ layde hand on his sword, and with great lightnesse hæ ran where

those villains were, these miserable clownes with two torches which they had in their hands did abide his comming, & strok with them vpon his hard sheeld each of thē a blow, but this knight with other two blows did ouerthrow them dead to the ground, and went vnto the Gentlewoman, & cut the cords wherewith shee was bound, & dyd help to couer hir with hir owne clothes. This heauy Gentlewoman though she did see hir selfe free from the villains & at liberty, yet did she not let to perseuer in hir sorrowfull lamentation, & said: Ah knight, the defender of my corporall death, wherby liuing I do passe a thousand deaths, I say that my sorrow & euill was such ý with more reson I may bewayle the life which thou hast giuen mee, then ý death which I am deliuered frō. And in saying these words shee all to tare & rent hir golden hayre which shé had. This pittyfull knight dyd procure to disturbe hir from doing to hir self such violence, in offering vnto hir all his power and strength for to remedy hir euil, if it were possible to bee remedied. This sorrowful Lady sayd: If thou wert such a knight, that with thy great valour and strength couldst set at liberty my hart frō sorrow, as thou hast deliuered my body from death, I would declare vnto thee the greatest mishap that euer happened vnto woman, & thereby thou shouldst vnderstand whether I haue reson rather to desire the death, then to liue, therefore gentle knight, I do desire thee to sit downe and to harken vnto mee with attentiue eare, for that my iustice will moue and constraine thée to take my defence as thine owne, & so they sat downe vnder a great Pine tree which was hard by whereas shee was bound, and with great abundance of teares shee sayd.

After the losse of the Princesse Granalesa, they take out
„ of the monestary of Basilea, the Princesse Dondelaria, and a-
„ mongst all them that were chosen to be at hir seruice & com-
„ mandement, I was take for one, for ý I was daughter vnto
„ parents, of whom they made great reckoning, & again, for ý
„ I was very diligent in my seruice, & my father is ý Earle of
„ Bura, so it fell out (ý it had been better to ý contrary.) Ther
„ came to ý court the daughter of the Earle of *Tirol*, who was

of a meruailous and extreame beauty, who was at hir en- ,,
try accompanyed with many woꝛthy Knights, foꝛ that all ,,
did reſpect the Earle very much, bæcauſe hæ was a very no- ,,
ble man. At the great fame and repoꝛt of this daughter of ,,
the Earle of Tirol, foꝛ that ſhæ was of ſo excellent beautie ,,
came many young Knights out of diuers countreyes to ſæ ,,
hir, amongſt whom came two bꝛetheren, iolly young Gen- ,,
tlemen, and ſonnes vnto the Earle of Olanda, and a couſin of ,,
theyꝛs, a valyaunt Knight, ſonne vnto the Duke of Brabant. ,,
There was no great friendſhip betwixt theſe two bꝛethꝛen ,,
as it appæred, bæcauſe they were of different condition the ,,
one from the other, and lykewyſe great difference in theyꝛ ,,
perſons: foꝛ that the eldeſt had a very fierce countenance, & ,,
ill fauoured, and of great pꝛide: and the yongeſt of a ſeuere ,,
and gentle countenaunce, and very humble of perſon, and ,,
was well bæloued of all them in the Court. Both of them ,,
ſet theyꝛ eyes vpon Clarentina, Daughter vnto the Earle of ,,
Tirol, & foꝛ a farther euill, that falſe Cupide would not but ,,
that ſhæ ſhould lykewyſe ſet hir eyen on one of them, bꝛin- ,,
ging hir hart into captiuity with the loue of Pinorante, the ,,
youngeſt of the two bꝛetheren. Firidefonte who was the el- ,,
deſt hauing vnderſtanding thereof, (bæing gouerned by his ,,
great pꝛide) and ſæing the ſmall accompt that Clarentina ,,
made of him, the diuell ſtraygbt wayes put into his beade, ,,
(with the great ielouſie that hæ had) foꝛ to kill his bꝛother: ,,
but many daies after, hæ went meruailouſly troubled, with ,,
great alterations in his thought, about the doing of ẏ wic- ,,
ked dæde, ſometymes ouercome by bꝛotherly loue to leaue ,,
that enterpꝛiſe, and at other times counſayled by his owne ,,
tholar to the contrary. And in this ſoꝛt hæ continued a long ,,
time, till in the ende, Clarentina dyd vtter moꝛe at large hir ,,
good will vnto his bꝛother, & vpon a tyme hæ ſaw them tal- ,,
king together, which was ẏ occaſion to confirm in him that ,,
damnable intent. Wherfoꝛe vpon a night as Pinorante was ,,
walking on the back ſide of the Court, his euill bꝛother dyd ,,
kill him with great cruelty, & leauing him vpon the ground, ,,
hæ returned vnto his lodging, and it was neuer knowen, ,,

who

» who was the murtherer of him, and for that the fraternall
» blood could not let but to wound very much his hart, conſi-
» dering the euill fact which hee had done, he ſtraight way re-
» pented himſelf therof, which was afterward a farther euil,
» and forſomuch as the diuel was lodged in his hart, this his
» euill pretence did not reſt with the death of his brother, but
» gathered in his thought to doo a fact far worſer, and the oc-
» caſion was, for ỹ Clarentina made ſo great lamentation for
» the death of that vnhappy Pinaronte, & this was the preſump-
» tion that hée would vſe, ordayned by the diuel, and it ſo fell
» out, that I was wounded by that falſe *Cupide* with the loue
» of Firidefonte, not hauing any reſpect vnto the ill fauoured-
» neſſe of his face, and béeing conſtrained by the grieuouſneſſe
» of my wound, I gaue him clerly to vnderſtand therof, which
» was the occaſion ỹ hée was the bolder to doo that which hée
» did, & ſéeing mée ſo captiue in loue of him, he was in no doubt
» to diſcouer vnto mée his whole heart, all the which hée told
» me, being in place wher boldly he might ſpeak. And he ſayd:
» Ah ~~Clarentina~~ my very friend, I haue had great deſire to
» haue had this opportunity for to talke with thée, and to diſ-
» couer my whole heart. Thou haſt well ſéene this vnhappy
» & cruell death of my vnfortunate brother, thou ſhalt vnder-
» ſtand that Clarentina was the occaſion of his death, but and
» if thou wilt do that which now I will deſire thée, I doo hére
» ſweare vnto thée by the high and mighty God, ỹ there ſhall
» none bée Lady of my heart but onely thy beautie, then I
» (vnhappie & without all good fortune (béeing wholy yélded
» and ſo ouercome with his loue, dyd offer my ſelfe to doo all
» that which his pleaſure was to command mée. Then this
» traytour with diſſembling words ſayde: I alwayes hadde
» this good opinion in you my loue, that you would accom-
» pliſh my requeſt. Well, thou ſhalt now vnderſtand that
» I doo pretend to accuſe Clarentina for the murther of my
» brother, and the better to bring to paſſe my deſire, I will
» ſay that thou art witneſſe therevnto, and doſt know the
» certainty thereof. Then I thinking to obtayne that which

ſo

so long tyme I had desired, dyd promise him to dwe it, as by
the proofe it should playnly appeare. And with this conclu-
sion hée departed from mée, and went and gaue his cousin
Rodelando to vnderstand of it, who is one of the strongest
and valyantest knights in all this Countrey, and Rodelan-
do béléeuing that it should bée true, dyd offer himselfe to
bée the second in the defence in helping of his cousin, and so
both of them went & made theyr acculation before the Em-
peror, the Emperour commanded mée to bée called béefore
him, for to declare what I dyd know therein, and dyd ac-
complish and performe all that I had promised. Then this
faultlesse Lady séeing hir selfe so falsely accused, dyd wéepe
very gréeuously, desiring the Emperour to appoynt a tyme
that shée might séeke one for to make aunswere in hir de-
fence, and for to prowue that it was all false that was layde
against hir. So it was agréed, that in the space of two mo-
nethes shée should bring a knight that should defend hir ho-
nour, and if so bée that shée could not, that then shée should
bée condempned according vnto the law, that is, to burne
hir quick, and in the meane time that shée should bée put in-
to a tower, and there well and strongly kept, not forbidding
any, whosoeuer hée were, naturall or stranger, but that hée
might lawfully make battayle in hir defence. So lykewyse
they cõmanded that I should bée put in another tower, that
if it were so that I should bée found a lyar, that I should bée
punished with hir prouided death. So I when I vnderstood
it was in a great feare, and went priuely vnto the lodging
of Firidefonte, of whom I was very well receiued, and say-
ning that hée would send mée into his Countrie, hée put all
things in order for my tourney, and gaue mée these two vil-
lains whom thou hast slaine to bée my kéepers, who brought
mée hether, & brought mée vnto the poynt as you found mée.
And as I dw béléeue it came determined frõ thence, for that
his euill pretence should not bée discouered. Héere you may
vnderstand sir knight, wherfore I sayd that it had bén bet-
ter to haue let mée bén slayn thẽ to liue wt so great griefe.

And

And now that I haue told you all the matter, and the truth, heere I do deſire you, that if there bée in you any bountie, (as it doth appéere and ſhew by your preſence) that thou wilt take vpon thy owne charge this battayle and defence, for that I would (ſéeing that I haue béene the occaſion of al this euil and trouble happened vnto this guiltleſſe Lady, in giuing falſe euidence) bée the meanes wherby ſhée might receiue remedy for the ſame. This Tinacrian was very much amazed to heare of ſuch an intangled and falſe forged matter: and for that hée was one that dyd procure to aide and help the afflicted, he did very fréely offer himſelfe, to procure to make hir defence. At this inſtant the dawning of the day appéered, and the Prince toke the Gentlewoman, and went whereas the Knight of Bauier was, and dyd awake him, and gaue him to vnderſtand, of all that the Gentlewoman had told him, who incontinent did offer himſelf to bée the ſecond in the battayle for hir defence. When the Quéene was all in a readineſſe to trauaile on their iourney and all the reſt, they made great haſt, and toke the way which led them vnto Eſpira, & carried the Gentlewoman with hir face couered, that ſhée might not bée knowen. So when they came with in a myle of the Cittie of Eſpira, they muſt néedes paſſe a great & mighty broad Riuer, whereas they left Candiſea in a dayrie houſe, giuing great charge that ſhée ſhould bée well looked vnto, and the Quéene and all the reſt paſſed the Riuer in a Bark, and neuer ſtayd till they entered into the Cittie, and had theyr helmes on, & theyr ſhéelds at theyr backs. This ſtrong and ſtout Tinacrian rode mounted vppon his temerous beaſt, with ſo great and goodly a demeanour, that all which dyd behold him, greatly meruailed what Knight it ſhould bée, of ſo great & comely ſtature, and when they ſaw the deuiſe of the Trée and the broken branch on his ſhéeld, they ſtraight waies knew that hée was the Knight that had ſlayne the Gyants, for that they had heard the newes therof in the Court, which was the occaſion ỹ much people dyd follow him to beehold his face, if hée dyd put off his healme, to ſée if they could know him. So theſe two Knights and

the

the Quéene (with all the people that followed him) came vn-
to the Emperours pallaice, wheras the Prince did alight, &
taking the Quéene in his armes, he toke hir from hir Pal-
fray and lead hir by the right hand, so with a very gentle &
comely grace they went vp into a royall hall, and Macedo-
nio remained bélow and kept their horses. When they en-
tered they found the Emperour accompanied with all his no-
bility, & the knight was knowen vnto thẽ all by the deuice of
his shéld, & therfore all people did approach to know wherfor
his comming was, & greatly meruailed at his big stature &
gentle disposition, and they all kept silence to heare what ỳ
knight of the Braunch would say, who when he was bé-
fore the Emperour made a shew of his high lignage from
whence he did descend, in making of his dutifull reuerence.
The Emperour hauing knowledge of his person by ỳ report
which he had heard, did returne his salutation in equal mã-
ner, & when the Emperour would haue spoken, the valyaunt
knight of the branch did disturbe him and said.

High & mighty Lord, the fame which I haue heard of your
great vertue hath encouraged me to come into thy kingdõe,
with intent to yéeld my selfe into your seruice, if that your
highnesse be contẽt therwith, which if you will not permit,
yet at least to suffer mæ according to equitye, to shew the
strength of my arme vpon certaine thy subiects, at ỳ which
I do desire thée not to receiue any displeasure, for ỳ thou art
accounted to be very right & iust, for such is ỳ fame that is
reported of thée through ỳ world, & I vnderstanding ỳ thou
wilt reioyce in all ỳ which is true, & also for that the truth
might be iustified, as it is reason, although ỳ one part hath
shewed wỏ witnesse & words his matter to bæ of truth, yet
for all that at all times they ought not to be béleeued, but
that the contrarye partye must likewise bée heard, for that
thereby rightly may bée shewed and declared the equitie of
iustice, I do not speake this for that your highnesse hath de-
termined any thing without hearing of both parties, but for
that it is brought vnto another triall, and referred by your
maiesty to the triall of armes, to iustifie the right of either

« part, and named a space, in the which that faultlesse Gentle-
« woman, daughter vnto the Duke of Tirol, should seeke one
« for to defend hir honour and right, being falsely accused for
« a murtherer, partly for this thing also am I come before thy
« high presence, to make them to vnderstand their wicked pre-
« tence & false accusation which they haue raised on hir with-
« out desert, & if they be heere present, let them marke what
« I say, & if not, let your highnesse commaund that they may
« be aduertised hereof, for that I wil make thē to know that
« it is great falshode and treason in that they haue accused
« Clarentina.

These two cosins were there present and heard very wel his words, & Rodelando without anye respect vnto the Emperour, taking his cosin Firidefonte by the hand, stepped forth with a furyous countenance, & sayd: Heere thou hast before thée they whom thou dost demaund for, beholde as well, and let not thy youthfull courage deceiue thee, giuing enterprise vpon that, of which the sonnes of the Emperour Trebatio would make doubtfull, therfore loke what thou doest determine, and giue vs our aunswere, and that quickelye. The Knight of the Braunch in the meane time that Rodelando was saying these wordes, did verye much beehold and view him, and it seemed vnto him that hée was a Knight of great valour, but yet for all that his strong members did not dismaye him, but with a graue speech and seuere countenaunce he aunswered: If thou hast so much hast to know my determination, heere I doe say that in the accusation that thou hast put againste Clarentina, thou doest lye lyke a false Knight, & that thy cosin lyke a cruell murtherer doth deserue the death for killing of his owne Brother, committed by his owne handes, who was more worthy in all respects then hée is. Then Firidefonte with great furye aunswered and said.

O vile ribalde, how can I suffer so great euill, to bée charged with that which that naughtye woman hath committed and caused to bée done, if thou wert not before the

Em-

Emperour it should cost thée full dære, and out of hand thou shouldest haue thy paiment for this great lye, but yet I doe comfort my selfe, for that very quickly I will be reuenged on thée, I cannot declare ý great anger which the Knight of the Braunch receiued, for that hée tourned vp the whyte of his eyes, and all his face was wan and blacke, and trembling, with very anger mouing his pace he said. I doe promise thæ thou traitour, that I will make thée with thy owne mouth confesse this great treason which thou hast committed, and if it were not but that I am before so high an Emperour, hére in this place without going any farther, with my fists like a vile traitour, I would make thæ to confesse it. Hære Firidefonte had no patience to heare these things spoken to his face, but like a Tiger he leapt vnto him & wrapped his cloak about his arme and drew out his sword, and went against the Knight of the Branch. This worthy warriour therat made no kind of mouing, but did abide his comming, making an outward shew of the great valour of his hart, Firidefonte did strike at him with his sword, but the Knight of the Braunch stepped on the one side, and made him to lose his blow, so that his sword stroke on the ground, & lyke vnto the winde he closed with him, & stroke him with his hands on the breast with so great fury and strength, that without hauing any power to saue himselfe, he gaue a great fall backwards to the ground, Rodelando séeing that on the best side entered to him, and did imbrace him, and held him very strongly betwæn his armes. Then this gentle Knight drew out his sword, and hauing his arme aloft he stroke a blow, the which chaunced vpon a young man called Polio, of Velduque, sonne vnto the Duke of Velduque, and that cruell sword did light vpon his head, and cutting it in two parts, the young man fell downe dead to the ground. Now was it not requisit that the Tinacrian should remaine in the armes of Rodelando, but with great strẽgth he did ruffle him selfe, & threw him frõ him. At ý time the whole Court was in a tumult for the death of Polio, and euery one drew out his sword & did very sore assault the Knight of the Braunch,

but he with his sword made such a slaughter amongest them, that they did very well fele and understand the valiantnesse of his hart, & the great noise & crying out of the Emperour, neither his emperiall presence was sufficient to appease them. At this time the Emperours gard came into the hall, who were cõmanded that with their halberts they should indeauour to part thẽ, then the Emperour went to lay hand on Firidefonte, the beginner of all this tumult, but he putting himselfe in defence went forth of the hall, so likewise did Rodelando, ỹ Emperour seing that, laide hand on the Bauiere, who with great humility did obay his Lord, he would haue done ỹ like vnto Poliphebo, but he put ỹ point of his sword before him & said: Kepe your highnesse backe, for that I am none of thẽ that so lightly will be taken prisoner, take & put in prison thy owne vallayles, such as hath had little respect vnto thy presence, & let not thẽ which are not of thy kingdome pay for this thy anger. The Emperour very angry said: If my vallails are in the fault, they shall haue their punishment, & thou also if thou dost deserue it, therfore yeld thy self to prison, if not, vnderstand that it will be to thy cost. I know not what will fall out herein, said the Tinacrian, but wõ my god will neither you nor all yours shall triumph of my imprisonment, & before that this doth come to passe, I wil make more then one thousand of thẽ that do pretend to take me prisoner lose their liues. Then the Emperour with a lowde voyce commaunded to take him, at which wordes all the whole gard together prested at him, but this valyant knight did determine that in spite of them all he would clere and set himselfe at liberty, ther did he begin to doe wonderfull feates of armes, breaking and cutting a sunder those sharpe Halberts, and killing and wounding that it was terrible to behold. All the people feling and seing the effect of his rigorous arme, did give him way and let him goe till he came to the stayres, there they beganne to assault him a new with verye much people, and amongest them some armed Knights. The Knight when he saw that he could not passe in quiet, he was cleane without anye patience,

and

and not fearing death but forgetting pollicy, he firmed himselfe, & throwing his sheld at his backe, hée take his sword in both his hands, and laid about him on euerye side, & lyke vnto a furious Lyon he preased amongst ỳ people, cutting, killing & wounding, for to haue way to descend the staires. At that time was the Knight in great peryll, for that those which were before him, did persecute him with the sharpe pointes of their halberts, & likewise those which were behinde him did the like: in such sort, that the Knight béing on the staires, could not turne himselfe at his pleasure: but yet all that euer they did, did little auaile or profit them, for that with the great fury which he had, he preased vpon them that were before him, & what with killing and wounding, he forced them to giue him way to descend downe ỳ staires, where hée found many people fallen downe with the great hast they had to flye from him. And when hée saw that hée could not passe by reason of the people, he gaue a great leap, & with wonderfull lightnesse he passed ouer the people that were fallen, and went vnto the place whereas Macedonio did abide his comming, with his great beast, & with strange lightnesse he lept vpon his back, & rode into the great court, whereas he was assaulted of very much people, for that the Emperour at the windowes cryed out vpon them to take him. The knight of ỳ branch, when he found himself mounted vpon his great and light beast, then hée feared nothing, and pricking him with the spurres, incouraging him with a shout, he passed downe the stréet, and neuer stayd, till hée came vnto the riuers side, and passed in the barke vnto the other side, & determined not to depart from thence, till such time as he had séene an end of that which touched ỳ iustice of Clarentina, & also to recouer againe his Lady the quéene, who with great affliction, as a woman all alone, put hir self out of the prease of Knightes, and abode in a corner of the great Hall, to kéepe hir selfe from harme. The people of the Emperour, which followed the Knight of the Branch, when they saw him passe with his great beast so swiftly, they returned backe againe whereas the Emperour was, whom

they found very much amazed at the great proweſſe of this Knight The Earle of Maguntia who likewiſe followed the Knight, at his returning againe he found Macedonio, & toke him & carried him before the Emperour and ſaid: This is Page vnto that diuell, who to our coſt and ſpite of our faith is gone awaye. The Emperour did beholde him and ſaw that he was of a good diſpoſition & had a fayre face, he aſked of him & ſayd: Tell me my friend, how doſt thou call thy Lord, is he by fortune ſome diuell, for that according as hee hath ſhowed himſelfe vnto vs, it cannot bee but that hee is ſome infernall creature. This yong Gentleman with great deliberation ſayd: My Lord is a humane creature and ſon vnto a humane man, & more mightyer then your highneſſe, for you ſhall vnderſtand that he is ſonne vnto the Emperour Trebatio, Emperour of Grecia, and his mother is the Queene Garroſiles Queene of Tinacria, and your highneſſe ſhall vnderſtand that he is a Knight that will reward (& that very well) all the harme & griefe which is done vnto him, with whatſoeuer Knight he be in all the world, ỹ Lady which hee brought with him is of high eſtate, for you ſhall vnderſtand that ſhe is a great Lady and a queene. The Emperour when he heard this, he loked about for hir, and ſaw hir in a corner of the hall very ſore afflicted, and commaunded that hee ſhould be carried with great honour and reuerence wheras ỹ Empres was, & with great anger he returned vnto Macedonio and ſaid: I will ſee how far the power will extend of this diuell, for that he ſhall not haue thee, neyther his Lady, till ſuch time as I haue him in my power. All that the Emperour ſayd was heard by a brother of Clarentinas who was called Laurentino, that came vnto ỹ court that preſent day, & being very much moued he ſayd: Your highneſſe doth very ill in intreating my ſiſter ſo euill, is this the reward for the great ſeruice which I & my father haue done for you, to procure for to deſtroy & kill him, who reſpecting our honour, doth put his perſon in aduenture to deliuer my ſiſter from that falſe accuſation layd againſt hir, and the other which came in his companye thou haſt put in priſon, and not content

heere-

herewith, but doest kepe in thy power from him a Lady & his Page, it should suffice thee to know who they are, and the highnesse of their linage, & not in such sort to doe them wrong, my Lord, moderate your selfe & doe iustyce, for that hetherto you haue ben a friend in doing iustyce and right, & doe not blemish this day with thy great pryde ỹ high fame which in so many yeares thou hast gotten. The Emperour who was blind & ouercome with anger, & very wrathfull he sayd: Get thee hence in an euill houre vnto thy lodging, for that thy sister shall neither winne nor lose for thy speach. This valiant yong man did answere: For that you are my Emperour & Lord, you may intreat me in this order, but if that reason did now gouerne your breast, you would do more iustyce then by your outward shew you doe meane to doe, therefore now I doe say, let them take hede who is in the fault, for that with my reason and goods I doe determine to make my defence, and to aide and succour him, who for my sister doth put his life in aduẽture. And in saying these words he departed out of the great hall, leauing the Emperour full of choller & wrath, who commaunded to burye the dead bodyes, & Polio with great honour. His death was very sore lemented of many, for ỹ he was wel beloued of all ỹ court. Then they gaue the Emperour to vnderstand how that the Knight whom he had in prison was sonne vnto the Duke of Bauiera, for ỹ which he receiued great griefe, for that he was son vnto one of the mightyest Lordes that was in all Almaine, his power was so great, that he and the power of Laurentino were able to maintayne warres against the Emperour. So considering all things, the Emperour in his owne person went and toke the Knight out of prison, of whom he vnderstode all that happened in the Castell of the Rocke, and likewise the truth of the treason of Firidefonte. and being in this communication. they heard in the Court a great rumour, and going to see what was the occasion thereof, they saw that there was brought two dead Knightes vppon two horses, and hadde on either of them a meruailous great and cruell wound, which was as it

appeared the occaſion of their deaths, wheras we will leaue them, for that the fury of this Tinacrian doth compell me to declare the end of this conflict, as in the Chapter following you ſhall vnderſtand.

¶ Now the Tinacrian was tarrying to ſee if any would come forth againſt him, for that which was paſt, and how that Rodelando and his coſin made battaile with him, and how hee ouercame them both. Chap. 26.



Then as the furious Faunus in the mountaine of Tartarie, doth couer his great & brutall members with the braunches of ỳ mightie Pine trées, working pollicies to get his pray, for ỳ he cannot finde wheron to execute his anger, for to ſatiſie his capitall enimye, hunger: euen ſo & rather more furious was this Tinacrian, abiding the comming of Macedonio, or any other ỳ peradventure might follow him, he blaſphemed againſt the Gods & loked vp vnto the heauens, & ſayd: So long as I beléeue in them, ther will nothing proſper with me, nor in anye thing will my honour increaſe. And being in this ſpéech he ſaw cõming ỳ way which he came, two well proportioned knights, mounted vpon two mighty horſes, who when the came vnto the waters ſide, in great haſt they called for the barke, & loking round about them to ſée if they could eſpy their enimy, they ſaw him on the other ſide of ỳ riuer, vnto whom with a loud voyce they called, & did defie him to mortall battell, the knight of the branch when he heard them call, hée made himſelfe ready, & entering into the bark he ſayd. Tarry ther & I will come ouer to ſée if you do ſéeke me or not. & therwith he made great haſt with the bark, & whẽ he came nigh vnto the ſhore he mounted vpon his mightie beaſt, & with a light leap he was a land. Then one of thoſe knights w̃ an high voice ſaid: Now ſir traytor, ỳ ſhalt pay ỳ great offence which thou didſt vnto me before ỳ Emperour, for thou ſhalt vnderſtand ỳ I am Rodelando, & this other is my coſin Firideſonte.

defonte. When the Tinacrian heard this without tarrying for any more words, he set hand vpon his sword & layd: Oh traytors, how your faults haue brought you to receiue the payment for your treson at my hands, & now in place wher your tresons shall not profit you, & in saying these words he strok Rodelando such a blow that he made him to fal backwards vpon the horse crouper. Then Firidefonte entered in to him on the one side, & strok the Tinacrian such a blow vpõ the helme, that it made a sound as though he had strok vpõ a bell, & made him decline his head vnto his brest, but quickly he setled himselfe againe, & lift vp his rigorous arme and stroke him such a blow vpon his shoulder, that it made him shrink in his body with the great paine he felt: at that time Rodelando was come vnto himselfe and setled agayne, very much troubled at the great valor of the knight, & throwing his shæld vnto the ground he stroke the knight such a blow on the one side of his helme, that he made him to decline his head vpon his beasts neck, who being scarred wt that blow, gaue a great leap grom them, which did not a little vantage the Tinacrian, for that *Firidefonte* came to discharge his blow vpon him, & by reson that the beast did leape on the on side, hæ could not execute that blow: in which time without receiuing any other blow, the Prince setled himselfe againe in his saddle, & found nigh vnto him *Firidefonte*, who followed to strik him, to whom he gaue such an ouerthwart blow vpon his beuer, that with the sparkles of fire which flew out ther of, he singed his browes & eye lids, & made him to fall backwards vpon his horse crouper without any remembrance, & therwith Rodelando prested vnto the Tinacrian, wheras began a great & perilous battayle, this Tinacrian with great lightnesse entered in & out wt his enimies, without receiuing any harme, & stroke them with so great fury, that they wist not what to doe, & it could not be chosen but ỳ he must nœds receiue some harme, for that hæ dealt with two of the best knights in all Almaine. In this sort they endured two hours and he had brought these two knights into great wearines, and all their bodies were couered with blood, & feeling themselues

ſelues ſo troubled, *Firidefonte* hallowed with a loude voyce, at which call there came forth out of a little groue ten armed knights with their ſpeares on theyr reſts, & made theyr way againſt the Tinacrian, who ſeing them comming, was nothing afraid, but pricking his great beaſt with the ſpurs hée put himſelfe betwixt the two couſins, which was the occaſiõ that theſe ten knights could not execute their furious blowes. The Tinacrian dyd throw his ſhéeld at his back, and toke his ſword faſt in both his hands, & firming himſelfe in his ſtirrops, and ſtroke Firidefonte, ſuch a blow vppon the helme, that although it had béene of a fine Diamond, hée had broken it all to péeces, for the fury of his blow was ſuch, that hée clone the helme and head of that furious *Firidefonte* downe to the breſt, ſo that hée fell downe dead to ỹ ground, and hauing done this, hée found himſelfe compaſſed about with all the other knights, vpon whom hée bégan to ſtrik meruaylous great & furyous blowes, in ſuch ſort, that in a ſmall tyme hée brought fiue of them to the ground, *Rodolando* hauing opportunitye, with both his hands ſtroke him ſo terrible a blow, that hée made him with his beauer to touch the eares of his beaſt, then all the reſt layd vppon him, but they dyd no more harme then if they had ſtrok vpon an Anfield, but when the Tinacrian was come vnto himſelfe finding Rodelando by him, who without all pitty layde vppon him, hée turned his ſword about his head, and ſtroak him ſuch a blow vpon his left arme, his ſword béeing gouerned by the force of his worthy hand that hée brake the ſtéely armour, and cut fleſh & bone with ſo great fury, that the head with the right ſhoulder blade was deuyded from the body, and hée fell downe dead to the ground.

Then all the reſt which remaynéd, when they ſaw ſo great ſlaughter, truſtyng more vnto the lyghtneſſe of theyr horſes, then vnto the ſtrength of theyr armes, determined to flye. But the knight of the Braunch perceiuing it, and hauing a very lyght beaſt, put himſelfe betwixt them & theyr way, ſaying: If you will not receyue the death, ſtay, and do that which I will tell you, and I will let you goe at lyberty:

berty : and they ſeeing that if they dyd it not with a good will, they ſhould do it ſpite of theyr harts, they dyd ſtraight way conſent, vnto whatſoeuer hee would command, and returning them all, hee dyd command them to take the bodies of Firidefonte and Rodelando, and to put them vppon two horſes, and that from him they ſhould carry them vnto the Emperour, and tell him all that which hee ſhould ſaye vnto them. So they dyd accomplyſh his commaundement, and they came vnto the Court, at ſuch time as the night began to appeare.

These were the two dead bodyes which the Emperour ſaw brought into the Court, at ſuch tyme as they had little care of any ſuch matter : So they that brought theſe dead bodies, went vp into the great hall, and when they were before the Emperour, they ſayde : High and myghtye Emperour, the knight of the Braunch doth ſend vnto your highneſſe, two furyous knights, Rodelando and Firidefonte, in this ſort as you doe ſee them, deſiring your Hyghneſſe to ſend vnto him, his Lady and his Page, and lykewyſe to cleere and deliuer out of pryſon his companyon, and that fayre Clarentina, for that it is very apparant that ſhee was falſely accuſed, as hee, and the Dukes ſonne of Bauiero, doe well know, of whom your Hyghneſſe may very well certefie your ſelfe. Lykewyſe if there bee any knight in all your Court, that will ſtand in contentyon, and defend the contrary, beeing one, or tenne, that hee alone with his perſon will defend it. And if ſo bee that your highneſſe will not doe this ryght and iuſtice, hee is determyned to do vnto you all the harme and damage that hee may. And to conclude, in defence of this right hee doth defie thy Emperiall Crowne and all thy royal eſtate : and ỳ better to ſatiſfie thy minde, hee will deliuer vnto thee Candiſea, for that of hir thou ſhalt vnderſtand all ỳ whole truth of the matter, with condition that ſhe receiue no hurt nor harme vnto hir perſon, for that ſhee hath repented hir ſelfe of the fact done.

The Emperour, who was very attentiue, and harkened vnto

vnto the Embaſſage ſent with ſo great pride, was in a maze, and greatly meruailed in ſuch ſort that he could not ſpeake, but when hee came vnto himſelfe, hee ſayd. Oh God, & what may this bee, that ther is ſo much power & ſtrength in this one knight, that within my kingdome, yea, within my Pallaice, he doth theſe acts without feare, and with this eye hee toke Floriſarte by the hand and entred into his Chamber wheras betwixt them ther was very much a do, with hold & kepe. So when hee was well aduertiſed who the knight and the Lady were, he was fully determined to ſet at liberty Clarentina, and Macedonio, and to ſend them vnto the knight, ioyntly with the Lady, & that Floriſarte ſhould beare them company, till ſuch time as they had deliuered thē vnto the knight, and that they ſhould of his part requeſt him to remayne in the Court, for that therwith hee ſhould receiue great contentment: ſo according vnto the Emperours commaundement Floriſarte went, and in his company Laurentino, who when hee ſaw his ſiſter cleere of ſo great euill was very ioyfull. So they ſtayed not in any place, till ſuch tyme as they came vnto the paſſage, whereas they found that inuincible knight, who when hee ſaw them, hee was right ioyfull and receiued meruaylous delyght, and much more when they told him that Clarentina was at hir liberty: and when hee heard the meſſage of the Emperour in requeſting him to remaine in his court, hee ſurrendred vnto him great thanks for the ſame, and ſent to requeſt him to pardon and forgiue Candiſea. There Floriſarte and Laurentino dyd promiſe him on theyr parts to importunate the Emperour therevnto, and herwith they toke their leaue the one of the other, the Tiuacrian dyd paſſe ouer the riuer, and the reſt returned vnto the Cittie with the knights anſwere, the which they gaue vnto the Emperour, and when hee ſaw that hee would not tarry and remaine with him, hee was very ſorrowfull. Laurentino when hee ſaw the Emperours ſorrow ſayd: High and mighty Lord, hee was by vs very much perſwaded, who doth kiſſe your highneſſe hand, and ſayd that he could not in any wiſe ſtay longer, for that hee had other great matters in

charge,

charge, which néede muſt bée accompliſhed: and doth moſt hartely requeſt your highneſſe, to make reckoning of him as of your owne, where, and in whatſoeuer your highneſſe will or ſhall command him, and for a recompence of the ſame, he doth requeſt your highneſſe for to pardon & forgiue Candiſea all hir fault & offence, for that ſhe was blinded by loue, and againe hir fault doth deſerue pardon, for that ſhe ſought remedy, againſt that falſe accuſation. Likewiſe wée do pray and deſire your highneſſe of our part to performe the ſame. The Emperour did ſtraight grant vnto all their requeſt, and as the yre & wrath dyd loſe theyr ſuperioritie ouer him, he ſhowed himſelfe to bée very ſorrowfull, to haue loſt out of his court ſo valiant a Knight. Then Laurentino did importunate his ſiſter for to aſke license of the Emperour for to returne vnto *Tirol*, the which was graunted them: ſo they carryed in theyr company the Bauiero, and paſſing through Auguſta, they came vnto Minique, whereas they remayned a tyme with great feaſts & tryumphs. And when they ſaw that it was time to depart, they toke their way to Eſpruch, a Cittie of the Erledome of *Tirol*: and paſſing ouer the Alpes, they were taken priſoners by a mighty Gyant, and twenty armed knights vpon ſuch a ſodayne, that they could not make any defence: but all their company were ſlaine, & the reſt priſoners, as the two Knights. Floriſarte & Laurentino, and the Lady his ſiſter. The Gyant and his companie toke their way through ỳ mountaines, towards the land of Eſguizaros: but the third day of their captiuitie and impriſonment, they ſaw comming downe by the Riuers ſide, a knight armed with very rich armour, his ſtature was ſuch, that hée ſéemed to bée a very good Knight, & in his company hée had two very fayre Ladies. This Knight came readye to the battaile, his ſhéild in good order, and his ſpeare in his hand, put vpon his right thigh with a very good grace and demeanour. But béefore I do tell you who this Knight is, I muſt firſt ſhow you of all that happened vnto the Tinacrian, after that hée departed from the Emperour.

¶How

¶How the Emperour *Alphebo* would haue perſwaded the Princeſſe *Tigliaſa* to leaue that lamentable life, and how ſhe refuſed to doe it, and went frō them, and how the two Knights departed, and of all that happened vnto them in their iourney. Cap. 27.



This valiant Tinacrian trauailed ſo faſt ouer the Mountaines, that in ſhort ſpace hee left them behinde him. So likewiſe he did thorough Hungaria & Samaria, and paſſed thorough Thracia, Miſia, Dardenia, and Macedonia, and came vnto the principall part of all Grecia vnto Conſtantinople. This Tinacrian chanced vpon many aduentures in this his iourney, as recompencing of griefes, and rightening of wrongs, and ſetting at liberty of compulſions, as well vnto Knights as vnto Ladies and Gentlewomen: but in eſpeciall againſt Gyaunts in battaile, killing and deſtroying. In ſuch ſort, that the fame of the Knight of the Braunch was in all parts, and eſpecially amongs the knights of Grecia: inſomuch, that they dyd not talke of any actes and deedes paſt of Emperours and Princes, but all was of this valyant Tinacrian. Lykewyſe the fame of the Purple Knight was there amongſt them, which was no leſſe, then that of the Tinacrian. And if it bee ſo, that I do tell you no more of this good Tinacrian, it is not for that *Artemidoro* hath not declared it: but conſidering ỹ great antiquity of the time, it was becauſe he ỹ dyd write this, could not read it, therfore hee doth declare ỹ which he could read. This Hiſtory ſayth, that when this Tinacrian came within a myle of Conſtantinople, the nyght came vpon them, & hee dyd determyne to paſſe it away in a thick Orchard that was there nigh the high way, and hanged his ſheeld vppon the bough of a tree: and by reaſon of the wearineſſe of his iourney, hee ſlept as one ỹ was without all care. The Lady put hir ſelfe farther into the Orchard, and in this ſort they

paſſed

passed away the night, til the morning came. At which time there chanced an aduenture, which for to declare in order, I must returne vnto the Knight of the Sunne, whereas wee left him, and as you haue heard, hee was beholding the ceremonyes of the Princesse *Tigliafa*, which shee vsed ouer the body of Zoylo, vpon hir knees with a sorrowfull lamentation. The knight of the sunne the better to vnderstand what shee sayd, pulled off his healme, and then hee heard that shee sayd as followeth.

I do not know wherfore I do lose so much tyme in this sorrowfull lamentatyon, for that it is not sufficyent for to delyuer mee from sorrow and griefe, which continually I am afflicted with. Very heauie I am for thee my Zoylo, & beeing without thy company, I know not how I lyue. It were better for mee at once to ende my sorrow, procuring with my owne hands, to goe and beare thee company. Oh sorrowfull Lady, how doest thou lyue without thy welbeeloued? How dost thou sustayne thy selfe, without thy lyfe? That day in the which thou didst lose him, that day it happened well vnto thee, if thou hadst lost thine owne lyfe: but in the ende will come an ende, that thou shalt goe to seeke him, in giuing thy selfe cruell death.

And with this shee made an ende of hir lamentation, for that lifting vp hir eyes, shee saw how the two knights were very attentiue vnto that which shee sayd. And giuing a terrible and grieuous sigh, shee arose vp in great hast, & entered into the Chamber whereas shee came forth, and with great wrath she shut vp ỹ doore, making within the chamber, meruaylous lamentations. The Emperour *Alphebo* went thether, to see if hee could open the doore, but hee found it very fast shut, as one who had the Fortresse made by the wyse Lyrgandeo, & so lykewyse dyd hee bring that monster for to keepe hir, that shee might bee troubled of no body. The Emperour *Alphebo* seeing that his calling was in vayne, departed and went out with his company, and mounting vpon theyr Beasts they dyd prosecute theyr iourney. So all the rest of the day almost they trauayled in the same Forrest,

and

And when it was towards night, they found themselues in the broad and beaten way of Pyreo, which went vnto Constantinople, of the which they were very ioyfull: and he dyd determine to goe vnto the Emperour his father for to kisse his hands, and so they directed they' way vnto Constantinople. They had not ridden long, when that they heard a great noyse of hunters which followed their game, and they came towards ẏ place wheras they were, for that the night drew on: and they vnderstood by some of the huntsmen, that the Emperour was in that hunt, who for his recreation at that time came forth, and had in his company the Empresse, and the fayre Oliua, who was very sorrowful for ẏ absence of Rosicleer. When the Emperour *Alphebo* knew that they were there, hee went vnto they' tents, & there dyd not lack them which dyd aduertise the Emperour and the Empresse, who with much ioye went out to receiue him, as hee would haue entred. And whē Alphebo was before hir, hee fel down vpon his knées: then the Empresse with tears of great ioy dyd imbrace him, and spake words of maternall loue. Then was he receiued of the faire Oliua, and of all the Princesse & Ladyes that were there. Likewise they receiued and gaue great entertainment vnto the King of Sardenia, for that hée was welbéloued of them all, from the time that hée made battaile with the Gyant in the Emperiall Pallaice. And béeing in this pleasure the Emperour came with as much spéed as hée could, and there bégan a new the welcamming of Alphebo and the King, with so much ioye & pleasure vnto all, that I cannot expresse it. So there they passed that night til the morning, and when all things was put in order, they heard diuine seruice, and went to breakfast, with pretence to returne againe vnto they' hunting. So when they were a taking vp of the tables, they heard a great rumour of seruants, and of the running and coursing of horses. The Emperour *Alphebo* arose from the Table, and putting on his healme, hee went out of the Tent, whereas hée found in a readinesse his horse and with great lightnesse hee mounted on him, & rod towards the place from whence the noyse came.

and

and vnon a ſodaine hée ſaw come riding two Knightes, and after them followed one Knight of a meruailous diſpoſition, with Purple armour all to be ſpotted with ſtars of golde, likewiſe his ſhéeld was purple, vpon the which was put for the deuice a Knight who ſéemed to haue the ſame deuice, his eyes ſhut by reaſon that certaine Sunne beames did ſtrike on them, the which ſéemed to proceéde out of the face of another Knight. This purple Knight brought his ſword in his hand all naked, in manner as though he would ſtrike ẏ other two which ranne awaye. The Emperour Alfebo did reprehend the two Knights for their running away, and put himſelfe before them. At this inſtant we muſt leaue the Emperour & his Knights, for to returne vnto the Paſtor Claridiano, whom we left with his ſwéet muſicke, and his Lute in his hand, compaſſed round about with a company of ſhepheards, haueing hir before him, whoſe beauty did make him to diſguiſe himſelfe in that baſe apparell, & ſhe was ſet vpon the gréene graſſe, wheras ſhe might with good attention heare ẏ delicate ſwéetneſſe of this new ſhepheards muſicke. Alſo all the reſt of the ſhepheards had no ſmall admiration as well therat, as at ẏ ſwéet melody he vſed in ſinging, and at ſundry times hée ſent forth déepe ſighs, ſo that it made all the ſhepheards harts to melt, and the very birdes which did flye in the forreſt did ſtay & were aſtonied at his ſwéet muſicke. So when he was weary of playing & ſinging, the amorous ſight of the Paſtora did graunt him no farther liſence, but that with a few teares hée caſt downe his humbled eyes, & began to wring his hands. The Paſtora dyd verye much behold him, & it ſéemed vnto hir that in all hir life ſhe had not ſéene ſo much fairenéſſe in a man, imagining with hir ſelfe that he was ſome worthy Knight. So ſtraight way ſhe toke Galiſmena by the hand, and aroſe vp from the place wheras ſhe was ſet, and did looke vpon the ſhepheard, giuing him to vnderſtand, that hir ſight ſhould be vnto him more at cõmaundement, then to all the reſt of ẏ ſhepheards ther a long the riuer, & with great maieſtye ſhé turned hir back, as though ſhe had perfectly known whoſe daughter ſhe

had bene, leauing all them in a great confuſion at the firſt, who did ſeperate themſelues euery one to his way, for whē they ſaw that they could haue no longer ſight of that fayre Paſtora, they all departed, and none remained but Filipenſio, Coridon, and Alpheſiueo. This Filipenſio was brought into that perplexity, (that although he had the vantage of all the company in brauery & ſtomacke) yet hee could not perſwade himſelfe to the contrary, but hee wared ſo leane and feeble in ſuch ſort, that it appeared in his face his great affliction. Coridon which did well perceiue his griefe, & wringing both his hands, he ſayd: Ah faire and gentle ſhepheard, very apparant thou doſt giue to vnderſtand thy ſorrow & griefe, and likewiſe by my ſonets thou doeſt vnderſtand my paine. This is the Paſtora that hath all the valleyes full of the amorous fire of loue, and loke in how ſo much Nature hath indued hir with beauty and fairenesſe: euen ſo great a maieſty hath ſhe accompanyed with hir cruelty, that there is no ſhepheard that can ſuffer it. This is the Paſtora for whom the name of this flowred field is loſt, whether as all Shepheards doth reſort to keepe & feede their ſheepe, but once hauing a ſight of hir, then all their care is loſt, their ſheep goeth a ſtray, & they giue place vnto cruell loue to enter into their harts, and ther he doth ſatiſfie his cruell appetite, in ſuch ſort, that all their delight is to paint & ſet forth their amorous ſongs, beleeuing thereby to abate the cruelty of hir ſtony hart, and yet ther is no more ſhew of remorſe, then is in the hard rocke beaten with a myghtye ſtorme of haile.

Ah Filipenſio I ſee now that thou art a new louer, and yet by beholding thée thou ſeemeſt to bee an old louer. This new ſhepheard would haue made him anſwere, but he was cut off by a heauy noiſe which he heard amongeſt the trées, which ſeemed to be of the Paſtora, & crying out with more vehemency, he heard that it were ſhrikes of the Paſtora, and Galiſmena, which héeing heard by the ſhepheards, with great alteration they ran that way whereas the noiſe was, & by reaſon that in lightneſſe & loue this new ſhepheard dyd exceede all the reſt, he was ỳ firſt that came vnto the place, & ſaw

saw, that there was a Gyant, and with him a well proportioned Knight, who had fast hold of the Pastora, and with the point of his sword pricked the hands of Galismena to make hir let goe hir hold, for that she imbraced the Pastora in hir armes with great strength. At that time came Filipensio, & with a great noise hee sayd.

Thou vile Knight and false traytour, I charge thee stand still, and not lay hands vpon that delicate Pastora, and taking his shepheards crooke in his hand, which was both knotty and hard, with the same hardinesse as though hee had ben armed with complet armour, he pressed towards them. The Knight with great anger for that which the shepheard had sayd, drew out his sword, pretending with one blow to returne those words of the shepheard, but he that knew very well how to vse himselfe, stepped on the one side & made him to strike his blow in vaine, at which time the shepheard entered in to him by the one side, and stroke him so terrible a blow with his crooke vpon the left shoulder, that he ouerthrew him to the ground without any remembraunce. The Gyant being greatly amazed at the power of the shepheard, beleeuing that the Knight had ben slaine, with a great shrike let goe the Pastora, and set spurres vnto his horse, thinking to ouerrun him, but it chaunced not with him as he thought, for that the shepheard was not idle, but hadde recouered the sword of the ouerthrowen Knight, and hauing it in his hand with great discreation hee did apart himselfe from the fury of the horse, and in passing by stroke him on the hinder legs with so great strength that he cut them both a sonder, and he fell downe with his master to the ground, but in such sort, that the Gyaunt might well cleere himselfe from his horse without receiuing any harme at all, and beeing on foote hee presently layde hand vppon his great and broad Fauchon, and beeing voyde of all patience, with a diuelish furye hee discharged his blow at the vnarmed head of Filipensio, but the Shepheard did not determine with himselfe for to abide the comming of that vnmeasurable blow, but

with great lightnesse he put himselfe on the one side, so that he stroke his blow in vaine, and because his Pastora should see the great strength and force of his armes, hee toke the sword fast in his hand and firmed himselfe on the ground and stroke the Gyaunt on the waste on his left side, that although his armour had beene made of hard and fine Diamonds, it had not beene able to haue made resistance against the fury of that great and mightye blow, which was in such sort, that the Gyaunt was cut a sunder in the middest, so that the one halfe fell on the one side and the other on the other side. All the shepheards that were there present were very much amazed, and lykewise the Pastoras, to see how the new shepheard at two blowes had ouerthrowen two such Knightes as they were. The Pastora when shee saw hir selfe cleere from that peryll, went vnto Filipenso for to imbrace him, and with amorous wordes shee said. What reward can I poore Pastora giue, for to make satisfaction and gratefie the great good which at this present you haue done mee: surely I haue no other thing but to put my selfe into your handes, that with mee you may doe your pleasure, hauing a respect vnto my honour. Oh happy Pastora, that hath deserued by thy beauty that such a shepheard should yelde himselfe vnto thee. Who could declare the great contẽtment that Filipenso receiued when hee saw himselfe embraced with the thing that in all the world he best loued, and with that contentment he sayd.

Oh Goddesse of all beauty and faireneſſe, wherwith can I gratifie ỹ God Pan, for the great force and strength which he gaue mee at this present: What sacrifice can I make, to pay this benefite and ioye that I doe feele, in hauing this my shepheards body imbraced and compassed about, with these delicate armes. This great force and strength I may attribute vnto you my swéete Pastora, for that by your fayre sight my small strength did the more augment, which was the occasion that I deserue so great fauour. Fayre Pastora, I desire no other thing of you, but onely to accept this which I haue done in part of a recompence of the great

seruice

ſeruice which this ſhepheard doth deſire to doe vnto me. At this time the Knight that was without remembrance was come vnto himſelfe agayne, & put himſelfe on foote, the which when Filipenſo ſaw, hée ceaſed his communication, & ranne vnto him with a wrathfull furye, and before that hée could well ſettle himſelfe, hée layd hold vppon his healme with ſo great ſtrength, that he pulled it from his head, breaking all the buckles & lacings, and when they ſaw the Knight without his healme, he was knowen of all the ſhepheards to bée the ſhepheard called Tarſides. Then Alpheſiueo went vnto Filipenſo, and requſted that hée would mittigate his ire, the which this new ſhepheard did at his requeſt, leauing to execute a terrible blow which he had all aloft for to ſtrike him. What ſhall I ſaye vnto you of this Knight, when he ſaw himſelfe ouercome of one alone ſhepheard, beléeuing ỳ twenty Knights had not bæne able to haue done it, but loking about to ſée where his companion was, and ſaw him dead with ſo terrible a blow, he could not but with great ſorrow ſay: Oh yée Gods come downe all together and doe obedyence vnto this Paſtora, for that ſhe doth better deſerue it thē all you, whoſe beauty hath ſo much force, that it incouraged one ſhepheard to doe that which a thouſand Knights durſt not haue giuen the enterpriſe off. Oh God Pan how hath thy power extended this day farre beyond the power of all other Gods, that thou diddeſt permit thus to bée ſlaine ſo mighty a King. Ah Cayſerlinga, no Paſtora, but a Goddeſſe, that onely doe ſt not bring in ſubiection the ſhepheards, but alſo the high and mightye Kings. Thou ſhalt vnderſtand Paſtora, that amongeſt them which doth beare thée company is the Prince of Britania in diſguiſed apparayle, and I am that vnhappy prince of Polimago, and he moſt vnfortunate whoome this ſhepheard hath ſlaine, was the King of Silycia, againſt whoome the Gods hath ſhewed themſelues contrary. All this hée ſaid with great teares which came from his heart, accompanyed with terrible ſighes. The Paſtora without anye ſhew of pitty ſhée had of that Knight, aroſe from the place whereas ſhe was, and with a gracious

countenance ſhe caſt hir eyes vpon Filipenſio, ſhe went vnto hir ſheepe, & in hir company the Paſtora Galiſmena, & Coridon, and Filipenſio and Alpheſuio remained with the ſorrowfull Prince, comforting him with many good perſwaſions, but all did profit little, for that without saying any word with a terrible ſigh he aroſe vp, & tooke his horſe & put himſelfe in amongſt the thickeſt of the trées, with pretence to do that which in the next chapter ſhall be to told you.

¶ How the Prince of Poliſmago returned and tooke priſoner the Paſtora Cayſerlinga, and how that Filipenſio followed after him till ſuch time as hee tooke hir out of his power. Cap. 28.

After the departure of the Prince, the three ſhepheards remained vnder thoſe high Pine trées, till ſuch time as the darke night came vpon them, and there did determine to paſſe the night away with muſicke and amorous ſongs, and in this conuerſation Filipenſio receiued great pleaſure, but they heard vpon a ſodayne a great noiſe, which ſéemed to be of a woman, and likewiſe a rumor of the running of horſes. The ſhepheards ſpedely aroſe vp and went to ſée what it was, and they found Galiſmena who cryed out vnto the Gods, and when ſhée ſaw Filipenſio ſhé ſayd: Ah good ſhepheard runne and giue ſuccour, for that the Paſtora is carryed away priſoner by the Prince of Poliſmago againſt hir will. O that I were able to ſignifie vnto you héere ỹ great anger of Filipenſio, it was ſo much that almoſt he was beſide himſelfe, but when Galiſmena ſaw him in that traunce, ſhe called vnto him with a loud voyce and ſaid: Ah gentle ſhepheard is it now time to lack courage, doſt thou not ſée the great perill which may happen vnto Cayſerlinga, and all by thy detraining of time. Theſe high words was the occaſion that the ſhepheard came vnto himſelfe agayne, & like vnto an arrow out of a bow he followed the way after thē till ſuch time as he came into a broad high way, wheras he

did discouer the new fot steps of his horse, by which he knew that he was rode that way, and with great lightnesse he did prosecute his iourney, til such time as he came to Ierosolima, and when he saw the small remedy that he had to goe forwards, for that he was on foote, he determined to enter into the citye, and loked backe to see if any of the shepheards did follow him, and he saw none but Coridon that did follow him, and tarrying for him he said: Ah shepheard what shall we doe without our delight, follow mee if it be thy pleasure, and let vs procure to restore agayne our losse, which is our Pastora. For heere I doe sweare vnto thee by the Omnipotent Iupiter, neuer to returne vnto the riuer of Euphrates, without the faire Pastora, and without any more tarrying they entered into Ierosolima, not staying till they came vnto the Pallace, and the first that he met with was with Fidelio, whom he commaunded to goe and declare vnto the princesse of his comming, who did very much meruaile when that Fidelio did tell hir, for that he returned in so short time, and she went out of hir chamber and did receiue him with great ioy and pleasure, saying: What quicke returne is this that you haue made, valiant & excellent Knight: Very heauye and sorrowfull sayd the Prince, for that good Lady you shall vnderstand, my Pastora is robbed and carryed away from me, and I am not able to make any defence. And being cut off by the great abounda nce of teares that proceded frō his dolorous heart, hee could not speake a word more. And without any tarrying he depriued himself of his shepheards apparell, and put on his owne garments, and with a trice he was armed, and returning vnto Coridon he sayd: Friend Coridon this is mine accustomed wearing, for that which hetherto thou hast seene me weare, was lent me, ỹ I might the better reioyce my selfe with the sight of my loue, & now seeing that fortune hath frowned on me, heere I sweare vnto thee not to take any rest till such time as I set hir at liberty. The shepheard meruailed to see ỹ which he did see, and sayd vnto the Knight: Ah Filipensio how doest thou pretend, to leaue the body without a soule, doest thou not beleeue that

Coridon

Coridon can remaine aliue onely with his body, for that my ſoule is abſented and gone after my Paſtora. With many teares the ſhepheard ſaid theſe words. The prince ſeeing that the detracting of time was perilous, toke his leaue of the Princeſſe, and found his horſe in a readineſſe, and with great lightneſſe he mounted vpon him, ſo likewyſe his Squire and Coridon mounted vpon very good horſes, which ỹ Princeſſe commaunded to be giuen thẽ, & with great haſt they departed out of the citye, & toke their iourney into a broad high way, and at ſuch time as the Sun had coured all the earth, they met with a labouring man who was comming fro his accuſtomed work in the field, of whom they aſked newes of their Paſtora, but he could tell them none, but he ſaid, that about midnight hee heard certaine lamentations made by a woman, but he knew not the occaſion wherfore. So ſtraight way he thought what it might be, which was the occaſion that they made the more haſt in trauailing, with great feare leaſt they ſhould loſe hir: So all that day they trauailed, and rode through Damaſco, and left the riuer of Euphrates. this Knight trauailed with great ſorrow for ỹ ſmall newes that he heard of his Paſtora, and the anger was very great of the Prince, for that he was ſo careleſſe, in ſuch ſort, that neither Coridon nor Fidelio durſt ſpeake a word vnto him, and diuerſe times lifting vp his eies vnto heauen, with an heauy voyce he ſayd: Oh high and myghty God Iupiter, how is it poſſible that I hauing done my duety vnto the Deitys in all reſpects, and almoſt vſing a quotidian ſacrifice, thou doeſt yet ſuffer thy power to bee contrary vnto me in this, giue me now ſome light to hap on that way by which that traitour and diſloyall knight doth carry the Goddeſſe of all ſhepheards, that I may deliuer hir, that ſhee be not ſcorned nor ill intreated of that falſe Knight: Oh Diana, chaſt Goddeſſe, hide thy breaſt, and ſend ſome keeper of thine to defend hir, let that reuenger Camilla be hir garde, and with hir Bow ſend a ſharpe arrow to paſſe through the hart of him that doth all this euill. In this ſort with great anger the Prince trauailed, and the third day of his iourney, ſome-

what earely in the morning hée saw vpon a Rocke a very fayre and great castle which seemed to bee very strong. The Prince determined to go thether, hée had not trauailed long when hée came into another great and broad waye, in the which ther was a man which came towards them, & when hée drew nigh, they asked of him if hée could tell any newes of the Pastora. The man lift vp his eyes & seeing the proportion of him that demanded the question. hée sayd: For thy profit sir knight, for that thou seemest vnto mée to be of estimation, I will not tell thée thy demand. The valiant knight with more humility then his passionate heart would abide, desiring him to giue him to vnderstãd if he knew any thing of hir. The man sayd: Sir knight, I know not wherefore you will know of that thing, that by seeking of remedy for hir deliuery, will procure thy selfe death. Notwithstanding seeing that with so great curtesie you do request mée, I will tel you, although it were better for you not to know it, neuerthelesse you shall vnderstand that yesternight a knight brought hir vnto yonder castel which you see before you, and put hir vnder so strong kéeping, that there is no power able to deliuer hir, except the power of the high Gods. The contentment was great that the Prince receiued whē he heard newes of hir, the which hée so much desired, & giuing great thanks vnto the man, hée went towards the castle, & when hée came thether, hée found the draw bridge downe, and the gate open, and no garde there to kéepe it. And without all feare hée entered in at the gate, and left Coridon & Fidelio without. And béeing within, hée came into a very great and broad court, the which was paued with very fayre and wel wrought stones, and the walls were full of windowes and yron grates very fayre, but hée saw no body: & discouering a broad & well made payre of stayres, hée alighted from his horse, & went vp, and béeing halfe way vp, there was a dore open, and looking in thereat, hée saw it was a great Hall, and that verye darke, hauing at the farther ende thereof, ther was a little louer hole, which gaue a smal light, where by hée perceiued a little dore, which seemed to bee at the fot

of a payre of winding ſtayres, at which doore the Knight entered and went vp the ſtayres. And when hée came aloft, hée entred into very gret and broad chambers all furniſhed wt beds, and it ſeemed to bée a place for the houſhould ſeruants, and going frõ thence he entred into a very fayre hal, in the which was a well wrought windowe, and looking out thereat hée ſaw that it was ouer the gate of that ill kept caſtle, by which hée entered, and looking for Coridon & Fidelio, hée could not ſée them, but beléeued that they had put themſelues apart in ſome place becauſe they would not bée ſéene. Then this valiant Knight looking downe againe to the gate, ſaw a mightye great Gyant of a huge ſtature, who called with a great loude voyce and ſayde: Runne quickly and ſéeke out that bold Knight, who without any lyſence entered into the Caſtell, and put him into the moſt cruelleſt priſon in all the houſe. Theſe wordes cauſed little feare in the Knight, but rather going from the windowe hée went out of the hal, where was a payre of ſtayres, and as hée begaan to deſcend downe by them, hée ſaw comming vp thereat in great haſt fiue armed Knights, and after them eyght clownes, who ſéeing him to bée the Knight they ſought, with theyr ſwords drawne very rigorouſly they dyd aſſault him. This valyant warryour drew out his ſword, and ſtrok two of them two ſuch terrible blows, yt he made theyr heads to tumble downe the ſtayres, and in the fall of them they chaunced to hit two of the clownes, that they made them to fall backwards vpon the ſtayres, but his fury ſtayed not in this, but he ſtrok another Knight ſuch a blow, that hée ouerthrew him dead the ſame way, the other two Knightes which remayned ſéeing that ſlaughter ſo quickly done, they put themſelues the one on the one ſide of the ſtayres, and the other on the other, and hauing theyr ſhields before them they layde on the Knight with great and thicke blowes, but by reaſon of the deſire which the Knight had to ſée his Paſtora, & béeing very much troubled therewith, hée determyned with ſpéed to cléere himſelfe of thoſe two Knights, and therewith hée ſtrok at each

of

of them a myghty blow and sent them with the rest downe the stayres, the lyke dyd hée vnto foure of the clownes that were so hardy as to assait him, the other with a great noise ranne downe the stayres, this valyant Knight hasted downe the stayres after thē till hée came into a great court, whereas hée found the Gyant vnarmed, with a shield on his arme, and a great broad Fauchen in his hand. The Knight made shew vnto him that would not fight nor stryke him, but put his sword vp into his sheath, and sayd: Hold thy hand Gyaunt and stryke not, but put on thy armour for to make thy defence, for this vnderstand of a truth, that I will not draw out my sword so long as thou art vnarmed. The Gyaunt when hée saw how lyttle hée dyd esteéme him, stode still and dyd beehold him, and noted the great riches of his armour, and by the deuice of his shield hée knew him to bée the Knight that wonne the pryse and honour in the iusts at Nabatea, for you shall vnderstand that all these Gyauntes were of the kingdome of Cilicia, and the King therof if you remember was the first with whome the Knight dyd Iust, which in that triumph was ouerthrowne, when that to reuenge that quarrel came forth a brother of his, who by the strength of the arme of this Knight was slaine, and the Gyaunt which hée slew by the Riuer of Euphrates was the King of Cilicia himselfe (the occasion of his comming and who all the rest were shall more at large appéere in the processe of the Hystorie.) When the Gyaunt knew him, with a diuellish countenance hée sayd: Tell mée Knight, by fortune art thou that famous warriour, who in the iustes of Nabatea (as hath béene told mée) carryed away all the honor and prayse, and ouerthrew the King of Cilicia, to whom the Gods did shew themselues enimies, and the same which likewyse slew his Brother, if there bée any curtesie in thée I desire thée to tell mée.

This valyant Prince answered & sayd: I do not know to what end ỹ dost aske it of mée, but let it bée for what it shall bée, thou shalt vnderstand that I am the same that thou

dyd

didſt ſpeak off. And for that thou ſhalt bée the better certefied of this, thou ſhalt vnderſtand ý am bée, who in Shepheards apparaile, onely with my ſhepheards croke, at ons blow brought that traytor the Prince of Poliſmago to the ground without remembrance, and lykewyſe with another blow with the ſword of the ſayd Prince, I ſlew the King of Cilicia: and am the ſame who will dw the lyke with thée, if thou dwſt not delyuer vnto mée ý fayre Paſtora, who was brought hether by force, by that naughtie Prince of Poliſmago. The Gyaunt was verie ſorrowfull for that which hée heard, & ſhowed by his countenaunce to bée very wrathfull. At that time there deſcended downe the ſtaires another Giant, who whith a furious voyce ſayde vnto the firſt Gyant: Brother put thy ſelfe apart on the one ſide, and let mée take reuengement of this vyle Knight, ý is béfore thée: & without ſpeaking any more words, hée lift vp his great and heauy fawchon, and ſtroke a mighty blow at the Knight, but this politicke Knight ſtepped with great lightnes on ý one ſide, which was the occaſion ý his blow fel downe vpon the pauement in vaine: this terrible blow was no ſoner down, when the Knight cloſed with him, and ſtroke him with his ſword ſo mighty a blow vpon the right arme, that he cut it cleane a ſunder, and it fell downe to the ground, ſword and all. The Gyant when hée ſaw himſelfe ſo wounded, gaue a terrible ſhrike & threw his ſhéld from him, and would haue taken the ſword in his other hand: but the Prince would not ſuffer it, but ſtrok him another blow on the ſame arme, and euen as hée did by the other, hée cut it a ſunder by the elbow: ſo that hée was lame of both his armes. Yet for all this, the Gyant did not loſe his fury, but roaring lyke a Lyon, hée opened the ſtumps of his armes which dyd remaine, thincking with thē to imbrace the Knight, and by his great forces to ouerthrow him. As hée laboured to enter in, the Knight put the poynt of his ſword béfore him, in ſuch ſort, that what with the ſtrength and fury of the Gyaunt, & the forces that hée put therevnto, the ſword paſſed through his body, that hée fell downe dead to the ground.

At

At this time, there descended downe the staires in great hast a Knight of a myghty proportion, whom Claridiano knew to bée the Prince of *Polismago*. This Greek Knight receiued great delyght at the sight of him. Then the Prince of *Polismago* sayde: Thou peruerse dog, come and take reuengement for the griefe & wrong which thou dost publish héere to haue receiued: for I am the Prince whom thou dost séeke for: and in saying these words, he did assault him with terrible blowes. Then Claridiano dyd returne vnto him ý lyke, but not in so terryble a sort as he might, for the great compassion that hée had of him, considering that ý pangs of loue cause a man to do that somtimes, which afterward he doth repent himselfe off. So héere betwirt them bégan a mighty and well foughten battaile, the one striking the other, on all parts, great & terrible blowes. In this sort they indured a whyle without knowing any aduauntage betwirt them, the occasion was, for that the Greeke would not vse the rigor of all his strength. And béeing in this controuersie, the Greeke lyft vp his eyes, and saw at a window the faire Pastora, who was beholding them in their battayle: at which sight hée receyued so great pleasure & delyght, ý the strength of his armes dyd fayle him, & hée had no more power to lyft them vp. When the Pagan saw that, hée dyd assault him with more courage: the Greek had no power, but onely to beare off the blowes, and recoyled till such tyme as hée came right vnder the window: which made the Pagan to thinck that hée was ouercome, & that hée had got the victory. At ý time the other Gyant was very well armed, and went vnto the Pastora, and toke hir by the haire of ý head, and pulled hir from the window, and sayd: Apart thy selfe from that place, thou which art the cause of all this euill, for that thou shalt not content thy selfe in séeing him, who doth procure thy lyberty, although it bée impossible: and I doe sweare vnto thée by my Gods, that the great damage which thy niceneſſe hath caused, thy head shall pay for. Oh how wrathfull this Greek was, when hée saw the Gyant intreat hir so euill, for giuing a terrible shrike hée lyft vp his right

arme

arme with his ſwoꝛd, and ſtroke at the Pagan ſo mighty a blow vpon his helme (ſo that if it had not bæn inchanted) hæ had cut it in two pæces, and put the head in great peril, but yet hæ eſcaped not but hæ fell downe to the grounde without any remembꝛaunce, and there ranne out of his mouth great abundance of bloud. When Claridiano ſaw him in this plyght, hæ made no moꝛe reckoning of him, but with a furious haſt hæ went to goe vp the ſtayꝛes, at ſuch time as the Giant came downe wꝫ great violence, but when the ſunne of Gran *Alphebo* ſaw him hæ returned and did abide his comming in the court, and ſayd. Make an end thou great beaſt, & deſcend downe that I may giue thæ thy payment foꝛ thy boldneſſe which thou haſt vſed againſt the goddeſſe of Paſtoras. The Gyant with the great fury which hée had vnderſtood not what the Knight had ſayd, and therefoꝛe hæ made him no anſwere, and if that hée would haue done it, yet his great wꝛath would not conſent vnto it, but with his fanchon all aloft hæ went towards the Greek, aſſaulting him with moꝛtall battaile. The like did this ſtrong Knight, making bætwixt them a terrible battaile, and ſtriking the one ỹ other where they thought to doꝫ moſt hurt. Who had then ſæne the great lyghtneſſe of the Greeke in bæſturring himſelfe, would haue well iudged that ỹ woꝛſt part ſhould not bée his, foꝛ that hæ ſo handled his enimie in bꝛeaking of his harneſſe in many places, and wounding him, in ſuch ſoꝛt, that he was all to be bathed in blood, yet foꝛ all that the great anger which he had, neither ỹ rigoꝛous battaile could cauſe him to withdꝛaw the caſting vp of his eyes vnto the place wheras hée ſaw his welbeloued Paſtora, and he beheld hir making hir great lamentation foꝛ that which the Gyant had done vnto hir, which was the occaſion that hæ had a greater deſire to giue him (who was the occaſion of hir teares) his payment. At this time the Prince *Poliſmago* was come agayne vnto himſelfe, and aroſe vppon his fæte, and ſaw the cruel battaile which was bætwæne the Giant and the Knight, and how that the Knight almoſt ouercame the Gyant, hée did determine to foꝛget ỹ which hée was bound

vnto

vnto héeing a Prince, and recouering his ſwoꝛd which hung by the wꝛiſt band, hée went and ioyned with the Gyaunt, ſo that both of them together did aſſalt him, which did nothing gricue the Gyaunt foꝛ that hée was ſomwhat wearie. The villanye which hée ſaw them vſe dyd increaſe his wꝛath, and double his ſtrength in ſuch ſoꝛt, that it fel out woꝛſe foꝛ them héeing both together then héefoꝛe, foꝛ ẏ the vileneſſe of theyꝛ aſſaulting made him to double his blowes, ſtriking now mightely at the one, and then as terribly on the other, wᵭ very great power & ſtrēgth, pꝛocuring to indamage thē. And foꝛ that he dealt with two ſuch valiant Knights, it ſtood him in hand to vſe all kinde of pollicie: but yet he could not ſo at liberty defend himſelfe, but that the giant watched his time, and ſtrok him ſo furious a blow vpon his ſtéely helme, that he made him to bow with both his knées to ẏ ground. The Prince of *Poliſmago* ſéeing him at that poynt, doubled his blows vpon him very terꝛibly: but in ſpite of them, he aroſe vp againe with moꝛe fury thē a baighted bull, & with his ſwoꝛd faſt in his hand, hée pꝛeſſed to the Gyant, & ſtroke him ſo moꝛtall a blowe vpon his ſhoulder, ẏ hée cloue him downe to the waſt, cutting harneſſe and bones, and with great facility ouerthꝛew him dead to the ground. Hée had not ſo ſoone giuen that wonderfull blowe, but hée returned another at the Pagan, vppon his inchaunted Healme, that hee made it ſound lyke vnto a Bell. The which blowe was ſo mighty that it ouerthꝛew him downe to the groūd, thꝛowing out at his Beauer very great aboundaunce of bloud.

Who could héere declare the great ioye which the Paſtora receiued when ſhée ſaw hir enimies in that plyght, I cannot iudge which had the greater ioy, the Knight in that hée had ſet hir at lybertye, oꝛ the Paſtora to ſée hir ſelfe at lybertye. So when the Knight ſaw the Pagan on the ground without remembꝛance, hée made no moꝛe tarrying, but went vp the ſtayꝛes, and ſtayed not till hée came whereas the Paſtora was. And when hée ſaw hir, hée fell

downe,

downe vpon his knées, and lyft vp his beuer, which was the occaſion that the Paſtora dyd know him, and not ſuffering him to ſpeak, with an excellent grace ſhée ſayd. Ah Filipenſio how much am I bound vnto the Gods, that haue delyuered mée from two ſo great dangers, and ſet mée at liberty from the troubles thereof. Where haſt thou left thy Shepheards apparaile? Who hath changed them, for this fayre & ſtrong armour, where haſt thou left thy ſhepheards cracke. Ah Filipenſio, giue me to vnderſtand of thy high eſtate, ý my ſmall vnderſtanding bée not ý occaſion that I fal in ſome errour. The valyant Knight béeing ſubiect to hir beauty, ſayd vnto hir: I am yours fayre Paſtora, whether I bée a Shepheard or a Knight, your beauty hath brought me in ſubiection, and it is a great glory vnto mée to bée yelded vnto you.

Then the fayre Paſtora at theſe words toke him faſt by both the hands, and not giuing him place to any more reſoning, ſhée ſayd. I will now ſée, whether you are as valyant in déedes as in words, ſeeing that fortune hath brought vs hether: & héere I do aſke of thée two things to bée graunted vnto mée, and it is ý firſt that euer I aſked of any perſon in all the world. The amorous Prince anſwered. Ah my ſweet Miſtreſſe, is it poſſible that I haue deſerued to receiue at your hands ſo much fauour, in that you do aſke of me any thing, wherin I may or can do you ſeruice, & knowing that I am yours, you néede not to aſke but commaund mée as your owne, for that I am bound to whatſoeuer you will. The faire Paſtora ſayd. Well gentle knight, ſéeing that thou doſt ſhew thy ſelfe to bée ſo ſubiect & bound to do mée pleaſure, the firſt thing that I do requeſt thée to grant mée, is, ý thou carry mée vnto Grecia vnto the Emperours court, and there for the ſpace of one moneth to make my defence, and affirme, that my beauty doth ſurmount all others in the world. Now mayſt thou goe and ſet at liberty Coridon and thy ſeruant, who are both in priſon. The Gréeke had great contentment of that which the Paſtora did aſke of him: and for to performe that which ſhée had commanded, hée went & ſought throughout all the Caſtell, to ſée if hée could find any

that

that could giue any knowledge where his company was, & cõming vnto a doore he heard a great noyse of much people, ỹ Prince knocked at the doore and bad them open it, & promised to doe them no harme if they would open the doore. So straight way it was open, wheras he demaunded for Coridon and his Squire, they were straight way brought vnto him by one of them which opened the doore, & in the meane time it was tolde him who the Giants were, you shall vnderstand that they were nephewes vnto the King of Cilicia, and vnto the Prince of Polismago, who being in loue with the Pastora, and being of hir cast off, hée went & told it vnto the king of Cilicia, thẽ they consented together to doe all that you haue heard, & had gone through with their intent if it had not bene for the valour of the prince Claridiano. So when Coridon came before the Pastora he could not refraine frõ weeping, with the great ioy which he receiued at ỹ sight of hir, and the Pastora was no lesse ioyfull. Then Claridiano remembred the prince Polismago, & commaunded Fidelio to sée whether he were aliue or dead, who went, and when hée came vnto him, hæ pulled off his helme & saw that hée was dead, for the which it greatly grieued the knight, but ỹ feare was so great of Cayserlinga for remaining in the castle, that she made great hast to the prince to depart frõ thence. The which he was constrained to do for to giue hir contentmẽt, and commaunded to make readye their horses & lykewise a palfray which they foũd in the castell. So the next day in ỹ morning they toke their way towards Grecia, passing thorough all the kingdome of Media, and the kingdome of Prisopoli, & all the way that he trauailed he left behinde great fame of wonderful aduẽtures which happened. They trauailed in a skirt of Armenia, whereas chaunced vnto him that which in the next chapter shall be told you.

¶ How Claridiano by chance had battaile with his owne father, which beeing knowen vnto Galtenor, and fearing the great harme that would come thereof, hee remedyed the same. Chap. 29.

By a Mountayne of Armenia very much inhabited, this warrelyke Knight trauailed in company with his fayre Paſtora, with ſo great delight and pleaſure, that I cannot hære ſignifie it vnto you, and with Coridon they had good paſtime, for that he was very pleaſant, who againe ſeeing that he might ſo at quiet and familiarly talk with the Paſtora, was almoſt in an extaſie for ioye. So the ſecond day that they trauailed by that mountayne, by reaſon that it was ſo fragrant, they loſt their way in ſuch ſort, that when they remembred themſelues, they wer entered into the thickeſt of the wilderneſſe, and procured to finde the way againe, which by no meanes they could, for that they were ſo farre entered into the thicket. So with great trouble they trauailed till mid day, at which time they heard a noiſe of ỹ running of water, the which they followed, & it was the occaſion ỹ they brought themſelues out of ỹ thick wood, and came into a mighty great plaine, through ỹ midſt of the which ther paſſed a dæpe ryuer. There they lœked about them to ſæ if they could diſcouer any towne, village, or dwelling places, but the could ſæ no other thing but high & mighty Pine trées, the which græued much the Paſtora, & much more the Græke, for that the Paſtora ſhould be ſo ſorrowfull, & againe, for ỹ they had no victualls to comfort hir. So they ſtaid a while, not knowing which way they myght take to bring themſelues out of ỹ diſtreſſe, but vpon a ſodaine they eſpied towards their right hand a man who trauailed a foot, being ſomwhat far off from them, that they could not diſcerne what he ſhould be. So in great haſt they went towards him, & comming nygh him, they ſaw that it was an old man, who had his head and beard very whyte, by reaſon of his great age, and the better for to trauaile, he had a ſtaffe whereon he myght leane, ſhewing that he trauayled with great paine, in that he moued himſelfe ſo heauily. Then came vnto the Princes remembraunce the queſtion ỹ the furyous beaſt dyd aſke him in the inchanted caſtle of the King of Arabia. So when they came vnto the old man,

man,they saluted him,the old man returned their salutation with a faint and weary voice. The prince asked him what aduenture had brought him into that solitarye place. This old man for to make him answere, was constrained to sit downe vpon the ground and sayd: Gentle Knight,I know not what to say,nor what I shall tell you,but onely my destiny hath brought me into this misfortune,being mocked wō great falshood by a page ẏ I brought with me,who left mé all alone & on foote in this solitary wildernesse. These two dayes haue I not eaten any thing but only dronke of ẏ water of Euphrates,with the which I haue borne out my hunger,the head of which riuer is not far frō hence. And héere I doe desire thée gentle Knight,if thou hast any pitty of this my weary age,for to succour mé,in carrying me vpon thy horse,or vpon the horse of any of thy seruants. The Prince taking great pitty on the old man sayd: Feare not good father of this thy misfortune,for séeing ẏ fortune hath brought vs hether,I will not leaue thé alone in this solitary place. The Prince leaped from his horse and toke the old man in his armes,and put him in the saddle,& helped to settle him well,that by reason of his weakenesse he might not fall,& that he being well set,he himselfe might ẏ better without all feare leap vp behind him. This falle old man séeing himselfe master of the horse,stroke him with his héeles,in so great hast,ẏ he made the horse to flye: Oh how the Knight was amazed at this act,although he beléeued that he did it to make him goe a little on foote, but when he saw that his mocking proceeded forwards on,he returned that way which his Squire came, calling out vnto him to bring his horse on the which he trauailed,who in great hast accomplished his demaund. When the Knight was on horsebacke,he began to call vnto the old man for to tarry. The which the old man did till such time as he came nigh him,& with a great laughter he sayd: Pittifull Knight,what dost thou think to recouer thy horse and to giue me my payment for that I haue mocked thé: Wouldest thou so quickly lose the name to be pittifull. I doe not meane to lose it sayde the Knight, neither did I giue thé

my horse for to carry thée alone, but both of vs, for it is a horse which can dos it verye well. I shall bée counted for a more fole then thou sayde the old man, hauing now opportunity to goe whether I list all alone, and being in thy company I shall be constrained to goe whether thy pleasure is. The Prince hearing these wordes went by little and little towards the old man, but he with a quicke course did apart himselfe from him, making with his mouth & eyes a thousand gestures, for to make him to be angry. The Prince being astonied said: Thou false old villaine, more worse then the stinking Fore, tarry thou mocker of Knights, & doe not thinke that the lightnesse of thy horse shal deliuer thée out of my hands. The old man shewed as though he estéemed lyttle his wordes and threatnings, but ran with the horse from one place vnto another, making a thousand gestures and faces with his mouth and eyes, which was euen death vnto ỹ Prince, who sayd: Oh Gods is it possible that you do permit that this naughty old man should thus scorne me with his iestures. Coridon and the Pastora came behinde, & had great pastime to sée how the Knight was mocked and beguiled of an old man, who séemed as though he could not moue himselfe for age. With the great anger & rage that the Prince had to sée himselfe so mocked, he pricked his horse with the spurres for to ouertake the old man, who was a good waye off from him, and made his horse to runne so swift a course, that it séemed he flew, and the old man with the like light course came running towards a against the Prince, & comming nigh vnto him he sayd. What is this my sonne, wherfore is all this fury, for thou doest well know that I came not for to cause in you any anger. The Prince hearing this staied his horse and did behold him, and knew him verye perfectly to bée the King of Arginaria, and with great hast hée alighted from his horse, and the old man dyd the lyke, and with great contentment they louingly imbraced one another. Then the Knight sayd.

Is it possible louing father that you doe thus misuse him that hath no other desire but to serue you, I doe promise you

that

that before I let you goe out of myne armes, to make you promise me to bring me out of this solitary place, in recompence of this trouble and anger which you haue caused mée to haue. I came for no other thing said Galtenor, for knowing the great trauaile which may happē in this place, & agayne, ỹ griefe which thou hast for ỹ trouble of a faire Pastora, which thou bringest in thy companye, and knowing the great loue which ỹ beareſt vnto hir, I did ordaine my cōming hether, & determined first to giue thée this intertainment, for that afterward I might of thée with more ioy be receiued. At this tyme drew nære the Pastora and Coridon, and Fidelio, & seeing them imbracing one another, they made the more haſt on their way, very much meruailing to see a crook back and leane old man to be turned vnto a great and faire Gyant, with a goodly long white beard, apparailed with rich apparell. The prince turning vnto the Pastora, sayd: Faire Pastora, this noble king who is hære present is king of the Iland Arginaria, my Lord and father, who vnderstanding by his art ỹ great necessity in the which we are, is com to put remedye therein. The King of Arginaria with an amorous hart and stedfaſt eyes without mouing them, he did behold the Pastora, remembring himselfe at that time of the young childe that he loſt by the riuer of Euphrates, & straight way he knew hir to be the same, of the which he dyd not a lyttle reioyce, but seeing that it was cōuenient at that time to hold his peace, he did dissemble it, & kept the great ioy which he receiued for the finding of hir in his hart, and returning vnto the prince, he said: I doe not now much meruaile faire Knight, that thy hart is subiect to so faire a creature, and I doe thinke my labour very well bestowed, because that by my cōming hether shall be taken away a great part of your trouble, which without all doubt you should haue had, & beeing in this manner talking, ther appeared before thē a horse loden with victualls, and straight way they toke order that they might eate, for that they had great nede therof. Lykewise ther was raised a very faire & rich tent for to ease thēselues, and they knew not which way nor how it was made.

and there they rested all that night, for that the King would not that they should so sone depart from him, because hee would for a time recreat himselfe in their conuersatiõ, & told them of some things ỳ should happen vnto them. So when the morning was come the Tent was taken away, & they began to trauaile by a very straight and narrow path. The King of Argimaria did leade them the waye, and commaunded them to follow him, who would set them out of that wilderneſſe, and bring them vnto the sea of Hyrcania, whereas they shall finde all things necessary for their new begun voyage, and bad them that they should haue verye great care, for being once in Grecia, there shall be ioyned together the nayles & pawes of two of the most furious Lyons that be in all ỳ world, the one bringing the other in so great affliction, ỳ the better of them both cannot bee iudged, neyther acknowledge any vantage till such time as with their outragious fury be taken away the lockes which be vpon their crowned heads, & shall at that instant in a moment bee set at liberty by ỳ robber of his first ioy, making restitution of that which a long time hath bene vsurped, remaining one of them without griefe of the young Hinde, that hee bringeth with him. When all this shall come to passe I will returne my sonne and see you. And in saying these wordes he vanished away, not seeing anye other thing but the horse which was laden wõ their victualls, which caused them to remaine amazed at his sodaine departure, & yet very much comforted in that he had seene him: So they trauailed all that day by a narow path. When night was come, without knowing by whom, the Tent was armed againe that they might rest themselues therein, when they were within & had commanded their horses to be put in, the doze of the tent did shut of it selfe with so great strength, that they could not open it, although they did make a proofe, for that Gaitenor had so made it, because of a great number of wilde beastes which were in these parts, and in the night time raungeth abroad for to seeke theyr prayes. So they passed that night with great rest and ease, till the morning that the Tent doze did open,

the

the Tent was taken vp and put vpon the horse, and all the rest, toke their iourney presently following still that narow path till it was none, at which time they came vnto the sea side, and hard by the place whereas they arriued, they saw at an Anker a Barke meruaylously well caulked and trimmed, made after ỳ maner of a Serpent, with mighty wings and a long taile. The prince when he saw the Barke made after that sort, straight way hee vnderstood that that was the Barke which the King of Arginaria had spoken of, and without any more tarrying he cõmaunded his horse to be put in and all the rest, and he tolde the Pastora in his armes and put hir into the Barke, they were no sooner within, but that with great swiftnesse shée began to move hir self, in such sort that in a small time they were farre from the shoare. Thus they trauailed with great contentment for the space of fiue dayes, and the seauenth daye verye earlye in the morning they were at the shoare verye nigh Constantinople, whereas with great ioy and pleasure they went a land, and mounting vppon their horses they entered into a very greene and delightfull Forrest, which stood in their way, and within a while they heard a great noise of hunters, and towards that way the Prince and his company went, and in the way they trauailed, they rode by a fountaine, in the which there was to the number of eight Knights very well armed, ỳ they were refreshing of themselues. The Prince for that they passed by some what out of the way did not salute them but passing on his way with the faire Pastora, who followed him vsing verye themselues verye sweet and amorous conuersation. The eight Knights when they saw them so passe by, they found themselues agreeued for ỳ small reckoning he made of them, but in especiall one of them who was more proud and presumptuous then ỳ rest, without speaking anye word at all, laced on his healme, and tooke his sheelde at his neche, and being ready hee mounted vpon his horse, and tooke his Speare in his hand, which stood hard by leaning against a tree, and with a verye reasonable pace he followed after him, and

when he was nigh vnto the Prince, hée sayd: Knight, with more pride and better adorned with rich armour, then with good manners or courtesie, you must iust with mee, for that making thee to kisse the ground, constrained by my terrible incounter, thou shalt learne in another place to vse curtesie. The heroycall prince with his accustomed meekenesse, answered. If my salutation gentle Knight was not as it becommeth a traueling Knight, the distaunce of the way was the occasion thereof: and this being true which I haue said, then haue you no reason to blame me. Thou hast lesse reason sayd the Knight of the fountaine. for to excuse thy selfe from the iust, which I do aske of thee, therefore take thy choyce of the field, and procure to settle and firme thy selfe well in the saddle, The Greeke seeing his pride asked of Coridon his sheild, & a speare which they brought with them: and hauing it in his hand, he saw that the field was all purple very smoth, and a Knight made in it, armed with purple armour, striking another Knight, armed likewyse in purple armour ouerthwart the eyes, and it was all full of starres of gold. The Prince was meruailously amazed and troubled at the great clearnesse therof so that he was constrained to hide his eyes with his owne hands: but the calling out of the Knight of the fountayne did cause him to change his purpose, and called for his speare, and with a furyous course, he went forth vnto the incounter: The Knight of the fountaine dyd breake his speare, not making the Prince to moue any more then he had stroke vpon a hard Rocke: but the Princes incounter was such, that he ouerthrew him to the ground, & with the fall he brake his arme in two parts, who hauing no power to moue himselfe, & with the great paine & griefe he felt, made a pittifull complaint. The Greek seeing him in that case sayd: Knight, it had bene better thou hadst remained without anye salutation quietlye, then now quarrelling therupon, thou hast thy arme broken, & remainest vnable to helpe thy selfe, and without saying any other thing. hee did depart, determing to prosecute his former iourney. So within a while after, he heard a great noyse of calling,

calling, and loking about to see who called him, he saw that it was the rest of the Knights, which followed with great spæde. There hée determyned to stay theyr comming, and made himselfe ready vnto the battell, if they would demand it of him. These seauen Knights came with great yre, to see the other Knight in that perplexitie, (and forgetting the custome of Grecia, of long tyme obserued and kept amongst the Knights) they all seauen together with theyr speares on theyr rests, they made theyr incounter vpon him, and stroke the Greek with theyr firmed blowes, some on the sides, and some on the breast with great fury: yet the Prince remained more firme thē an Anfield of yron. They all brak theyr spears on him, but at theyr passing by, hée strok one of them such a blow vpon the healme, that hée ouerthrew him dead to the ground. The rest which remained, returned vnto him with theyr swords in theyr hand, laying vpon him very terrible like Knights that were both valiant and courageous: but the Prince moued his horse amongst them, with so great lyghtnesse and strength, that quickly his power and force was knowne vnto them, hée dyd so torment them with his mighty blowes. And the more they did grieue him, the worse it was for them: for hauing lost all patience, hée threw his sheéld at his back, and did assault them with such fury, that in short tyme hée remayned with onely two of them in the field, who séeing ỹ other of theyr companions dead, procured to saue theyr lyues, tourning theyr backes vnto the Grék, and pricking theyr horse with ỹ spurs, they put themselues into a broad way.

This furious Knight followed after them, procuring to ouertake them, and to make that not one of them shal beare newes of the successe of the battaile: but by reason they had some vantage of the way, and againe their horses were very good, for all the hast that hée could make, hée could not ouertake them, till such time as they came whereas were many Tents armed in the field, & at that place there was a Knight ỹ stept before him to defend ỹ other two which ran away, who was armed with very strong and straunge ar-

mour. Who, if you doe remember was the Emperour *Alphebo*, and our Knight was his Sonne, who with his sword in his hand all bloody, followed the other two Knights. The Emperour *Alphebo* seeing them come running from the one alone Knight, called vnto them and sayd: Tell mee wherefore do you runne away you cowards and dishonourers of the Grekish genealogy, of whom are you afrayde, of one alone Knight? Soueraigne Lord sayde one of the Knights, hee that hath follow vs, is no Knight but a diuell, and thy surmounting strength is needful to make resistance against his. So at that time the Prince approched as I haue told you, and likewyse the Emperour *Alphebo*, who dyd very much beehold his goodly stature and disposition: the Prince dyd likewyse beehold the Emperour, and the strangenesse of his armour. The Emperour was the first that begonne to speake and sayde: Tell mee Knight, what hath my Knights, done vnto you, to cause you to vse & intreate thē so straightly. Then the Prince who had lost all patience, sayde: Procure to make theyr reuengement, and do not aske mee the cause of theyr cowardnesse. For that it is very apparant, that they themselues are in fault of theyr ill intreating. This good Emperour, as one that made little reckoning of his words, very meekely sayd. If they are in the fault it liketh mee very well, therefore I do desire to know the occasion if it bee thy pleasure to tell mee, ꝑ I may altogether lay the fault vppon them. The Prince with a high voyce saide. By the Gods I do I weare vnto thee, that it is true that I haue tolde thee. The Emperour when hee heard him name those false Gods, without any more tarrying drew out his Sword and sayde. Defende thy selfe Pagan, for it shall cost thee thy lyfe, for laying handes vppon Christians, who are more worth then thou art. Now do I not desire to know the occasion, for that they are Christians and thou art a Moore. And I say, that they are in no fault. So there they assaulted one another, with most terrible and mortall battayle.

Oh Nimphes borne in the Hill of Helicon, and whose habytation is in the Mountaine *Olympus* and yée Ladyes of the sacred *Cabolino*, vnto all you I do inuocate to ground in mée wisedome and vnderstanding, as you dyd into him, who dyd make the Greek dedicated vpon the great dæds of that mighty Achilles, for that I may perticularly declare the furious & well fought battell of these two inuincible Knights, without knowing to bée the father and the son, who hauing theyr swords in ỳ ayre, they both together discharged ỳ one vpon ỳ others helme, in such sort, that eyther of them were constrained spite of theyr harts to make obedience, as vnto such high & mighty Princes as they were ought to bée done, and both together & at one time they returned their swords about theyr heads, stryking one another such blowes vpon theyr beauers, that they made a great number of sparks of fire to flye in the ayre, which was the occasion that it toke away somwhat the sight of their eyes. Oh how irefull was this nephew of Trebatio, and being ouercome therewith, his strong and mightye blowes were incorporable, and taking his sword in both his hands, with that wrath & great lightnesse, bée stroke the Emperour such a blow vpon the helme, that the sound thereof made an Eccho throughout all the Mountaynes and playnes, and hée fell backward vppon the crouper of his horse Cornerino, who bæing scarred with the noyse of the blow, ranne round about the fieldes with his Master. Tha Emperour came straycht way agayne to himselfe, and considering the strong blow which hée had receiued, hée sayde: Jesus help mæ. and lykewyse with his Sword in both his handes, hée stroke him vpon the healme, that in spite of our Knight he fel backwards vpon ỳ crouper of his horse, who bæing scarred with the blow flinging and kicking, hée dyd apart & carry his Master from his enimie. And comming agayne vnto himselfe, hée dyd acknowledge his strong aduersary which hée hadde bæfore him, and lykewyse hée dyd consider, how that hée called for succour vppon the name of Jesus.

But his fury was so much that without any farther consi-de-

conſideration, blaſpheming & denying his Gods, he ſet ſpurs vnto his horſe and returned vnto the Emperour who came towards him, where was ioyned ſuch a battell as neuer in Grecia had bæn ſæne the lyke, eyther cauſing other by their diſordinate blowes many times to bæ wout remembrance, ſometymes inclining theyr heads vnto theyr breaſts, and at other time vpon theyr horſe crouper, in ſuch ſort, that there was inough to do bætwæne them for to ſettle themſelues vpright in their ſaddles, all theyr faces vnder theyr helmes bæing bærayed with blod & often giuing græuous grones. At this time was all ire & wrath wholy kindled, & all patience loſt, pollicie and erperience was forgotten, ſo that they made theyr battell as men without wit or reſon, procuring each of them to bring his enimie to death, & eyther of them accounting himſelfe of ſmall proweſſe and valour, that one alone Knight ſhould indure ſo long before them, and hæ who was the moſt græued bæreat was the ſtrong Prince, not knowing that he dealt with his father the mighty *Alphebo*, for neyther furyous Knights nor fierſe Gyants could at any time bring him vnto ỹ extremitye as at that time hæ was, ſo with this ire and wrath they indured two houres with theyr myghtie blows, bæing then preſent the Emperor *Trebatio*, and the two Princes of Rodamonte and Rodeſo, and the King of Macedonia, and the great Duke of Atenas, and Magecia and the Earle of Acaya, all the which were in a great admiration to ſæ the great reſiſtance that the Emperour *Alphebo* had foũd, who at that time did ſtretch vp himſelfe vpon his ſtirrops, diſcharging his ſword vpon the head of our Prince, the blowe was ſo terrible that the ayre was filled with ſparkes and flames of fyre, and made an Ecko to ſound in the hidden caues, and Claridiano fell backwards vpon the crouper of his horſe without any remembrance, & his armes hanging downe as though hæ had bæne dead and bordred at his mouth great abundance of blod. The fayre Paſtora very much meruailed to ſæ this rigorous battayle, who ſat with hir face couered bæholding the ſame, the lyke did Fidelio, and it was vnto them a great griefe to ſæ how

how the Emperour did mightely assalt him, procuring to kil him. At this time the Knight was come to his remembrance and setteled himselfe agayne in his saddle, and with an hygh voyce hee layd. Oh Gods of smal valour, cursed bee ẏ seruice that I haue done vnto you, because you owe so ill reward mee, who hath so much honoured you. Now do I well vnderstand that your power is very small: for that you haue deceiued mee, this being the first Christian Knight ẏ I haue bẽn in battaile with, in all my lyfe. I do beleeue that you did all run away, when you heard this Knight name ẏ name of Iesus. Heere I do renounce all your deity and potencye, for it is all as nothyng, and agayne I do call you vyle, and of small estimation and power. And in saying these words, hée ran agaynst the Emperour with so great furye, that hée made the ground to tremble vnder him, and when hée came nigh vnto the Emperour, hée strok him an ouerthwart blow with so great strength and might, that hée made him to fall forwards vpon his horse eares without any remembrance, in such sort that it seemed hée had bẽne dead, for that there procæded out of his healme so much blood. And by the great strength of that blow, his horse was constrained to stoope wt̃ his forefeete. This mighty Prince with double fury turned with his sword to strik him the second blow, but it was in such sort, that the reynes of his horse bridle was fast in the buckle of his armour, and was constrayned by the force hée put to strike his blow to pul the bridle, which made ẏ horse to rise vp beefore, standing vpon his hinder feete, which was very perilous vnto the Knight: and beeing in that sort, hée lost the strength of his blow for to succour himselfe, and to gouerne his horse. In which tyme the Emperour came againe to his former sences, and settled himselfe in his saddle, who seeing the great peril in the which he was brought, did meruayle much thereat, and beeing full of wrath, lyke vnto a Lyon hée recouered his sword, & set spurs vnto his horse, and made him to moue lyke vnto the winde, throwing out at his beauer a thick smoke with very anger, and gaue his assalt with so great fury, that the Knight could not but somwhat

what to feare him, and making his defence with his ſhéeld, hée did abide the comming of the blow, which cutting the aire did deſcend vpon his ſhéeld with ſo great ſtrength, that in ſpite of the force of his arme it chaunced vpon his helme, in ſuch ſort, that it made him perforce declyne his head and all his bodye vnto the pommell of his Saddle, and his teeth to chatter in his head, but hée remayned in that order but a ſmal time, and roaring like a Bull, exclaiming againſt fortune, hée lift vp his ſword & gaue him the like payment. At this time the battell bégan a new to bée very terrible, incraſing double their fury, and likewiſe augmenting theyr blows, in ſuch ſort that with the leaſt blow that was ſtroken, it ſéemed to haue cut the other all to péeces, which made all them that dyd behold the battell very much to meruaile. At this tyme there appeared to come forth out of the Foreſt, a Knight, all armed in white armour, edged & wrought about with an excellent worke of fine golde, his healme on his head, and his ſhéeld at his necke, and gyrte with a very ritch ſword, & of ſo gentle a diſpoſition, that ther was none equall vnto him, and ſéeing the battaile betwixt the two Knightes, hée did ſtand and behold them: and ſtraight waies hée knew the Emperor, but hée could not iudge who ỹ other ſhould bée, but greatly meruayled at their ſtrength, & with the great deſire hée had to know who it was, hée demanded of an old Knight that ſtod by him, the occaſion of theyr controuerſie, and who the Knights were. The olde Knight, for that hée ſéemed to bée a Knight of high eſtate, ſayde. The name of one of them, I can tell thée, the which is the Knight with the ſtrange and rich armour, who is the excellent and mightye Emperour *Alphebo* of Trapiſond, but the Knight with the Sunne, héer is not one that doth know him. This Knight began the cõtrouerſie firſt, with certaine Knights of Grecia, who killing of ſome of them, and other ſome very ſore wounded, and following other two which ranne away, the Emperour put himſelfe béefore him, for to know the occaſion of his great fury, and that Knight dyd anſwere him with great pride and arrogancy, which was the occaſion of

this

this theyr controuersie: and it is moze then fiue houres, since they haue béene martring one anothers flesh without all pitty, and this is all which I can tell you, of that which you haue demanded of mé. The Knight with the white armour was very much amazed, when he knew that the controuersie indured so long, and could not iudge who it should bée, of so great power and strength, that was able to resist the fury of the mighty *Alphebo*.

In all this time these two valyant warriours were not idle, but still their batteil went forwards, in such sort, that either of them dyd doubt of the victory, finding theyr aduersary so mighty and strong. So in this extremity they indured more then fiue houres not resting one moment, but still plaguing ỹ one the other, making of theyr bodies euen Anfields, which continually are beating on with hammers, and as the trauaile was great, and could not bé chosen but that they must nédes bé weary, and show some kinde of fayntnesse: vpon a sodaine both at one time dyd withdraw themselues to take some rest, either of them very much mervayling at ỹ great power and strength of his aduersary. This inuincible Emperour could not by any meanes iudge who the Knight should be that had brought him into that extremity, for vntill that day was there neuer Knight that euer béefore that tyme dyd the lyke, and béeing full of yre and wrath hé sayde.

What is now bécome of thé *Alphebo*? Where is now thy great valour, that hath bén so much spoken of in all the world? What is become of thy surmounted strength, wherwith thou didst quayle ỹ power of Lindaraza, and that with which thou dydst breake these inchanted helmes? What is bécome of thy terryble yre, wherewith thou didest subdue Mountaines, hew in sunder Diamond armour, and brought all things vnder thy subiection, now I sée that all is forgotten, and nothing worth, for that one alone Knight and a Pagan, hath brought thé into this extremitie. O holly God, to thé I inuocatce, and desire thé to help mé, & dw not permit

that

that my fame be robbed and taken away by a Pagan and an enimie vnto our Chriſtian law. Theſe and ſuch lyke reaſons pronounced this cholarick Mars and neyther more nor leſſe, the mighty and ſtrong Prince, caſting vp his eyes, and loking vnto the heauens, & reprehending his Gods, bee ſayd, Why are you ſo contrary vnto mee, for that as yet I neuer had victory, but it hath beene by the ſtrength of myne owne armes. What recompence haue I receiued for all ỳ I haue done? as yet I neuer had any fauour at your hands, for my owne power hetherto hath bẽ valuable vnto mee, and not yours, for ỳ I do beleeue is nothing, as it doth appeare very playnly, in the little fauour that you ſhew mee againſt this furyous Chriſtyan. What are you angrie, that I am come into this Countrey: and are any of you come downe to take reuengement of mee therfore? Well, ſeeing it is ſo, let it be Iupiter, or Mars, or whoſoeuer it bee of you, be it a God or a diuell, firſt beefore I receiue the death, I will make you to call for ayde of all the reſt of the Gods: & if it bee a diuell, to call likewiſe for aide of the reſt of the diuells. And without any more tarrying, he returned againe vnto the battell the lyke did the Emperour, & made theyr aſſalt with ſo great fury, that they onely which did behold them wer not a little amazed, but alſo the heauen and earth did mervaile at their force, & the Eccho was weary in anſwering of their terrible blowes, ſo that ther was almoſt no hope of remedy in their controuerſie, for that each one feared his aduerſary, & there was not any aduantage of eyther part. This conflict continued ſo long betweene them, that they were almoſt out of breath, at ỳ time both together they litted vp their Herculã armes, & hauing thẽ aloft they ioyned together ẃ ſuch fury that theyr horſes met, and ſtrok their heads the one againſt the other, in ſuch ſort, that although they were both good, yet they fel downe to the ground with theyr Knights: but they were not ſo ſone fallen, as they wer ſtraight on foot againe, without receiuing any harme, & ther began betwixt them a new contention. There was ſhewed the great lightneſſe of the Prince, and lykewiſe that of the Emperour was apparant,

rant, in that either of them did so valiauntly defend himselfe from his contrary, although at ỳ time theyr strong armes were more gouerned with yre and wrath, then with pollicy or experience, which was the occasion that the battaile was the more perillous & terrible. This mighty Alphebo thought much, that in the presence of the Emperour his Father the battaile should so long indure, and ỳ with one alone Knight, and not bæing his Brother. The lyke dyd the Prince consider of that, by reason that the great reuerence and respect ỳ the people had, he knew ỳ there should bee present the Emperour of Grecia, who toke him for his grandfather, as the fury of Merlin had tolde him. All these considerations dyd cause betwixt the two warriours ỳ more wrath, yet for all that, they which did behold them could iudge no aduauntage of either part, at ỳ which they greatly merualled, but in especially aboue all ỳ rest the King of Sardenia was most amazed, who from the beginning of their controuersie was beholding of them, and saw in what great perill and daunger both of them were, and the great resistaunce which the vnknowen Knight made against the Emperour Alphebo, wherfore hee returned vnto the Emperour of Grecia, and with a ~~light~~ loud voyce he said: O holy God, is it possible ỳ this Knight doth resist so long against him, that a porter of hell within a rocke hidden, could not make his defence against. The Emperour of Grecia would haue made him answere, but that he was disturbed by a mighty and terrible blow which hee saw giuen his sonne vpon his healme, that it made him to bow both his knees to the ground, and by reason that the sword did lay no hold on the hard stæle, it descended downe vpon his left shoulder, and cutting a sunder all the buckles and lacing of his healme, hee made it to flye from his head, discouering that fayre and magnanimous countenaunce, adorned with great maiestye. The Knight when he saw him in that sort, would haue stroke him againe, but yet this warlyke Mars although hee saw himselfe in that great perplexitye, hee wanted nothing of the accustomed courage which hee was vsed to haue at other times in such like necessities,

but with a light leape hée cléred himſelfe from that blow, and ſtroke his contrary another with ſo great fury, that he made him to ſtope & put one of his hands to the ground to ſtay himſelfe that he might not fall, and with an incredible lightneſſe he laide hold on his healme, & pulled at it with ſo great ſtrength, that hée pulled it from his head, & did diſcouer that well fauoured & faire face, ſo that all they who did ſée it, did iudge it in their harts to be the very figure of the Empreſſe Claridianas face. This valiant yong Knight ſéeing himſelfe in that caſe & ſo nigh vnto the Emperour, caught him betwixt his armes, the like did the Emperour vnto him, ſo that betwixt them began a dangerous & perilious wraſtling, but in the fury therof vpon a ſodayne all the heauen was couered with a very darke and thicke cloud, which fel downe & couered theſe two warriours for a ſpace, that they could not be ſéene, but it indured not long but it vaniſhed away, and then they ſaw that the two Knightes who before were cloſed one with the other, were now put a part ỹ one from the other a good ſpace, & in the midſt betwixt thẽ was ther an old man of a verye good ſtature and gentle diſpoſition, adorned with garments of great eſtate, the which were wrought with ſilke, golde, and pearle, that neuer Emperour nor king had the like, & vpon his head he had a crowne of gold of ſuch meruailous making, that no humane tongue is able to declare the riches therof, and on the one ſide of him ther was a mighty Gyant, adorned in the ſame manner & guiſe. And Claridiano did ſtraight wayes know them, who knéeling downe before them he ſayd: Excellent King Delfo my Lord, what ſodain comming is this, in leauing your maieſties Kingdome. The King went towards him with his armes abroad, and ſayd: Ah my ſon, wherefore ſhould my comming be but to recreate & reioyce my ſelfe in ſéeing of thée, and to diſturbe this cruell battaile that thou haſt with him whom thou oughteſt to honour and reuerence, as it is thy duety. Then Galtenor did cauſe them to holde their peace, for that with a loud voyce he beganne to ſpeake vnto the Emperour Trebatio, and ſayd.

Houe-

Soueraigne Emperour, long time past without anye knowledge vnto thée I came into thy Empire, and my comming was the occasion of great heauinesse and sorrow vnto the Empresse Claridiana, whom I doe sée there armed with the white armour. The Emperour when he heard that wold not stay any more reasonings, but went towards hir, who pulling off hir healme likewise came towards him to kisse his handes, so ther the one imbraced and receiued the other with great loue. The King Galtenor did cut of their talke and addressed his wordes vnto the Empresse Claridiana, and sayd: Soueraigne Lady, do you remember when that you did contemplate your selfe vpon the beauty of your children which you were deliuered off, begotten by the Emperour Alphebo, at which time a wall did open, wherat did enter a Serpent, who at two mouthfulls did bury them in his bowels. You shall vnderstand, Empresse and Lady, that I was the Serpent, being compelled and constrayned by great necessity of the strong arme of your mighty sonne, to doe that which at that time I did, and I did bring them vp in the maiestie as vnto such persons was necessary & dutifull. In the end of sixe yeares, when I determined to make an end of my iourney, resting our selues by the riuers side of Euphrates, I lost the mayden child, wher all the time past vnto this present, she hath bene publishing abroad hir exstreame beauty, till such time as the valour of hir brother did bring hir frõ thence, who is the same that is talking with ỹ King Delfo of Trapobana, and know this of a certaintye Ladye, that it is thy sonne Claridiano of the Speare. Thou diddest giue him that name by reason of a Speare that he hath on his breast from his birth, & that faire Pastora whom you do sée there, is your proper daughter, & I am he that did rob and take them from you, and heere I doe make restitution of them againe, so that I doe deserue pardon of all ỹ sorrow and griefe which I haue bene the occasion of, onely with this present which I doe present you withall. And likewise of you Emperour of Trabisond, I doe desire the same pardon,

and ioyntly therwith to forget the anger that you haue against your owne ſon. Great was the ioy & contentment of the Empreſſe, being almoſt beſide hir ſelfe, to ſée that ſhe had recouered hir two children, which ſhe thought had bene loſt long agoe, and going to imbrace Claridiano, ſhe found him vpon his knées, aſking pardon of his father of all that béefore had paſſed. What ſhall I héere ſay of the good Trebatio, for when hée knew ỹ the Paſtora was his nephew (and that his deſire was of a daugoter, and neuer had any) with his armes all abroad he went vnto hir, who vnderſtanding their communication, did alight from hir Palfray, at which time the Emperour came and toke hir in his armes, almoſt wéeping for ioy, and with very amorous words he did imbrace hir, & receiued ſo great contentmẽt of their recouery as euer he did in all his life for any thing.

¶ How the Emperour did very much reioyce himſelfe with his nephewes, but in eſpeciall with the Paſtora, & of the great tempeſt which came vpon them at ſupper time, and of all that happened afterward. Chap. 30.

With this great ioy and pleaſure which I haue tolde you they returned vnto Conſtantinople, the Emperour Trebatio carried with him the Paſtora, & would not one moment a part himſelfe from hir, and the Empreſſe went talking with Glaridiano. The Emperour Alphebo was not a little ioyfull, who went in the company of the King Delfo, and Galtenor went beſide the Empreſſe, who knew not how to giue him ſufficient thankes for his comming. And at that inſtaunt héeing all preſent, they alighted at the Pallaice, and the Emperour Trebatio carryed the Paſtora vnto hir graundmother, committing hir vnto hir cuſtodye for to make ſo much of hir. And hée toke the king of Trapobana by the hand, and rendered vnto him very much courteſie, and therwith entered into a fayre hall,

whereas

whereas they found the Tables couered, and sate downe to supper, whereas they were with great ioy & pleasure, such as neuer was seene the like in the Court. The Emperour & the two Kings were set together, then the Emperour Alphebo and the Empresses, and by them Claridiano and the Pastora, who was beheld of all them that were ther present, much meruailing at hir great beautye. Coridon did serue them at ỹ table, very much delighted with that he had seene. The Supper indured so long, that Diana did extend hir beames: at this time they toke vp the tables, and Galtenor with a loud voice sayd: One of the high glories of my Esclarisido, sonne Claridiano, shall appeare in this great citye, before the day do come. Hee had no soner made an end of these words, when that the heauens began to ware darke with a very thick cloud, and it came with great thunderings and lightnings, & with so terrible a noyse, as though the earth would haue sunke, and the longer it indured, the more was the fury thereof: in such sort, that they all fell vpon their knees, and with great humilitye, they desired god to deliuer them from the fury of ỹ great tempest. So with this sodaine chaunce, they passed away the night till ỹ morning, and although the tempest in some part ceased, yet the heauens remayned all cloudye. When the morning was come, there appeared before ỹ Pallaice nigh vnto ỹ inchantment of Lindabrides, a very strange aduenture, which made them all to meruaile, & strayght way they gaue the Emperour to vnderstand thereof, who went out of the Pallayce with all his Knightes, with great desire to know what it was, so likewise went forth his sonnes and nephewes. And when they came into the Court, they saw that there was fixed foure pillers, euery one of a very fine Rubye, vppon the which was placed a Sepulchar of Christall, and within the Sepulchar there seemed to be a very fayre Lady, hir breast pearced thorough with a sword, and vpon the Sepulcher there laye a man all a long, with his face looking vp to the heauens, and apparailed with robes of estate, with a Crowne of gold vpon his head.

And vnder the Sepulcher was there spread abroad a great carpet of cloth of gold, & vpon it two pillowes of the same, and vpon them lay a Knight armed with very rich armour, and his sword lay at his feete, his eyes were shut, & out of them distilled very great teares, at euery piller ther was a Gentlewoman which seemed to bee without anye remembraunce, although they wept very bitterly, & nigh vnto the Sepulcher ther lay a terrible great beast, of the very same making of that which Glaridiano slew, for to set at libertye the King of Arabia Lepntra. (This was the spectacle ý Claridiano saw comming in the aire.) The Sepulcher was cõpassed round about with a strong wall, with foure gates for to enter in therat, the gates were after the manner & coulour of fine Diamonds: neere vnto the gate which was ouer against the pallaice, was ther a Marble piller, at the which hung a Bugle horne, and an Epitath written with red Letters, the which the Prince Rodolpho did reade with a high voice, that all that were there might heare him, & it said as followeth. At such time as the cruelty of the King of Arabia, Lepetra shall bee at liberty, and the valour of that worthye Claridiano knowen, then they which hath not bene wounded wt loue, shall know both the reason and the rage of loue, for ý which cause I doe aduise him that doth not know what loue is not to proue this aduenture if he will not fall into great misfortune, for ý cause hee must passe by pure force, all the force that Claridiano made plaine. And this shall indure till such time as the bastard Lyon, son vnto the Emperiall Lyon, be borne of the rauening Dunce. Then he who hath loue in his breast, & passed through that vnhappye Lady, daughter vnto the King of Arabia, shall see the great rage without reason of loue. The Emperour when he heard that it were things which touched his nephew, said: Oh excellent aduenture of my Claridiano, this day is shewed vnto vs his great valour, Galtenor told vnto those Knights all that had passed in that aduenture vntil ý day, which caused in thẽ great admiration, and more, at ý making of that strange beast who they did behold very attentiuely, & with this they passed away

all

all that day, & the Pastora did change hir accustomed apparell into robes of silke, & cloth of gold, shewing ỳ great estate & beauty in all points which was in hir. All the whole court receiued great pleasure, sauing onely the Princesse Oliuia, who for the absence of hir Rosicleer, all things did seeme cõtrary vnto hir, farre different from the iudgementes of all other. So the time drew on for to go to rest. Then Galtenor toke Claridiano by the hand and lead him a part on the one side of the hall, & said vnto him: I will carry thée with mée into a place, wheras thy hart a new shall be wounded, and shall forget the loue which before thou hast had, & therwith he commaunded him to arme himselfe in great secret, ỳ successe of the same shall be told you héereafter. The next day in the morning, when they were all ready to go to heare seruice with the Emperour, ther entered into the hall a Knight of a great stature and proportion of his members, and was armed with very rich armour, his face and his handes were vnarmed, & shewed by his demeanour a great maiestye and seuere countenance, he was of his face somewhat browne of coulour, but the proportion therof was very well fauoured, & his beard began to bud, he brought after him thrée squires and Pages, the one of them brought his Speare which was big and short, and the other brought his healme, & the third brought his shéeld with an Emperiall deuice, & straight way it was knowen wherfore his comming was, and although conformable to reason we haue not spoken any thing of the faire matrone ỳ quéene of Lyra, who with prosperous weather & great pleasure did navigate by the sea, holpen by the fury of Borias, which with a fresh winde did continually fill those stiffe sayles, & cutting the seas with that sharp steme, leauing behinde them the token of their great & swift way, by the froth of the water, & in short time, discouering land, they toke port vpon the shore of Almaine, wheras this faire Lady went a land, and with hir two Nymphes toke theyr iourney towardes the Court of Almaine. So she trauailed two dayes and nothing chanced worthy the telling.

The third daye entering in amongest the thicke and

craggy mountaynes, she lost hir way amongest a company of high & thicke Pine trées, amongest the which shee gaue a thousand turnes, not knowing which way to take to bring hir selfe out therof. So with this sorrow and griefe she passed all that day till night came vpon them, at such time as they had found a very narrow & not much vsed way, which lead them vp to high and mightye steepe mountayne, in which place they determined to rest thẽselues, till such time as Phœbus should make hir returne, passing away the night in very good communication with hir Gentlewomen, and did sup with that which they continually were prouided off. So when the breake of the day was come, the Quæne dyd very well peruse hir armour, & put hir selfe on horsebacke, and for that the waye seemed to be somewhat daungerous, she put on hir helme and carryed hir Speare in hir hand, and with great trauaile they followed that way, when they had well neere spent the third part of the day, and had made an end of the going vp that mountaine, being vpon the top therof, they loked about them on all partes, and towardes the right hand on the foote of that high mountaine they saw a company of armed men, & by reason that they were so far of, they could not discerne what it should be. So straight way they discended downe the mountayne, and when they came at ẏ foote therof, they loked round about to see if they could discouer that which they had seene from ẏ top of the same, and saw that ther were to the number of twenty Knights very well armed, & amongest them a Gyant, who brought with them two Knights prisoners, armed with very rich armour, all sauing their heads, & with them a Lady who was as sad and sorrowfull, as fayre and beautifull, and with hir certaine gentlewomen which did beare hir company. These were the vnhappye Earle of Tirol, and his sister, and Don Florisarte of Bauiera, who as I haue tolde you were taken prisoners in ẏ way going towards Esprich, whom this valiant matrone did see cõming downe the mountayne, & when this worthy Gentlewoman did see this great force & wrong done, she was very desirous to know ẏ occasion what should

moue

mone them to dō that outrage, or elſe to procure to ſet thē at liberty, & hatting on hir way, larging hir pace more then ſhē dyd bēfore, ſhē in a ſhort ſpace came & ouertoke them, and by reſon that the Quēne made great hatt, & the noyſe of hir comming was rgeat, the Gyaunt was conſtrained to loke back, to ſē what it was that cauſed ſo great a noyſe, and when hē ſaw ỳ it was a Knight that came after him, hē determyned to ſtay and abyde his comming. And when ſhe was come nigh him, this couragious Lady with a manly voyce ſayde: Tell mē Gyant what euill hath theſe pryſoners committed, that ſo without all reſon thou doſt carry them ſo manakled and bound. The Gyant dyd ſtay and bēholde hir with great frowning, and aunſwered hir with a wrathfull voyce & ſayd. What honour and prowelle is it to thē, for that thou art ſo deſirous to know, & with ſo great pride doeſt aſke the queſtion? No other thing ſayd this vnknowen Gentlewoman, but to make friendſhip where none is, and againe if of thē they dō receiue any griefe or wrong to amend the ſame, for that I dō know that the condition of all Gyants, is nothing, but procuring to dōe all wrong, therfore determine to tell mē, or make thy ſelfe redy to thy defence. The fury of the Gyant was very great when that hē heard theſe wordes, in ſuch ſort, ỳ it ſēmed fire flew out of his eyes, and with that fury hē ſpurred forwardes his horſe. The lyke dyd that worthy Patrone, at that time they ſet ſpurs to their horſes, and with a ſwift courſe they made theyr incounter, and ſtrok theyr Speares vpon theyr ſtēely ſhēlds, the ſpeare of the Gyant made his ſtay vpon the fineneſſe of the inchaunted ſhēld. but this Lady dyd not onely pearce through his armour, but alſo through his breaſt and body, ouerthrowing him dead with great fury to ỳ ground, whereas hē gaue a terrible fall that hē made the earth to tremble, and the Quēne paſſed a long ſo quyetly as though ſhē had done nothing, and with great lightneſſe ſhē turned about hir horſe, with hir naked ſword in hir hand, and ſaw that the Gyaunt lay a long on the grounnd dead. When the Knightes of the Gyaunt ſaw that furyous incounter,

and that their principal refuge was dead, without any more tarrying, they altogether did aſſait hir, and this worthy Matron put hir ſelfe againſt them, who was with them incountred on all ſides round about, but yet they did not moue hir from hir ſaddle little nor much: but ſhee returned againſt them in ſuch ſort, that ſhee with hir mightye blowes, made theyr harneſſe and red blod flye round about the field. These Knights were all choſen Knights, and dyd trouble hir very much, making hir ſundry times to loſe the ſight of hir eyes, ỹ which did bring hir very much in cholar, in ſuch ſort that ſhee threw hir ſheld at hir back, and taking hir ſword in both hir handes, ſhee béeſturred hir ſelfe on the one ſide & on the other, about their heads, and wounding of Knights, ouerthrowing of them to the ground dead, in ſuch ſort, that when ſhee remembred hir ſelfe, there was no more but fiue of ỹ Knights left aliue, who when they ſaw ſo great ſlaughter in ſo ſhort tyme, they determyned the ſeperation of the controuerſie, and to put more confidence in their horſe féete, then in their owne defence, and putting it in vre, they ranne away. This Lady made no reckoning to follow them, but went ſtrayght way and dyd vnloſe the Priſoners. Vnto whom Don Floriſarte of Bauiera dyd giue thanks for all the reſt, deſiring him that he would declare vnto them his name for that they might know vnto whom they were bound, for that great benefit done vnto them. The Lady did anſwere them with great courteſie and ſayde: Gentle Knights, my name is of ſo ſmall valor, that I cannot bee knowen by it: but that which I may do to giue you cõtentment, is to put off my healme, and in ſeing my face, you ſhall ſée if that at any time you haue heard any mention of mee: and in saying theſe words, ſhee hir ſelfe did vnlace and take off hir helme, And loke with what beautye the Radiaunt Sunne doeth ſhow himſelfe vppon a ſodayne when all his beames hath béene hidden with a darke cloud: euen ſo, and rather more, did this excellent and beautifull face ſhow it ſelfe, after that ſhée had pulled off hir Healme, the which before dyd couer the ſame.

The Knights when they saw hir great beauty, they very much meruailed, and beléeued that in the proportion of his great beautie, it should bee Poliphebo of Tinacria. The Don Florisarte sayd: Your excellent and beautifull face, and your high and mightie déedes, gentle Knight, doth make vs beléeue two things: the one, that thou wert borne to remedie and aide those that can do little: the other, wee do beléeue that thou art brother, or some kinsman, vnto that fayre Poliphebo Prince of Tinacria, sonne vnto the Emperour Trebatio, who now is called the Knight of the Braunch, by reason of a gold Braunch that hée carrieth on his shéeld for his deuice, as you do vpon your healme: and heere I do desire you, to tell vs whether you are his brother or not, for that wee are much bound vnto him, and there they declared vnto hir, all that was done for them, as béefore you haue heard.

The which was the occasion, that there kindled in the Quéene, a great desire to know him, and informing hir selfe how that hée was gone towards Grecia, shée dyd determine to follow him, to sée if shée myght meete with him, to proue hir selfe on him.

And béeing in this thought shée made answere vnto that they demanded, and sayd: This Knight whom you do speak off, I do not know him, neyther haue I séene him at any time, but haue heard newes of his heroycall déeds of armes: and I am very glad that you haue taken this seruice as a déede done by him. Then the faire Candisea sayd, Ah flower of all Knighthood, wherefore will you thus hide your selfe from them, who are so much bound vnto your seruice. I know not vnto whome I should attribute it, but vnto my vnhappie and ill fortune, for that I do well sée that thou art *Poliphebo*, the flower of all those that do weare armour: do not deny mée, béeing so well knowen. Gentle Lady sayd the Quéene, by that which I owe vnto my highnesse, I protest vnto you, that I am not the party that you doe speake off: and heere I doe sweare vnto you that I am a woman as you are, and I am called Archisilora Quéene of Lira:

and

and this Prince whome you haue in ſo great p᷑yce, I neuer ſaw. Thē Candiſea dyd bēlæue that which the Quæne had ſayd, and in bæholding hir, ſhæ dyd playnly perceiue by the delicateneſſe of hir face that ſhæ was a woman. There the Quæne of Lira did take hir leaue of them, and returned the way from whence ſhæ came, and came into a village in the Countrey of Tirol where ſhæ dyd take hir reſt all ỹ night. When the Morning was come, and ſhæ in a readineſſe to trauaile, ſhe toke hir way towards Hungary, with determination, not to make any ſtay, till ſhe came into Grecia, whether as ſhæ came in the ende of hir great trauaile, without any other aduenture happening, and alwayes hauing in remembraunce the Knight of the Braunch. So one day very early in the Morning at the breake of the day, ſhæ entered into a very faire foreſt, very nigh vnto Conſtantinople, and at ſuch time as the ſunne would extend his golden beames, ſhæ ſaw lying vnder a træ, a very big & well made Knight, who was a ſlæpe, and his ſhæld dyd hang vpon a træ, and thereon ſhæ ſaw the deuiſe of the Knight of the Braunch, the which bæing well marked by the Quæne, ſhæ vnderſtode, that hæ which lay there a ſlæpe, was the owner of ỹ ſhæld and the Knight whome ſhæ ſought for. And nigh vnto the ſhæld was his ſpeare, ſet vp againſt a træ: and loking about hir to ſée if hée had any companye, ſhæ ſaw within a ſmall diſtaunce from him a Lady lykewyſe a ſlæpe, and by hir a Page, and therewith ſhæ was fully certified, that hæ was the ſame Knight that ſhee loked for. So there ſhee was a good while, bæholding his gentle diſpoſition and ſtature, and graue countenance, till ſuch time as ſhee dyd determyne to dwe that, which in the Chapter following ſhall bee tolde you.

¶ How the Knight Poliphebo and the Queene of Lira had cruell battayle, and of all that happened therein. Cap. 31.

After

AFter that this fayre Matron had with great delyberation beheld this warlyke Tinacrian vpon the grene graſſe a ſleepe, ſhee determyned with the great ende of hir Speare, to touch him vppon his armed breaſt, the which was no ſoner done, but hee awaked and ſtarted with the ſodayne calling of him out of his ſleepe: but opening his eyes, and ſeeing beefore him that big and well ſet Knight, with a trice hee aroſe vpon his feet, and in great haſt hee laced on his healme, and toke his ſheeld from the place whereas it hung, hee did well ſhow in ỹ great haſt hee made in beeſturring himſelfe, the great liuelyneſſe of his courage. The Queene when ſhee ſaw him all in a readyneſſe to the battell, with a gracious laughter ſayd. I would neuer haue thought that ther had been ſo great an ouerſight in a knight and eſpecially of ſuch fame, that ſo without all feare of a great number that cannot abide them, but procure all euill poſſible againſt them, that without all care in the high way doth put himſelfe to ſleepe. The Tinacrian anſwered, & ſaid: There was not in mee ſo great ouerſight, as in you care, to venture your ſelfe, whereas you ſhall receiue little profit of the ſame. And doth it ſeeme vnto thee, that I was ouerſeene therein? Poſſibly thou wilt iudge ỹ contrary, if thou wilte proue the ſtrength of my arme. It cannot but be very much, if it bee conformable vnto thy ouerſight, ſayd this fayre Lady, and beleeue mee that it would greeue mee to make any proofe, if there bee in thee ſo great vertue, as thy fame doth beare the report. Therefore take to thee thy horſe, & let eyther of vs procure to make his defence, and heere I doe aduiſe thee, that I am none of the Knights that hetherto thou haſt proued in Grecia. In ỹ meane time that ſhe was ſaying theſe words, the Tinacrian dyd very much beehold hir, & although hee was very angrie at the words which ſhee hadde ſpoken, yet hee ſayd. Well ſeeing it is ſo, that thy folly doth ſo much conſtraine thee to make a controuerſie without any occaſion, tarry, and thou ſhalt ſee, how I was wont to puniſh ſuch ſolliſh people as thou art, and ſo in great haſt hee

called

called for his horſe, which was ſtrayght way brought vnto him by Macedonia, and without putting foote into the ſtyr-roppe, he leaped into the ſaddle, and toke his Speare in his hand, and without replying any other thing, ỹ valyant Tinacrian preſently withdrew himſelfe backe, and toke of the field that part which was néedfull for him. The like dyd the Quéne, and at one time returned their light horſes, and in great haſt they ſtroke theyr horſes with the ſpurs, without all pittie, and with extreame fury, they made the incounter vpon theyr ſhields, that their ſpeares ſhiuered all to péeces, and paſſed along with their courſe without any ſtay of their bodies, or mouing in theyr ſaddles, and turned about theyr horſe with great lightneſſe w̃ their ſwords in their hands. The Quéne ſtroke the firſt blowe at the Prince, that ſhee made the ſparkles to fly out of his healme, and the Prince to decline his head to the ſaddle bow, who with great lightnes dyd ſettle himſelfe agayne in the ſaddle, and dyd cléere himſelfe from the ſecond blow, which was ready to bée diſcharged vpon him: & putting himſelfe on the one ſide, hee ſtroke hir ſuch a blow vpon the helme, that it made a great ſound throughout all the fields and craggie mountaines, and ſhee fell backwards vpon the horſe crouper with hir head: but very quickly ſhee aroſe vp againe, and ſettled hir ſelfe, and with great yre ſhee layd faſt hold vpon hir ſword, to ſtrike hir enimy, whom ſhe did not finde idle, but rather bégan to aſſault wir with blowes of mortall battayle. Such blowes was ſtroke bétwirt them, that with the leaſt they thought either of them to make an ende of that controuerſie. At this time, there came that way a Knight, who was armed with very rich armour. This was that ſtrong and mighty Brufaldoro, who if you dwe remember, with ỹ mightie & ſtrong blow giuen by the Tinacrian, remayned all alongſt the flowre in his galley, without remembrance. And when he came vnto himſelfe, with his accuſtomed brauery, hé would follow that way which the barke went: but calling to remembrance the great trauaile and ſorrow in the which his Lady was, loue dyd there conſtrayne him to follow his owne iourney.

And

And when hee came thether, hée vnderstood ỹ *Polyphebo* had set hir at liberty, and carryed hir with him, towards the Almaine court: & by the way that hée trauailed, hee met with people which dyd tell him of all that had happened, and all signes and tokens of the Knight that carried away his Lady, and by them he did vnderstand that he was his enimie: then he left his owne armor, and armed himselfe with that which was Bramarants, and followed that way which was told him hée went. The fame was such, that this Tinacrian left behinde him, that whersoeuer he came, or whersoeuer he went, he alwaies had newes which way he trauailed, vntill ỹ tyme, that hée came & found him in battell with that worthy Quéene, where he stayd to behold a battaile so well fought. At length hée knew him very well to bée the Knight that brought him into so great extremitie: and loking about him on them that were béeholding the battaile, amongest the rest hée knew his louing Wyfe: and although his ioye was very great in séeing of hir, yet the wrath and ire that hée had agaynst the Knight was so much that without saying any word vnto the quéene his wife, he went towards them that were in battell, and with his sword drawen in his hand, hée put himselfe before the Quéene and sayd. I do desyre thée gentle Knight that thou wouldest rest and take thyne ease, and let mée alone with my strong arme take revengement of this Knight, vsurper of my louing wyfe, and a robber of my fame and honour, and without any other detaynment, hée went against him for to strik at him mortall blowes. But then that worthy Gentlewoman with great anger sayd.

Stand away Knight, and let mée make an ende of that I haue bégun, and offer no wrong vnto them that owe know how to make theyr demaund vnto thy rost: and therewith shée put hir selfe béefore him. But this furious Pagan with the great desire hée had to make his revengement turned and put himselfe béefore the Quéene striking at the Tinacrian mighty and strong blowes, who dyd not much meruell

ney-

neyther at the one nor at the other, but aſſaulted the Pagan with a meruailous mighty blow. The Quéne at that tyme dyd put hir ſelfe béefore him agayne, and vpon hir was executed that blow vpon the left ſhoulder, which dyd grœue hir very much, as it appeared by hir outward countenaunce. At this time the Pagan put himſelfe agayne formoſt: then this furious Lady with hir ſword all aloft, ſayd. Kéepe thy ſelfe back, thou vile Knight, and of baſe linage, and let mée make an ende of this that I haue béegun, before that the potency of my arme, do ouerthrow thy great pride. Stand thou back ſayde the Pagan, for it is my right to take vengeance on this euill Knight, for that hée doth carry my Lady robbed from mée. In theſe words which was ſpoken, the Tinacrian did know the other to be ỹ King of Mauritania, who brought him in ſo great extremitie at the beginning of his Knighthood, for the which he was very full of ire and wrath, inſomuch that a thick ſmoke came forth at his beauer. At this time came vnto that place Don Claridiano of the ſpeare, the lyght of all Knighthood, who was armed with his Purple armour, & as I haue told you, hée departed out of the Emperours Pallaice in great ſecrt. And when hée ſaw the great cõtention ỹ was betwixt thoſe Knights, being very deſirous to know the occaſion, hée put himſelfe béetwéene them, & deſired them to leaue of that battell. The furious Pagan anſwered: thou Knight, put not thy ſelfe to vnderſtand any matter béefore ỹ art called: for if thou doſt, poſſibly ỹ ſhalt beare part of that, which this vnfortunate Knight doth owe mée. Then Claridiano ſayd: I know not wherein hée ſhould be indebted vnto thée, but rather I do vnderſtand that thou art he that hath leaſt reſon, for that the other Knight of the Branch, was the firſt that bégun this battell. Firſt hée dyd to mée ỹ grieſe, ſaid the Pagan, béefore the other. For that I gaue vnto him the order of Knighthood, & after that I had giuen it him, he dyd defie me in mortall battell: & not content béerewith, hée hath robbed mée of my Lady which thou doſt ſée yonder. To thoſe words the Tinacrian anſwered and ſayd. Thou lieſt like an euill Knight, for ỹ I haue not robbed hir.

hir,but I haue deliuered hir from that place,from whence thou with all thy power wert not sufficient to deliuer hir: & for thy falshod,thou shalt not carry hir away without mortall battell. This furious pagan when he heard himself so ill spoken off,like a Lyon he went against him: but that stout Dame did put hir selfe before him,& said. Stand back thou Pagan & importunate diuell,for first thou shalt haue to dos with me,or els thou shalt let mée make an end of my pretence. This braue Tinacrian like a furious Lyon,said vnto ý Greéke Prince: Curteous Knight, I pray you to stand back somewhat and let me alone with them both, for that I doe estéeme both of thẽ but a little. And with a loud voice he said: Come,come against me thou pagan King,& of little valour,& take in company with thée ý other arrogant fole as thou art,for ý of both you together I doe meane to set an agréement with the strengh & force of my indomable arme. Then Claridiano said, it shall not be so, but first procure to cléere thy selfe of him with the branch, & I will set thée at libertye of the Pagan. And therewith he drew out his sword, & stroke him such a blow,ý he made him to tremble & remaine as one amazed,and séeing him in ý case, he stroke him another blow vpon the beuer,that he made the pagan to gripe fast about his horse neck to keepe himselfe from falling. But the More came quickly againe to himselfe, & with a furyous courage he stroke him vpon ý left shoulder such a blow that it made the Greéke to shrinke in his body,and to stoope downe to his saddle bow,with ý great griefe that hée felt,& giuing a terrible grone,he lift vp his sword,& stroke ý Pagan a blow vpon the helme,that the sparks of fire flew into the aire,& almost without remembraunce,he fell downe vpon his horse crupper. The pagan comming againe vnto himselfe,puffed out at his beuer a thick smoke,& threw his sheild at his back,and stroke the Greéke so terrible a blow, that without all remembrance, he fell forwards vpon his horses eares,who carried him a while vp & downe ý field: but presently he came againe vnto himselfe,& séeing ý he was so ill intreated,he toke his sword in both his hands,& set spurs to

his horse side, that he made him to run like vnto the winde, so that he was straight with the Pagan, & stroke him such a blow, that it seemed a whole tower had falne vpon him, & hauing no power to the contrary, he fell vpon his horse neck without any feeling: who beeing scarred with that terrible blow, with a swift course carried his master frō hys enimie. In all this time was not the Tinacrian nor that faire dame idle: but when they saw the battaile begun betwixt the two Knights, with great fury they returned vnto their battaile, and for that the Tinacrian was full of anger, hee threw his sheeld at his backe, and stroke at the Queene so mightye a blow & with so great fury that he made hir to fall down vpon the buttock of hir horse without any remembrance, who caried hir a while round about the field. The Queene came quickly againe vnto hir selfe, so wrathfull, that she had no other thought, but to take reuengement on hir enimie, and throwing hir shield to the ground, shee toke hir sword in both hir hands, & stroke hir horse with the spurres, that she made him run like vnto the winde, & with a trice she was with the Tinacrian, and stroke him so vppon the healme that with the fire which flew out thereat, he lost his sight, & that valiant young Knight fell backwardes vpon his horse crupper without any feeling, who carryed him vp & downe the field, which when the Lady saw, she would haue finished the battaile, with another rigorous blow. At this time it so fell out that the horse of that valiant African with his master, did likewise run about the field, the which was the occasion, that the Greeke might beehold all that passed, and with a trice he was with them & sayd. Withdraw thy selfe for that it is not the part of heroicall Knights to pursue & follow thē that are without remembrance. The Lady who was very angry, gaue the Greeke for aunswere, a furyous blow, but straight way she was paid again with ỹ like: wher betwixt them began a new battaile. In the meane time the Tinacrian, & the Pagan were come againe vnto themselues, & setled in their saddles, & either of them loked about for his aduersary, whom they beheld in mortall battaile. And they

two

two being together, which did hate each other deadly, made no reckoning of their late enimies, but assalted one another very furiously and strongly. All this was great profit vnto the Quæne of Lira, for that the Tinacrian was so mighty & furious, that she should haue bene in great perill. I cannot tell you who was more furious of these two warriors, but I can say this, that Claridiano was very sore wounded and ouercome, as hereafter shall be tolde you, in such sort, that no medicine might auaile to helpe him. Thus they indured foure houres without taking any rest, fighting more fiercely then at the beginning. And being in this controuersie, towards the parts next the sea side, they saw comming Rosicleer, and that stout Troyan, and the Prince Meridian, who seeing the battaile, did stay to behold them. Rosicleer knew straight wayes the armour of Bramarant, who seeing them in the power of another, was very full of wrath, and without any more tarrying, he put himselfe in the midst among them, & with a furyous voyce he said. Tell me Knight, who made thee so bold to take this armour, from the place wheras I put them for a Tropheo and remembrance. The Pagan aunswered him & sayd: Superbious and proud Knight, art thou by fortune one of those Greeke Princes, who with great threatenings dost defend this armour. I am one of them said Rosicleer, and he that will take away thy life for thy boldnesse, & therewith he drew out his sword for to assault him: but the Tinacrian did put himselfe before him & said with great curtesie as vnto his elder brother Knight & Prince of Grecia, let not your highnes do me so much wrong, to hinder me from beeing reuenged on this Knight, let me alone with him, for that I haue so much hope in ỹ strength of my arme, to giue a good accompt of him. Therefore I do desire thee to stand a little a side. Rosicleer would haue aunswered him, but vpon a sodaine he saw comming from the part of Pireo, a Knight, armed with rosset armour, garnished shith stripes and barres of gold, his shield was lykewise Russet and there was painted on it, the God Cupide with two faces.

This was that baliant Eleno prince of Dacia, who ſeing the controuerſie betwixt thoſe thræ Knights, paſſed forwards on his way, ſaying vnto Roſicleer without loking vpon his armour and deuice: Knight thou doſt wrong to diſturbe them that firſt bægan the battell. But Roſicleer with the great anger & wrath he had to ſee that armor in a ſtrangers power, did not behold the deuice of his Couſin, and ſo bæing both blind, without any conſideration, they aſſaulted one another in mortall battaile. This Dacian was not ſlothfull in drawing out of his ſword, and to returne his ſalutation. At ſuch time as from that part of Grecia, there appeared a great number of Knightes. But now my pen wareth wery, and my afflicted ſpirits doth conſtraine me to make an end of the ſecond part of this hiſtorye: for that with a new courage, I may haue time to tranſlate the third part, which is full of proweſſe and valyant dædes. Beinning from the battaile wheras we left Roſicleer, in the Iland whereas hæ ſet Meridian at liberty frõ a furyous Gyant, as hath bæne tolde you. And in the ſecond of Don Eleno of Dacia, and by what aduenture he came into this place, wheras he ſhall end this his new begun battaile. Therfore I do requeſt thæ gentle Reader, that if in theſe two bœks thou haſt receyued any contentment, to deſire the Muſes to aide, helpe and ſuccour mée, and not to leaue me, that I may bring vnto lyght the dædes and glorious end of theſe Princes and Knightes, with the loue of Claridiano, and Roſaluira. O Calliope with thy aide and helpe, I will not ſtay my hand, till ſuch time as I haue declared all the whole dæds and pollicye vſed in theſe their feates of armes, for that by all reaſon I am bound to conclude the ſame.

FINIS.

¶THE TABLE OF THE FIRST BOOKE.

THE cruell battaile paſt beetweene the Knight of the ſun, & the fierce Gyant Bramarant, in which bicketing, the Giant perceiuing that hee muſt needes haue the woꝛſt, murthered himſelfe. Cap. 1. fol. 1.a

The worthy knight Roſicleer finding Bramarant guing vp the ghoſt, after he was dead, did intombe his coꝛps neere vnto a Pine appie tree, wherein hee dyd ingraue an Epitaph. Cap. 2 fol. 4.b

Prince Roſicleer trauayling on his way, hauing already taken leaue of the Princeſſes Ladyes, dyd chance vpon a certaine aduenture, & of the ſucceſſe hee had therein. Cap. 3. fol. 11.a

The great ſoꝛrow that the knight of the Sunne receiued, in thinking of his owne diſloyalty, & that which happened vnto him. Cap. 4. fol. 23.b

How the Grecian knight perſwaded his Uncle the Prince of Dacia, to accompany him, and leaue that ſoꝛrowful and deſolate lyfe, & of that which after happened to him, Cap. 5. fol. 26 b

Of the terrible battell that this Grecian Prince had with the Gyant, and of all the aduentures that chaunced in the ſayde battayle. Cap. 6. fol. 32. a

How the Knight Eleno had battayle with Teſerio the Gyaunts couſin, & the ſucceſſe that was therein, and how the Prince Eleno by a ſtraunge aduenture was ſeparated from his couſin and Teſereo. Cap. 7. fol. 37. a

By what aduenture Floramont was deliuered from the perill he was in, and how the Princeſſe Claridiana was deliuered of Childe, & how ſhe was comfoꝛted in all hir trouble by the wyſe Artemidoro. Cap. 8. fol. 44. a

How that when the king of Hungarie was taking his leaue to departe, there came a Gyant, hauing a cruell and furious countenance, who defied the Empeꝛour and his ſonnes, & of all that chanced there. Cap. 9. fol. 49. a

How the king of Tyre gaue an aſſault to rob the ſhip wher Roſicleer was, & how the ſame king was come. Ca. 10. fo. 53. b

How the king of Sardenia was baptiſed, and how a Lady demaunded a pꝛomiſe of the Emperour, which hee graunted, foꝛ the which all the court was very ſad. Cap. 11. fol. 58. b

How the Emperour vndid a ſcrowle of parchment, & therein read the cauſe why a certayne dead Ladye was ſlayne with cruell tyꝛannie, & of the great ſoꝛrow he receiued foꝛ the ſame. Cap. 12. fol 65. b

How the Emperour Trebatio dyd land at the Iland Citarea, and of al that happened there. Cap. 13. fol. 71. a

How the Lady Lidia talked with hir knight Brenio, demanding the cauſe of his diſcontentment, & of other accidents Chapter 14. fol. 74. a

How the Emperour when he was recouered of the wemeſſe which he receiued at the ſea, trauailed in the ſame Iland where he was caſt a land, and how he met with certaine Knights, with whō hee had battayle. Cap. 15. fol. 81. b

How the two children of the great Alphebo were ſtolne away by the Gyaunt Galtenor, & what ſucceeded of the ſame. Chapter. 16. fol. 87 a

Of the great payne that the Prince ſuſtained foꝛ the abſence of his couſin, and how he had battaile wᵗ a certaine knight that was afflicted with loue, and of all that chanced therein. Cap. 17. fol 90. b

How the Prince met in Paris with the Knight of the Images, and of the battell hee had with him, & how they ouercame the three Knights that dyd accuſe the Princeſſe, and of all that happened beeſides. Cap. 18. fol. 99 a

Of all that happened vnto the faire Lidia, and of the Prince Eleno, after they departed the mountayne whereas they met. Cap. 19. fol 105 b

How the Emperour went vnto Tinacria, and of that which passed in the battayle which hee had with the Earle of Modique. Cap. 20. fol. 111.a

How the Queene being in loue with the Emperour, & seeing that hee would giue hir no remedy, would haue slayne hir selfe, and how the Emperour was constrayned to consent vnto hir will. Cap. 21. fol. 123.b

How the Emperour went into the field against the pagan Bramarandus, and of all that happened in the battell between them. Cap. 22. fol. 125.a

How the fayre Queene Gerrofilea made great lamentation for the departure of the Emperour, and how at their last being together, shee remained with child by him. Cap. 23. fol. 130.a

How the Knight of the Sunne would haue taried for Tefereo in ỹ place whereas hee appointed him, & how hee lost his way in a thick mountaine, and of al that happened after that. Cap. 24. fol. 132.b

How the Greek Emperour dyd disimbarke himselfe at the Citte of Cimarra, and what happened vnto him there. Cap. 25. fol. 139.a

How Eleno before he would go into the field, would see the Sepulcher of Lidia, and what chanced in the battell appointed with the Emperour, his kinsemen & friends. Cap. 26. fol. 146.a

How the two Princesses went to recreate themselues vnto a house of pleasure, and how the King of Mauritania founde them in theyr pastimes, and knowing who they wer, would haue layd holde vppon the Princesse Briana. Cap. 27. fol. 151.a

How the worthy Queene Archisilora went to pursue ỹ Pagan, & what happened to hir in the way. Cap. 28. fol. 158.b

How the famous Rosicleer and Brandimarde went to the kingdome of Lyra, and of all which passed in the battayle which they had with the Grauntes. Cap. 29. fol. 164.b

The ende of the Table of the first Booke

The table of the second Booke.

OF the Prince Claridiano, and how the king of Arginaria sent to ỹ king of Trapobana, & of al that happened to the messenger. Cap. 1. fol. 169.a

How Claridiano went vnto the camp of the king of Arginaria, and demanded of him battaile, and of all that succeeded in the same. Cap. 2. fol. 174.b

How a damsell messenger came from the Queene of Tinacria, and brought a Letter vnto the Emperour of Grecia, and of all that passed about the same. Chapter. 3. fol. 181.a

How the Dacian Prince dyd meete with Brenio, to whom he gaue the Letter of Lidia, and of Brenios death. Chapter. 4. fol. 116.b

How Eleno went out of the Forrest to see the aduenture of those Knights which passed by, and of the battaile hee had with them. Cap. 5. fol. 193.a

How when the valiant Mauritanian had slaine the Tartarian Zoylo, he put on the armour of Bramarant for that hee would not bee knowen, and of all that happened therein. Cap. 6. fol. 199.a

How the fierce Brufaldoro hauing spoken euil of women, and of all louers, was taken in the snares of loue with a Lady that hee met after he had finished the battel with Zoylo. Cap. 7. fol. 202.b

How Claridiano was very sad to see that he was an armed Knight, onely for one worthy feate of armes, and how hee departed from the King Delfo. Chapter. 8 fol. 209.a

Of

¶THE TABLE.

Of the battell that Claridiano had with the fierce and timerous Gyaunt, sonne vnto the other Gyant which hee had slayne, & of all that happened in the same. Cap. 9. fol. 217. a

Of the great trauaile that the Greeke knight and the Ladies had for lacke of victualles by reason of their long iourney, and how they found a Gyant whom the Prince slue, and what order they had to help themselues to victualles. Cap. 10. fol. 219 a

How Claridiano and his companie went vnto the triumph of Nabatea, and of al that hapned vnto them by the way Cap. 11. fol 225. b

How Claridiano was assaulted with two furious Gyants & fifteene Knights that came with them, and of the battell that hee hadde with them all. Chapter. 21. fol. 229. a

How the knight and the Ladies went vnto a castell, and of the great treason that was there ordayned by Arte Magick. cap. 13. fol 232 a

How the king of Nabatea had vnderstanding what the Greeke Prince had done in the castle, and how he commanded that the Serpent and the heades of the Gyaunts should bee set at the entrey of the gate of the pallace: and how the triumph began, and of all that passed in the time of the feastes. cap. 14. Fol. 238. a

How the heroycall Greeke was wounded with the dart of Cupide, in beholding the beauty of a very fayre Pastora, and of the great griefe that hee sustayned. Cap. 15. fol. 241. b

How Rosicleer found in an Iland the sonne of Alacandro, leading a troublesome life, with his fayre and welbeloued wife, whom hee set at libertie. Cap. 16 Fol. 247.

How Rosicleer entered into the Castell, and of the battaile hee had therein, for to bring out of prison the Princesse, spouse vnto the Prince Meridian, beeing therein kept. Cap. 17. fol. 251. b

How the King Fangomandan came without knowing of anye thing that happened in the Castell, and founde the entrey closed, and of the battell that was betweene him and Rosicleer. Chapter. 18. fol. 256. b

Of the battell which Claridiano had with the Prince of Palestina, and how hee had the victorie, giuing liberty vnto Antemisca, and the rest. Chap. 19. Fol. 258. b.

How Claridiano trauayled by Armenia, and of the strange aduentures that happened in that Countrey. Chap. 20. Fol. 266. b.

How Claridiano after hee had read the Historie in the Parchment, blew the horne, and the gates were opened, and how resistance was made at the entrey, and of all that passed about the same. Chapter. 21. fol. 268. a

How Cleridiano beeing ouercome with the loue of the Pastora disguised himselfe in shepheards apparell, the better to inioye hir sight, and of all that happened therein. Cap. 22. fol. 281. a

How Poliphebo beecause his mother would not giue him the order of knighthood, went secretly from the court, and of all that happened to him. Chap. 23. Fol. 287. a.

How the worthie Tinacrian prosecuted his voyage, and chaunced whereas hee found the Quene of Mauritania euill intreated of a Gyant, and of the battell hee had with him. Cap. 24. fol. 292. a

How Poliphebo prosecuted his iourney for to goe into Grecia, and how in the way hee met by aduenture with certayne Clownes forcing of a Lady, and would haue slayne hir, and what happened touching that Lady. Chap. 25. Fol. 395.

How

How the Tinacrian was tarrying to se if any would come forth against him, and how Rodclando and his cosin made battell with him, and how he ouercame them both. Cap. 26. fol 301.b

How the Emperour Alphebo would haue perswaded the Princesse Tigliafa to leaue that lamentable lyfe, which she refused to doe, & how the two knights departed, & of all that happened in their iourney. Cap. 27. fol. 305. b

How the Prince of Polismago tooke the Pastora captiue, and how Philipensio deliuered hir. Cap. 28. fol. 311.b

How Claridiano fought with his owne father, and how Galtenor knowing the harme that would come thereof remedied it. Cap. 29. fol. 317.a

How the Emperour Trebatio was reioyced with his Nephew the Pastora, & of a great Tempest, with other accidents. Cap. 30. fol. 326. b

How Poliphebo and the Queene of Lira had cruell battaile, and what happened therein. Cap. 31. fol. 330. b

FINIS.

¶IMPRINTED AT London by Thomas *Este, dwelling in Aldersgate* streer. 1598.